00046347

BOMBAY BRANCH

OF THE

Royal Asiatic Society.

Digitized with financial assistance from the
Government of Maharashtra
on 23 January, 2019

The Brut

OR

The Chronicles of England.

EDITED FROM

MS. RAWL. B 171, BODLEIAN LIBRARY, &c.

BY

FRIEDRICH W. D. BRIE, PH.D.

WITH INTRODUCTION, NOTES, AND
GLOSSARY.

PART I.

LONDON:
PUBLISHED FOR THE EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY
BY KEGAN PAUL, TRENCH, TRÜBNER & CO., LIMITED,
DRYDEN HOUSE, 43, GERRARD STREET, SOHO, W.

00046347

Original Series, No. 131.

To

His Excellency Dr. Karl Schenkel,

GROSSHERZOGL. BAD. STAATSMINISTER,

This Work is inscribed

by the Editor.

ERRATA.

p. 92. The heading must be: *Edelf, Argentil and Curan.*
p. 121. ,, ,, *Edmund's* instead of *St. Edmund's.*
p. 122. ,, ,, *K. Edmund's* instead of *K. Edward's.*
p. 143. ,, ,, *Maude* instead of *Maud.*
p. 150. ,, ,, *Leave out the date* A.D. 1172.
p. 154. ,, ,, ,, ,, ,, A.D. 1216.
p. 177, 178, 179. ,, *Henry III* instead of *Henry II.*

PREFACE.

I PROPOSE to include in a couple of volumes, of which th present is the first, an edition of the work commonly called *Th Brut of England*, or *The Chronicles of England*. The entir Chronicle with its continuations embraces a period from th legendary time of Albina and Brutus to A.D. 1479, while th part which forms the contents of this volume closes with th of Halidon Hill in 1333. The first part of our Chronicle i translation of the French *Brut d'Engleterre*. Of this w are two independent English translations, of which I the earlier and anonymous one for publication, for r are fully explained in the general Introduction which last volume of this edition.

After 1333 we have a certain number of continuations. The first of these, finishing w Edward III in 1377, represents the same ver after that date we have several continu independent of each other. Of these the r been chosen for publication.

Very few of these continuations ca ascribed to a known author; most of of MSS. which have perished or d question of authorship ceases to be o the information contained in the te contemporary writers, as is the The value of such portions of external authentication, depend of the context where it has be

As history, the first pa later parts after the acce of the continuations the temporary.

As literature, the

erted poems—as a mediæval Chronicle possibly can be. But body will expect to stop a wedding-guest by reciting mediæval story.

For everything else, the reader of these pages is referred to the inal Introduction. This will contain a list, description and classification of 167 MSS. in French, English and Latin, 147 of which I have been able to examine myself; and some remarks about the language of the most important English texts; then a history of the study of the *Brut*, an analysis of the different French versions and their sources, a description of the two English translations, and an examination of the original English continuations and their rces; finally, a list of the 13 printed editions between 1400 1528, a description of the Latin versions, and a chapter on luence of the *Brut* on later writers.[1] Besides that, I shall air number of notes, mostly containing illustrations from ary writers, to explain the historical value of the facts he *Brut*. A Glossary of the more uncommon words x of Proper Names will form the end.

mains to describe the MSS. which have been used volume. They are three in number, designated he letters R, O and D.

l. B. 171 (Bodl.), which forms the text of this nts the oldest English copy of the *Brut* The hand shows the time of writing to be the MS. wants the first leaves, these have S. Douce 323.

odl.), a late, but very accurate transcript ning of the second half of the 15th used too for the collation of the whole

lin, 490, which was written in the ry.

s volume contains the poetical Halidon Hill which forms the The text is printed from is version, MS. Harley 4690 llege of Arms in London.

eared in German under the *Prosachronik The Brute of* g. N. G. Elwert. 1905.

Further details about the MSS. employed will be found in the final Introduction.

In conclusion, I have to record my obligations to those to whom I have been indebted for various acts of kindness and assistance in the course of the whole work. Their number is indeed very great. Among these I will mention in the first place Dr. Frederick J. Furnivall, whose kindness and most valuable experience are always placed so courteously at the service of those who require them. Much attention and help I have besides received from Professor Alois Brandl in Berlin. Nor must I omit publicly to acknowledge the useful hints forwarded to me by Professor Priebsch, Professor Brandin, Dr. Wylie and Dr. Imelmann. For the loan of their MSS., I am highly under obligation to the Earl of Leicester at Holkham, and to Mr. William Wynne of Peniarth (co. Merioneth). To Mr. John Edwards in Glasgow I am indebted for information about the MS. in his possession, and to the Rev. P. Henderson Aitken for information about the MSS. kept in the University Museum in Glasgow. Finally I have to thank the authorities of the British Museum,—that Mecca of all scholars who have made it my second home,—the Bodleian Library, the University Library in Cambridge, various Colleges in Oxford and Cambridge, Trinity College, Dublin, Lambeth Palace, the College of Physicians, the Society of Antiquaries, the Inner Temple, Lincoln's Inn, the Library in Hamburg, Bibliothèque Nationale, Mazarine Library and Arsenal in Paris. To Mr. Falconer Madan of the Bodleian Library, and to Mr. John A. Herbert of the British Museum I am under great obligations for the continuous and generous help of their paleographical knowledge.

Marburg a/L., December 1906.

SUMMARY OF CONTENTS.

The Prolog.

[KING DIOCLICIAN weds his 33 daughters to 33 kings. The daughters despise their husbands. When Dioclician scolds them, they kill their husbands. Albine and her sisters put to sea. They reach Albion, and breed giants by the devil] ... ... pp. 1–4

Chapters 1–10.

Of Eneas, his son Ascanius, and his grandson Sylveyn. Of Brut, Sylveyn's son. His banishment and his success in Greece. Brut wins Gennogen, King Pandras's daughter. He is bidden by Diana to go to the isle of Albion. He conquers Gascony, and builds Castle Tours. Landing at Totness. Cornwall is given to Coryn. Foundation of New-Troy. Albanak gets Scotland, Camber gets Wales. Death of Brut. King Lotryn drives out Humber and marries Guentolen, Coryn's daughter. Lotryn's death. Estrilde is drowned by Guentolen. King Madan. Menpris slays Manlyn, his brother. King Ebrac conquers France. King Brut Greneshal. King Leyl. King Lud Ludibras pp. 5–16

Chapters 11–20.

King Bladud. King Leir and his three daughters. Cordeil becomes Queen of France. Leir's retinue is cut down by Corneil and Rigan. Leir goes to France to see Cordeil. Leir made king again. Cordeil reigns in England. Morgan and Conedag. King Raynolde. King Gorbodian. Porrex is slain by Ferrex. Ferrex is murdered by his mother. Four kings in Britain. Donewall becomes the only king pp. 16–24

Chapters 21–30.

Belyn and Brenne. Brenne gets Norse help to invade Belyn. Belyn defeats King Gutlagh of Denmark. He makes four causeways across the country. He and Brenne invade France. Rome is conquered. King Corinbatrus subdues Denmark. Spaniards settle in Ireland. King Guentolen. King Seisel. His successors Kymor, Howan, Morwith, Grandobodian. The bad King Artogaile becomes good ... pp. 24–29

Chapters 31–40.

King Hesider and his Brothers. Thirty-three kings reign after him, the last being called Ely. King Lud. Origin of the name of London

and of Ludgate. King Cassibalam. He drives Julius Cæsar out of Britain, B.C. 55. The Earl of London calls him back. Cæsar subdues the English. King Androgen. King Kembelyn. Claudius invades Britain, and is beaten, A.D. 41. King Ginder is slain in the battle. Armoger weds Claudius's daughter, and is made king ... pp. 30–35

Chapters 41–50.

King Westmer of Britain. He gives Scotland to Berynger's men. They make a raid into Ireland for women. King Coil. King Lucie. Britain becomes Christian, A.D. 156. Britain a long time without a king. Astlepades chosen king. Coil slays him, and becomes his successor. King Constance. Constantine becomes Emperor of Rome. Octovian is made king. Maximian weds his daughter, and becomes his successor. He gives Little Britain to Conan Meriedok. Conan sends to Cornwall for maidens, in order to people his country. The Eleven Thousand British Virgins. They are driven to Cologne, and martyred by Gowan and Elga ... ... pp. 36–44

Chapters 51–60.

Gowan invades England. Gracian drives him out, and is crowned king after Maximian's death. Gowan comes back, but is slain by Constantine. Constantine made king. Britain turns Christian. Constance made king by Vortiger's help. Vortiger causes Constance to be murdered. Vortiger is made king. Constance's brothers are carried to Little Britain. Engist, Horn, and other Saxons, land in Kent. Engist's Thongcastle. His daughter Ronewenne. Wassail and Drinkhail. Vortiger weds Ronewenne. Vortimer made king by the Britons. Ronewenne causes Vortimer to be poisoned. Vortyger made king again. Engist's treachery, and his conquest of Britain. Britain called Engist's land. Vortiger goes to Wales ... ... pp. 44–56

Chapters 61–70.

Vortiger sends for the child Merlin. Merlin and his mother talk with Vortiger. Merlin explains the signification of the two Dragons under the Castle. His prophecy. Aurilambros and Uter arrive in Britain. Vortiger flees. Vortiger and Engist are slain. King Aurilambros. Merlin moves the Giants' stones from Ireland and makes Stonehenge. Guillomer of Ireland's invasion. Aurilambros poisoned. A star appears after his death. Merlin tells its signification. Uther Pendragon crowned. His two Dragons. Relief of York. The siege of Tintagel ... ... pp. 56–66

Chapters 71–80.

Uther begets Arthur on Igerne, and weds her. He defeats Octa and Ossa. He is poisoned by the Saxons. Arthur is made king. He defeats Cheldrik and Hoel. Their treachery. Arthur beats the Saxons at Bath. Merlin's prophecies. Arthur defeats Guillomer of Ireland,

and grants mercy to the Scots. He weds Gunnore, and conquers all Ireland. Fame of Arthur's Court. The foundation of the Round Table. Arthur fights and kills Frolle, and wins Paris. He divides France among his Knights. Arthur's feast. The Roman Emperor's summons to him ... ... pp. 66–82

Chapters 81–90.

Arthur's defiant answer. The Roman Emperor and he prepare to fight. Arthur's followers. He slays the Spanish Giant who ravished and killed fair Elyne. He beats the Romans, and buries his own slain. Mordred is traitorous, and rebels against Arthur. He fights Arthur at sea, and flees to Cornwall. He is beaten by Arthur and slain. Arthur himself wounded to death. He appoints Constantyne king. Constantyne's war with Mordred's sons ... ... pp. 82–91

Chapters 91–100.

King Adelbright and King Edelf. Argentil married to Curan. King Conan. King Certif. The Saxons ask Gurmond for help. Gurmond and the Saxons drive out the Britons. Chichester taken. "Britain" changed to "England." The seven kingdoms. Pope Gregory and the English children. St. Austin lands in Kent, A.D. 596. Adelbright baptized. St. Austin and the rays' tails. Wales refuses St. Austin and the Pope. It is to be invaded. King Brecyval of Leicester slain. Cadwaladre made King of the Britons. He and Elfrid are friends. Quarrel between Edwyne and Cadwalayn ... ... pp. 91–101

Chapters 101–110.

King Oswold is killed, A.D. 642. Peanda seizes his land. Peanda beaten by Oswy, A.D. 655. Oswyn beaten by Oswy. Ossa becomes chief of all kings of England. King Alfred's Chronicles. King Osbright rapes Buerne's wife. Buerne defies King Osbright, and seeks Danish help. The Danes kill Osbright, and take York. They ravage England, and martyr St. Edmund, A.D. 866. Hubba and Hungar take Reading. At last the Danes are beaten, and pray for peace. Danes at Chippenham, A.D. 877. Alfred defeats the Danes. The Danish king baptized, A.D. 878. Alfred's reign and books. Edward, his son, made king, A.D. 900. The Danes come again to England... ... ... pp. 101–112

Chapters 111–120.

The Kings Athelstan, Edmund, Eldred and Edwin fight the Danes. The good King Edgar sole king, A.D. 959. Ethelwold deceives King Edgar about Estrilde. Ethelwold is killed, and Edgar weds Estrilde. Edgar and Archbishop Dunstan. Edgar's death, A.D. 975. Edward the Martyr is murdered at Corfe, A.D. 978. Eldred crowned by Dunstan. Sweyn and the Danes invade England, A.D. 994. Death of Sweyn, A.D. 1014. King Eldred fights Cnut. Cnut and Edmund Ironside share England, A.D. 1016. Edmund is killed, and his murderer drowned.

Cnut sends Edmund's sons to Denmark to be murdered. Edward, Edmund's son, marries the daughter of the King of Hungary. Cnut conquers Norway, A.D. 1028. He tries to stop the Thames. His death, A.D. 1035 ... ... pp. 112–124

Chapters 121–130.

King Harold Harefoot reigns. Hardicanute succeeds him. He recalls his mother to England. His death, A.D. 1042. The English send into Normandy for Alfred and Edward. Godwin has Prince Alfred murdered. Accession of Edward the Confessor, A.D. 1042. He reproaches Godwin for the death of his brother. He forgives Godwin, and weds his daughter. His miraculous sight of King Sweyn. Miraculous appearance of St. John to pilgrims. Their journey to Edward. King Edward's death, A.D. 1066 ... ... pp. 125–134

Chapters 131–140.

Harold is made king. His oath to Duke William. He breaks it. William invades England and slays Harold, A.D. 1066. William crowned King of England. William the Conqueror dies, William the Red succeeds, A.D. 1087. Quarrel with Archbishop Anselm. The Dreams of and about the king. *Rufus* shot. Henry Beauclerc reigns, A.D. 1100. Henry's church disputes. He conquers Normandy. War with Louis of France, A.D. 1109–1113. Henry's sons drowned, A.D. 1120. His daughter Maud comes to England. Henry I's death. Stephen succeeds him, A.D. 1135. He takes Lincoln, A.D. 1141. The Empress Maude escapes from Oxford. Maude's son Henry gets Normandy, A.D. 1144, and arrives in England, A.D. 1149. King Stephen dies, A.D. 1153 pp. 134–147

Chapters 141–150.

Henry II's coronation, A.D. 1154. He invades Wales. Thomas à Becket made primate, A.D. 1162. Becket quits England, A.D. 1164. War between king and primate, A.D. 1165–1170. Thomas à Becket slain, A.D. 1170. Henry and his sons. Henry II dies, A.D. 1189. The loss of the Holy Land. The Crusade. *Richard* I and the Crusade. He is imprisoned, A.D. 1192. His return to England. He is wounded to the Death at Castle Gaillard, A.D. 1199. King John, his successor, loses Normandy. Langton becomes Archbishop, A.D. 1207. England interdicted by the Pope's order. Compromise between the Pope and King John. John refuses to restore the Church's goods, and ruins the Cistercians. The Pope's Demands. John's exceptions to them. The Pope's legates declare the Excommunication of England. A clerical coiner is set free by Pandolf. King John gives in to the Pope, A.D. 1213 pp. 147–163

Chapters 151–160.

King John's deed of surrender to the Pope. The exiled papists come back. The King welcomes Archbishop Langton. The seven

years' interdict is ended. The King's misdeeds. He grants Magna Charta, A.D. 1215. The Barons conspire against him. The crown offered to Louis of France. Louis invades England. King John poisoned by a Swineshead monk, A.D. 1216. Henry III succeeds him. Progress of the war. Wales is interdicted. Louis defeated at Lincoln, A.D. 1217. French fleet is destroyed [off Sandwich]. Treaty between Henry III and Louis. Henry confirms King John's Charter, A.D. 1217. Henry marries, A.D. 1236. Granting of new charters. The Barons' war. Battle of Lewes, A.D. 1264. Battle of Evesham, A.D. 1265. Battle of Chesterfield, A.D. 1266. Siege of Kenilworth. The exiled rebels are forgiven, A.D. 1267. Henry III's death, A.D. 1272. Merlin's prophecy of Henry III ... ... pp. 163–178

Chapters 161–170.

Edward I crowned. Coronation festivities. Edward's first campaign against Lewelyn of Wales, A.D. 1277. The second Welsh campaign, A.D. 1278. Bad coinage reformed. Lewelyn's third rebellion, A.D. 1282. Lewelyn is slain. David, Prince of Wales, rebels against Edward. Execution of David, A.D. 1283. Edward subdues Wales. Revolt of Rys ap Meriedok, A.D. 1287. Punishment of bad judges, A.D. 1289. Expulsion of the Jews, A.D. 1290. The claimants to the Scottish throne. Edward declares Balliol King of Scotland, A.D. 1292. The Normans at Dover, A.D. 1293. The defenders of Gascony taken by the French, A.D. 1294. Balliol rebels, A.D. 1295. Turberville's deceit. Siege of Berwick, A.D. 1296. Edward I and his long shanks. Balliol is beaten at Berwick Castle. English victory at Dunbar, A.D. 1296. Mock-song against the Scots. Edward forgives Balliol and the rebel Scots. The Scots choose Wallace their king, A.D. 1297. Wallace's truce with France. He defeats the English at Stirling Bridge. Edward ravages Scotland. He defeats the Scots at Falkirk, A.D. 1298 pp. 179–194

Chapters 171–180.

King Edward marries Margaret of France, A.D. 1299. The third campaign against Scotland, A.D. 1303. Stirling Castle surrenders, A.D. 1304. Ordinance of Trailbaston, A.D. 1305. Edward imprisons his son. Wallace is hanged, A.D. 1305. Robert Bruce claims the crown of Scotland, and repudiates Edward I. Comyn opposes Bruce. Bruce kills Comyn, and is crowned king, A.D. 1306. Edward prepares for a fresh conquest of Scotland ... ... pp. 194–200

Chapters 181–190.

Edward I invades Scotland. Bruce defeated [at Methven], A.D. 1306. Sir Symond Frisell is hanged, and the Earl of Athol taken. Bruce flees to Norway. Edward I prepares for his death, A.D. 1307. Merlin's prophecies about him. Edward II his successor. He weds Princess Isabel of France, and is crowned, A.D. 1308. Piers Gaveston. His

unpopularity and pride. He is sent to Ireland. Gaveston's return condoned by Parliament at Stamford, A.D. 1309. Murder of Gaveston, A.D. 1312. Bruce's return to Scotland. He defeats Edward II at Bannockburn, A.D. 1314. Mock-song of the Scotch maidens. John Tanner. Berwick taken, A.D. 1318. Two Cardinals robbed in England, A.D. 1317. Great Famine in England, A.D. 1315–1317. The Scots plunder Northumberland ... ... pp. 200–210

Chapters 191–200.

Scotland interdicted, A.D. 1318. The younger Hugh le Spenser is made the King's chamberlain. Renewed attack on Scotland. The English defeated in the White Battle at Myton, A.D. 1319. Hugh le Spenser's pride. The harm done by the Spensers. The Spensers exiled, A.D. 1321. The father curses the son. Recall of the Spensers, A.D. 1322. Siege of Leeds, A.D. 1321. Thomas of Lancaster outlawed. Siege of Tickhill Castle raised by the King. Robert Holond's treachery. Thomas of Lancaster and the rebels go to Burbridge, A.D. 1322. Thomas tries to win over Sir Andrew Hercela. Battle of Burbridge. Humphrey de Bohun slain. Thomas of Lancaster taken. Mixt races in England. Thomas imprisoned at Pontefract. He is scandalously treated and beheaded, A.D. 1322. Other rebels executed. The triumph of the Spensers. They advise a renewed attack on the Scots. The English are defeated at Byland, A.D. 1322. Lord Carlisle taken and disgraced for his treachery. His execution, A.D. 1323 ... pp. 210–228

Chapters 201–210.

Miracles for the Martyr, St. Thomas of Lancaster. The pilgrimages to his tomb stopped by the advice of the Spensers. Sir Roger Mortimer escapes from the Tower, A.D. 1323. The King seizes the Queen's lands. He sends his Queen to France to make peace. His son Edward does homage to Charles IV. Edward II exiles his Queen and Prince Edward, A.D. 1325. The Spensers' conspiracy against Queen Isabel and her son. Queen Isabel proposes to invade England. Edward II's preparations against his wife and son, A.D. 1326. Landing of Isabel and Mortimer. Bishop Stapleton and his two Squires are beheaded. King Edward is taken prisoner. The Spensers are hanged, and other traitors beheaded. The Nobles agree to depose Edward II, A.D. 1327. The Nobles, Bishops and Knights disclaim him pp. 228–242

Chapters 211–220.

Prophecies of Merlin about Edward II. Edward III crowned, A.D. 1327. England happy under him. Attempt to set Edward II free. Abortive Scottish campaign. Mock-song of the Scotch. The Scots invade England. A fine army opposes them. Through Mortimer's treachery, the Scots escape at Stanhope Park. Two moons appear. Two Popes elected. Edward II murdered in Corfe Castle, A.D. 1328.

Edward III weds Philippa of Hainault. The shameful peace of Northampton between the English and Scotch. Bruce's son to be King of Scotland. Queen Isabel becomes hated. Robert of Holand is killed. Demands of the objectors to Queen Isabel's doings. Her opponents give in. Henry of Lancaster and his followers exiled. Edward III does homage for Guienne. Mortimer's ambition. Contrast between the King of Folly and King Arthur ... ... pp. 242–262

Chapters 221–223.

Edmund of Woodstock gets leave to seek for Edward II, A.D. 1329. Sir John Daverel betrays him. Isabella appeals to Edward III to kill Edmund of Woodstock. He is arrested, tried for treason, and beheaded, A.D. 1330. Pride and avarice of Roger Mortimer. Edward III's council plan their defence. The secret passage into Nottingham Castle. Mortimer is taken and condemned to death, A.D. 1330. "Sir John Turnetabard." Edward Balliol is imprisoned in France. Preparations to make Edward Balliol King of Scotland. Edward III gives him leave to go to Scotland, A.D. 1332. He lands there, and routs the Earl of Fife. His speech to his men. He beats his Scotch opposers. A coming battle. Balliol routs the Scots. The Fleming pirate Crab. Balliol is crowned King of Scotland, and does homage to Edward III. Attempt to murder him. He and Edward III besiege Berwick, A.D. 1333. The Scots offer to surrender Berwick if help does not come soon. The Scots make ready to fight. The five wards of their army. The English rout them at Halidon Hill, 19 July 1333 ... pp. 263–286

The longer Romance of the Battle of Halidon Hill ... pp. 287–289
A shorter fragmentary version of the same ... ... p. 289

The Brut, a Chronicle of England.

[*MS. Douce* 323, *Bodleian Library.*]

[The Prolog.][1]

[How King Dioclisian wedded his 33 Daughters to 33 Kings whom they afterwards murderd; and how these Widows came to England, & had children by the Giants of the land.]

IN[3] the noble lande of Surrye[4] ther was a noble kyng and myghty, & a man of grete renoun, þat me called Dyoclician, þat wel and worthily hym gouernede, & rewlede thurgh his noble chiualrye, so þat he conquered alle þe landes abowte hym, so that almoste all þe kynges of þe world to hym were entendaunt. ¶ Hyt befell thus, þat this Dioclician spousede a gentyl damysele þat was wondyr fayr, þat was hys Eemys doughter, Labana; & sche loued hym as reson wolde, so þat he gate vpon here xxxiij doughtres, of þe which þe eldest me called Albyne. And þese[5] Damysels, whan þey comyn in-to[6] Age, bycomen[7] so fayre þat it was wondyr. ¶ Wherfore this Dioclician anon lete make A sompnyng, & comaundid by his lettres þat Alle þe kyngys þat heldyn of hym schulde come at A certayn day, as in his lettres was[8] conteyned, to make A ryal feste. At which day, þedir þey comyn, & brought with hem Amyralles, Prynces & Dukes, & noble Chiualrye. þe feste was ryally Arayd; & þere þey lyved in ioy and merthe y-now, that it was wonder to wete.

¶ And hit befelle þus, þat þis Dioclician þoughte maryen his Doughtres among all þo knyghtys[9] þat tho were at that solempnite;

[1] *The text to the end of Chapter V is taken from MS. Douce* 323, *as it is wanting (except just the latter part of Chapter V, which is too blurred and indistinct to be copied) in MS. Rawlinson B* 171. *The collation following is of MS. Trin. Coll. Dublin* 490 (*D*). [2] *leaf* 1.

[3] D *has this heading:* Her may a man hure How Engelande was ferst callede Albyon and through whome it hade the name.

[4] Syrrie [5] þis [6] vnto [7] bicome [8] were [9] kynges

and so they speken[1] & dede, that Albyne, his eldest doughter, & alle here[2] sustres, richely were maryed vnto xxxiij kynges[3] that wer'[4] lordes of gret honour, & Also power, at þis solempnite. And whanne þ^e^ solempnite was done, eu*er*y kyng nome his wyf, & lad hem into here owne cuntre, and there maad hem quene. ¶ And hit byfelle þus aftyrward, þat þis dame Albyne bycome so stoute & so sterne, þ*at* sche told litel prys of her' lord, And of hym hadde scorne and dyspite, and wolde not done his wylle, but wolde haue here owne wyH in diu*er*ses[5] maners. And aH her other sustres, eche on[6] bere hem so euel a-yens here lordes, þ*at* it was wonder to wete. ¶ And for-as-mycħ as hem thought[7] þat here housebondes were not[8] of so hye p*ar*age comen as here fadyr. ¶ But tho kynges þ*at* were her lordes, wolde haue chastysed[9] witħ fayr speche & byhestes, & also for[8] ȝiftes, and warnyd hem in fayr man*er* vpon aH loue and frenschipe þ*at* þei scholde Amende hir[10] lithir condic*i*ons; but al it was for nouȝt, for they deden her owne wil in aH þyng[11] þ*at* hem lykede & hadde of power. wherfore þo xxxiij kynges, vpon A tyme, and oftyn-tymes, beten here wyfes, for þey wende that þei wolde haue Amended here tacches and here wykkyd thewes; but of suchħ condic*i*ons þei were þ*at*, for fayr speche & warnyng', þei deden the [12]wors,[12] & for betynges [13]eft-sone mychħ[13] wors. Wherfore þ^e^ kyng þ*at* hadde wedded Albyne, wrote þ^e^ tacches & þ^e^[8] condic*i*ons of his wyf Albyne, & þ^e^ l*ett*re sent to Dioclician, her fader. ¶ And whenne þ^e^[8] other kynges herde that Albynes lord had sent l*ett*re to Dioclician, an*on* þey sente lettres enseled witħ here seeles [of] þ^e^ condic*i*ons and þ^e^ tacches of here wyfes.

¶ Whanne þ^e^ Kyng Dioclician saw & herde so many pleynt*es* of his doughters, he was[8] sore a-schamed, & bycome wonder Angry & wrotħ to-ward his doughters, & þought boþ^e^ nyght & day how he þo myghte amende hit þat þey so mysdede. ¶ And anon sente his lettres vnto þo xxxiij[14] kynges, þat þey schulde come to hym, & brynge w*ith* hem here wyfes, eu*er*ychoñ at a certayn day, for he wolde þere chastise hem of here wikkydnes, if he myghte in eny maner wyse. So þ*at* þ^e^ kynges comen AH at þe[15] day & tyme þat

[1] spoken [2] her' op*er*e
[3] knyghtes *struck out, and* kynges *written after it.* [4] weren
[5] diu*er*se [6] eu*er*ycheoñ [7] þouȝt nouȝt
[8] *om.* [9] chastisede ham [10] her' maners þat wer' so
[11] þinges [12] *leaf* 1, *back.* [13–13] eftesones michel
[14] xxx^ti^ [15] her'

...bytwen hem; & þe Kyng Dioclician hem vndir-fenge[1] with mychel honour, & made A solempne feste to aH þat were vndir his lordschipe. And þe thrid day of þat[2] solempnyte, þe kyng Dioclician sente for[3] his xxxiij doughtres, þat þei schulde come & speke with hym in his chambre. & whenne þey were comen, he spak vn-to hem of here wikkydnes & of here cruelte, & dispitously[4] hem reprouede And vndirnam,[5] & to hem he sayde þat, ȝif þei wolde not be[6] chastisede, þei schulde his loue lese for euermore. ¶ And whanne þe ladyes herd[7] al this, þei becomen[8] abasshed & gretly a-schamed; & to here fadir þey seyd þat þei wolde make al amendes; & so þey departed out from here fadres[9] chambre. and Dame Albyne, þat was þe eldest suster, lad hem aH into her chambre, & þo made voide al þat were þerin, so þat no lyf was among[10] hem but sche & here sustres y-fere.[11] þe saide þis Albyne ¶ "My fair sustres, ful weel ȝe[12] knowiþ þat þe kyng oure fadir, vs hath reprouyd, schamed & dispised,[13] for encheson) to make vs obedient vn-to oure housbandes; but certes þat schal y neuere, whiles þat I lyve, seth þat I [14]am come[14] of a more hyere kynges blod þan my[15] housband is." & whan sche had so seyd, aH here sustres seyd þe same. ¶ And þo seyd Albyne: "ful wel y wot, fayr sustres, þat oure housbandes haue playned vnto owre fadir vpon vs, wherfore he hath [16]þus vs[16] foul reprouede & dispised. wherfore, sustres, my counseil is þat, þis nyght, when owre housbandes ben abed,[17] aH we with on assent cutten here throtes, & þan we mow be in pees of hem, & better we mowe do þis þing vndir our fadres power þan elles-where." & anon AH þe ladyes [18]consentid and graunted vnto þis counceil. ¶ And whan nyght was comyn, þe lordes & ladies wente to bedde, & anon as here lordes were in[19] slepe, þei cutte[20] aH here housbandes throtes, & so they slowen hem aH.

¶ whan þat Dioclician[21] her fader herd of þis þing, [22]he by-come[22] hugely wroth A-ȝens his Doughtres, & anon wolde hem aH haue brent; but Alle þe barouns & lordes of Sirrye conceilyd hym not so for-to don suche sternys to his owne doughtres, but onlych schulde voide þe land of hem for euermore, so þat þei neuere schulde come aȝen; & so he dede. ¶ And anon Dioclician, þat

[1] vnderfongi [2] þe [3] after [4] despitely [5] vndenam
[6] bene [7] harden [8] bicome [9] fader [10] amonges [11] infere
[12] we [13] despitede [14—14] comen [15] myn [16—16] vs þus
[17] in bede [18] *leaf* 2. [19] on [20] cotten [21] Dioclician þe kyng
[22—22] *om.*

was here fadir,[1] commaundid hem to gon in-to schipe, to hem vitailles for half a[2] ȝeer. and when þis was don, aH þe sustryn[3] went in-to Shipe, & saylled forthñ in þe See, & be-toke alle her frendes to Appolyn, þat was her godd. And so long þey sailled in þe See, til at þe laste þei come[4] & aryued in an yle þat was aH wyldernes. ¶ And when dame Albyne was come to þat landd, & aH her sustres, þis Albyne went ferst [5]owt of þe shipe,[5] & sayde to here oþer sustres: "for-as-michñ," q*uod*[6] sche, "as I am þe eldest suster of aH þis cumpanye, & ferst þis land haue takyn, & for-as-meche as myn[7] name is Albyne, y wil þat þis landd be calledd Albyoñ, after myn owne name;" & anon aH here Sustren[3] her graunted with a[2] good wylle.

¶ Tho wenten owt aH þe Sustres of þe Shippe, & tokyn þe lond Albyon, as here Suster calledd hit; & þere þei wente vp and doun, and founde neiþer man ne woman ne childd, but wylde bestes of diuers[8] kyndes. ¶ And whan here vitaiH[9] were dispendidd, & hem faylledd, þei fedde hem withñ erbes & frutes in seson of þe ȝeer, & so þey lyuedd[10] as þei beste myghñt. And after þat, þei tokyn flesshñ of diuers[8] beestys, and bycomen wondir fatte, and so þei desirid[11] mannes cumpanye and mannys kynde þat hem faylledd; and for hete they woxen wondir coraious of kynde [5]þat hem faylled,[5] so þat þey desirid more mannys cumpanye þan eny other solas or merthe.

¶ Whanne þe DeuyH that perceyuedd and wente by diuers[8] contres, & nome bodyes of þe eyre & likyng natures shad of men, & come in-to þe land of Albyon and lay by þe[12] wymmen, and schad tho natures vpon hem, & they conceiuedd, and after þei broughten[13] forthñ Geauntes, of þe whichñ on me calledd Gogmagogg, and anoþer Laugherigan, & so þei were nompnedd by diuers[14] names; & in þis manere they comen forthñ, and weren[15] boren horrible Geauntes in Albion; & þey dwellyd in Cauys & in hulles at here wiH, & had þe londd of Albyon as hem likedd, vn-to þe tyme þat Brut Arryved & come to Tottenesse, þat was in þe Ile of Albyon. and þere þis Brut conqueryd & scomfytedd these[16] [17]geauntes abouesayd.

Here endeth þe prolog of Albyon, þat þo was an Ile. and herkeneth[18] now how Brute was geten, & how he slow

[1] fader anon [2] *om.* [3] sustres [4] comen [5–5] *om.* [6] quoþ [7] my [8] diuerses [9] vitailes [10] leueden [11] desirden [12] þo [13] brouȝt [14] diuerse [15] wer [16] þe [17] *leaf* 2, *back.* [18] herkeþ

ferst his Modir, & Afterward his fadir; & how he Conquered Albyon, þat After he nepned Brytaigne, after his[1] name, þat now is y-called[2] Engelond, After þe name of Engist of Saxoyne. Capitulo Primo.

IN the noble Cyte of gret Troye, þer was a noble knyght & [3]a myghty, &[3] a man of gret power, þat me callyd Eneas. And whan þe Cytee of Troye was lost & dystroyed thurgh hem of Greek, þis Eneas, with al his mayn[4] fled[5] thens, & come in-to Lumbardye, þat þo was lord & gouernour of þat land a kyng þat me called[6] Latyme, and another kyng þo was þat me called[6] Turocelyn, þat stronglich[7] werred vpon þis Kyng Latyme, þat often-tymes ded hym moche[8] sorowe & myche[9] harm. ¶ And whan þis Kyng Latyme herde þat Eneas was come,[10] he vndirfonge hym with myche[11] honour, and hym withhelde, for-as-myche as he had herd of hym, and wyst wel þat he was a noble knyght, & a worthy of body and of his dedes. ¶ This Eneas helpe Kyng Latyme in his werre; & schortly for-to telle, so weel & worthyly he ded, þat he slogh Turocelyn, & descomphyted al[12] his peple. And whan al this was don, kyng Latyme ȝaf al þat land þat was Turocelyns, & ȝaf it to Eneas in mariage with Lamane, his doughter, the moost fayr creature þat eny manne wiste; & so þei louede[13] to-gider in ioy & myrthe all here lyvys tyme.

¶ Hit bifel thus, þat Eneas dide, as God wolde. & whanne that he was ded, Asquanius his Sone, þat come with hym from Troye, vndirfenge[14] þe land, and helde it al his lyvys tyme. ¶ And after, he weddid A wyf, & vpon here[15] begate A Sone þat me callyd Sylveyn. And this Sylveyn, whan he conde[16] some reson of man, vnwetyng his fadir, & aȝens his wyl, aqueynted[17] with a damysell þat was Cosyn to Lamane þat was Kyng Latymes doughter, the quen þat was Eneas wyf, and brought þe damysell with Chylde. ¶ And whan Asquanius his[9] fader [18]yt wyste,[18] anon he lete enquere of the [19]wysest maystres,[19] & of þe [20]grettest Clerkys,[20] what child þe damysele schulde bryng forth. & þey Answered & seyde þat sche schuld bryng forth a Sone þat schuld qwelle boþe fader & moder; & so he dede; for his modir dyde in beryng[21] of

[1] his owen [2] callede [3–3] *om.* [4] meny [5] *MS.* fledde fled
[6] cleped [7] strongly [8] miche [9] *om.* [10] comen [11] michel
[12] and all [13] loueden [14] vnderfonge [15] her he [16] coupe
[17] acqueynte him [18–18] wist þerof [19–19] gret clerkes
[20–20] wisest men [21] bryngeng forth

hym. ¶ And whan þis Child was born), his fadir lete calle hym Brut; and þ^e^ maystres sayd[1] þat þe Child schulde do[2] mych̄ harm & sorowe in many diu*er*s[3] places; & aft*er*, he schulde come to gret[4] hono*ur* and worschip*e*. ¶ This Kyng Asquani*us* deide whan 4
god wolde; & Sylveyn his sone receyued þe land, & made hym wonderlich̄ wel be-louyd̄ among his puple. [5]And[6] whan Brut, þ*at* was Sylveynes sone, was xv ȝeer olde, he went vpon A day with̄ his fadir to[7] pley & solace; & as this Brut schulde schēte[8] 8
vnto an hert, his Arwe mys-happed̄ & glacede; And so there Brut quelled his fader.

How Brut was dryue[9] out of þ^e^ land̄, &[10] held hy*m* in Greke. Cap*itul*o ij°. 1

And whan this myschaun*ce* byfalle was, þ^e^ people of þ^e^ land̄ made sorowe ynow, & were [11]an-Angryd̄[11]; & for encheson þ*er*of þei dreven Brut out of þ^e^ land̄, & wolde not suffre
hym among[12] hem. and he Saw þ*at* he moste[13] not Abyde, & went 1
fro thens in-to þ^e^[14] Greek̄; & þer he fonde vij^Mt^ men þ*at* were of þ^e^ lynage & kynrede of Troy, þ*at* [15]weren come[15] of gret blod̄, as þ^e^ story telleth̄[16] as of men and[14] wo*m*men & childryn, þe wheche weren[17] aH holden in thraldom and bondag*e* [by] ¶ the[18] Kyng 2
Pandras of Greek̄, for the deth̄ of Achilles, þ*at* was betrayed̄ and slayn at Troye.

This Brut was a wondir fair man, & a strong, & A[19] huge of his Age, & of glad chere and semblaunt, and also worthy of body, & 2
was wel beloued̄ among his puple. This Kyng Pandras herde speke of his goodnesse & his condic*i*ons, & anon made hym dweH with̄ hym, so þ*at* Brut be-come wondir þryve & mych̄ belouyd̄ w*ith* þ^e^ kyng, so þ*at* longtyme Brut dwellyd w*ith* þe kyng. ¶ So at[20] last 2
þei of Troy & Brut spoken to-gedre[21] of kynrede & of lynage & of Aqueyntaun*ce*, & þer[14] pleyned̄ hem vnto Brut of her sorowe & [22]her bondeage, & of meny other schames þ*at* þ^e^ [Kyng] Pandras[23] hem don. & to Brut þei seyde[24] vpon A tyme: "ȝe ben A lord of oure 3

[1] saiden [2] done [3] diu*erses* [4] miche
[5] *leaf* 3. *In the right hand top corner of this page is written, in a contemporary hand:* 'Bonus es, dom*in*e, et in bonitate tua Iudicas terram.'
[6] A *sic.* [7] forto [8] shote [9] dryuen [10] And how he
[11—11] sore agreuede [12] amonges [13] miȝt [14] *om.*
[15—15] wer comen [16] telleþ of ham [17] wer [18] *MS.* ¶ The
[19] an [20] at þe [21] to-gederes [22] and of
[23] Pandras hade [24] saiden

lynage, & A str*ang*ᵗ man & a myghty. [1]be ȝe[1] oure Avowe & oure lordᵉ, & we wyl become ȝoure men, & ȝoure comandeme*n*tès[2] done in alle maner thyng[3]; and brynge ȝe vs outᵗ of this wrechidnes & bondage, & fyght we with þᵉ kyng; for thurgh þᵉ grace of [4]þᵉ grete[4] godᵉ we schul hym ou*er*come; & we schul make ȝou kyngᵗ of þᵉ landᵉ, & to ȝow done homage, & of ȝow we schullen holde[5] eu*er*-more."

Brut hadde þo gret pyte of hir bondage þ*at* þei were brought Inne, And pryvyly[6] went hym from þᵉ kynges Court; & alᵗ þo þ*at* were of Troy went & put hem in-to wodes and Into Mounteynes, and hem helde, & sent to Kyng Pandras þ*at* he schulde ȝeue hem leue safely for-to wende out of þᵉ londe, for þei nolde[7] no lenger dwelle in his bondage. ¶ The Kyng Pandras wax so[8] sore anoyedᵉ, & þo swore that he wolde sle hem echon,[9] & ordeyned a gret power, & wente towardes[10] hem alᵗ for-to fight. but Brut & his me*n* [11]anon manly[11] hem defended, & fersly foghten & quelled alᵗ þe kynges men, þ*at* non[12] of hem Ascapedᵉ, & tookᵗ þᵉ kyng, & hym helden[13] in pryson, & ordeynedᵉ [14]counceyl betwen hem what þei myght do.[15] Su*m* seyd þ*at* he schuld be put to dethᵉ, & su*m*me seyd þ*at* he schulde be exyledᵉ out of þᵉ landᵉ, & su*m*me seyd þ*at* he schulde be brent.[16] ¶ And þᵒ spak a wyse knyght þat me cleped[17] Menprys, & seyd to Brut & to[18] alᵗ þo of Troy: "yf Kyng Pandras wold ȝelde hym, & haue his lyf, y counceyl þ*at* he ȝeue vnto Brut, þ*at* is ourᵗ Duke & oure sou*er*ayn, his doughter Gennogen to wyf, & in Mariage *with* here an hundrid Shippes wel arayedᵉ, & al his tresour of goldᵉ & of syluer, of corn,[19] of wyn, & as myche as vs nedith for[18] to haue of o thing & of o*per*; & þan go[18] we out of þis[20] land, & ordeine we vs land elles-wher; for we, ne no*n* of ourᵗ kynrede þ*at* comen[21] aft*er* vs, schuld[22] neu*er* haue pees in þis landᵉ amonges hem of Grekᵗ; for we haue sleyn so meny of herᵗ knyghtes & of o*per* frendes, þ*at* eu*er*morᵗ werre & contect schuldᵉ be Amonges vs." ¶ Brut þo, & his folk, consentydᵉ wel to þis[23] cou*n*ceyl; & þis þing þei tolden to[24] Kyng Pandras. ¶ And þᵉ kyng, for-to haue his lyf, gr*a*unted as meche as þei axed, & anon ȝaf vn-to Brut, Gennogen his Doughter, to wyf, & þe hundred

[1–1] bene [2] co*m*mandement [3] þinges [4–4] *om.*
[5] holde for [6] priueliche [7] wolde [8] þo [9] eu*er*chon
[10] towarde [11–11] manliche [12] noman [13] helde
[14] *leaf* 3, *back.* [15] done [16] bracide [17] callede
[18] *om.* [19] corn and [20] his [21] comeþ [22] shul
[23] þat [24] to þe

sheppes, with as myche as hem neded[1] of alle vitalles, as byfore was ordeyned.

Brut þo toke[2] his wyf, & alle his men þat forsoke þe lond of Greek, & wenten hem vnto þ^e^ see & hadden wedir at wylle, & comen þ^e^ þrid day in-to An Ile þat me calleþ[3] Loegers. ¶ Brut anon sent of his men a[4] land, for-to aspye þ^e^ maner of þe[5] Cuntre. & þey founden an olde Cyte al wasted & forlete, þat nas þer-in nor[6] man ne woman, ne no thing dwellynge; & In þ^e^ Myddyl of þis Cytee þey founden an olde Temple of a fayr lady þat me called Diane þ^e^ Goddesse. and þei [7]comen ayen vnto Brut,[7] & told hym what þei had seyn & founden, & counceyled hym to go & do[8] sacrifice to[9] Dame Diane, for she was wont[10] to 3eue answere of what þing þat[6] euere men prayed here, & namely vn-to hem þat her honoured with sacrifice. ¶ Brut went to þat ymage, & seyd: "Dyane, noble goddes, lady þat al þing hast in[6] myght & in þy power, wyndes, watres, wodes, feldes, & al thinges of þe world, & al maner bestes þat þer-In ben! to 3ow y make my prayer, þat 3e me counceyle & telle where & in what place y schal haue a conuenable dwellynge for me & for my peple; & þer y schal make, in[11] honour of 3ow, a wel fayr temple, & a noble, wheryn 3e schul euermore be honoured." ¶ When he had don his prayer, Dyane Answerid in this manere: "Brut," quod sche, "go euenforth þy wey ouer þ^e^ see in-to Fraunce, toward þ^e^ west, & þer 3e schul fynde an Ile þat is called [12]Albyon; and þat Ile is bycompassed al with þ^e^ see, & no man may come þer-In but[13] it be by schippes; and in þat lond were wont to be Geaunt3; but[14] it is not so, but al wyldirnesse; and þat lande to 3ou is destynyed, & ordeigned for 3ow & for 3oure peple."

How Coryn bycome Brutes man, & how Kyng Goffar was discomfited. Capitulo iij°.

When Brut herde þis Answere of Dyane þ^e^ Goddes, anon he lete þ^e^ Ancres wynd vp, & sayled in-to þ^e^ hye see. & whan he & his men had sayled xx dayes & more, þei founden fast bysyde[15] a coste of þ^e^ see thre hundred men of þe lynage & kynrede of Troy, & her souerayn & her mayster of alle, men[16] Called Coryn.

[1] nedeth [2] nome [3] callede [4] on [5] *om.*
[6] neyther [7–7] come vnto brut ayeyne [8] dō [9] vnto
[10] wonede [11] in þe [12] *leaf* 4. [13] but if [14] but now
[15] bisides [16] me

¶ And when Brut wyste whens þei were, he þo vndirfong hem with̄ mychel ioy in-to his Shepys, & hem lad forth̄ *with* hym. This Coryn þo bycome Brutes man, & to hym dede fewte & homage. & so long þei sayled forth̄ þan[1] in þ^e^ See tul they come[2] to Gascoign̄; & anon þei arryued^d^ in þ^e^ hauene of Liegers, & *þer* þei dwellidde viij dayes, hem for-to rest,[3] & her sayles to Amend^d^, *þer* as [4]nede was.[4]

Tydyng sone come to Kyng Goffar, *þat* was lord of þ^e^ land, how *þat* myche[5] folk^e^ of *straunge* land weren Arryued in his land^e^ in þ^e^ hauene of Liegiers; wher-fore he was sore Angred^e^ & anoyed^e^ *þat* þey comen & aryued in his land *with*oute[6] leue. and anon he ordeigned^e^ power [7]hem to dryven[7] owt, & to[8] shende; but Kyng Goffar was discomfyted^e^, & al[8] his folk^e^, & hym-self fledde in-to ffraunce to seche help & soco*ur*. ¶ And in *þat* tyme regned in Fra*u*nce xij kynges; & þ^e^ elleueneth̄[9] assembled^e^ a gret power for-to helpe Goffar for-to fight a3ens Brut. Goffar dwelled with̄ hem of Fraunce half a[8] 3ere & more. And Brut in þ^e^ mene-tyme, & his cu*m*panye, destroyed^e^ al þ^e^ land^e^ of Gascoigne, & lete take al þ^e^ tresour þat Kyng Goffar hadde, & lete brynge it in-to his Shippes. And þis Brut fonde in *þat*[10] lond^e^ a fayr place & a couenable; & *þer* Brut[11] made a fayr Casteh & a strong. whan *þat* was don, Kyng Goffar come fro Fraunce, &[12] xj kynges *with* hym, & broughten[13] xx M^l^ men for-to fight *with* Brut & his cu*m*panye. And Brut hadde but vij M^l^ men & thre hundred^e^. Netheles, whan þ^e^ to ostes metten to-gider,[14] Brutes folk^e^—thurgh̄ help of hym-self,[15] & of Turyn his Cosyn, & of Coryn *þat* wel & manly[16] hym defended & fought; so *þat* in litil tyme þei hadde quelled of þ^e^ Frenssh̄-men to M^l^ & mo; & þo *þat* were lyue[17] fledden away. ¶ And in this batayle Turyn, *þat* was Brutes Cosyn, was sleyn, & Brut lete hym entere worthyly,[18] [19]whan he had space & leyser, in þ^e^ Casteh *þat* he had made, & þo lete [calle hit] Castel Tours [20]after his owne name[20] þat þere was entered^e^. & 3it in-to þis day *þer* is a noble Cytee *þat* is called Tours.

Whan Kyng Goffar wiste *þat* Turyn was ded, he come a3en with̄ his men, & after·3af a strong battaylle vn-to[21] Brut; but Brut & his[8] men were so wery [22]of fyghtynge[22] *þat* þey myghte no lengere

[1] *om.* [2] comen [3] resten [4–4] was nede [5] michel
[6] wiþoute is [7–7] him to dryue [8] *om.* [9] endeleueþ [10] þe
[11] Brus [12] w[ith] • [13] brou3t [14] togederes [15] ham-self
[16] manliche [17] on lyf [18] worthelich [19] *leaf* 4, *back.*
[20–20] for þe name of Turyne [21] to [22–22] forfou3ten

endure; but maugre hym & al his, Brut & his men went in-to his Casteℍ *with* aℍ his men, and made þe ȝates fast for-to saue hem-self, & for-to take counceiℍ amonges hem what were best to[1] done. ¶ Brut & Coryn nome counceiℍ, & ordeigned þat Coryn pryuyly shuld gon out [2]at a Posterne of þe Casteℍ,[2] *with* half his men, & schuld go[3] & bussh̄ hem in A wode til amorowe,[4] so þat in þe mornyng, whan Brut schuld fyght̄ with̄ his enemyes, Coryn schulde come *with* hes folk in þat o[5] syde, & sle and do aℍ þe harme þat he myght̄. And amorow[6] in þe dawnenge, Brut went out of þe Casteℍ, & faught̄ *with* his enemyes, & þey hem fersly defendid. but *with*-Inne a litil tyme Brut & his folk hadden[7] slayn viij C of Goffars men; And þo come Coryn fro þe busshement, & smote to grounde, he & his Cumpanye, al þat wold stande or Abyde, so þat Kyng Goffar & his folk were discomfited, & faste they gunne to fle. ¶ And Brut & Coryn, with̄ here companye, fresshly hem pursued, & quelled of hem mo in[8] fleyng þan þei dede in[8] batayℍ. And in þat manere Brut hadde þe victorye. And neþeles Brut made myche sorowe for his Cosyn Turyn, þat þer was slayn, & for oþer also þat he had lost of his men, [9]þat is to seyne,[9] vij C and xv, þe which̄ [10][he] noblich̄[10] lete entere in þe Casteℍ of Tours, þer þat he had entered Turyn his Cosyn.

How Brut Aryued at Tottenes in þe Ile of Albyon; & of þe Bataylle þat[11] was betwen Coryn & Gogmagog. Capitulo quarto.

When al þis was done, Brut wolde no lengere þer dwelle for to[12] fight̄, ne mo lese of his peple, for Kyng Goffarys peple myght̄ euery day encrece mo & mo, & Brutes lassen; & therfore he nome aℍ his men, & went vnto þe See, & hadde wynd & wedir at wille. and þe v day afterward they aryued in an hauene of Totnesse, & comen[13] in-to þe Ile of Albion; & þer þey founde neiþer man ne woman, as þe story telleþ,[14] but Geauntz; & þey woned in hulles and in[15] Caues. Brut saw þe land was fayr, & at his likynge, & good also for hym & for his folk, as Dyane þe goddes had hym behyght̄. þo was Brut wonder glad, & lete assemble vpon a day al his folk, to make a solempne sacrifice & a gret feste in honour

[1] for-to [2–2] of the castel at a posterne [3] gone [4] on þe morw [5] on [6] amorn [7] hade [8] in þe [9–9] *om.* [10–10] nobliche he [11] þai *sic* [12] *om.* [13] come [14] telles [15] *om.*

& reue*re*nce of Dyane,[1] þurght whas counceiH he was come[2] in-to þ*at* landꝫ.

And whan they had her solempnyte maad, as þey[3] vpon a day were[4] at mete, þer come yn vpon hem sodenly xxx Geauntȝ, & quellydꝫ [5]of Brutes men xxx. Brut & his men[4] anon stertyn vp, & his men[6] foughten withꝫ þ[e] Geauntȝ, & quellyd hem eu*e*rychon but o[7] Geaunt, þ*at* was Mayster of hem aH, þat me called Gogmagogꝫ, þ*at* was strengerꝫ[8] & heyer þan eny of þ[e] other Geauntȝ; & Brut kepte hym, & sauyd his lyf, for encheson þ*at* he schulde wrastle withꝫ Coryn, for Coryn was grettere & hugere þan eny of Brutes men fro[9] þ[e] gerdel stede vpwardꝫ. ¶ Gogmagogꝫ & Coryn vndirtook [10]to wrastelyn[10] y-fere; & so to-gider þey wrasteledꝫ long tyme, but at þe last Gogmagog helde Coryn so fast þ*at* he brak ij rybbys of[11] his syde, wherfore Coryn was sore agreuydꝫ, & nome þo Gogmagogꝫ betwene his Armes, & cast hym dou*n* vpon a roche, so þ*at* Gogmagogꝫ brak al to peces, & so he dyde in eviH detHꝫ; & þ*er*fore þ[e] place is called ȝit in-to[12] þis day 'þe sawte of Gogmagogꝫ.'

& þo ȝaf Brute al þ*at*[13] Cuntre to Coryn; & Coryn[14] called [hit][4] aft*er* his[15] name 'Cornewayle'; & his me*n* he called 'Cornewayles' & [so] schul[16] me*n* of þ*at* Cuntre be called for eu*e*rmore. And in þ*at* Cuntre dwellydꝫ Coryn & his men, & made Tounes & houses,[17] & enhabitedꝫ[18] þ[e] landꝫ at herꝫ[19] wylle.

How Brut made Londo*n*, & Called þis landꝫ Brytaigne, & Scotlandꝫ Albyne, & Walys Camber. Capit*u*lo quinto.

BRut and his men wenten forthꝫ & [20]sought aboute in diu*e*rs[20] places wher they myghte fynde a good place & a couenable þat þey myghte [make] in a Cytee for hym and for his folk, so at þ[e] laste þey come[21] by a fayr Ryuer[22] þ*at* is[23] calledꝫ þ[e][24] Tamyse; & þer Brut be-gan a fayre Cyte [24]for hym & for his folkꝫ,[24] & lete calle it 'þ[e] new Troye,' in mynde & remembrau*n*ce of þ[e] gret Troye, for[25] whichꝫ place aH her lynage was comen. ¶ And þis Brut lete felle dou*n* wodes, & lete erye & sowe londes, & done mow medes[26] for ist*in*au*n*ce of hym & of his peple. & he dep*ar*ted þ[e] landꝫ to hem, þ*at* eche[27] of he*m* had a certayn place for to dwelle vpon. And

[1] Diane þe Goddes [2] comen [3] þai were [4] *om.* [5] *leaf* 5.
[6] men and [7] on [8] stronge [9] fra*m* [10–10] forto wrasteHꝫ
[11] in [12] vnto [13] þis [14] Coryn it [15] his owen [16] shulleþ
[17] house [18] inhabite [19] his [20–20] sou3ten forthe in diu*e*rses
[21] comen [22] Ryuer side [23] was [24–24] *om.* [25] fram
[26] medowes [27] eu*e*ryche

Brut lete Calle al[1] þis land Britaigne, after his owne name, & his folk he lete calle Britouns. ¶ And þis Brut had geten on[2] his wyf Gennogen iij sones þat were worthy of dedes:[3] þe firste me[4] callyd Lotryn, þe secounde Albanac,[5] & þe thryd kambyr. ¶ And Brut bare Crowne in þe Cyte of newe Troye xx 3eer after tyme[6] the Cyte was made; & ther he made þe lawes þat þe Britouns holdeþ[7]: & þis Brut was wondirly weel byloued among aH men; & Brutes Sones also loueden wonderly[1] wel to-gydere.[8]

¶ And whan[1] Brut had sowte aH þe lond in lengthe &[9] brede, he fonde A land þat ioyned to Brytaigne in þe northh; and þat land Brut 3af to Albanac his sone, and he lete calle yt Albanye after his [10]name, þat[10] now is called Scotland. ¶ And Brut fonde anothir Cuntre toward þe west; & þat he 3af to Cambre his other [11]sone, & he[1] lete calle yt Cambre aftyr his name, & now is called Walys. And whan Brut had regnyd xx 3eer, as byfore[12] is sayd, he dyde in þe Cytee of newe Troy, & þere his Sones hym entered withh mychil honour. And Lotryn, Brutes sone, was Crowned kyng withh myche[13] solempnyte of aH þe land of Brytaigne. And after, whan he was Crouned, Albanak & Camber, his too brethryn, went a3en in-to here owne Cuntre, & leuedyn with myche[13] honour, & Lotryn here brother regned & was kyng and gouerned þe land wel & wysely, for he was a good man, & wondir wel belouyd of aH his land.

¶ And it befel so þat Albanac dwelde in his owne land withh myche[13] honour & worschepe.

And so come Kyng Humbar of Hunland withh a gret power & strengthe, & Arryved in Albanye, & wolde haue conqueryd þe land, & bygan to werre vpon Albanak, & hym quelled in bataylle. Whan Albanac was slayn, þe folk of þe land flye vn-to Lotryn, & told hym, for he was Kyng of Brytaigne, how þat his brother was slayn, & prayed hym of help for-to Auenge his brotherys dethh. Lotryn anon lete asemble aH þe Brytouns of Kent, of[14] Douorre vn-to Derewent, of Northfolk & Southfolc, of Kestefen & of Lyndeseye; & whan they were aH Assembled, þei spedde fast toward her enemyes for to 3eue hem bataylle. ¶ Lotryn had sent to Camber, his Brother, þat he schuld come also to hym withh al þe power that he myghht, hym for-to helpe; & so he dede, withh good

[1] *om.* [2] of [3] bodyes [4] m *sic* [5] albac [6] tyme þat
[7] helden [8] togederes [9] and in [10–10] owen name and
[11] *leaf* 5, *back.* [12] *MS.* fyfore [13] michel [14] fro

wiħ.[1] So þei comen aħ to-gedres, & nome her wey *p*riuyly[2] for to seche Humbar wher þey myghte hym fynde. ¶ And so it byfel *þat* þis Humbar was besides a water *þat* was a gret Ryu*er*, wiħ his folk, hym for to dysport; and þo come Lotryn & Camber his brother, wiħ aħ his[3] folk sodeynly, or *þat* eny of *þat* o*þer* it wyste.

¶ And whan Humbar saw hem[4] come, he was sore adrad, forasmyche as his men wist it not, & also þey were vnarrayed.[5] And anon Humbar for drede, lept[6] in-to þ^e^ wat*er* & drenchyd hymself, & so deide: he & his men weren[7] aħ y-slayn,[8] *þat* non[9] of hem ascaped. And *þer*fore is *þat*[10] wat*er* called Humbar, & eu*er*more schalbe, for encheson *þat* Kyng Humbar was *þer*-In drenched.

¶ And aft*er* *þat*, Lotryn wente to here shippes, & toke þer[10] old & silu*er*, and as myche as he fand vn-to hym-self; & aħ *þat* her pylfre he ȝaf vn-to other folk of þ^e^ ost. & þei founden[11] in on of þo[10] shippes A fayr Damyseħ *þat* was Kyng Humbarys doughter, & me called her Estrilde. ¶ And whan Lotryn saw here, he took here w*ith* hym for here fayrnesse, and for here, was in[12] taken for loue, & wolde haue weddid here. [13]Þis tydynges come to Coryn: anon he thought to Auenge hym vpon Lotryn, for-as-meche as Lotryn had made couen*a*unt for-to spowsen[14] Corynys doughter, þat me called Guentolen. ¶ And Coryn in haste wente to[15] hym, vn-to[16] þ^e^ Newe Troye, & þus sayd to Lotryn: '¶ Now certes," q*uod* he, "ȝe rewarden[17] me ful euel for aħ þ^e^ paynes þat I suffryd & hadde many tymes for Brut, ȝoure fader; therfore I wyl now Auenge me vpon ȝow;" & drow his fauchon hye, and wold haue slayn Lotryn, but þ^e^ Damyseħ went e-twen hem, & made hem acorded in þis man*er*e, þat Lotryn shuld spouse Guentolen, þat was Corynys dought*er*; and so Lotryn dede, and neþeles, þei he had spoused Corynys doughter yuyliċħ, he come to Estrilde, & brought here w*ith* childe, & gate here A doughter þat me called Abraham. ¶ hyt byfel ano*n* *er*, þat Coryn dide; & anon as he was ded, Lotryn forsook Guentolen his wyf, & made Estrylde quene. And Guentolen ent þens al in wrathe in-to Cornewaylle, & seised aħ þ^e^ land to her hand, for-as-myche as sche was here Fadrys eyr, & fonge feautes & homages of aħ þ^e^ men of þ^e^ land, and aft*er*

[1] wille and [2] p*riueliche* [3] her [4] h*im* [5] vnarmede
[6] lap [7] wer [8] slayne [9] noman [10] þe [11] fonde
[12] ou*ere* [13] *leaf* 6. [14] spouse [15] vnto [16] to [17] rewarde

Assembled a gret oste & a gret power, for-to be[1] vpon Lotryn auenged, þat was her lord, and to hym come, & ȝaf hym A Strong batail. & þer was Lotryn slayn, & his men descomfited, þe v ȝee of his Reigne. ¶ Guentolen lete take Estrilde, and Abraham her dought*er*, and bynde[2] boþe hondes and fete, & caste hem in-to wat*er*; & so þey were drenchyd; wherfore þat wat*er* was eu*er*mor called[3] aft*er*, 'Abraham,' aft*er* þe name of þe damysel þat was Estrildes dought*er*; & englissh-men called[4] þat water Seuerne, & Walsshmen [5]called þat wat*er*[5] Abraham, into þis day. ¶ And whan þis was don, Guentolen lete Crowne her quene of þat land & gou*er*ned þe land ful wel & wysely vnto þe[6] tyme þat Madhon her Sone, þat Lotryn had begete vpon here, wer of xx ȝer Age, þat he myght be kyng; so þat þe qwen regned xv ȝeer; & þo lete she crowne here sone; & he regned & gou*er*ned þe land wel & honou*r*ably; & sche wente in-to Cornewaile, & þer sche dwelled al her lyves[7] tyme.

[8]Of Kyng Madhan, how he regnede in pees al his lif; and of Menpris and of Manlyn his sones; and how Menpris slough Manlyn his broþer, and how wolfes drow him al to peces. ¶ Capitulo Sexto.

WHen Madhan hade regnede xxx^ti ȝere, he deide, and liþ [9]at newe Troye, and he[10] hade ij sones: þat on me called Menpris, and þat oþ*er* Manlyn; and þise ij breþ*er*ne, after here fadres deth, stryuen faste for þe lande; and Menpris, for enchesoun þat he was eldest, wolde haue hade al þat[11] Londe; and Manlyn wolde nouȝt suffren[12] him, so þat þai token a day of loue and accorde; and at þis day Menpris lete quelle his broþ*er* þrouȝ tresoun and him-self afterward helde þe lande, and anone lete croune him kyng, and regnede, and after, he[13] bicome so luþ*er* a man þat he destroyede in a while alle þe men of his lande. ¶ and at þe last he bicome so wickede and so leccherous, þat he forsoke his owen wif, & vsede þe synne of Sodomye; wherfore almighty God wrot wroþ,[14] and oppon him toke vengeance. ¶ ffor vppon a day, he went in a wode in[15] huntyng, he loste [16]his folc,[16] and were

[1] bene [2] bonde [3] calle [4] callen [5—5] calleþ it.
[6] that [7] lif
[8] *leaf* 1, *back*. *The text here is from MS. Rawlinson B.* 171, *and the co tions are of MS. Trinity College, Dublin*, 490 (D), *and MS. Douce* 323 (O).
[9] *leaf* 2. [10] *om.* D. [11] þe D. [12] suffre O. [13] *om.* O.
[14] wrot D. [15] on O. [16—16] *MS.* his folc his folc

llone vp and douñ cryng' after' his men; and *þer*e come wolfes, nd alto-drowe him into pecis; and þo he hade regnede xxiiij 3er'. nd when his peple wist þat he was dede, þai made ioye ynow, and none made Ebrak[1] his sone kyng; and he regnede with michil onour'.

f Kyng' Ebrac,[1] how he conquerede ffraunce, and bigate xx^ti^ sones and xxiij dou3tres. ¶ Capitulo ¶ Septi*m*o.

THis Ebrac regnede .lx. 3er', and[2] stronge man was, &[2] mi3ty, and þis Ebrac, þrou3 his mi3t, and helpe of his Britons, onquerede al ffraunce, and wan *þer*e so miche golde and siluer' þat, hen he come[3] a3eyne into þis[4] lande, he made a noble citee, and fter' his name lete calle it Ebrac, [5]after' his name,[5] þat now is llede Eu*er*wik'. and þis king'[6] Ebrac made þe castel of Maydenes t now is clepede Edenburght. This kyng' hade xx sones and xiij dou3[7]tres, be diu*er*se wymmen geten; and þe sones were callede 3e shul hure;[8] [9]Brut Greneshal, Margand, Seisel, Morghwith lengha*n*, Bladud, Iakyn, Kymbar', Rocelyn, Spadogh, Godeherl, hormnan, Eldaugh, Iorkanghut, Haybor, Ketyn, Rother', Kaier', Assaruth. ¶ And þe doughtres highten as 3e shul hur' after:[9] legyne, Y*m*mogen, Oghdas, Guenbran, Guardiche, Angarel, uentolde, Tangustel, Gorghoñ, Michel, Medham, Mailour', Ondur', ambredan, Rogan, Reuthely, Neest', Cheghem, Scadud', Gladus, Ieberhyn, Abalaghe, and Blandan: and' þise were þo[10] xxiij ou3tres; and þe bre*þer*ne bicome gode kny3tes and wor*þ*i in meny ntres.

þe[11] Kyng' Brut Greneshal, þe ferste sone of Ebrac the[12] kyng.[13] ¶ Capitulo ¶ Octauo.

After' þe deth of Kyng' Ebrac, regnede Brut Greneshel, his sone xxx 3er',[14] þat was[15] Ebrakes ferst sone,[16] þat wel and noblye nede. and [17]when tyme come,[17] he deide, and ¶ li*þ* at 3ork'.

Of kyng Leyl. ¶ Capitulo. ¶ Nono.

Nd when[18] Brut Greneshal was dede, regnede his sone Leil xxij 3ere; and he made a faire toune, and lete calle it leil after his name, and was a wor*þ*i man, and miche bilouede

[1] Ebras D. [2] and a DO. [3] came O. [4] þe D. [5–5] *om.* DO. *om.* D. [7] *leaf* 2, *back.* [8] here after. [9–9] *om.* D. [10] þe D. *om.* D. [12] *om.* O. [13] *The* 2 *eldest sons are here put into* 1. [14] 3er and D. [15] *om.* D. [16] sone was D. [7–17] when tyme come D. þe tyme come O, when tyme R. [8] *MS.* when when

of his people, and when he hade regnede xxij [years][1] he deide, an
liþ at Karleil. ¶ And in his tyme renede Kyng Salamon
Jer*usalem*, þat made þe noble temple; and to him come to Ier*usalem*
Sibille, Quene of Saba, for-to hure and see if it were soþe þ
men spoken[2] of þe grete noblee and[3] wisdome, and of[4] witte
Kyng' Salamon: and she founde it soth þat men hade here tolde.

Of Kyng Lud Ludibras, þat was Kyng Leiles sone. ¶ Capitu
x^mo.

[5]And[6] after' þis Kyng Leil, regnede his sone Lud Ludybras, þ
made þe citee of Kaunter*bery* and of Wynchestre; and
regnede xiij 3ere, and deide, and lith at Wynchestre.

Of þe kyng[7] Bladuc,[8] þat was Ludybras sone, regnede,[9] a
was a gode man and a nygromancer'. Capitulo xi^mo.

And[10] after' þis Lud Ludebras, regnede Bladud his sone,
grete nigromancer'; and þrou3 his crafte of nigroman
he made þe mer*uailous* hote bathe, as þe gest telleþ, & he regne
[11]xxj 3ere,[11] and he[12] lith at þe[13] newe Troye.

Of[14] Kyng' Leir, and of þe ansuere of his 3ongest dou3ter', þ
gr*aciously* was mariede to þe Kyng of Fr*aunce*. C. xij.

After' þis Kyng Bladud, regnede Leir' his sone; and þis Le
made þe toune of Leycestre, and lete calle þe toune aft
his name; and he gou*er*nede þe lande wel and [nobly]. ¶ þis ky
Leir' hade iij doughtres: þe ferst highte Gonorille, þe secu
Rigan, and þe þridde Cordeile; and þe 3ongest doughter' w
fairest' and best of' condicioun*s*. ¶ þe king' here fader' bicome
olde man, and wolde þat his[15] doughtres were mariede or
he deide. but ferst he þougt' assaye whiche of ham[16] lou
him most' and best'; for she þat louede him best shulde[17]
bene[18] mariede. and he axede of þe ferst dought[er] how miche
[19]louede him[19]; and she ansuerede and saide, 'bettre þan here o

[1] 3er' D. 3eer O. [2] spok D. [3] and of D. [4] of þ^e O. [5] *La*
[6] *In the margin is this note, in an ancient hand:* Lud Ludibras y^t b
ca[n]t*er*bery. [7] *om.* O. [8] bladud' D. bladud O. [9] regne D.
[10] *In the margin, in an ancient hand:* he mayd y^e hoyt b[ath]. *Th*
of this page has evidently been cut off.
[11–11] *om.* D. [12] *om.* D. [13] *om.* DO. [14] Of þe O.
[15] his DO. here R. [16] his dou3tres D. [17] shul D. [18] be D
[19–19] him louede D, hym loued' O.

lif'.' "Now certes," quod[1] [2]þe fader',[2] "þat is a[3] grete loue." ¶ þo axede he of þe secunde doughter', how miche she him louede; and she saide, 'more, and passing al þe creatures leuyng'[4] of þe worlde.' "ma foy,"[5] quod þe fader', "y may no more axen." ¶ And þo axede he of þe pridde doughter', how miche she him louede. "certes, fader'," [6]quod she, "my sustres haue tolde ȝow glosyng wordes; but for-soþe y shal tel ȝow[7] treuþ: for y loue ȝow as miche as [8]me oweþ[8] to loue my fader; and[9] forto bryng ȝow more in certeyne how loue goþ, I shal ȝow telle, for-as-miche as ȝe bene[10] worþe, as muche[11] shal ȝe bene[12] louede." ¶ The kyng here fader wende þat she hade scornede him, and bicome wonder wroth, and swore by heuen and erþe þat she shulde neuer haue goode of him; but his douȝtres þat louede him so miche shulde be wel auauncede and mariede. and þe ferste dougter he mariede to Mangles, King of Scotlande; And þe secunde he mariede to Hanemos, Erl of Cornewaile; and so[13] þai ordeynede and speke[14] bituene ham þat þai shulde depar*te* þe reaune bituene ham too, after þe deþ of Leir'[15] her' fader', ¶ So þat Cordeil his ȝongest doughter shulde noþing' haue of his lande. but þis Cordeil was wonder' faire, and of so[15] goode condicions and maners, þat þe Kyng of Fraunce, Agampe, [16]herde of here[16] speke, and sent to þe Kyng Leir', he[r] fader', for to haue her' vnto wif', and prayede him þerof. And Kyng' Leir here fader' sent him worde þat he hade depar*te*de the lande [17]to his ij oþere[17] douȝtres, and saide he made[18] no more lande wherwiþ[19] her' forto[19] marie.[20] ¶ And when Agampe herde þis ansuere, he sent anone aȝeyne to Leir', and saide þat he axede noþing wiþ here, but oneliche[21] heir' cloþing and oneliche heir' body; and anone[3] Kyng' Leire here fader' sent here ouer þe see to þe Kyng' of France; and he resceyuede here wiþ michel[22] worship and wiþ [23]michel solempnite,[23] & made here quene of Fraunce.

[1] quoþ D. [2–2] he O. [3] *om.* D. [4] *om.* DO.
[5] fey O. [6] *leaf* 3, *back.* [7] ȝow soth and D.
[8–8] y owe D. I owe O. [9] *MS.* and and. [10] beth D. be O.
[11] somiche D. so myċh O. [12] be DO. [13] þo O.
[14] spak D. [15] *om.* O. [16–16] Of her herde D.
[17–17] vn-to his oþer too O. [18] hade D. hadde O.
[19–19] he miȝt her D. [20] maryen O [21] only O.
[22] miche D. myċh O.
[23–23] miche solempnite her spousede D. myċh solempnyte her spousedē O.

How Kyng Leir[1] was dryuen out of his[1] lande þrou3 his owen[2] folye; and how Cordeil his 3ongest doughter halpe him in his nede. ¶ Capitulo ¶ Terciodecimo.

[3] THus it bifel[4] afterwarde, þat þo ij eldest doughtren[5] wolde nou3t abide til þat Leir' here fader were[6] dede, but werrede oppon him whiles þat[7] he leuede, and miche sorwe and shame him dede; wherfore þai binome him holly þe reaume, and bituene ham hade ordeynede þat one of ham shulde haue Kyng Leir' to[8] soiourne al his lif tyme, with xl kny3tes and heir squyers, þat he might worshipfully gone[9] & ryde whider þat he wolde, [10]and into[10] what contre þat him likede, to playe and to solacen. ¶ So þat Managles Kyng' of Scotlande, hade Kyng' Leir' with him in þe maner þat[11] is aboue-saide,[12] and, or o*þer*e half' 3ere were passede, Corneil his eldest dou3ter, þat was Quene of Scotland', was so annoyed [13]wiþ him and wiþ[13] his peple, þat anone she and here lorde [14]spoken to-gederes,[14] wherefor his kny3tes half,[15] and his squyers,[16] fram him were gone and nomo lefte but oneliche xxx. And when[15] þis was done, Leire biganne forto[17] make miche sorwe, for enchesoun þat his state was enpeirede, and men hade of him more scorne and despite þan euer þai hade biforne; wherfore he nyst what forto[18] done; and at þe last þou3t þat he wolde wende into Cornewaile, to Rigan his o*þer*e doughter. ¶ And when he was comen,[19] þe erl and his wif', þat was Leires doughter', him welcomede, and with him made miche ioye; and *þer*e he duellede with xxx kny3tes and squyers. And he nade[20] nought duellede *þer*e scarsly tuelf moneþ, þat his doughter of him[21] nas ful, and of his company; and her' lorde and she, of him had scorne and despite, so þat fram[22] xxx kny3tes[7] þai brou3te vnto x, and afterwarde v; and so *þer*e lefte wiþ him nomo. ¶ þ made he[15] sorwe ynow, and[23] saide, sore wepyng, 'allas þat eue he come into þat Lande!' and saide, '3itte hade me bene bett forto[6] haue duellede with my ferst doughter [and anon went þe a3eyne to his ferst dou3ter].'[24] But anone as she saw him com she swore by God' and[25] his holy names, and by as miche as s might, þat he shulde haue nomo wiþ him but one[26] kny3t, if[27]

[1] þis O. [2] *om.* DO. [3] *leaf* 4. [4] fel DO. [5] dou3ters
[6] was D. [7] *om.* D. [8] forto D. [9] go DO.
[10–10] in D. into O. [11] as DO. [12] above-yseyd O.
[13–13] of DO. [14–14] speken to-gidre O. [15] *om.* O.
[16] Squyers half O. [17] to O. [18] to D. [19] come, O.
[20] hade D. [21] his O. [22] fro D. [23] *leaf* 4, *back*.
[24] *supplied from* D. [25] and by D. & by O. [26] o DO. [27] if þat

wolde þere[1] abide. ¶ þo bigan Leir' aȝeyn to[2] wepe, and made muche sorwe, and saide þo: "allas! now to longe haue y leuede, þat þis sorwe and meschief is [3]now to me[3] falle; for now [4]y am[4] poer', and[5] some tyme y[2] was ryche; but now haue y no frende ne kyn þat me wil do[6] eny maner' goode. ¶ But when[7] y was ryche, alle men me honourede [8]and worsshepede;[8] and now euery man hath of me scorne and despite! and now y wote wel þat Cordeil, my ȝonge[9] doughter', saide me treuþ when she saide 'as michel[10] as y hade, [11]so michel[11] shulde y [12]be louede';[12] and all þe while þat y hade goode, þo was y belouede and honourede for my rychesse; but my ij doughtres me glosede þo, and now of me þai sette litel pris, and soþ tolde me Cordeil, but y wolde nouȝt bileue it, ne vnderstonde, and perfore y lete here goñ[13] fro me as a þing þat y sette litel pris of'; and now wote y neuer' what forto done, seþ my ij doughtres have me[14] þus desceyuede,[15] þat y so michel[16] louede; and now moste me[17] nedes seche[18] here þat is in an opere lande, þat lighly y lete here go fro me without[19] eny reward' of ȝiftes; and she saide þat[14] 'she louede me as miche as she outh[20] here fader', bi al maner resouñ'; and þo y shulde haue axede of here no more; and þo þat me opere-wise bihiȝten þrouȝ here faire[21] speche, now haue ie desceyuede!"

¶ In þis maner' Leir' longe tyme him bigan[22] to make his mone; and at þe last he shoope him to þe see, and passede ouer into France, and axede and aspiede wher the Quene myȝt be founde; and men tolde where þat she was. [23]¶ And when he come to[24] þe citee þat she was in, priueliche[25] he sent his Squyer'[26] vnto þe quene, to tel her' þat heir' fader' was comen[27] to[28] her' for grete nede. ¶ And when þe squyer' come to[28] þe quene, he tolde her' euery dele of heir' sustres fram þe bigynnyng vnto þe ende. ¶ Cordeil þe Quene anone nome golde and siluer, grete plente, and toke it to[28] þe squyer', ñ conseile þat he shulde go and bere it vnto here fader', and þat he hulde go into a certeyn Citee, and him arreyen, baþen and wesshen,

[1] *om.* O. [2] *om.* DO. [3–3] to me now DO.
[4–4] am y D. am I O. [5] þat O. [6] done D.
[7] whan þat O. [8–8] *om.* D. [9] ȝongest D.
[10] as mich D. as myċh O. [11–11] as miche D. so myċh O.
[12–12] bene bilouede D. be belouyd' O. [13] go DO.
[14] *om.* D. [15] destroyede D. [16] miche D. myċh O.
[17] y O. [18] sechen O. [19] withouten D.
[20] ought D. owt O. [21] fals O. [22] gan D. [23] *leaf* 5.
[24] into D. [25] priuely D. pryuyly O. [26] Squyer DO. Squyers R.
[27] come O. [28] vnto D.

and þan come [1]aȝeyne[2] to[1] her', and bryng' with him an honest company of kny3tes, xl. at þe leste, with here meny; and þenne he shulde[3] sende to[4] here lorde þe kyng', and sayen þat he [5]was comen[5] forto speke with his dou3ter', and him to[6] seene. ¶ And when þe kyng and þe quene [7]herde þat,[7] wiþ michel[8] hono*ur* [9]þai comen,[9] and him resceyuede.[10] þe kyng of Fraunce[11] lete sende þo[12] þrou3 al his reaume, and co*m*mandede þat alle men [13]to him shulde[13] bene[14] entendaunt', to Leire, þe Quenes fader, in al[15] maner þing' as it were to him-self'. ¶ when Leir hade duellede þe*re* a monþe and more, he tolde to[16] þe kyng and to þe Quene his doughter', how his ij[17] eldeste dou3tres hade him seruede. ¶ Agampe anone lete ordeyne a grete hoste of Fraunce, and sent it into Britaigne with Leir', þe Quenes fader', forto conquere his lande aȝeyne, and his kyngdome; and Cordeil also come with her[18] fader into Britaigne, forto haue þe reaume after' her' fadres deth. And' anon' þai went to shippe, and passede þe see, and come into Britaigne, and fau3t[19] wiþ þe felons, and ham scomfitede[20] & quellede. And Leir' þo hade his lande aȝeyne, and after' leuede iij 3ere, and helde[21] his reaume in pees, and afterwarde deide; & Cordeil his doughter hi*m*. lete ente*re* wiþ michel[22] hono*ur* at Leycestre.

[23]How Morgan and Conenedag'[24] þat were Neveus to Cordeil, werrede oppon here, and put here into prisoñ. C. xiiij.

WHen þat Kyng Leir' was dede, Cordeil his 3ongest dou3tre helde and hade þe lande v 3ere; and in þe mene tyme deide here Lorde Agamp, þat was Kyng of Fraunce; and after his deth she lefte[25] widue. ¶ And þo come Morgan and Conenedag', þat were Cordeiles sustres sones, and to here hade enuy, for-asmiche þat[26] her' aunt' shulde haue þe lande; so þat bituene ham þai ordeynede a grete power', and vppoñ here werrede gretlich; and

[1]–[1] vnto D. [2] *After* aȝeyne *MS. has* with he *underlined for erasure.*
[3] shal D. [4] vn-to O. [5]–[5] wer' come O. [6] & O.
[7]–[7] harde tel þat he come D. herd þat he come O.
[8] mycħ O. [9]–[9] *om.* DO.
[10] resceyuede wiþ michel honour' D. receyued with mycħ hono*ur* O.
[11] ffra*n*ce þo D. fraunce þo O. [12] *om.* DO.
[13]–[13] shulde to hym O. [14] be D. [15] *MS.* al al.
[16] *om.* O. [17] tweyne O. [18] her O. him R.
[19] fou3te*n* D. foughtyn O. [20] descomfitede D.
[21] hade D. [22] myche O. [23] *leaf 5, back.*
[24] Conedag *throughout* DO. [25] lyued' O. [26] as DO.

neuer' [1]þai rest[1] til þat þai hade here taken,[2] and put her' [3]vnto deth.[3] ¶ And þo Morgan and Conenedag' seisede al þe lande, and dep*ar*tede[4] bituene ham, and þai helde it xij ȝere. ¶ And [5]when the[5] xij ȝere were gone,[6] þ*er*e bigon bituene ham a grete debate, so þat þai werrede strongely in-fere,[7] and eu*er*yche[8] of ham dede o*per*e miche disese, ffor Morgan wolde haue hade alle þe lande fram[9] biȝende Humber', þat Conedag' helde; but he come aȝeynes him with a strong' power', so þat Morgan derst nouȝt abide, but fley awaye into Walys; and Conenedag pursuede him, and toke him, and quelde him. ¶ þo come Conenedag aȝeyne, and seisede al þe lande into his hande, and helde hit, and regnede after', xxxiij[10] ȝere, and þo deide, and liþ at New Troye.

[11]Of Rynallo,[11] þat was Conedag*us* sone: [12]how he[12] regnede after' his fader'; and in his tyme it raynede bloode iij *daies, in* [13]*tokenyng of gret*[13] *deth.* ¶ Capitulo ¶ Quinto-desimo.

And after' þis Conenedag,[14] regnede Rynallo[15] his sone, an[16] Wise knyȝt, and an[17] hardy and[18] *cur*teise, þat wel and nobly gou*er*nede þe lande, and wonder' wel made him bi[19]louede of al maner' folc. and in his tyme it raynede bloode þat lastede[20] iij dayes, as God' wolde; and sone after' þ*er*e come a[21] gret deth of peple, for hostes with-out noumbre of peple fouȝten til þat þai were dede, Wherof no man myȝt ham lette til þat almiȝty God' þ*er*of tok mercy and pitee; and tho gan it cesse. and þis Raynolde regnede xxij ȝere, & deide, & ¶ liþ at ȝork.

How Gorbodian regnede in pees, þat was Rynallo[22] sone; and after, he[23] deide, and liþ at ȝork' C. xvj°.

After þis Ryuallo,[24] regnede Gorbodyan[25] his sone xv ȝere, and deide and lith at ȝork'.

[1–1] rest neu*er* D. þey restyd O. [2] take D.
[3–3] into prisoun deth D. to deth O. [4] p*ar*tede it D.
[5–5] when þo D. þo O. [6] ygone D. [7] y-fere O. [8] eche O.
[9] fro D. [10] xxx D. [11–11] How Raynolde D. How regnold O.
[12–12] *om.* DO. [13–13] tokene of O.
[14] Raynolde *in error for* Conedag D. [15] Reynolde D. Regnold' O.
[16] a DO. [17] a D. [18] and a D. [19] *leaf* 6.
[20] last O. [21] *om.* O. [22] Raynaldes D. reynoldes O. [23] *om.* O.
[24] Raynolde D. Regnold' O. [25] Gordobodian D.

How Gorbodian[1] hade ij sones, & how[2] þat on slough þat o*þere*, forto haue þe heritage; & how Ydoyne her' moder quellede þat o*þere*, wherfore þe lande was destroiede. ¶ Capitulo ¶ xvij^mo.

When þis Gorbodian[1] was dede, [3]his ij sones[3] þat he hade, bicome[4] stoute men[5] and proude, & euer' werrede to-geder for þe lande: þat one, me*n*[6] called Ferre3,[7] and þat o*þere* Porrex; and þis Ferre3 wolde haue hade al the lande, but þat o*þere* wolde nou3t suffren[8] him. Ferre3 hade a feloune hert', and þou3t þrou3 *tresoun*[5] slee his bro*þere*; but p*riuely*[9] he went into Fraunce, and þe*re* abode with þe [10]kyng Syward[10] til oppoñ a tyme þat he come a3eyne, and fau3t wiþ his bro*þer* Ferre3[11]; but ful euel it hapede þo, for he was slayn ferst. ¶ When Ydoyne, here[12] moder, wist þat Porrex was dede, she made grete sorwe, for enchesouñ þat she louede him more þan [13]þat o*þere*,[13] and þou3t him forto[14] quelle. p*riuely*[15] she come to here sone oppon a ny3t wiþ ij knyfes, and þ*er*wiþ cotte his þrote, and þe body also into smale pecis. Who herde euer[2] soche a cursede moder', þat quellede with here [16]owen hondes here owen sone! and Longe tyme after' Laste þe rep*rofe*[17] & shame to þe moder' þat, for enchesouñ of þat o sone, mordrede þat o*þere*, and so loste ham bothe.

How iiij kynges curteisely[18] helde al Britaigne; and whiche beth[19] here names. ¶ Capitulo ¶ Octodesimo.

When þise ij bre*þer*ne were so dede, þai nade Lefte bihynde ham noo[20] sone ne doughter', ne none o*þere* of þe kynrede þat might haue þe heritage. &[21] for-asmiche as þe strongest men dryuen and descomfitede[22] þe feblest', and token[23] al here landes, so þat in eu*ery* contre þai hade grete werre and stryfe. ¶ But amonge[24] alle o*þere* þinges, þ*ere* were amonges ham in þe contre þat ou*ercome*' alle þe[26] o*þere*; and þrou3 heir' strengþ and[27] my3t þai nomen an token[28] al þe landes; and eu*eryche*[29] of ham tok a certeyne contre and in his contre lete calle him kyng'. ¶ And on of ham, men

[1] Gordobodian D. [2] *om.* O.
[3–3] *Written twice in MS. and struck out the second time.*
[4] bycomen so O. [5] *om.* D. [6] me D. [7] Ferre3 DO.
[8] suffre DO. [9] prieliche D. [10–10] kynges Styward' O.
[11] Porre3 O. [12] his D. [13–13] þe to*þer* O. [14] for O.
[15] p*riuely* and p*riuely* D. pryuyly And p*riuyly* O. [16] *leaf* 6, *back*.
[17] repref' O. [18] curteisliche D. [19] ben O. [20] ney*þere* D. nothe
[21] and for and D. [22] Scomfitede D. scomfited' O. [23] toke D.
[24] amonges D. [25] ou*ercomen* O. [26] þo D. [27] and here D. he
[28] tok D. [29] eche O. [30] me DO.

lede Stater[1]; and he was Kyng of Scotland; and þat o*þer*e me llede Dunwal,[2] and he was Kyng of Loegers, and of alle þe ndes[3] þat was Lotrynes, [4]Brutes sone.[4] ¶ þe þridde, men[5] callede udak, and he was Kyng of Walys; and þe iiij^te^ me callede Cloten, nd he was Kyng of Cornewaile. ¶ But þis Cloten shulde haue ude al þe lande, be[6] resoun for *þer*e was no man þat wist none so ȝthful heire[7] as he was; but þo[8] þat were strongest sette litel by am þat were of lasse estate, and *þer*for þis Cloten hade no more nde amonges ha*m* þ*an* onliche[9] ¶ Cornewaile.

Of Kyng Donewall,[10] þat was Clotenes sone, and how he hade wonne þe lande. ¶ Capitulo xix°.

THis Cloten hade a sone þat me clepede[11] Donewal, þat, after þe deth of his fader, bicome an hardy man, and a faire and a urteise, so þat he passede alle þe kynges of Britaigne of fairenesse nd of worþinesse. ¶ And[12] as he was knyght, he [13]Wiste wel[14] when his fader leuede[15] he was moste ryghtful heire of al[7] þe lande, nd shulde haue hade it by resoun; but o*þer*e kynges þat were of more strengþ þan he, binome him[16] his lande. ¶ And afterwarde þis Donebande ordeynede him powere, and ferst conquerede al þe lande of Loegers; and after[17] he wolde haue conquerede al[7] Scotland and Walys; and Stater[18] wiþ his men come, and ȝaf him[19] bataile; and Rudak come aȝeyne wiþ his Walshemen forto helpe him; But so it bifel þat Rudak was slayn,[20] and Skater also, in pleyn bataile; and so Donewal hade þe victorye, and conquerede al þe lande, and[21] wel mayntenede it in pees and[22] quyete, þat neuer bifore it was so wel mayntenede.

How Donewal was þe ferst kyng þat eu*er*e Werede crone of golde in Britaigne. ¶ Capitulo ¶ Vicesimo.

THis[23] Donewal lete [24]make him[24] a *cr*one of golde, and werede þe croune oppon his heuede, as neuer kyng dede bifore; and ordeynede a statute þat, [25]hade a man done[25] neuer so miche

[1] Scater D. Skater O. [2] Dawallier DO. [3] lande D. land O.
[4–4] that was Brutes sones D. *þat* was Brutes sones O.
[5] me DO. [6] by DO. [7] *om.* D. [8] þai D. þei O. [9] only O.
[10] Donebande *throughout* DO. [11] callede D. called O.
[12] And anon DO. [13] *leaf* 7. [14] wel þat O. [15] leuede þat D.
[16] *om.* O. [17] aftyrward O. [18] Skater DO.
[19] ham D. [20] quellede D. queld O. [21] and þo D. [22] & in D.
[23] *In the margin is written by an ancient hand:* Donwall we . . . y^e^ first ne . . . ordeyned y^e^ temp[le] a savgard for m . . . *The edge of the page has cut away.* [24–24] hym done make O. [25–25] a man do O.

harme, and he might come into þe temple, *þer*e[1] shulde no man h misdo, but gone[2] *þer*in sauf and in pees, and aftre gone[2] into wh contre þat he wolde, withouten[3] eny harme; and if eny man set hande oppoñ[4] him, he þan shulde lese his lif. ¶ And þis Donew made þe toune of Malmesbury, and þe toune of þe Vise; & whe he hade regnede wel and nobly[5] .xl. ȝere, he deide, & liþ at new Troye.

How Brenne and Belyn dep*ar*tede bituene ham þe lande, afte þe deth of Donewal, hir fader; & of þe werre. Ca*pitul* xxj°.

And after þat þis Donewal was [dede],[6] his sones þat he had dep*ar*tede þe lande bituene ham as her fader hade ordeyned so þat Belyn, his eldest sone, hade al the lande[7] a þis halfe Humbe and his bro*þer*[8] Brenne hade al [9]þe lande fram Humber vnto Scotland; but for-asmich as[11] Belyn hade þe better p*ar*te, Brenn *þer*for wax wroþ, and wolde haue hade more of þe lande; an Belyn his bro*þer* wolde gr*a*unt him nomore; Wherfor contak an werre aroos bituene[12] ha*m* ij. But Brenne þe ȝong*er* bro*þer* hade n myȝte ne strengþ aȝeynȝ Belyn; and *þer*for Brenne, þrouȝ conseil o his folc, went fram[13] þens into Norway, to þe Kyng Elsinges, an pr*a*yede hi*m* of helpe and of socoure forto conquere al þe lande [14]o Britayn[14] vppon Belyn his bro*þer*, oppoñ þat couenaunt, þat h wolde haue his douȝter to wyf; and þe Kyng Elsinges[15] hi gr*a*untede. ¶ Belyn, anone as his bro*þer* was gone to[16] Norway, h seisede into his hande al þe lande of Northumberland, and toke þe castelles,[17] and lete ham arraie, and also kepe þe costes of þe se þat Brenne shulde nouȝt arryue in no side but þat he were tak ¶ The Kyng Elsinges lete assemble a grete hoste, and delyuere his doughter to Brenne, and alle þe peple þat he hade ordeyne And þis damisel, Samye, hade longe tyme louede a kyng þat callede Gutlagh[18]; and to him she tolde al here counseil, how Brenne shulde here haue, and here lede wiþ him for eu*er*more, so he[19] shulde her lese, but if þat she myȝt forsake Brenne. ¶ A

[1] *om.* DO. [2] go D. [3] with-oute O. [4] on D.
[5] worthelye D. worthyly O. [6] dede DO. *om.* R.
[7] lande of brytayn D. land of Britaigne O. [8] *om.* O.
[9] *leaf* 7, *back.* [10] into D. [11] þat O. [12] bituenes D.
[13] fro DO. [14–14] *om.* DO. [15] Elsyng O. [16] vnto D.
[17] castell O. [18] Gutlaghen D. [19] *corrected from* ȝe *in MS.*

en Gutlagh herde þise tydynges,[1] he lay forto aspie Brenne, wiþ e[2] meny shippes as he myȝt haue, so þat þo[3] ij fletes [4]metten gederes,[4] and longe tyme foughten, so þat Brenne and his shippes nede aȝeyne, and were descomfitede; and Kyng Gutlagh toke mye, and put here into[5] shippe, and Brenne shamefully fleye[6] is as a man descomfitede. ¶ And Gutlagh wolde haue went into s[7] countree; but þere come oppoñ [8]him a stronge tempest, þat .v. yes Laste, so þat þrouȝ þat tempest he was dryuen into Britaigne ith iij shippes, and wiþ no mo. and þo þat kepte[9] þe costes of see token Gutlagh and Samye, and alle his folc, and ham pre-ntede vnto[10] Belyn, and he[3] put ham into[11] prisouñ.

ow Belyn[12] delyuerede[13] out of þis lande Kyng Gutlagh of Dennemarc, and Samye. ¶ Capitulo ¶ Vicesimo Secundo.

HIt[14] was nouȝt longe after, þat Brenne ne come aȝeyne with a [15]stronge meny,[15] and sent to his broþer Belyn, þat he shulde lde aȝeyne his lande to his wif and to his folc, & his castelles[16] so, or elles he wolde destroye his lande. Belyn drade no þing s[17] manace, and wolde no þing done[18] after þat he saide. Wher-re Brenne come with his folc, and fauȝt with him[19]; and Brenne as descomfitede, and his folc slayne, and him-self fleede wiþ xij en into Fraunce. ¶ And þis Belyn, þat was Brennes broþere, ent [20]þen vnto[20] ȝork, and toke[21] counseil what he myȝt done,[22] iþ Kyng Gutlagh; for Kyng Gutlagh proferede [23]to bicome[23] his an, and to holde his lande of him, ȝeldyng by ȝere [24]M li of siluer[24] r euer-more; and for sikernesse of þis couenaunt to bene holde, ıtlaghe shulde bryng him gode hostages, and to him shulde done mage, and al his folc, and ȝitte he[3] shulde suere oppon the book þise couenauntes shulde [25]nouȝt bene broken[25] ne falsede. Belyn þo, by counseil of his folc, grantede him his axing; and so lagh bicome his man; and Belyn vnderfonge of him his homage othe, and by wrytyng þe same couenauntȝ. ¶ And oppoñ

[1] tidyng D. tydyng O. [2] as DO. [3] *om.* O.
[4–4] mettes to-geder D. mettyn to-gidere O. [5] in-to his O. [6] fly O.
his owen D. his owne O. [8] *leaf* 8. [9] kepten O. [10] to O.
om. D. in O. [12] Brenne O. [13] drof DO. [14] Syt *sic* O.
[15–15] grete nauye D. gret meyne O. [16] castell DO.
his malyce ne his O. [18] do D. [19] Belyn D. hym Belyn O.
[20–20] þo to DO. [21] nome DO. [22] do O.
[23–23] Gutlagh forto ben D. [24–24] a M li pound O.
[25–25] neuer be broke D. neuere be brokyn O.

[1]þis Couenant[1] King Gutlagh tok[2] Samye and his folc, and w
þennes, and *tur*nede aȝeyn [3]to Dennemarc. ¶ Eu*er*more after v
the couenauntes Halden, and þe truage paiede, til þe tyme
Haueloklwas Kyng of Denmarc, and also of þis lande, þrouȝ his
Gildeburghe, þat he hade spousede, for she was þe ryȝt heire of
lande. ¶ þis Belyn duellede þo in pees, and worshepliche[4] l
helde amonges[5] his barons; and he made iiij real waies, one fr
þe Est into[7] West, and þat was callede Watlyngstrete; and ano
fram[6] þe North into þe South, þat was callede Ikenyle strete;
ij o*þer*e waies he made in bossinge þrouȝ-oute the lande: þat on
callede Fosse, and þat o*þer*e Fossedik; and he mayntenede we
gode Lawes þat Donebanc his fader hade made and ordeyned
his tyme, as bifore is saide.

How accorde was made bituene Brenne and Belyn, thro Cornewenne, hire moder. ¶ Capitulo ¶ Vicesimo Terc

BRenne, that was Belynes[8] bro*þer*, hade longe tyme duelled
Fraunce, and *þere* hade co*n*querede a grete lordeship þ
mariage, for he was Duc of Burgoyne þrouȝ þe douȝt*er* of þe[9]
Fewyn þat he hade spousede, þat was right heire of þe lande.
þis Brenne ordeynede a grete power of his folc and also of Fra
and come into þis lande forto feight with Belyn his bro*þer*.
Belyn come aȝeynes him with a stronge powere of Britons, and
wolde haue ȝeue[10] him bataile; but heir moder Cornewenne, þat
Leuede,[11] [12]herde þat[12] þe o[13] bro*þer* wolde [14]haue destroyede[14]
o*þer*e, and went bituene here sones, and [15]ham made[15] accor
wiþ miche peyne; so þat at þe laste, þo ij bre*þer*ne, with mic
blisse, went to-geder into newe[17] Troye, þat now is callede Lon
and *þere* þai duellede al a ȝere; and after, þai toke[18] [19]Heire cons
forto go conquere al Fraunce; and so thai deden,[20] & brent tou
and destroyede al[21] þe lande bo*þe* in leng*þ* and in Brede. an
Kyng of Fraunce ȝaf ham bataile wiþ his powere; but he
ouercomen,[22] and ȝaf truage vnto[23] Belyn and to his bro*þer*. ¶

[1–1] þis couenauntes D. these coue*n*a*u*ntes O. [2] nome DO.
[3] *leaf* 8, *back*. [4] worshipfullich D. wurschipfully O.
[5] amo*n*ge D. Among O. [6] fro O. [7] into þe DO.
[8] Belyn his O. [9] *om* O. [10] ȝeuen O.
[11] leuede hade D. lyved had O. [12–12] *MS.* herde þat herd
[13] to O. [14–14] destroye D. dystroye O. [15–15] made hem C
[16] michel D. [17] grete D. gret O. [18] nome DO. [19] *leaf*
[20] dede O. [21] *om.* DO. [22] ouercome DO. [23] to DO.

þat, þai [1]went forþe[1] to Rome, and conquerede Rome, and al ardy and Germayne, and toke homages and feautees of [2]þe f þe Erles,[2] barons, and[3] alle o*þer*e; and after, þai comen[4] þis lande of Britaigne, and duellede with here Britounes in nd reste. and þo made Brenne þe toune of Bristow; and siþ nt ouer þe[5] see into his owen lordeshippe, and *þer*e duellede lif. and Belyn duellede atte Newe Troye; and *þer*e he made e gate þat is clepede[6] Billyngesgate, after his owen name. and þis Belyn hade regnede noble[7] xj ȝere,[8] he deide, & ¶ liþ at Troye.

Kyng Corinbatrus quellede þe Kyng of Dennemarc, for enchesoun þat he wolde nouȝt paye him his truage. ¶ Capit*ulo* xxiiij^to^.

Nd after þis Belyn, regnede his-sone Corinbatrus, a gode man and [9]a worþi. and[9] þe Kyng of Denmarc wolde nouȝt paye is truage, þat is to seyn, [10]M^l^ li,[10] as he [11]hade. sworne[11] by rto paye hit, and also be writyng [12]of recorde,[12] to Belyn his wherfore he was euel[13] paiede and wroþ, and assemblede a hoste of Britons, and went into Dennemarc and slough þe g Gitclagh, and brouȝt þe lande in subieccioun al new, and toke olc feautes and homages, and after went aȝeyne into his lande. d as he come forthe bi Orkeneye, he fonde xxx shippes ful of and of wy*m*men, bisides þe coste[14] of þe see, and þe kyng e what þai were.[15] an Erl, that was maistre of ham[16] alle, isely ansuerede vnto the kyng, and saide þat þai were exilede of Spaygne,[17] and so þai hade *trau*ailede half[18] ȝere and more see, to weten[19] if þai myȝt fynde eny kyng, or[20] eny lorde,[21] f ham wolde haue pitee or mercy, to ȝeue ham eny lande in ontre wherin þai might duelle and haue reste, and bicome his men, and to him wolde done[22] homage and feautes[23] whiles leuede, and to his heires after him, and of hi*m* and of his holde[24] þat londe [25]for eue*r*more.[25] ¶ And when þe kyng þis

venten boþe D. [2—2] Erles and D. erls O.
of DO. [4] come O. [5] *þer* O. [6] callede D. called O.
li D. nobly O.
and iiij monuþes D. ȝeer & iiij monethes O. [9—9] worthi D.
a M^l^ pound O. [11—11] swore O. [12—12] recordede D. recorded O.
e O. [14] costes O. [15] were And O. [16] them O.
9, *back*. [18] half a O. [19] wete O. [20] in O. [21] lande O.
D. [23] feaute DO. [24] holden DO. [25—25] *om*. DO.

herde, he hade pite of ham, and ȝaf ham an Ile al wilder
þere þat noman was duellyng, saf oneliche[1] wilde bestes. a
Erl þankede miche þe kyng, and bicome his man, and ded
feaute and homage, and tok[2] alle his folc, and went into þe
Ile. and þe Erl[3] me callede Irlanyal; and *þer*fore[4] he lete ca
lande Irlande, after' his owen name. ¶ The kyng þo, Corinb
come aȝeyne into þis Lande, and regnede xxv ȝere; & aft
deide, and liþ at newe ¶ Troye.

**How þe Kyng' Guentolen regnede in godenesse,[5] & wel gouer
þe lande al his liftyme.[6] ¶ Capitulo vicesimo Quinto.**

AND when Corinbatrus was dede, regnede Guentolen his
a man of goode condiciouns, and wel bilouede; a
gou*er*nede þe lande wel and wiseliche,[7] and he regnede xxvj
and after, deide, and lith at newe Troye.

**How Kyng Seisel regnede, and wel gou*er*nede þe lande
Guentolen. ¶ Capit*ulo* xxvj^to^.**

AND after' þis[4] Guentolen, regnede his sone Seisel wel
worþely, and wel gou*er*nede þe lande as his fader'
done biforne him; and he regnede xv ȝere, and after',[8] deide
lith at newe Troye.

**How Kymore regnede after' Seisel his fader; and he b
Howan, þat [9]regnede after' him.[8] ¶ Capitulo ¶ Vic
¶ Septimo.**

AND after þis[8] Seisel, regnede his sone Kymor wel and no
xix ȝere in pees; and Howan his sone x ȝere, and
and liþ at Herbaldouñ.

**How Kyng' Morwith deide þrouȝ meschaunce, þrouȝ[11] a
for his wickednesse. ¶ Capitulo ¶ Vicesimo ¶ Oc**

AND[8] after' þis Howan, regnede Morwith; and he[4]
wickede, and so sterne, til at þe laste, grete vengeaunc
to him; for as he went on[12] a tyme bi þe seeside,[13] he mette

[1] only O. [2] nome DO. [3] kyng O. [4] *om.* O. [5] pees
[6] lyf O. [7] wysely O. [8] *om.* DO. [9] *leaf* 10.
[10] nebliche D. noblich O. [11] of O. [12] vppon D. vpon O.
[13] syde O.

, þat was blac, and horrible and hidouse; and he wende þat le bene a whale of þe see, and bent an Arweblast',[1] and wolde slayne þat[2] best wiþ a quareH; but he miȝt' nouȝt smyte hit. when he hade shotte alle his quarelles,[3] þe beste anone come n in grete haste, and him deuourede alif; and so he deide is wickednesse, þrouȝ vengeance of Gode, after þat he hade de ix ȝere.

randobodian, þat was Morwitheȝ sone, þat made the toune of Cambruge. ¶ Capitulo ¶ Vicesimo Nono.

ter þis Morwith was dede, þe Britouns cronede Grandobodian his sone; [4]and þis Grandobodian[4] longe tyme regnede in sse, and made temples and tounes; and þis Grandobodian þe toune of Cambrugge and þe toune of Granthaṁ, and was ouede of ryche and of pore, [5]for he[5] honoured þe riche and e poer'. ¶ This Grandobodian hade iiij sones, Artogaile, , Higamus, and Petiter', and when he hade regnede xj ȝere, , & liþ at newe Troye.

aile, þat was Grandobodian*us* sone: how he was made ', & siþ put adoune for his[6] wickednesse. ¶ Capit*ulo* esimo.

r Grandobodian, regnede his sone Artogaile v ȝere; and he bicome so wickede and so sterne, þat þe Britons wolde ffre him to bene[8] kyng', but put him adoune, and made is broþer kyng'; and he bicome so gode and mercyable im callede 'kyng of pitee.' and when he hade regnede v de so[miche][9] pitee of his broþer Artogaile, þat was kyng l anone he forsoke his dignite, and toke his broþer þe e, and made him kyng' aȝeynes[10] al þe [11]barons wille of and afterwarde, þis Artogaile bicome so gode of condi- e was wel bilouede of al þe lande; for he bicome so nd free, and dede right and resouñ to alle maner' he regnede vj ȝere, and deide, and lith at Grauntham.

r D. [2] þe O.
om querelles *in MS.* quareH O.
& þis Grandobodyan his sone O.
O. for R. [6] *om.* O. [7] *leaf* 10, *back.* [8] be DO.
[10] aȝen O.
wille D. brytoñs wyH O. [12] of men DO

How Hesider was made kyng' after' þe deth of Artogail ¶ bro*þer*.[1] Capit*ulo* xxxj°.

After þe deth of Artogaile, the Britounes crounede a[n] tyme Hesider'; but his ij bre*þern* Higamus and [I] haden of him grete despite, and eke scorne, and ordeyned helpe forto werre oppoñ þe kyng her' bro*þer*. and so þai toke[n] and put[2] him into prisoun, the secunde 3ere of his regne; a[nd] dep*ar*tede al Britaign bituene ham ij. but Higamus leuede [h]3ere; and þo hadde Petitur' al þe lande; and he made þe to[n] Pikeryng', and after deide, þe secu*n*de 3ere of his regne, & Pikeryng',

How þe Britouns token[3] Hesider' oute of Prisoune, and hi*m* kyng þe þridde tyme. ¶ Capitulo ¶ [4]Tri Secu*n*do.[4]

And when þis Petitur was dede, the Britons toke[5] ano[th] Hesider, and made him kyng þe þridde tyme, [6]regnede he[6] in pees xiiij 3ere, & af*ter* deide, and liþ at K[a]

How xxxiij kynges regnede in pees, eche after' o*þer*e, deth of Hesider'. ¶ Capitulo ¶ Tricesimo Tercio

After[8] þe deth of Hesider', regnede xxxiij Kynges, e[ch] o*þer*e, in pees; and wiþout eny longe tariyng' y[n] ham alle,[9] and how longe eu*er*y[10] of ham regnede, as [I] telleþ. ¶ The ferste kyng' of þo xxxiij me clepede[11] [K] and he regnede xij 3ere. ¶ and after' him regnede [I] 3ere; ¶ and after' him regnede Eigamus[12] vj 3ere; ¶ [a]him regnede Idwalan viij 3ere; ¶ and after him regne[d] xj 3ere; ¶ and after' him regnede Voghen xiij 3[e]re; [13]after him regnede[13] Katil xv 3ere; ¶ and after' hi[m] Porrex ij 3ere; ¶ and after' him regnede Cheryn[e] [; & af*ter* him regned Coil xij 3er'][15] ¶ and after' [h]Sulgenis xiiij 3ere; ¶ and after him regnede Esd[a]

[1–1] *om.* D. [2] *om.* D. puttyn O. [3] nomen DO.
[5] nome DO. [6–6] regned he DO. regnede R. [7] *leaf*
[8] And aftir O. [9–9] hem aⁿ telle O. [10] eu*er*yche D.
[11] callede D. Called O.
[12] *It is impossible to distinguish n and u in these MSS.* Eigainus, Eiganius, Eigamus, *etc.* D *and* O *have* Eighnans
[13–13] af*ter* him regnede D. af*ter* him regned O. after h
[14] *om.* O. [15] *supplied from* D.

d after' him regnede Andragie xviij ȝere; ¶ And after' him
de Vran[1] v ȝere; ¶ and after' him regnede Elinc' ij ȝere;
l after' him regnede Eldagan xv ȝere; ¶ and after' him regnede
n xij ȝere; ¶ & after him regnede Quirgunc' viij ȝere; ¶ and
him regnede Morian vj ȝere; and after him regnede Bledaghe
re; ¶ and after' him regnede Caph[illegible] j ȝere; ¶ and after' him
d Gen ij ȝere; ¶ and after' him regnede Seisel and Kyng
xxj ȝere; ¶ and Kyng Grabre[illegible]th[2] xj ȝere; ¶ and Archinal
ere; [3]and Erol xxx ȝere; ¶ And Rodengu [4]xxx[illegible]ij ȝere; and[4]
v ȝere,[3] ¶ and H[illegible]mpir' vj ȝere, And Carpoir' [illegible]vij ȝere,
[illegible]ij ȝere, ¶ and Samuel xxiiij ȝere, ¶ and Rede
e, ¶ and Ely vij mouneþs; and þis Ely hade iij sones, Lu[illegible]d,
bilam, and Enymyon̄.

Lud' was made kyng' after þe deþ of Ely his fader. ¶ Capitulo ¶ Tricesimo ¶ Quarto.

fter þe deþ of Ely, regnede Lud his sone, and gouernede wel
þe lande, and miche honourrede gode folc, and temprede
amendit wickede folc. ¶ This Lud louede more to duelle at
e þan at[6] eny oþere place of þe lande; Wherfore þe name of[7]
ye was lafte,[8] and þo [9]was callede þe citee of[9] Ludstan; but
[10] þat name is chaungede þrouȝ variance of lettres, and now is
de Londoñ. ¶ and[11] þis kyng made in the citee a faire gate,
callede it Ludgate, after' his name; and þe folc of þe citee lete
[12] Loundres, and when he hade regnede xj ȝere, he deide, and
Londoñ. and he hade ij ȝonge sones, Andraghen and
ce[13]; but þai couþ neiþere speke ne go, for ȝeugeþ; & þerfore
ritons crounede a stronge kny3t þat me called [14]Lud, þat was
balamus[14] broþer, and made him kyng of Britagne.

þe Britons grantede to Cassibalam, þat was Ludes broþer, land': [15]in whas time Iulius[16] come ij tymes forto conquere þe lande.[15] ¶ Capitulo Tricesimo ¶ quinto.

r' þe deþ of Kyng' Lud', regnede his broþer Cassibalam, and
icome a goode man, and miche bilouede of his Britons, so
s godenesse and curtesye, þai grantede him þe reaume for-

[1] D. Vryan O. [2] Trabreth DO. [3–3] *om.* O.
[4] xxij ȝer' D. xxxij and R. [5] *leaf* 11, *back.* [6] in O.
[7] e new D. of newe O. [8] lafte D. left O. laste R.
[9] itee callede D. was þe Citee cald O. [10] *om.* DO. [11] *om.* D.
). yt O. [13] Tormace DO. [14–14] *sic in all three MSS.*
. O. [16] Iulius Ceser' D.

euermore, to him and to his heires. ¶ And the kyng, of his nesse, lete norisshe worþiliche boþe [1]his broþeres sones, þe chil of Lud[1]; And after, made þe eldeste sone Erl of Cornwaile, an oþere Erl of Londoñ. ¶ And while þis kyng Cassibalam reg come Iulius Cesar, þat was Emperoure of Rome into þis lande, a power of Romayns, and wolde haue hade þis lande þrouȝ stre but Cassibalam him ouer[illegible]ome in bataile, þrouȝ helpe [2]o Britons, and drof[illegible] him oute of þis Lande; and[4] went aȝey Rome, and a[illegible]assemblede[5] grete power anoþer tyme, and come into þis [illegible]lande forto ȝeue bataile to Cassibalam; but he w com[illegible]tede þrouȝ strengþ of þe Britons, and þrouȝ[6] helpe of þe Cornwaile, and[7] þe Erl of londoñ, his broþer, and þrouȝ helþ Gudian, Kyng of Scotland, and of[8] Corbande, Kyng of north W and of Bretaile, Kyng of Southwalys. and in þis bataile was sl Nemion, þat was Cassibalam*us* broþer, wherfore he made i sorwe; and so went Iulius Cesar oute of þis lande with a few Romayns þat were lefte a-lif; And þo Cassibalam went aȝey Londoñ, and made a fest vnto alle his folc þat þo hade holpen[10]; and when þe[11] fest was done, eche man went into h owen contree.

Of þe debate þat was bituene Cassibalam and þe Erl Londoñ; [13]& of þe truage þat was payede[14] to Ro ¶ Capitulo xxxvj^to.[15]

And after, hit bifelle þus oppoñ a day, þat [16]þe gentil-me þe kynges household and [17]þe gentelmen[17] of þe Erles holde of Londoñ, after mete went in-fere[18] forto playe; and debate þat arose amonges[19] ham, Enelyn, þat was þe erles br of Londoñ, quellede Irenglas þat was þe kynges cosyn; wherf kyng swore þat Enelyn shulde bene[21] honget; but þe L Londoñ, þat was Enelynes lorde, wolde nouȝt suffren[22] hit fore þe kyng was wroth towarde[23] þe Erl, and þouȝt him[24] d and priuely[25] þe Erl sent *lett*res to Iulius Cesar þat he shul

[1–1] sones that wer Lud his broþeres D. Sones þat were lud his b
[2] *leaf* 12. [3] *om.* O. [4] and he DO. and R. [5] Asse
[6] þurgh þe O. [7] and of D. [8] *om.* DO. [9] of his D. *om*
[10–10] holp him D. hym holpe O. [11] þat DO. [12] his DO
[13–13] *om.* O. [14] paye D. [15] xxxv^to D. [16–16] a gentilm
[17–17] a gentil-man D. gentylmen O. [18] y-fere D. [19] am
[20] cosyn D. Cosyn O. [21] be DO. [22] soffre D. [23] tow
[24] hym to O. [25] priuelich D.

þis lande forto [1]helpe him, and helpe avenge him [2]oppon þe
g', and he wolde helpe him with al his myȝte. ¶ And when
mperoure herde þis tydynges,[3] he was ful glade, and ordeynede
onge power', and come aȝeyne þe þridde tyme into þis land';
þe Erl of Londone halpe him wiþ vij M^{t} men. and at þe þridde
was Cassibalam ouercomen[4] and descomfitede, and made pees
Emperoure for[5] iij [6]M^{t} ti[6] of siluer', ȝeldynge by ȝere for
e for þis lande for euermore. and after' half[7] ȝere passede, the
roure went to Rome, and þe Erl of Londoñ wiþ him, for he
nouȝt abide in þis lande. and after, Cassibalam regnede xvij
ñ pees, and þo[8] deide, þe xxvij ȝere of his regne, and lithe atte
.

þe lordes of þe lande, after' þe deth of Cassibalam, for enchesoñ þat he hade none heire, made Andragen kyng'. Capitulo ¶ xxxvij^{mo}.

fter þe deth of Cassibalam, for-asmiche as he hade none[9] heire
of his body, þe lordes of þe lande, by commune assent,
ede Androgen, Erl of Cornewaile, and made him kyng'; and he
ede wel[10] worthely, and was a gode man, and wel gouernede
ande. and when he hade regnede viij ȝere, he deide, & liþ
Londoñ.

Kymbalyn, þat was Andragen*us* sone, a gode man, [11]and wel gouernede þe lande.[11] Capitulo xxxviij.

uitas *Christi*[12]

fter þe deth of Andragen, regnede Kembelyn his sone, þat was
a gode man, and wel gouernede þe lande in miche prosperite
in[13] pees al his lifes[14] tyme. ¶ And in his tyme was born
s Crist oure saucoure, of þat swete virgine Marie.[15] ¶ þis
[16] Kembelyn hade ij sones, Ginder' and Armoger', gode
s and worthi. [17]And when þis Kyng Kembelyn hade regnede
re, he deide, and liþ at Londoñ.

g Ginder', þat was Kembalynes sone, þat wolde nouȝt e þe truage to Rome [11]for the lande þat Cassibalam e grantede[11]; & how he was slayne of a Romayne. tulo xxxix^{o}.

D. [2] *leaf* 12, *back*. [3] tydynge O.
m D. ouercome O. [5] with D. [6–6] M^{t} of ti O.
DO. [8] þo he O. [9] no O. [10] wel and DO.
. O. [12–12] *om.* DO. [13] *om.* O. [14] lif D. lyve O.
y-blessede mot she be Amen D. [16] *om.* D. [17] *leaf* 13.

And after þe deþ of þis Kembalyn, regnede Ginder' his so gode man and a worþi; and [1]he was of so hie[1] hert þ wolde nou3t paye to Rome þat *tr*uage þat Kyng Cassibalam *gr*antede vnto Iulius Cesar'; wherfore þe Emp*er*oure þat was þo me callede[3] Claudius Cesar',[4] was sore annoyede, and ordeyne grete power' of' Romay[n]s, and come into þis lande forto con þe *tr*uage þrou3 strengþ, and haue it of þe kyng'; but þe Gynder', and Armoger' his bro*þer*, gadrede a grete hoste if Britouns, and 3af bataile to þe Emp*er*our Claudius, and qu of Romains grete plente. ¶ The Emp*er*our hade a Stiwar me clepede[5] Hamon, þat saw þat her' peple was faste sla priuely[8] he[2] caste awai his owen armes, and toke[9] the Armes dede Briton, and armede him wiþ his armure, and come int bataile to þe kyng', and saide in þis maner': "Sire, beth of hert', for Godes loue, for þe Romayns þat beþe[10] 3our' enemys a shullen[11] bene[12] slayn and descomfitede eu*er*ychon."[13] ¶ an kyng 3af no kepe ne rewarde to his speche, for encheson of armes þat he hade oppon him, and wende it[14] hade bene Britoune; but þe *trai*toure [16]euer' helde him[16] nexte þe kyng', p*r*iueliche,[17] vnder' þe shulders[18] of his armure,[19] he smote þe k Wherfore he was dede anone,[20] and fel doune vnto[21] þe erþe.

When Armoger' saw his bro*þer* dede, [22]he caste away his Ar and toke[23] to him his bro*þer*es Armes, and come into þe ba amonge þe Britons, and bade hertly forto[24] fyght', and faste lai adoune þe Romaignes. and for þe armes, þai wende[26] it hade b Kyng[5] Gynder', þat arst was slayne, þat þai wist nou3t', and þo g þe Britons hertly fei3ten,[28] and quellede þe Romayns; so[29] a last' þe Emp*er*our forsoke[30] þe felde, and fley as faste as þai[31] into þe citee of Wynchestre. and þe false *trai*tour Hamond hade quellede þe kyng', faste anone gane forto flee in[32] al þe þat he mi3t'; and Armoger', þe kynges bro*þer*, p*ur*suede hi fersly[33] wiþ a ferse herte, and drof him vnto[34] þe water', a

[1–1] so hye of D. [2] *om.* O. [3] clept O. [4] Cesar & he O
[5] *om.* D. [6] called DO. [7] y-slayn O. [8] pryueliche D.
[9] nome DO. [10] ben O. [11] shul D. ·schul O.
[12] be O. [13] echeon O. [14] he DO. [15] be O.
[16–16] helde hym eu*er* O. [17] priuely D. pryuyly O. [18] sl
[19] Armes DO. [20] *om.* DO. [21] to D. [22] *leaf* 13, *back.*
[23] nome DO. [24] *om.* D. to O. [25] lay D. ley O.
[26] wende that D. [27] be þe O. [28] fyght O. [29] so þat O
[30] took O. [31] he DO. [32] with O. [33] fast D.
[34] in-to O.

toke him, and anone smote of [2]boþe heuede,[2] hendes, and feete, hewe þe body halto pecis, and þo caste it into þe water; erfore þat wate*r* was callede Hamondeshauen; and after,[3] þe*re* made a faire toune þat ȝitte [standeth] þat[4] is callede South-toñ. ¶ And afterwarde, Armoger went to Wynchestre forto[5] e Claudius Cesar þe Emp*erour*; and þe*re* Armoger[6] him toke. ¶ And Claudius þe Emp*erour*, þrouȝ conseil of his Romayns þat him were lefte alyf, made pees wiþ Armoger in þis maner as lleþ[7] hure, þat is to seyne, how[6] þat Claudius þe emp*erour* ȝeue to Armoger, Gennen[8] his[9] douȝt*er*, forto haue to wif, at þis lande fro þat tyme aft*er*warde shulde be in þe Empe*r*oureȝ er of Rome, oppoñ suche couenant, þat[10] none Emp*erour* of e shulde take none op*ere* t*ru*age of þis lande, but oneliche te; and so þai were accordede. ¶ And oppoñ[11] þis couenant,[11] dius Cesar sent to Rome for his douȝt*er* Gennen; and when was come*n*,[12] [13]Claudius Cesar ȝaf her to Armoger to Wif; Armoger spoused here at Londoñ with michel[14] solempnite merþe; and þo was Armoger cronede, and made Kyng of taigne.

Kyng Armoger, in whas[15] tyme seynt Peter prechede in Antyoche, wiþ op*er*e ap*ost*lis in diu*er*ses[16] contres. [17]Capitulo xl.[17]

Kyng Armoger regnede wel, and worthely[18] þe lande uernede, and Claudis Cesar, in remembrance of þis[19] and for reu*er*ence and hono*ur* of his doughter, made in la[illegible]e a fare toune and a faire castel, and lete calle [20]þe [20]after his owen[21] name 'Claucestre,' þat now is callede estr. and when þis was al done, þe Emperoure toke[22] his and[23] went aȝeyne to Rome; and Armoger[24] was þo[24] kyng, uernede þe lande wel and nobli al his lif tyme. ¶ and this r gete a sone on his wif, þat[25] was callede[25] Westmere. and

D. [2–2] boþe heede D. his hed O. [3] afterward O.
D. [5] to O. [6] *om.* D. [7] shul D. schul O.
en *or perhaps* Gelinen *or* Gelnien O. [9] his fair D. his fayre O.
neuer afterwarde D. þat neuere aftirward O.
se couen*aun*tes O. [12] come O. [13] *leaf* 14.
e D. mych O. [15] who D. [16] diuerse D. diuers O.
Capitulo O. [18] worthely and D. worthyly & O. [19] his O.
S. þe lande toune, *with* lande *underlined for erasure*. yt O.
O. [22] nome DO. [23] and þo DO. [24–24] þo was DO.
lled was O.

whiles þat þis Armoger regnede, seynt Peter[1] prechede in Antioc and þere he hade[2] made a noble cherche, in þe whiche he s ferste in his chier, and þere he duellede vij 3ere.[3] after, he[2] w to Rome, and was made Pope, til þat Nero þe Emperour lete martre. & þo prechede openly al þe Apostlis, in diuerses[4] lan þe ry3t fay.[5] ¶ And when Armoger hade regnede xxiiij 3er deyde, and lith at Londõ.

How Kyng Westmer 3af to Berynger an Ilande forlete; þere þis Beringer made þe toune of Berwik. *Capitulo*

AND after þis Armoger, regnede his sone Westmer, a gode m and a worþi of body, and wel gouernede þe lande. ¶ bifelle so þat tydynges[6] come to him oppoñ [7]a day, þat þe Ky Rodrik of Gascoigne was comen[9] into þis lande wiþ an h noumbre of peple, and was duellyng in Steynesmore. and w Kyng Westmer herde þo tydyngus, he lete assemble [10]a grete[10] of Britons, and come to þe[8] Kyng Rodrik, and 3af him bataile. Kyng Westmer quellede Rodrik wiþ his owen hondes in ple bataile; and when þat[2] kyng Rodrikes men saw þat here Lorde dede, þai 3olden ham alle to þe[8] Kyng Westmer, and bicome men for euermore; and he 3af ham a contre þat was forlete, whe þai my3t duelle; and þider þai went, and duellede þere al here l tyme; and ix C men þere[12] were of ham, and nomo[13] left þat bataile. Here gouernour and her prince, me callede B and anone he biganne a toune, þat þai my3t þerein duelle[14] a resceyt, and lete calle þe toune Berwik vp[15] Twede; and duellede, and bicome riche. but þai nade[16] no wymmen a ham, and þe Britons wolde nou3t 3eue here dou3tres to Straungers; Wherfore þai went ouere þe see into Irland, and b with ham Wymmen, and ham þo spousede; but þe men co nou3t[19] vnderstonde[20] þe langage[21] ne þe speche of þe wym neyþer[22] þe wymmen of þe men, and þerefore þai [23]s to-gederes[23] as scottes; and aftirwarde, þrou3 chaungeyn

[1] *In the margin in a contemporary handwriting:* Peter was a nero[s] ty[me]: *the edge of the page has evidently been cut off.*
[2] *om.* DO. [3] 3eer & O. [4] diuerse D. diuers O.
[5] feyth O. [6] tydyng DO. [7] *leaf* 14, *back.* [8] *om.* O.
[9] come O. [10–10] an huge O. [11] lif D. [12] þat O. [13]
[14] *om.* D. [15] vpon O. [16] hadde O. [17] þe D.
[18] coude O. [19] nou3t þo D.
[20] vndirfonge O. [21] lange D. [22] ne O.
[23–23] spoken to-geder D. speke to-gidere O.

ages,[1] in al Fraunce þei were callede þo[2] Scottes: and so [3]þai be callede[3] for euermore.

7 Kyng Westmer' Lete arere a stone in þe entrýng[4] of Westmerland, þere þat he slouȝt Rodrik'; & þere he bigamne ferste Housyng'. ¶ Capitulo ¶ Quadragesimo[5] ¶ Secundo.

Nd after' this bataile þat is aboue-saide, when Rodrik [6]Was dede, Kyng Westmer', in remembraunce of his Victorie, lete þere, bisides þe way, a grete stone[7] in[8] hye,—& ȝitte it þ,[9] and euermore shal stande,—and Lete graue in þe stone þat þus saide: 'The Kyng Westmere of Britaigne quellede place Rodrik' his enemy.' ¶ And þis Westmere was þe ferst þat made tounes[10] and hous in Engeland. and at þat stone neth[11] Westmerland, þat Westmer' lete calle after' his owen . and[12] when Westmer' hade so done,[13] he duellede al his Lif in þat contre of Westmerland, for he louede þat contre more[14]: when he hade regnede xxv ȝere, he deide. & liþ at ¶ Karleile

yng Coil, þat was Westmeres sone, þat helde his lande in pees[15] his lif-tyme. ¶ Capitulo xl Tercio.

fter þis Kyng Westmer', regnede his sone Coil, a goode man nd a worþi, and of gode condicions, and wel gouernede his d of alle[16] men he hade loue and pees; and in his tyme contak, debate, ne werre in Britayn; and he regnede and in pees al his lif-tyme. & When he hade[17] bene kyng[17] e deide, and liþ at ȝork'.

Kyng Lucye regnede after' Coel[18] his fader', þat[19] was a gode man; and after', he[12] bicome cristen. ¶ Capitulo xl Quarto.

ter' Kyng[20] Coel, regnede Lucie his sone, þat was a gode man to God' and to al þe peple. he sent to Rome, to Apostle hie, þat þo was, and seide þat he wolde bicome a cristen l resceyue baptisme[21] in þe name of' God', and turne to þe

[1] age *sic* D. [2] *om.* D. þe O.
[3] lleþ þe fole of that contraie D. schul þat folk of þat Cuntre O.
O. [5] Quinquagesimo D. [6] *leaf* 15. [7] toune D.
[9] stant DO. [10] Toun O. [11] bigynnes D.
). [13] y-done O.
þan eny oþere contre D. more þan eny oþer Cuntre O.
l D. [16] all his O. [17–17] bene kyng' D. be kyng' O. bene R.
[19] & O. [20] þis D. [21] bapteme O.

ryȝt bileue. ¶ Eulenchie sent ij legates, þat me callede Pagan Elibrayne, into þis lande, and baptisede þe kyng[e] and alle menye,[1] and after[r] went fro [2]toune[3] to toune, and baptised peple til [4]al þat[4] Lande was baptisede, and þis was in þe ȝere after[r] þe Incarnacioñ of Ihesu Crist[e]. and þis kyng[e] I. made þo in þis lande ij erchebisshoppes, on at Kaunt*er*bery anoþ*er*e at ȝork[e], and o þ*er*e meny bisshopes þat ȝit bene in lande. ¶ And when þise[6] ij legates hade baptisede al þe[7] l. þai ordeynede[8] p*r*estes forto baptisen[9] childern and forto m. Sac*r*ament[e]; and after[r], þai went aȝeyne to Rome, and þe duellede in his lande, and regnede with michel[10] hono*ur* xii and after[r] deide, and liþ at Gloucestre.

How þis lande was longe wiþouten[11] a kyng[e]; and how Britons chosen[12] a kyng[e]. ¶ Capit*ulo* ¶ Quadrages ¶ Quinto.

THis kyng[e] Lucie hade none heire of his body bigeten,[13] þa afterwarde grete harme and sorwe to þe lande; ffor, þis kyng Lucies deth, none of þe grete lordes[14] of þe lande w suffren[15] an-o þ*er*e to bene[16] kyng[e], but leuede in werre and de amonges ham l. ȝere wiþouten[17] kyng. but þo it bifel [18]afti þat a grete Prince[18] come fro Rome into þis lande þat m Seuerey; nouȝt forto werr[e], but forto saue þe ryght[e] o ¶ But noþeles, he nade[19] nouȝt duellede half[20] ȝere in þis þe Britons ne quellede him. when þo of Rome wiste þat was so slayn, þai sent anoþ*er*e grete lorde into þis land callede Allec, þat was a stronge man, and a myȝty of b duellede in þis lande Longe tyme, and dede miche sorwe Britons, so þat after, for pure malice, þai chosen ham a amonges ham, þat me callede Astlepades, and assemblede a host of þe Britouns, and went to Londoñ to[21] seche Allec þ*er*e þai founde[22] [23]him, and quellede him and alle his felaw

[1] mene D. meyne O. [2] *leaf* 15, *back*.
[3] *a marginal note in an ancient hand*: [fir]st cristes Kynge.
[4–4] þat alle þe D. [5] *om.* D. [6] þe O. [7] þat O.
[8] ordeigneden O. [9] baptisen D. baptisede R. [10] my
[11] with-oute D. tyme with-oute O. [12] Chose hem O.
[13] bygete D. begete O. [14] *om.* DO. [15] soffre D. s
[16] be DO. [17] with-oute DO.
[18–18] afterwarde that a grete Prince D. afterward þat a gre afterwarde R. [19] had O.
[20] half a O. [21] forto D. [22] founden O. [23] *leaf* 16.

wiþ him, but one of his felawes, þat me clepede[1] Waloun, let him fersly, and fauȝt longe with þe Britouns, but at þe he was descomfitede; and þe Britons token[2] him, and bounde Hondes and feete, and caste him into a water; wher'-fore þat afterwarde was clepede[4 5] euermore Walbroke.[5] ¶ Þo regnede Astlepades in quiete, til one of his erles þat me callede Coel, a faire toune aȝeynes þe kynges wille, and lete calle þe toune estre after his name, wherfore þe kyng was ful wroth, and destroie þe erle, and bigan to werre vppoñ him, and brouȝt power, and ȝaf bataile to[6] þe erl. and þe erl defendede him with his power, and slough þe kyng him-self in þat bataile; þ was Coel cronede, and made kyng of þis land. ¶ þis Coel le and gouernede þe lande wel and nobly, for he was a[7] noble and wel bilouede amonges[8] þe Britons. ¶ When[9] þo of Rome þat Astlepades was slayne, [10]þai were[10] wonder glade, and sent re grete prince of Romayns, þat me callede Constance; and me to þe[11] Kyng Coil [12]forto chalange[12] þe truage þat was [13]to bene[13] paiede to Rome; and þe kyng ansuerede wel and ely,[14] and saide þat he wolde paye to Rome al þat ryȝt and ñ [15]wolde, wiþ godewil[15]; and so þai accordede þo wiþ goode l wiþouten[16] eny contak; and boþe þai duellede togeder[17] in The Kyng Coel ȝaf his douȝter Elyne to Constance, forto for his spouse, þat was boþe faire, wise, and gode, and e: and þis Constance spousede here þere[3] with michel[18] nd it bifelle sone afterwarde, þat þis kyng Coel [19]deide of his regne xiij, & Lith at Colchestre enterede.

Constance, þat was a Romayn, þat was chosen[20] kyng fter [21]þe deth of[21] Coel, [22]for-asmiche þat[22] he hade pousede Elyn, þat was Kyng Coeles douȝter. Capitulo lvj°.

ter þis[11] Kyng Coel, Constance was made kyng, and cronede, for-asmiche as he hade spousede Kyng Coeleȝ douȝter, þat re of þe lande. þe whiche Constance regnede and worþely

le D. called O. [2] nome D. toke O.
D. [4] callede D. called O. [5–5] Walbrok euermore O.
D. [7] an O. [8] among O. [9] And D.
an were þai D. [11] *om.* D. [12–12] and chalangede D.
DO. [14] wiselich D. wysely O. [15–15] wil D.
oute O. [17] to-gederes D. [18] myche O.
6, *back*. [20] chose O. [21–21] *om.* O.
r-asmiche as D. for as O.

gouernede þe lande; and he bigate on his wif Elyn, a sone þa
callede Constantyn. and þis kyng bare trew fay, and trewly
to ham of Rome al his lif. & when he hade regnede xv 3er
deide, and lið atte 3ork.

**How Constantyne, þat was Kyng Constance3[1] sone, & þe so
seynt Elyne, gouernede and rewlede þe lande, &
Emperour of Rome. ¶ Capitulo xl Septimo.**

After Kyng Con[s]tance3[3] deth, Constantyne, his sone of
Elyne, þat founde þat[4] croice in þe[5] holy londe, an
Constantyne bicome Emperoure of Rome. ¶ Hit bifel so[6]
tyme þere was an Emperour atte Rome, a sarasyne, a tyrau
me callede Maxence, þat put to þe[2] deth alle þat bileuede in
and destroiede holy cherche by alle his power, and slought Cri
men þat he my3t fynde; and amonge alle opere, he lete martre S
Kateryne, and meny opere cristen peple þat hade drede of
þai[7] fledden[8] and comen[9] into þis lande to Kyng Constantyne
tolde him of þe sorwe þat Maxence dede to al cristiente.[10] W
Constantyn hade pite, and grete sorwe made, and[11] assemble
grete hoste and[12] grete power, and went ouere see[13] to Rome
toke[14] þe citee, and quellede al þat [15]þerin were mescreaun
he my3t fynde. ¶ And þo was he made Emperoure, [16]A
gode man, and gouernede him so wel, þat al þe[13] Land
were entendaunt[17] forto be vnder his gouernaile. ¶ An
tyraunt Maxence, þat þo was in þe lande of Greke,
herde þis tydynges,[19] he bicome wode, and sodeynely[20]
so he[2] endede his lif.

When Constantyne went fro þis land to Rome, he
him his moder Elyn, for þe michel[22] wisedome þat she coupe,
þre opere grete lordes þat he moste louede: þat
anopere me callede Taberne, and þe pridde
his lande to kepe vnto[25] þe Erl of Corn
Octouyan. ¶ anone[27] as þis Octouian wiste þat his lor
duellyng at Rome, he seisede al þe lande into his honde, and

[1] Constance D. Constaunce O. [2] *om.* O. [3] Constance D.
[4] þe D. [5] þat O. [6] so þat O. [7] þat DO.
[8] fled O. [9] come O. [10] Cristene O. [11] made and DO.
[12] and a DO. [13] *om.* DO. [14] nome O.
[15–15] wer þerin D. þer-In were mysbeleued O. [16] *leaf* 17.
[17] attendaunt O. [18] þo DO. [19] tydynge O. [20] sodeyn
[21] nome O. [22] miche D. mych O. [23] coude O.
[24] Morlyn D. [25] to D. [26] me D. [27] And anon D.

d his wil amonges[1] heye and law, & þo helde him for kyng'.
n þis tydyng come to Constantyne þe Emperoure, he woxe
er' wroþe towarde þe Erl Octouyan, and sent Taberne with xij
n forto[2] destroye the erl for his falsenesse, and arryuede at
-mouthe. ¶ And' when Octouyan wiste þat, he assemblede a
power' of Britons, and descomfitede Taberne. ¶ And Taberne
þens into Scotlande, and ordeynede þere a[3] grete power', and
aʒeyne into þis lande forto ʒeue bataile anoþere tyme to[4]
yan. ¶ When Octouyan herde telle þat, he assemblede a
ower', and come towarde Taberne as miche as he myʒt', so
ij hostes metten oppon Staynesmore, and strongely[6] smyten
res.[7] and þo was Octouyan descomfitede, and fledde þens
orwaye; and Taberne seisede al þe lande into his hande,[8]
es, castelles, and[5] as mich as þai þere hade. ¶ And siþenes[9]
uyan come aʒeyne fro Norway wiþ a grete power', & slough
ne, & seisede[10] al þe lande aʒeyne[3] into his honde, & drof
lle þe Romayns, [11]and was þo made Kyng, and regnede.

Maximian, þat was þe Emperoureʒ cosyn [12]of Rome spousede Octouyaneʒ douʒter, and was made kyng', ¶ Capitulo xlviij°.[12]

His Kyng[5] Octouian gouernede þis[13] lande wel and nobly[14]; but he[15] nad[16] none heire, saf a douʒter þat was a ʒonge , þat he louede as miche as his lif'. and forasmiche þat he wax nd was in[17] poynt of deþ, and myʒt no lenger' regne, he wolde nade one of his Neveus to haue bene[18] kyng', þe whiche was hle knyʒt' and[20] stronge man, þat me callede Conan Merche- ard he shulde haue kepte þe kynges douʒter, & haue[15] mariede hen tyme hade bene; but þe lordes of þe lande wolde nouʒt hit, but ʒaf here conseile to bene[22] mariede to some hye man t honour, and þan myʒt she haue al her' wille at[23] þe conseile mperoure Constantyne, here Lorde. and at þis conseile, þai le and chose[24] þo Cador, Erl of Cornewail, forto[25] wende

ng O. [2] to O. [3] *om.* DO. [4] vnto O. [5] *om.* O.
ngliche D. [7] to-gider' O. [8] handis O. [9] seth O.
de aʒeyn D. seised aʒen O. [11] *leaf* 17, *back.*
nquerede the lande of Amorican and ʒaf it to Conan Meriedok' D.
[14] wisely D. [15] *om.* D. [16] ne had O.
[n] D. vp O. [18] be O. [19] an O. [20] and a DO.
edok D. Meridiok' O. [22] be DO. [23] and DO.
n O. [25] to O.

to þe Emp*erour* to[1] done[2] þis[3] message. and he toke[4] þo and went to Rome, and tolde þe Emp*erour* þis tydynges and wiselich.[6] and þe Emp*er*oure sent þo into þis lande with his owen cosyn, þat was his Vncles[7] sone, *a noble knyȝt* stronge, þat me callede Maximian; and he spousede Octouy douȝt*er*, and was c*r*onede kyng of þis lande.

How Maximian, þat was þe Emp*erour*res cosyn, conquered Lande of Amorican, and ȝaf it to Conan Meriadok. ¶ Cap*itul*o xlix°.

THis Kyng Maximian bicome so real, þat he þouȝt conq lande of Amorican for þe grete richesse þat he hard þat was in þat lande; so þat [10]he ne[10] lefte [11]man þat[12] was of nesse—knyȝt,[13] squyer, ne none op*er*e man—þat he ne toke h with him, to grete damage and harme to al þe lande,[15] but nome with hi*m* fra*m*[16] þis lande, xxx M[l] knyȝtes þat were doughty m bodyes, and went ouer into þe lande of Amorican, and þ*er*e sl þe kyng þat me callede Imbal, and conquerede al þe lande. ¶ when he hade so done,[2] he callede Conan, and saide: "For-asm as þe Kyng Octouyan wolde haue made ȝow kyng of Britaigne þrouȝ me ȝe were lette and destou*r*blede, þat ȝe were nouȝt k I ȝeue ȝow al þis lande of Amorican, and ȝow þ*er*of make k ¶ And for-asmiche as ȝe beth[17] a Britouñ, and ȝoure men also bene comen fra*m*[18] Britaigne, I wille þat þis lande haue þe name, and nomore bene[19] callede Amorican, but bene[19] callede Britaigne'; and þe lande fro whens ȝe [20]beþe comen[20] shal callede 'michel Britaigne'; and so shul[22] men know þat Britaigne fra*m*[24] þat op*er*e." Conan Meriedok þankede him l liche[25]; and so was he made kyng of litel Britaigne. and al þis was done,[2] Maxence[26] went þens to Rome, and þ*er*e made Emp*erour* after Constantyne. ¶ Conan Meriedok d in[28] litel Britaigne with michel[29] hono*ur*, and lete ordeyn

[1] forto DO. [2] do O.
[3] *MS.* þis homage, *with* homage *underlined for omission*.
[4] nome DO. [5] tydyng D. tydynge O. [6] wysely O.
[7] Vnkel O. [8] and a DO. [9] hade D. [10–10] *om.* D.
[11] *leaf* 18. [12] *om.* O. [13] knyȝt ne D. [14] *om.* DO.
[15] lande for he lefte at home bihynde him no man to kepe the land for he left at home behynde hym no man to kepe þe land O.
[16] fro DO. [17] be O. [18] fro O. [19] be DO.
[20–20] beth come D. be come O. [21] be DO. [22] schuld O.
[23] o DO. [24] fro O. [25] hendely D. hyndly O. [26] Max
[27] was þo DO. [28] in the D. in þe O. [29] mych O.

men of þe lande forto erie þe lande,[1] to harwe [2]it and sowe,[2] effede ham alle rychely, after' þat þai were. ¶ and[3] forne þat Kyng Conan, ne none of his knyȝtes, ne none of his peple, wolde nouȝt take wifes of þe nacioñ of *Fra*unce, he þo nto grete Britaig[n]e, to þe Erl of Cornewaile þat me callede *tho*, *þat chees prouȝ*-oute alle þe lande xj M[l] [4]of maydenes, *to seyne, viij M[l] for the mene peple*, and iij M[l] for þe ȝ lordes þat schulde ham spouse. ¶ And when Dionotho ak[5] *þis commandement*,[6] he lete þo seche prouȝ-out al grete ne as meny as þe nombre come to, for noman derst wiþstande mmandement, [7]for-asmichel[8] as al þe lande was taken[9] him e and kepe, to do[10] al þing' þat him þo likede.[7] ¶ And lle þe maydenes were assemblede, he lete ham *com*me im to Londoñ, and lete ordeyne for ham shippes hastely, e[11] as ham nedet to þat viage, and toke[12] his owen doughter ne callede Vrsula, þat was þe faireste *cr*eature þat eny man and wolde haue sent her' to Kyng Conan, þat shulde haue·ede here, and made here quene of [13]litel Britaigne[13]; but she made *p*rively[14] to God a vow of chastite, þat here fader wiste ouȝt, ne noman [16]elles[17] þat was leuyng oppoñ erþe.[16]

Vrsula, and xj M[l] of maydenes þat were in here co*m*pany, went towarde litil Britaigne, & al[18] were martrede at Coloigne. ¶ Capitulo ¶ Quinquagesimo.

His Vrsula chees into her'[19] company xj M[l] maydenes[20] þat of al o*þe*re she was lady and·maistres; and alle þai went[21] into ppis at on[22] tyme, in þe wat*er* þat me calleþ[23] Tamise; and ndede her' kyn and alle her' frendes to almyȝty God, and forþ towarde litel Britaigne. But when þai were comen[24] in see, a stronge tempest' arose, as it was Goddes wil; and Vrsula, r' shippis and here co*m*pany, was[25] dryuen, and þo xj M[l] es, toward[26] Hundelande, þrouȝ tempest', and arryuede in þe

D. [2–2] and to sowe D. [3] *om.* O. [4] *leaf* 18, *back.*
erstonde D. vndirfonge O.
andement for-as-miche as al þe lande was tak him to warde and kepe
þing' þat him þo likede D.
n. D. [8] for-as-mich O. [9] take O. [10] done O.
neny O. [12] nome DO. [13–13] the lande D. þe land' O.
ueliche D. [15] *MS.* his [16–16] þat leuede D. [17] eH O.
þai D. alle þey O.
company D. here Cumpanye O. her' R.
haydeyns D. of Maydenes O. [21] wenten O. [22] o O.
d þe O. [24] come O. [25] were O. [26] towardes O.

hauen of[1] þe citee of Coloigne. ¶ The kyng of þe lande, callede Gowan, was þo in þe citee; and when he wist þo[2] tyd þat so meny faire maydenes were *þer*e arryuede, he tok[3] El broþ*er*, and o*þer*e of[4] his houseliolde, wiþ him, and went shippes to see þat fair[5] company. and when he sawe ham so he and his co*m*pany wolde haue ham ou*er*layne, and by here maydenhode. ¶ but Vrsula, þat gode mayde, cons pr*a*yede, warnede, and tau3te ham þat were here felowes,[6] shulde defende ham wiþ al her[7] my3t, and ra*þer* suffre de suffre here [7]bodyes bene[7] defoulede. ¶ So þat alle þe m bicome so stedefast in God, þat þai defendede ham þro *gra*ce, so þat none of ha*m* hade power[8] to done ham eny wherfore þe kyng was[9] so sore annoiede, þat he, for wraþ, ham eu*er*ychon[10] anone ryght; and so were alle þe n martrede for þe loue of God, and ligget[11] at Coloyn.

How Kyng Gowan come forto destroye þis lande; and aman of grete power, þat me callede Gracian, defende lande. ¶ Capit*ulo* ¶ Qui[n]quagesimo ¶ Primo.

WHen al þis was done,[12] Kyng Gowan, þat was a sar callede his broþ*er* Elga, and saide to him þat he sl gone[13] to conquere þe lande þat alle þo[14] faire maydenes were bo in. and he ordeynede þo a grete power of Peihtes, of Denma Orkeneye, and of Norwaye, and þai comen into þis lande, and tounes, and slough folc, and caste adone cherches and house religiou*n*, and robbede the lande in lengh and in[17] brede, an to deth alle þo þat wolde noght forsake þe ryght bileue and c dome, for-asmiche as þ*er*e was none[18] sou*er*ayne in the lan my3t ha*m* helpe or [19]defende. ¶ For þe Kyng Maximian taken[20] wiþ him alle þe worþi men, when he went to conque Britaigne. and in þe same tyme þat 3e hure now telle, was Albone martrede þrou3 þe wode tyraunt Diodician in þe sam wherin is now an Abbay made of Seynt Albone, whiles þat a paynyme. ¶ But he conu*er*tede him towarde God, þrou3 dicaciou*n* of a grete clerc and a wyse, þat me callede Ancib

[1] *leaf* 19. [2] þe O. [3] nome DO. [4] fayne *sic* O.
[5] bynomen O. [6] felawes D. ffelaws O. felow R. [7–7] bod
[8] his O. here R. [9] Gowan wox D. Gowan wax O. [10] ec
[11] liggen D. [12] do O. [13] go DO. [14] þe D. [15] bore
[16] house O. [17] *om.* O. [18] no DO. [19] *leaf* 19, *back.*
[20] take O. [21] Affabeth O.

burghede a nyght in his house; and þis was after þe Incar-
of *Ihesu Crist* .ij C. xx iiij. vj 3ere. and men shullen[1] vnder
þat Seynt Albone soffrede his martredome bifore þat[2] Seynt
ude was martrede; and *per*fore is seynt Albone callede þe
artre of Engelande. ¶ This Gowan*us* bro*þer*, & his folk',
ere Sarasynes,[4] went þrou3-oute þe Lande, and destroyede al
t þai fonde; and no þing þai ne sparede. ¶ When þis tyd-
me to Rome, how þat Kyng Gowan hade bigonne forto
þis lande, þe Emp*erour* and þo of Rome sent a stronge
l of grete power, þat me callede Gracian, w[ith] xxiiij[5]
wel feightyng', forto caste oute Sarasynes of þis lande, and
rryuede[6] at Portesmouthe. Maximian my3t nou3t come
,[7] for-asmiche as he was chosen Emp*er*oure after þe deþ of
yn, þat was Seynt Elynes sone. ¶ When þis Gracian was
wiþ his host', he lete aspie p*ri*uely[8] wher þe[9] Kyng Gowan
bene founden[10]; and he come vppon[11] him sodeynly,[11] as
y in her beddes, [12]and descomfitede ham, and sloughe[12]
on,[14] *þat* non of hem Ascaped saf Gowan, *þat* fledde *with*
sorowe in-to his cuntre. Sone aftir yt byfel *þat* Maximian
layn at Rome, þurgh[15] treson); And when Gracian wyst þe
ge, he let Croune hym kyng of þis land.

Gracyan made hym kyng whan Maximian was slayn; & fter,[16] þe Brytou*n*s quelled hym for his wikkydnesse. apitulo quinquagesimo ij°.

s Gracian,[17] when he gan[17] forto regne, he bycome so wykked & so sterne, & so mych sorow wrought to þe Britouns, þat w hym amonges hem. ¶ Tho Kyng Gowan had vndirstande cian was do[18] to deth, he Assembled a gret power, & come to þis land; & yf he had arst don a[19] grete harme, þo dede more; for þo distroyed he al this land, & al[20] Crysten peple in Myche Brytaigne, so *þat* no m*an* was so[19] hardy for-to God; & ho *þat* dede, anon he was put to strong deth.

D. Shulden O. [2] *om.* O. [3] þai D. [4] Sarasines & D.
O. [6] arryueden O. [7] him D. [8] pryueliche D. [9] that D.
e founde DO. [11–11] ham sodeynliche D. hem sodeynly O.
nd slow ham in her beddes D. *om.* O.
Rawl. B. 171 *has two leaves missing here. They have been supplied Douce* 323 (*O*). [*MS. Douce* 323, *leaf* 17.]
che on D. [15] with D. [16] afterwarde D.
hen he biganne D. he began O. [18] done D. [19] *om.* D.
e D.

¶ But þe bysshop of London þat was þo, *þat* me called Go scaped, & went þens to hem of Rome, to seche socour for-t dystroye þe Sarazins þat had dystroyed þis land. ¶ A Romayns seyde[1] þat þey hadde be[2] so ofte anoyed for her se after folk in-to Brytaigne, al for-to helpe þe Britouns, & þey no more so do.[3] And so þe Bysshop Gosselyn went þens with ony Socour or helpe; & þo went he to þe Kyng of litil Bry þat me called Aldroye, & þis was þe iij kyng after Gowan Me as bifore is sayd. The bysshop prayed this Kyng Aldroye o & of helpe. the kyng hadde[5] herd how þe bysshop fledde þat[6] þe[7] Crystene men were slayn in gret Brytaigne þurgh P & Sarazins, & he graunted hym Constantyn his broþer, hyn helpe, with Poer of folk, & hem dede arraye hors arn schippes, & al thing þat hem neded to þat viage. and thing was redy, he called þe bysshop, & to hym seyd: "I here to helpe & socour Constantyn my broþer, vpon this coue þat 3if God 3ife hym grace, þe Paynems & Sarazins to sche discomfite, þat þanne 3e make hym kyng of þe land": & þe by yt graunted with good wyll. ¶ Constantyn & þe bysshop[8] leue þo of þe Kyng Aldroye, & by-took hym to[9] God, & non men xij M, & went in-to her schippes, & sayled toward þ Brytaigne, & Arryued in Tottenesse. whan þe Britouns herd tydyng[10] þat to hem come socour, þey[11] were stronglich holp ordeigned hem an huge nombre of peple, [12]& come to hem, & vndirfongen with mychel honour. ¶ Gowan, anon as he wy this þyng, he Assemblyd all þe Sarazins, & come azens hym,[13] batayll. And Constantyn slow hym with his owne hand; & othere Sarazins were discomfited & slayn, þat non aschaped þat were[6] conuerted vnto God.

How Constantyn, þat was þe kynges broþer of litel Bri was Crouned [14]kyng, for his worþines, of mych Breta Capitulo liij°.

Anon, aftir þe batayll, alle þey went to London, & crow Constantyn, & made hym kyng of þis lond. And þe Gosselyn sette þe Croune vpon his hed,[15] & anoynted

[1] sayden D. [2] bene D. [3] done D.
[4] wiþ-outen D. [5] hade grete pitee in hert when he D.
[6] *om.* D. [7] *MS.* þe Chi, *with* Chi *underlined for erasure.*
[8] bisshop tho D. [9] him to D. hym O. [10–10] tydynges D.
[11] ther D. [12] *leaf* 17, *back.* [13] ham D.
[14–14] kyng of michel britaigne for his worþinesse D. [15] heue

to[1] A kyng [2]for-to be[2]; & þ° bygan Crystendom. This[3]
ntyn,[4] whan he was Crouned, anon aftir he spoused his
rgh̄ counceil of þ^e^ Britouns; & he begate iij Sones on her:
t me called Constaunce,[5] þat other Aurylambros, & þ^e^ iij
¶ Constance, þ^e^ eldest brother, when he come to Age, made[6]
monke at Wynchestre. ·Constantyn here fadir was slayn
treson; for it byfeH vpon a tyme þat a Pohete come to hym
day, *in Message as yt were*, & seyd þat he wolde speke
kyng pryuyly[7] in Counceyl. The kyng lete voyde his
e of þ° men þat were with-Inne; & þo Abide[8] *þere* nomo[9]
yng & þe Pohete, & made a Contenaunce as þey[10] wolde
gidere[11] in his ere; & *þere* he qwelled hym *with* a long
after, went qweyntly out of þ^e^ Chambre in-to anoþer
; so at þe laste no man wyst wher he was bycome.[12]
þ^e^ kynges men it wyste, þat here lord was so ded, þei made
sorowe[13] þey nyst [14]aH what for-to[14] done, for-as-mych̄
sones, Aurylambros & Vter, weren so yenge þat non of
ght be kyng; & þ^e^ iij[15] broþer was monke at Wynchestre,
ayd before.[16] ¶ But Vortiger, þat was Erl of Westsex, þought
[17] in his herte, thurgh̄ queyntise, to be[18] kyng; & went to
estre *þer* þat Constaunce was[19] monk, & to hym seyde:
unce," quod he, "3oure fadir is ded, & 3our ij breþerin þat
Gosselyn, þ^e^ bysshop of London, to norysshⁿ, beth̄ so yeng,
of hem may be kyng; wherfore y counseyle þat 3e forsake
byte, & come[20] *with* me, & I schal do so to þ^e^ Brytouns þat
be made kyng."

**aunce, þat was[21] Constantyn*us* sone, þat was Monk at
chestr'; & how he was made kyng after his faders
þurgh̄ CounceiH of Vortiger, þat was Erle of Westsex,
s-mych̄ as Aurilambros & Vter, his ij breþerin, were
f yonge age, & [22]was slayn.[22] Ca*pitulo* liiij°.**

rtiger counceyled þis Constaunce so mych̄ tyl he forsook
Abyte, & went *with* hym. & anon aftir, he was Crouned
kyng by Assent of þ^e^ Brytouns. This kyng Constance,

[2–2] to bene D. [3] This kyng D.
s Constantyn her fadir, *with* her fadir *struck out*.
nce and D. [6] he made D. make O. [7] pryueliche D.
). [9] noman D. [10] thouȝ he D. [11] with þe kyng' D.
n D. [13] sorw that D. [14–14] what to D. [15] eldest D.
ide biforne D. [17] pryueliche D. [18] ben D.
le D. [20] comeþ D. [21] was kyng' D.
ger lete hi*m* slee to ben kyng' himself' D.

whan he was crouned & made kyng, he wyst ne knew but
þe world, ne cowde[1] [2]no thing as knyghthood axed', he
Vortiger his maister & his chef Counceillour, & yaf hym
power, for-to ordeigne & do as myche as to þe reaume perteyn
þat hym-self no þing entrauelled, but only[3] bare þe name of
¶ Whan Vortiger saw þat he had al þe[4] land in his wa
gouernayle, at his owne wyH, he þought A pryue Tres
þought to sle Constance þe kyng, þat he myght hym-s
Crouned & made[5] kyng & regne, & lete sende after a[6] C kn
of Pehetes, þe worthiest of[7] þe land, & hem helde[8] with h
duelle wiþ him, [10]and[9] to bene[10] Kepers of his body, as l
wende þrouȝ þe lande to ordeyne þinges þat perteynede to
¶ And þis Vortiger honourede so miche þo C̄ knyȝtes, and
ȝaf ham of golde and siluer, & so ryche reweH,[11] robes, h
oþere noble plente, wherfore þai helde him more lorde
deden[12] þe kyng. ¶ And Vortyger tolde ham, if þat he
bene[13] kyng, he,[6] as it were þrouȝ tresouñ, he wolde mak
richest of þe lande. so[15] at the laste, þrouȝ grete ȝiftes þat he
ȝeue largely, þai crieden[17] þrouȝ þe court þat Vortiger were
worþi ben[18] kyng þan Constance; wherfore Vortiger mad
blant as þauȝ[19] he hade bene[20] wroþ, and departede þens
court, and saide he most[21] gone elles-where[21] for þing þat he
done; and so þe traitoure ȝede[22] for[23] enchesouñ þat þai[24]
slee [25]him, þat is to seyne,[25] Constance. ¶ When þis Vorti
gone, hit bifelle sone after þat þo C̄ knyȝtȝ of Peightes h
þe dores of þe kynges chambre, and þere þai him slough and s
of his heuede,[28] and bare it to Vortiger þere þat he duelle
when Vortyger saw þat heuede,[28] he wepte ful tenderly wiþ
and noþelese he was some dele glade of his deth, and a
take þo[29] C̄ knyȝtes of Peightes, & bonde[30] here hondes
ham, and lade ham to Londoñ; & þere þai were dampne

[1] coupe D. [2] *leaf* 18. [3] onliche D.
[4] þis D. [5–5] ben cronede D. [6] *om.* D.
[7] of al D. [8] with-helde D.
[9–9] *om.* D. [*MS. Rawl. B.* 171, *leaf* 20.] [10–10] as to be O.
[11] Iewels O. [12] þai deden D. þey dede O. deden R.
[13–13] miȝt ben D. must be O. [14] hym O. [15] So þat O.
[16] þai D. [17] criede D. Cryede O. [18] to be O. [19] *om.*
[20] be O. [21–21] gone elles-whider D. go elles-whedir O.
[22] saide D. seyde O.
[23] *MS.* for tresouñ, *with* tresouñ *underlined for erasure.* [24]
[25–25] *om.* D. hym þat is to sey O. [26] broken D. [27] sn
[28] heed O. [29] þe D. [30] bynde O.

traitoures. ¶ and anone after', al þe britons of þe lande, by
ne assent', cronede þere Vortiger, & made him kyng of þe[1]

þe wardeynes þat hade þo[2] ij[3] childerne to kepe, þat were Constantines sones, lade ham to litel Britaigne, for the resoun and falsenesse of Vortiger'. ¶ Capitulo ¶ Quinquagesimo ¶ Quinto.

s kyng Vortyger, when he was croned, þo þat [5]hade þe ij[5]
hilderne in kepyng', Aurilambros and Vter', þrouȝ ordenance
elyn, þat was bisshop of London at his deþ, derst nouȝt
the lande wiþ þe childerne,[6] but lade ham to þe kyng of
taigne, forasmiche as he þo wiste þe tresoun of Vortiger, þat
nade Kyng', þrouȝ wham Constance here broþer was slayn,
þo C̄ knyȝtes of Peightes were put to þe[8] deth, and bare
me, as þeiȝt Vortiger [7]hade nouȝt wiste[7] þerof', noþer þerto
ede; and so þe Kepers of þo ij childerne drade[8] laste
r wolde put ham to deth, þrouȝ his tresoun and falsenesse, as
e done[9] her' broþer biforne; and þerfor þai wer' ladde ouer
tel Britaigne, and þe kyng ham resceynede wiþ michel[10]
and lete ham to norisshe; and þere þai duellede til þai
fair' knyȝteȝ, &[3] st[r]ong and ferse, and þouȝt[11] euer' to
avengede of[13] þe deth of Constantyne[14] here broþer, when
re tyme; and so þai deden,[15] as þe[16] shul hur'[17] aftirward'.
as nouȝt long after', þat[18] þe tydynges ne[18] come ouer' þe see,
ede of þe C̄ knyȝteȝ of[19] Peightes þat were dampnede and
deth þrouȝ Vortiger' in þis lande; þerfore þai[21] weren
wroþe, & sworen þat þai[22] [[23]would be[23] avenged of her
] and comen into þis lande wiþ a grete power', & rob-
meny places, & slouȝ,[25] & dede[26] al þe sorw þat[27] þai
hen Vortyger hit wiste, he [28]made [29]sorw ynow[29] and

[2] *om.* O. [3] *om.* D. [4] *leaf* 20, *back.*
o D. ij *sic* O.
rne of þe lande, *with* of þe lande *underlined for erasure.*
t D. [8] dradden O. [9] do O.
[11] þoughten O. [12] be O. [13] vpon O.
[15] dede O. [16] ȝe DO.
le O.
of þe O. [20] *om.* DO.
ere wonderly O. [22] *MS.* þai wonderly wroþ.
n ben O. [24] robbed O.
s D. quelled' O. [26] deden D. [27] as O.
e sorw D. mych sorowe O.

sore was anneyede; and in a-noþer *par*tie also tydynges[1] þat Aurilambros & Vter[3] ordeynede ham,[4] and assemblede hoste forto[5] come into michel[6] Britaigne, þat is to seyne, i lande, to bene[7] avenged[8] of Constance [8]deþ her[8] broþer[8]; [9]in one[9] half and in þat oþer he was brouȝt into so[10] miche þat he nyst[1] whider to wende.

How Engist and xj M[1] men come into þis lande, to Vortiger[3] [illegible] place þat [11]is callede[11] Thonge Cap*itu*lo lvj[to].

And sone after[1] þis [12]sorw, tidynges[12] come to Vortig grete nauye[13] of straungers were arryuede in[14] K þai wist nouȝt whens[15] þai were, ne wherfore þai were ¶ The Kyng sent anone messagers[17] þider[1], þat so*mme* shulde come and speke wiþ him, forto wete what folc þa and what þai axede, and into what contre þai wolde gone.[1] were ij breþ*er*ne, Prynces and maistres of þat straunge co þat on me callede Engist, and þat oþ*er* Horn. Engist w to þe kyng[1], & tolde to him encheson wher-fore þai we arryuede in his[19] lande, and saide: "sire! we beth[20] of a þat [21]is callede[21] Saxoyne, þat is, þe Lande of Germayn, so[10] miche sorw, þat[22] þe peple is[23] so myche þat þe lan [24]nouȝt ha*m*[24] sustene ne suffice. ¶ The maystres & Pry haueþ[25] þe lande to gou*er*ne and rewele, shul done co ham men and wy*m*men, þe[26] boldest [27]þat bene am and best mowen[27] trauaile into diu*er*se3[28] londes; a [29]shal[30] ham 3eue Horse and harneyse, armure, and ham neded; and after[1] þai[31] say to ham þat þai go contre, wher þat[4] þai [32]mowen leue,[32] as here auncest biforne ham. and þ*er*fore, sire kyng, if[34] 3e ha

[1] tydyng[1] O. [2] come to him D. come to hym O.
[3] Vter his bro*þer* DO. [4] *om.* D. [5] for D. [6] Mich
[7] be O. [8–8] hir[8] bro*þer*es deth D. here bro*þer*s deth O.
[9–9] on o O. [10] *om.* O. [11–11] Called[1] is O.
[12–12] sorwe tydyng D. tydynge O.
[13] meny D. meyne O. [14] in the contre of D. in þe
[15] what D. [16] come O. [17] a messag*er* D. a me
[18] go O. [19] þis O. [20] be O. [21–21] called is
[23] be O. [24–24] hem not O. [25] hauen DO.
[27–27] amonges ha*m* forto fi3t þat best mow D.
light þat best mow O.
[28] diuerse D. diuers O. [29] *leaf* 21, *back*
[31] þai shul D. þey schul O.
[32–32] mow leuen D. mow lyue O. [33] dede

þi goure company, we [1] bene comen [1] into 3oure lande; and
de wille 3ow wil serue, and 3our lande helpe, kepe, &
fram [2] 3oure enemys, if þat 3ow nedeþ." ¶ when Vortiger
þis tydynges, [3] he saide he wolde gladeliche [4] wiþhalde ham,
soche couenant, if þai myȝt delyuer his lande of his enemys,
de 3eue ham resonable landes, wher þai shulde duelle for
re. ¶ Engist þankede him godeliche; and in þis maner he
s company, ¶ xj. M [5] men, shulde duelle wiþ þe Kyng
; and so miche þai deden [6] þrouȝ here bold nesse, þat þai
de þe lande clene of here [6] enemys. ¶ þo [7] wiede Engist
, of so miche lande þat he myȝt make to him a citee, for
for his menye. [7] ¶ The kyng ansuerede [8] & saide, [8] 'it
ȝt forto done [9] wiþouten [10] conseile of his Britons.'
prayede him eftesones of as miche place as he myȝt
wiþ a twonge of a skyn, wher-oppon he myȝt make him
, and for his to duelle in [11]; and þe kyng *gr*antede it [12]
¶ þo tok [13] Engist a bole skyn, and cotte it as smale as he
[14] into a twonge al rounde, & *þer*-wiþ *com*passede as miche
s he [15] *com*passede; wher-oppon he [15] made [16] a faire castel.
nen þis castel was ymade, [17] he lete calle it Twongecastel,
iche as þe place *was* m*er*kede wiþ a twonge.

**ewenne, þat was Engistes doughter, [18] and how [19] Kyng
yger [spou]sede her [20] for here beaute. [20] C. lvij^mo.**

n þis castel was makede, [21] and ful wel arraiede, Engist
iuely sent bi lettre into þe contre þat he come of, after
ede shippis fillede with strange [23] men þat were bolde
tyng in alle batailes; and þat þai shulde bryng wiþ
nne, his dou*ȝ*t*er*, þat was þe fairest *c*reature þat eny [24]
e. ¶ And when þe peple was comen, þat he hade [22]
he toke [25] ham into þe castel wiþ michel [26] ioye; and
f, vppon a day, went vnto þe kyng, and p*r*ayede him
he wolde come and see his new maner, þat he hade
ace þat he hade compassede wiþ þe [29] twong of þe

[2] fro O. [3] tydyng DO. [4] gladly DO.
[6] his DO. [7] meyne O. [8–8] *om.* DO. [9] do O.
with-oute O. [11] on DO. [12] hi*m* D. hym O.
[14] *om.* O. [15–15] *om.* DO. [16] made vpon O.
[18] *leaf* 22. [19] how þe D. [20–20] *om.* O. [21] made O.
stronge D. [24] a DO. [25] nome DO. [26] myche O.
[28] derworthly D. deworlyly O. [29] a D.

skyn. þe kyng anone *gra*ntede[1] him frely, and wiþ hi
þider', and was wel payede wiþ þe castel & wiþ þe faire wer
togederes þere þai eten and dranken[2] wiþ michel[3] ioye.
when nyȝt come, þat[4] þe kyng shulde go into his chambr
take þere his nyȝtes reste, Ronewenne, þat was Engistes d
come wiþ a coupe of golde in here honde, and knelede bi
kyng', and saide to him "Whatsaile!" and þe kyng wist
what it was forto[5] mene, ne what he shulde ansuere, for-asm
himself' ne none of his Britons ȝitte coupe[6] none Englissh
ne vnderston[illegible] it, but speken[7] þo þat[8] same langage þat
ȝitte done. ¶ Noþeles, a Latymer' tolde þe kyng' þe ful
stondyng' þerof 'whatsaill'; and [9]þat oþer shulde[9]
'drynkehaile': and' þat was þe ferst tyme þat 'whats
'drynkehaile' come vp into þis lande; and fram[11] þat [12]ty
this tyme it Haþ bene wel vsede. ¶ The Kyng Vortiger[14]
fairenesse of Ronewenne, and his[16] armes layde abo
nek', and þries[17] swetely cussede hir'; and anone ryȝt
vnarmerede oppon hire, þat he desirede to haue here to
axede of Engist' hir' fader'. and Engist *gra*ntede,[18] op
couenaunt þat þe kyng shulde ȝeue him al the[19] contre of K
he myȝt duelle in, and al his[20] peple. þe kyng hym *gra*ntede
with a gode wille; and anone after' he spousede þe damiseH.
miche co*n*fusion to himself'; and þerfor al þe Britouns b
wroþ, for enchesoun þat he hade spousede a wo*m*man of
wherfore þai went al from[21] him, and noþing[22] to him
ne helpe him in þinges þat he hade to done.

How Vortymere, þat was Vortigers sone, was mad Engist dryuen oute; & how Vortymer' was Ronewenne. ¶ Ca*pitulo* lviij°.

THis Engist went into Kent, and seisede al þe lan
hande, for him and for al[24] his men; and bic
while of so grete power', & so miche peple hade,
nouȝt in litel tyme, whiche were þe kynges men,

[1] *gra*unt O. [2] drunken O. [3] myeh O. [4] *om.* D
[5] to DO. [6] coude O. [7] spoken D. [8] þ^e O.
[9–9] þe oþer shul D. þat other O. [10] Answere schul
[11] fro O. [12] *leaf* 22, *back*. [13] to D.
[14] *MS. has* Ronewenne; *om.* D. [15] þo saw D. whan
[16] *altered from* hir *by the same hand*. [17] iij DO.
[19] him al the D. hym al þ^e O. him R. [20] *MS.* his
[21] fro O. [22] þo þing *sic* D. [23] in O. [24] *om.* D

Engistes men. wherfore al Britaigne hade of ham[1] drede, and saide amonges ham þat, if þai ne toke oþ*er*e counseil bituene[2] ham, al þe lande shulde be bitr*a*yede þrou3 Engist and his peple. ¶ Vortyg*er* þe kyng hade bigeten[3] on his ferst wif[e] iij sones: þe ferst ne callede Vortymer[e]; þe secunde, Catagren; and þe þridde, Passent. þe Britons, eu*er*ychon[e][4] by one assent[e], chosen[5] Vortymer forto bene[6] here lorde, & here souerayne, and hir[e] conseiler[e] in eu*er*y [7]bataile, and cronede him, and made him Kyng[e], and Wolde[8] soffre Vortiger[e] no longer[e] to regne, for enchesoun of þe alliance bituene Engist and him. ¶ þe Britons ordeynede a grete host to drif out Engist and his company of þe lande, and 3af him iij batailles: þe ferst w*a*s in Kent, þ*er*e þat he was lorde; þe secunde was att Tetteford; and þe þridde was in a shire a þis half Cool, in a more. & in þis batail ham mette Cattegren and Horn, Engistes bro þ*er*, so þat eu*er*yche[9] of ham slou3 o þ*er*; but for-asmiche as[10] þe contre w*a*s 3euen[11] longe bifore to Horn, þrou3 Vortyg*er*, þo he hade spousede his cosyn; þ*er*e he hade made a faire castel þat me callede Horncastel, after[e] his owen name. ¶ And Vortymere was so annoiede for his bro þ*er*es deþ, Cattegren, þat he w*a*s dede in soche a maner[e]; wherfore anone he lete felle þe castel to þe[12] grounde, and after[e] þat,[12] he ne lefte ny3t ne day til he hade dryuen[13] out Engist and aH his peple of þe lande. ¶ And when Engist was dryuen[13] away, Ronewenne his dou3t*er* made sorwe ynow, and queyntly spake to ham þat were nexte þe kyng Vortymere,[14] and priueest wiþ him. and so miche she 3af ham of 3iftes, þat he was apoysenede, & deide at Londoñ þe iiij 3ere of his regne; & þ*er*e he lith.

How þe Britons chosen[15] a-no þ*er*e tyme Vortyg*er* to bene[16] here king[e]; and Engist come into þis lande a3eyne, & þai fou3ten to-gedres.[17] ¶ Capit*ulo* lix°.

After[e] Vortymeres deþ,[18] þe Britons, by here c*o*mmune assent, Eftesones made Vortyg*er* here kyng[e], vppoñ þis couenaunt, þat he shulde neu*er* after[e] soffren[19] Engist, ne none of his, eftesones shulde[20] come into þis lande. ¶ And when al þis was done,

[1] *MS.* ham a, *with* a *underlined for omission.* him D. hym O.
[2] bitunes D. [3] bygete O. [4] echeon O. [5] closen *sic* D. [6] be DO.
[7] *leaf* 23. [8] wolde nou3t D. [9] eche O. [10] þat O. [11] 3eue D. yeue O.
[12] *om.* O. [13] dryve O. [14] Vortiger O. [15] chose O. [16] be O.
[17] to-gidere O. [18] deth the britouns D. deth þe brytouns O. deþ R.
[19] soffre D. suffre O. [20] *om.* DO.

Ronewenne þe Quene [1]sent *priuely*[1] by lettre to Engist, that she hade enpoisenede Vortymer, and þat Vortyger her lorde [2]ayeyne bare þe croune and regnede, and þat he shulde come ayeyne into [3]þat lande, wel arraiede wiþ miche peple, forto avenge him vppon þe Britons, and to wynne his lande ayeyne. ¶ of þis tydyng Engist made grete ioye, and apparailede him hastely wiþ xv M[l] men þat were douzty en *euery* batail. And when Vortyger herde telle þat Engist was comen[4] ayeyne wiþ a grete power into þis lande, he assemblede his Britons, and þo went ayeyns Engist forto haue zeue him bataile, and his folc; but Engist drade him sore of þe Britons, for þai hade descomfitede[5] him biforn-hand, and dryuen him[6] out by[7] strengþ; wherfore Engist *prayede* him[8] of a loue-day, and saide he was nouzt comen[9] forto fizt, but forto[10] haue his lande ayeyne of Kent, if he might accorde wiþ þe Britons, and of ham haue *grace*. ¶ [11]The Kyng Vortiger,[11] þrouz conseile of his Britons, [12]grauntede a loue-day[12]; and þus it was ordeynede þrouz þe Britons, þat þilk[13] loue-day shulde [14]ben holden[14] faste bisides Salesbury, vppon an[15] hull; and Engist shulde come þider wiþ iiij^c^ knyztes, wiþouten[16] mo, and þe kyng wiþ as meny of þe wisest of þis[17] lande. ¶ And at þat day þe kyng come wiþ his conseil, as it was ordeynede; but Engist hade warnede his knyztes *priueliche*,[18] and[19] ham *com*mandede þat *euerychc*[20] of ham shulde put a Longe Knyf in his hose; and when he saide, "faire sires! now is tyme forto[21] speke of loue and pees," *euerychc*[22] anone, *euerychc*[8] shulde draw his knyf & slee a Britoun. & so þai quellede xxx M[l] & lxj of knyztes; and wiþ miche sorwe meny of ham ascapede; and Vortyger him-self was taken [23]and Lade to Twongecastell, and put into prisoun; and *somme* of Engistes men wolde þat þe kyng hade bene[24] brent al quyk. ¶ And Vortiger þo, to haue his lif, *grauntede* ham as miche as þai [25]wolde axen,[25] and 3af vp all þe lande, tounes and castelles, citees and Burghes, to Engist and to his folc. and alle þe Britons fledde þenns into Walys, and *þere* helde ham stille. and Engist went þrouz þe lande, and seisede alle þe lande with ffraunchises; and in *euery* place lete caste adoune

[1–1] priueliche sent D. priuyly sent O. [2] *leaf* 23, *back*. [3] to O. [4] *MS.* cocomen; come O. [5] scomfitede D. scomfited O. [6] *om.* O. [7] with DO. [8] *om.* DO. [9] come into þis land DO. [10] to O. [11–11] And kyng Vortyger *graunt* a loue-day D. The kyng O. [12–12] *om.* D. [13] þat same D. þe same O. [14–14] be holde D. be hold O. [15] a D. [16] without DO. [17] his DO. [18] priuyly O. [19] & to D. [20] eche O. [21] to DO. [22] eche O. [23] *leaf* 24. [24] be O. [25–25] wolden axe O.

cherche3 and houses of religioun, and destroyede Cristendome þrou3 þe lande, and lete chaunge þe name of þe lande, þat no man of his were so hardy after' þat tyme to calle þis[1] lande Britaigne, but calle it Engistes lande; and he[2] dep*ar*tede alle þat lande to his men, and þ*er*e made vij kynges forto strengþ þe lande, þat þe Britons shulde neuer' after' come þ*er*in. ¶ The ferst kyngdome was Kent, þ*er*e þat Engist him-self regnede, and was lorde & maystre ou*er* al þe[2] op*er*e; ¶ Anoþ*er*e kyng hade Southsex̄, where now is Chichestre; ¶ The þridde kyng hade Westsex̄; The ferþe kyng hade Essex̄; ¶ The v kyng hade Estangle, þat now is callede Northfole,[3] Southfole,[4] Merchemeriche, þat[5] is to seynt, þe Erldome of Nichol; ¶ þe sixte hade Leycestreshire, Northamptonshire, Hereford and Huntyngdoune; ¶ The vij hade Oxenford, Gloucestr', Wynchestre, Warwik' and Darby-shire.

How Vortig*er* went into Walis, and biganne þ*er*e a castel, þat wolde nou3t stande wiþouten[6] morter' temprede wiþ mannes[7] blode. ¶ Capitulo ¶ Sexagesimo.

[8]WHen Engist hade dep*ar*tede al þe lande in this maner' bitwene his men, he delyuerede Vortiger' out of p*ri*son, and soffrede hym frely [9]to gone[9] whider' þat[2] he wolde. and he toke[10] his way, [11]and went[11] into Walys, þ*er*e þat[12] his Britons duellede, for-asmiche as þat lande was strong' and wikkede to wynne. and Engist [13]neuer' come[13] þ*er*e, ne knew[14] neu*er* bifore þat Lande. ¶ Vortig*er* helde him þ*er*e wiþ his Britons, and axede conseil what him[4] was best al[4] forto done; and þai 3af him conseil to make a stronge castel þat' he my3t him-self þ*er*in kepe and defende[15] if it[2] nede were. Masounes in hast þ*er*e[16] were fette, and bigonne þe werk' oppon þe huH of Breigh; but certes þus it bi-felle, þat[7] al the werk' þat[4] þe masounes made[17] aday, adoune it felle any3t; and þat ferede so iij tymes or iiij, wherof þai hadden[18] grete wonder' what it my3t bene[19]; & þ*er*of þe kyng was sore annoiede of þat chaunce, and wist nou3t what to done; wherfore he lete sende after' þe wisest' clerkes, and also lewede men þat weren[20] þrou3-out Walys, þat myght bene[21] fonde, for þai shulde telle wherfore þe

[1] þat D. [2] *om.* O. [3] Northfolk & O. [4] *om.* D.
[5] þat now O. [6] with-oute DO. [7] *om.* DO. [8] *leaf 24, back.*
[9–9] go D. to go O. [10] nome DO. [11–11] *om.* D. [12] as D.
[13–13] come neu*er* D. [14] knew it D. knewe yt O. [15] defende yt O.
[16] þo DO. [17] masouns made DO. masounes R.
[18] hade D. had O. [19] be O. [20] were O. [21] be DO.

foundement so failede vnde[r] þe werk', and þat þai shulde him telle what was best to done. and when þe wisest men[1] longe tyme hade studiet, þai saide to þe kyng' þat 'he shulde done[2] slike a childe borne of a woman þat neuer hade wiþ man to done,[3] & þat childe he shulde sleen,[3] & temper wiþ his[4] blode þe morter of þe werk', & so shulle[5] þe werke [6]endure euermore[6] wiþouten ende.'

How þe kyng' lete seche Merlyn[7] þrouȝ al Walys forto speke wiþ him. Capitulo lxj°.

WHen þe kyng herde þis, he commandede his messagers anone to wende þrouȝ-out al Walys, to seche þat childe if þai myght [8]him fynde,[8] and þat þai[9] shulde [10]brynge him forthwiþ ham vnto him. and in recorde and witnesse of þis þing, he take[11] ham his lettres,[12] þat þai[1] ne were[13] destourblede of no man, ne lette. ¶ And so faste [14]spede ham[14] the messagers, þat þai come vnto[15] a toune þat me callede Kermerdyn; and as þai passede fourth in[16] here way, þai fonden ij childerne of xiiij ȝere age [17]chiddyng togeder'[17] wiþ hastif wordes; and one of ham saide to þat oþer "Donebat," quod he, "ȝe[18] done al wronge to chide or strif wiþ me, for ȝe haue no witte ne resoun as I haue." ¶ "Certes, Merlyn," quod [19]þat oþere,[19] "of ȝoure witte and [20]of ȝour' resoun y make no force, for men [21]telleþ communeliche[21] þat ȝe haue no þing of god, siþ ȝe hade neuer' fader', but alle men weten[22] wel ho is ȝoure moder'." ¶ The kynges messagers, when þai herde þis strif bituene þo ij gromes, þai axede of men þat [23]stoden bituene[23] ham, whens þat Merlyn was born, & [24]who him norisshede; and þe folc ham tolde þat a grete gentil-woman him bare in Kermerdyne, þat me callede Adhan, but neuere myȝt men[25] wete who was[26] þe childes fader'. ¶ When þe messagers herde þis tydynges,[27] þai went anone to him þat was wardeyne of þe toune, and tolde him þe kynges wille and his lettres,[28] wherfore þai were comen[29] þider'. ¶ Merlyn and his moder' anone were sent[30] bifore þe wardeyne of þe toune, and he commandede ham[9] þat þai

[1] *om.* O. [2] do D. [3] slee D. sle O. [4] þe O. [5] schuld O.
[6–6] euer' endur' D. euere endure O. [7] seche Merlyn DO. seche R.
[8–8] fynde hym O. [9] *om.* D. [10] *leaf* 25. [11] had take O.
[12] lettre O. [13] weren O. [14–14] þo spede D. þo speddе O.
[15] in-to O. [16] *om.* DO. [17–17] chidden ifere D. chidden y-fere O.
[18] *MS.* ȝe beþ, *with* beþ *underlined for erasure.* [19–19] þe toþer O.
[20] ne DO. [21–21] telle comunly O. [22] wot O.
[23–23] stode bisides D. stoden by-sydes O. [24] *and* also DO.
[25] man O. [26] miȝt be D. myght be O. [27] tyding D. tydynge O.
[28] lettre DO. [29] come O. [30] sent after D.

shulde gone[1] to þe kyng', as hit was ordeynede by his[2] messagers. ¶ Merlyn and his moder' come[3] vnto[4] þe kyng', and were vnderfonge wiþ michel[5] honour'; and þe kyng axede of þat lady 'if þat childe were her' sone, and who him bigate.'[6] ¶ The lady ansuerede, ful tender'[7] wepyng, and saide she hade neuer' company of man [8]worldely'; "but, sire," *quod* shee, "as y was a 3onge maiden in my faderes chambre, and o*þ*ere of[9] grete lynage were in my company, þat ofte were wont to playe and to solacen, I belefte allone in my chaumbre [10]of my fader',[10] & wolde nou3t goñ[11] out, for brennyng of þe sone. ¶ And oppoñ a tyme *þere* come a faire bachiler', and entrede into my chaumbre *þere* þat I was allone; but how he come into me, & wher', I wiste neu*er*,[12] ne 3itte wote, for þe dores were fast barrede; and wiþ me he dede game of loue, for I [13]nade no*þer*[13] my3t ne power' him to defende fro me; and ofte he come to me in the forsaide maner, so þat he bigate one me þis same childe; but neuer' my3t y wete of him what he was, ne whens he come, ne what was his name."

Of þe ansuere of M*er*lyn, wherfore þe kyng axede whi his werk' myght nou3t stande þat he hade bigonne, [14]my3t nou3t p*ro*ue.[14] Cap*itul*o lxij°.

WHen Merlyn hade herde al þat his moder' hade saide, he spake[15] to þe kyng in this maner': "sire, how y was bigeten, axe 3e no more, for hit falleþ nou3t to 3ow ne to none o*þ*ere [16]forto wete[16]; but [17]telle me þe[17] enchesone wherefore I ame to 3ow brou3t, and wherfore 3e haue sent after' me." ¶ "Certes," *quod* þe kyng', "my wise concelers hauen[18] done[19] me to vnderstonde þat þe morter of a werk' þat I haue done bigonne biheueþ,[20] ben[21] temp*er*ede wiþ 3our' blode, or þe fundement shal faile for eu*er*more." ¶ "Sire," *quod* Merlyn, "wille 3e slee me for my blode forto temp*er* wiþ 3oure morter'?" "3e," *quod* þe kyng, "or elles shal neu*er* my castel stonde, as my conselers done[22] me to vnderstonde." ¶ þo ansurede Merlyn to þe kyng': "sire," he saide, "late ham come bifore [23]me, þo wise[24] conselers, and I wil p*ro*ue þat þai say

[1] go O. [2] þe O. [3] comen DO. [4] to O. [5] mych O.
[6] gate D. [7] tendirly O. [8] *leaf* 25, *back.*
[9] *MS.* of god, *with* god *underlined for erasure.* [10–10] *om.* D.
[11] go O. [12] neuer' wher' D. neu*er* where O. [13–13] hade no D.
[14–14] *om.* D. ne prove O. [15] spok' D. [16–16] *om.* O.
[17–17] telleþ me D. telleth me O. [18] haue DO. [19] do O.
[20] bihoueth D. byhoueþ O. [21] to be O. [22] do O.
[23] *leaf* 26. [24] *om.* D.

nou3t wel ne trewely. and when þe[1] wise were comen, Merlyn axede if his blode were þe enchesoun to make þe[2] werke stande to endure. Alle þise[3] wise were abasshede, and coud nou3t answere. ¶ Merlyn þo saide to þe kyng[r] : "sire, I shal telle 3ow þe encheson wherfore 3our[r] werk[r] þus faileþ[5] and may nou3t stande. þere is vnder þe mountaigne þere þat[6] 3e haue bigonne 3our[r] tour[r] a grete ponde of water; and in þe botume of þe ponde, vnder[r] þe water, þere beþ ij dragons,—þat one is white, and þat oþere[7] rede,—þat feiȝten to-geder ageyne[8] 3oure werk[r]. Doþ myne depe til 3our[r] men come to the ponde, and doth 3our[r] men take away þe water al out, and þan 3e shul see þe dragons, as I haue 3ow tolde, [9]þo togederes[9] feiȝten ageyne[10] 3our[r] werk ; and þis is þe[11] [12]encheson, certes, wherfore[12] 3our[r][13] fundement faileþ.[14]" ¶ the kyng[r] anone lete degge vnder[r], til þat men come to þe[15] ponde, & lete do[16] away al þe water; and þere þai fonde ij dragons, as Merlyn hade tolde, þat egrely fouȝten togederes[17]; þe white dragoun egrely assailede þe rede, and laide on him so strong[18] þat he myȝt nou3t endure, but wiþdrowe him, & hidde him in the same Cafe, and restede. ¶ And when he hade awhile restede, he went bifore, and assailede þe rede dragoun angrely, and assailede[19] him so sore þat he myȝt nou3t aȝeynes him endure, but with-drow him and restede. And after[r] come aȝeyne þe white dragoun, and strongely fouȝt wiþ þe reede dragoune, and bote him euel, & him ouer-come, þat he fley þens, and nomore come aȝeyne.

[20]Of þe significacions[21] of þo ij dragounes þat were in þe botume of þe ponde, þat fouȝten togederes.[22] Capitulo Sexagesimo tercio.

THe Kyng Vortiger[r] and his men, þat saw [23]þis bataile,[23] hade[24] grete mervaile, and prayede Merlyn to telle him what it myght bitoken. "Sire," *quod* Merlyn, "y shal 3ow telle : the rede dragoun bitokeneþ[25] 3oure-self[f], & þe white bitokeneþ þe folc of Saxoine, þat ferst 3e toke and helde[26] in þis lande, þat now feiȝten aȝeines 3ow,

[1] þise D. [2] 3our O. [3] and D. [4] þe O.
[5] failleȝ D. falleþ O. [6] *am.* D. [7] oþere is D. oþer is O.
[8] aȝeynes D. aȝens O. [9—9] þat to-geder D. þat togider O.
[10] aȝeynes D. [11] *om.* O. [12—12] cause whi that D. [13] þe O.
[14] failes D. [15] þat DO. [16] done DO. don O. [17] to-gidere O.
[18] strongelich D. strongly O. [19] helde D. held O. [20] *leaf* 26, *back*.
[21] significacioun D. significacion O. [22] togider O.
[23—23] that batail þai D. þe bataylH O. [24] hadden O.
[25] bitokenes D. [26] helden D.

and 3ow haue[1] dryuen and enchacede.[2] ¶ But þe Britons þat bene of 3our' lynage ouercome[3] ham, and dryuen ham awhile; and siþen,[4] at þe comyng a3eyne of þe Saxoynes, þai recouerede þis lande, and helde hit for euermore, and dryuen[5] oute þe Britouns, and dede wiþ þis lande al her' wille, & destriede cristendome þrou3oute þis lande. ¶ 3e hade ferst' ioye of here [6]commyng, but[6] now it is turnede to 3ow grete damage & sorwe; ffor þo ij breþerne of Constance þat was kyng, þat[7] 3e lete slee, [8]shul comen[8] bifore a Quin3ime passede wiþ a grete power' fram litel Britaigne, and shul avenge þe deþ of hire broþer[9]: þai shal brenne 3ow ferst wiþ sorwe, & after' þai shul sle a grete partie of þe[10] Saxoynes, and shul dryue al þe remanent[11] oute[10] of the lande; and þerfore abide 3e[12] no longer' to[13] make no casteH ne none obere werk', but anone gone[14] elle3-where, 3oure lif[15] forto saue. to God I 3ow bitake, for treuþ I haue[16] I-saide to 3ow[16] of þing þat shal bifalle. And vnderstonde[17] wel þat Aurilambros shal bene[18] kyng', but he shal bene[18] enpoisenede,[19] and litil while[20] regne."

Of Kyng' Aurilambros; how he pursuede Vortiger and Engist, and how þai deiden. Capitulo Sexagesimo Quarto.

MErlyn and his moder' depdrtede fro þe kyng', and turnede[21] a3eyne to Kermerdyn. and so after' tydynges[22] come to þe Britons þat Aurilambros and Vter' his broþer' were[23] arryuede at Tottenesse wiþ a grete host, and þe Britouns anone assemblede ham, & went to vnderfong Aurilambros and Vter' wiþ grete nobleye, & ladde ham to London, and cronede þere Aurylambros, and made him kyng', and deden[24] to him homage. and he axede wher' Vortiger þat was kyng myght[25] bene founden,[25] for he[7] wolde bene[26] avengede of[27] his broþere3 deþ, and after' he wolde werre oppon paynymes: and þai tolde him þat Vortiger' was in Walis; and so þai ladde him[28] þiderward.[29] ¶ Vortiger' wist wel þat þo ij breþerne come[30] him to conquere, & fleye þens into a castel þat me[7]

[1] hauen O. [2] enchacen O. [3] ouercomen O. [4] seþ O.
[5] dryve O. [6–6] company *and* D. [7] *om.* D.
[8–8] shul come D. schullen come O. [9] broþer and D. broþer *and* O.
[10] *om.* O. [11] remaunte D. remnaunt O. [12] 3e her' D. 3e here O.
[13] *MS.* tok. [14] goþ D. goth O. [15] lif al D. lyf al O.
[16–16] 3ow saide D. seyd to 3ow O. [17] vndirstondiþ O. [18] be DO.
[19] poysenede D. [20] tyme DO. [21] *leaf* 27.
[22] tydynge D. dydyng *sic* O. [23] weryn O. [24] dede DO.
[25–25] be founde DO. [26] be O. [27] on O. [28] hem O.
[29] þider' D. [30] comen O.

callede[1] Generth, þat stode vppon an hye mounteyne. & *þere* him helde. ¶ Aurylambros, and Vter' his bro*þer*, and hire folc, hade bisegede þe castel[2] longe tyme, for þe castel was stronge and wel arraiede; so at þe laste þai cast wilde fire, and brent hous and men, and al here arraye. & as miche as was wiþin þe castel, so þat Vortiger *was* brent amonge alle o*þere*; and so deide he *with* michel[3] sorwe. ¶ þo was Engist in Kent, and regnede *þere*, and herde þis tydynges[4] and anone fledde, and wolde haue wende[5] into Scotland' forto haue hade soco*ur*, but Aurilambros and his men mette wiþ him in the North contre, and 3af him bataile, & Engist and his men ham defendede whiles[6] þai[7] myght, but he and his folc were descomfitede and slayn, and Otta his sone[8] fley[9] vnto[10] 3ork', & Aurilambros him folwede egrely. Otta, a litel while a3eynes him stode, but afterwarde he put him to[11] his *mercy*, and Aurilambros vnderfonge him; & to him and to his men he[5] 3af þe contre of Galway in Scotland', and *þere* þai duellede. ¶ The Kyng Aury[12]lambros went þo þrou3 þe lande, and put awaye þe name of Engistes lande, þat E[n]gist, after his owen name hade callede bifore, þo lete he[13] it calle[13] a3eyne Grete Britaigne, and lete make a3eyne cherches,[14] houses of religiouñ, castelles,[15] citees, and burghes and tounes þat þe Saxoynes hade destroiede, and come[16] to Londoñ, and lete make a3eyne the Wallis of þe citee, whiche Engist & his folc hade caste adoune. ¶ þe Britons ladde him to þe mount of Anbrian, wher' some tyme *was* an house of religiouñ þat þo was destriede þrou3 paynemys, whe[re]of a knyght þat[8] me callede Anbry, þat some tyme *was* found*our* of þe hous, and *þer*for þe hulle[17] was callede þe mount' of Bryan,[18] and after *was* callede Ambresbery, and shal for eue*re*more.

How Aurilambros dede redresse þe lande of Grete Britaigne, þat *was* destroiede þrou3 Saxoynes. ¶ Capitulo ¶ Sexagesimo ¶ Quinto.

THe[19] Kyng Aurilambros lete amende and redresse þe hous of Ambresbery, and *þer*in put monkes, but now *þere* beth[20] nonnes; a litil fram[21] þe place þat me calle[21] Salesbury, *þere* þat

[1] calle þ DO. [2] castelle ful D. Castel ful O. [3] mych O. [4] tydynge O. [5] went O. [6] while D. [7] þat y *sic* O. [8] *om.* D. [9] fly O. [10] into D. [11] into D. [12] *leaf* 27, *back.* [13–13] calle yt O. [14] cherches and DO. [15] casteH D. [16] comen DO. [17] mont D. [18] Anbriañ D. [19] How the D. How þe O. [20] ben DO. [21–21] *om.* D.

þe Britouns were[1] quellede [2]in þat place þat[2] [3]Vortiger' & Engist'[3] shulde haue made a loueday, in whiche place[4] þere were slayne [5]xxx M'[5] knyȝtes þrouȝ *tresoun* of Engist. ¶ þe kyng *þer*of hade grete pitee, & þouȝt to make, in mynde of ham, a monument of stone þat myȝt endure to[6] þe worldes ende. and of þis þing þai tok'[7] here conseile what *þer*of was best to done. ¶ þo spake to þe kyng þe bishop of Londõ þat me called Ternekyn, þat he shulde enquere after' *Merlyn*, for he couþe best telle how þis þing miȝt bene[8] made. and *merlyn* after' was souȝt[9] and founde, & come to þe kyng'; and þe kyng tolde him his wille of þe monument þat he wolde haue made. ¶ þo ansuerede *Merlyn* to þe kyng', [10]and saide: "*þere* beþ grete stones in Irlande, and longe vppõn the hulle of Kyan þat men calleþ [11]þe geant[11] caroH; and if þai were put in þis place as þai beþ[12] *þere*, here þai wolde endure *euermore*, in remembraunce of þo knyghtes þat here beþ *enterede*." "*Par* ma foy," *quod* þe kyng', "as herde stones beth in my londe as beth in Irland'." "soþ," *quod* Merlyn, "but in aH ȝ*our* lande beth *non* soche, for Geauntes sette ham for grete gode of *ham*self, ffor atte *euery* tyme þat þai were wonded, or in eny maner' hurt, þai wasshen þe stones wiþ hote wat*er*, & þan wosshen[13] ham *þer*wiþ, and anone þai were hole."

How þe Britons went forto seche þe grete stones in Irland'. Cap*itul*o lxvj[to].

WHen þe[14] Britons hade herde of þis þing', þai went and sworen[15] ifere amonges ham, þat[16] þai wolde gone[17] to seche þe stones; and toke[18] wiþ ham Vter', þe kynges bro*þer*, to bene[19] here cheueteyne, & xv M[l] men; and Merlyn conseilede ham forto gone[20] into Irlande, and so þai deden.[21] ¶ And when þe Kyng of Irland', þat me callede Guillomer', herde telle þat straungers were arryuede in his lande, he assemblede a grete power', and fouȝt aȝeyns ham: but he & his folc were descomfitede. the Britons went fourþ[22] til þai come to þe mount of Kylyan, and clymede vnto þe mount; but when þai saw þe stones, and þe maner' how þai stoden,[23] þai hadden[24] grete *mer*vail, and saide bituene ham þat 'noman shulde

[1] *om.* O. [2–2] where D. *om.* O. [3–3] Vortymer wher Engist *and* he O. [4] tyme O. [5–5] xxx M[l] lxiij D. xxx M[l] *and* lxj O. [6] vn-to O. [7] nome DO. [8] be DO. [9] sent O. [10] *leaf* 28. [11–11] geaunts DO. [12] ben DO. [13] wosshe D. wessh O. [14] þis D. [15] *om.* D. swore O. [16] swore D. [17] go DO. [18] nome DO. [19] *MS.* bene þe kyng, *with* þe kyng *underlined for erasure*. [20] go O. [21] dede O. [22] biforn D. before O. [23] stod O. [24] halde D. had O.

ham remeve, for no strenghe ne engyne, so huge þai weren,[1] and so long.' But Merlyn, þrouȝ his crafte and queyntise, remevede ham, and brouȝt ham into hire shippis, and come aȝeyn into þis lande: and Merlyn sette þe stones [2]þere þat[3] þe Kyng wolde haue ham, and sette ham in þe same maner as[4] þai stoden in Irland'. and when þe kyng saw þat it was made, he þankede Merlyn, and rychely him rewardede at his owen wille; & þat place he lete calle[5] Stonhynges[5] for euermore.

How Passent, þat was Vortigerȝ sonne, & þe Kyng[6] Guillomer' come into þis land'; and how a traitoure þat me callede Coppa, enpoisenede[7] þe Kyng Aurilambros. ¶ Capitulo ¶ Sexagesimo Septimo.

AND men shul vnderstonde þat Passent, þat was Vortigers sone, leuede in þe same tyme, and come into þis lande wiþ a grete power', and arryuede in þe Northcontre, & wolde bene[8] avengede of his fadereȝ deþ Vortiger, and stronglich[9] trust vppon[10] þe company þat he hade brouȝt wiþ him oute of þe lande of Germayne, and hade conquerede al þe Northcontre vnto Ȝork'. ¶ And when Kyng Aurilambros herde þis, he assemblede a grete power' of Britons, and went forto feiȝt wiþ him; and Passent[10] and his peple were descomfitede. But Passent ascapede þens, wiþ some of his fole, and fledde þennes into Irland', and come to[11] Kyng Guillomer', and praede him of helpe and socoure. ¶ The kyng grantede him wiþ gode wil, and saide: "I wolde helpe ȝow oppon þat[12] conenaunt, þat I my-self moste gon[13] wiþ ȝow wiþ al my power' into Britaigne, and I wolde me avenge vppon þe Britons,[14] [15]for þai[15] comen[16] into my londe,[17] and[15] token[18] þe stones wiþ strengþ þat [19]is callede Geant[19] Caroil." þe Kyng Guillomere lete ordeyne his shippis, and went to þe see wiþ xv M[l] men, and arryuede in Walis, and bigonne to robbe and miche sorwe to done.[20] hit bifelle so þat Kyng Aurilambros lay sike at Wynchestre, and myght nouȝt helpe [21]himself', so þat he sent in his name Vter' his broþere, with a grete power', forto helpe Walys; and þiderwarde [22]he went as miche as he[22] myȝt. ¶ þe

[1] wer' D. were O. [2] *leaf* 28, *back*. [3] *om.* D. [4] þat DO.
[5] Stonehenge D. Stonehenge O. [6] poysound O. [7] be O.
[8] strongely D. strongly O. [9] of D. [10] he DO. [11] to þe O.
[12] þe O. [13] go DO. [14] britouns the raþere D.
[15–15] raþer þan þei in-to my land' comen *and* O. [16] come D.
[17] lorde *sic* D. [18] toke D.
[19–19] was callede Geauntȝ D. called is Geauntȝ O. [20] do O.
[21] *leaf* 29. [22–22] þai went as fast as þai D.

Kyng of Irland, and Passent,[1] herde telle þat Aurylambros was sik[t]; and to ham[2] come a sarasine þat me clepede[3] Coppa, and saide: "sire3,[4] dnelle 3e here al[5] in pees wiþ 3oure hoste, and y[6] bihote 3ow, þrou3 my queyntise, þat I shal slee þe Kyng Aurylambros þat liþ sike." "If 3e do,[6]" *quod* Passent, "y shal 3ow richely auaunce." ¶ This *traitoure* Coppa put oppon him an habite of religioun, and lete shaue him a brode crone, and come to þe kynges court, and saide þat he was a gode ffisician, and saide þat he wolde hele þe kyng of his malady. ¶ Tho saide þe *traitour* Coppa ynto þe kyng[7]: "sire, beþ of gode comfort, for y shal 3eue 3ow soche a medecyne þat 3e shulle swete anone ry3t, and softe[8] slepe, and haue gode reste." & þe *traitour* 3af him soche a poysoun þat he slepte[9] anone ryght, and deide in his slepyng[t]. and þe *traitoure* saide þat[10] he wolde gone[11] oute into þe felde til þe kyng were awakede; and so scapede he away, for noman[12] to him hade[12] suspesion, for enchesoun of his habit þat he was in cloþede, and also for his brode crone. ¶ But when þe kynges meny wist þat he was dede, þai bicome[13] wonder[t] sory, and fast sou3t þe *traitour*; but[14] þai mi3t nou3t hem fynde, for Coppa *turn*ede a3eyne to þe host fro whens that[10] he come.

When Aurilambros was dede, a sterr in[15] the morne[16] was seyne with a clere light; & at the bou3te of þe beeme was[17] seye þe heuede of an horrible[17] Dragoun. ¶ Capitulo ¶ Sexagesimo ¶ Octauo.

WHen the Kyng Aurilambros was þus dede & enpysenede[18] at Wynchestre, a morn,[19] after[t] þat he was dede, aboute þe tyme of prime, þere was seyn a sterr[t] grete and clere; and þe beeme of þe[20] sterr[t] was brighter þan þe sone; and at þe bou3t of þe beeme apperede a dragounes henede,[21] and oute of his mouþ[22] comen ij huge li3tes þat were as li3t[23] as[22] eny fire brynnyng[t]. ¶ And þat o[24] beeme went[25] towarde Fraunce, and strau3t ouere þe see þiderward; and out of þat beem comen[26] vij beemes ful clere and longe, as it were þe li3t of fire. ¶ þis sterre was seyne of meny man[27]; but none of

[1] Passent had O. [2] hi*m* D. hym O. [3] callede D. Called O.
[4] sir D. sire *quod* he O. [5] *om.* O. [6] done O. [7–7] *om.* D.
[8] softly D. [9] slepe D. [10] *om.* D. [11] go DO.
[12–12] had to hym O. [13] bicomen D. bycom*en* O. [14] for D.
[15] on D. [16] morwe D. [17–17] seyn þe hed of a O. [18] *leaf* 29, *back.*
[19] a morowe O. [20] that D. *þat* O. [21] heed O.
[22–22] apperede ij li3tes huge *and* as bright as D. [23] bright O.
[24] on D. [25] it helde D. tilde O. [26] come D. [27] a man DO.

ham wist what it bitokenede. ¶ Vter, þat was þe kyngus broþer, þat was in Walys wiþ his hoste of Britouns, saw þat sterre, and þe grete liȝt þat it[1] ȝaf. he wondrede þeron gretly, what it myȝt bitoken; he[2] lete calle Merlyn, & praiede him [3]forto telle[3] what it myȝt bitokene.

Of þe bitokenyng of þat[4] sterr'. ¶ Capitulo Sexagesimo ix°.

MErlyn saw þat sterre, and bihelde hit[5] longe tyme, and siþenes[6] he quok[t] and wepte tenderly; & saide: "allas, allas! þat so noble[7] kyng[t] and worþi is dede. and I do ȝow to vnderstonde þat Aurilambros, ȝour broþer, is enpoysenede, and þat I se wel in þis sterre. and ȝoure-self bitokeneþ bi þe heuede[8] of þe dragouñ þat is[9] seyne at þe bouȝt of þe beeme: þat is ȝoureself, þat shal bene[10] kyng, and regne. and by þe beem þat stode[11] towarde þe Est, is vnderstonde þat ȝe shal geten[12] a sone þat shal conquere al Fraunce and alle þe landes þat [13]beþ longeyng[13] to þe Kyng[14] of Fraunce, þat shal bene[15] a worþier' Kyng, and [16]more of[16] honoure þan euer' was eny of his ancestres. ¶ And by þe beem þat stracchet[17] towarde Irland', is bitokenede [18]þat ȝe shul bigete[19] a douȝter þat shal be quene of Irland'; and þe vij beemes bitokenes[20] þat ȝe[21] shul haue vij sones; and euer*y*che[22] of ham shal [23]bene kyng, and[23] regne wiþ michel[24] honououre. and abide ȝe no longer' here, but go[25] and ȝif[26] batail to ȝoure enemys, and feiȝt[27] wiþ ham boldely, for ȝe shul ouercome ham and haue þe victorie." Vter þankede hertly Merlyn, and tok[28] his men, and went towarde his enemys; and þai fouȝten togeder' mortaily; and so [29]þai descomfitede[29] his enemys alle, & destroiede ham[30]; & him-self quellede Passent, þat was Vortiger*3* sone, and his Britons quellede Guillomer', þat was Kyng of Irland', and alle his men. and Vter anone after' þat bataile tok his way toward' Wynchestre fort[o] done[31] entier' Aurilambros kyng, þat was his broþer; but þo was þe[32] body born[33] to Stonhynge wiþ michel[34] honoure, þat he hade

[1] he O. [2] and D. [3–3] *om.* D. [4] þe O. [5] him D. hym O. [6] Netheles O. [7] noble a D. nobly a O. [8] hede D. hed O. [9] is to O. [10] be DO. [11] stondeth D. [12] gete D. Be-gete O. [13–13] longeþ D. ben longynge O. [14] croune D. crovne O. [15] be DO. [16–16] of more DO. [17] stracches D. strecchef O [18] *leaf* 30. [19] gete D. [20] bitokenes D. betokeneth O. *om.* R. [21] sche O. [22] eche O. [23–23] be a kyng[t] and shullen D. be kyng *and* schul O. [24] mych O. [25] goþ DO. [26] ȝeueth O. [27] fighteth O. [28] nome DO. [29–29] he descomfite D. he descomfited O. [30] *om.* D. hym O. [31] do O. [32] his D. [33] bore O. [34] mych O.

[1–1]done made[1] in remembrance of þe Britons þat þere were slayn þrou3 tresoune of Engist, þat same day þat þai shulde haue bene accordede; & in the same place[2] þai enterede Aurilambros, þe secunde 3ere of his regne, wiþ al þe worship þat myght [3]bene longyng[3] to soche a kyng, of whos soule God haue mercy!

Of Vter Pendragoun; and wherfore he was callede so, after [4]3e shal[4] here; &[5] he was ouertake for þe grete loue of Igerne, þat was þe [6]Erles wif of Cornwaile.[6] ¶ Capitulo ¶ Septuagesimo.

After þe deth of Aurylambros, Vter' his broþer was cronede, and regnede wel and worþily; and in remembraunce of þe *dragons*[7] þat he was likenede to, he lete make ij dragounes þrou3 conseile of his Britouns: þat one to [8]bene borne[8] bifore[9] him when he went into bataile, & þat oþere to abide at[10] Wynchestre in the bisshoppes cherche; And for þat enchesoun he was callede euermore after', Vter' Pendragoun. ¶ And Octa, þat was Engistes sone, commendet litil Vter' þat was made newe kyng', and a3eynes him biganne forto[11] meve werr', and ordeynede a grete company of his frendes & of his kynne, and of Ossa his broþer, and hade take[12] al þe lande fro Humber' vnto 3ork; [13]but þo of 3ork[13] helde strongely[14] agayne ham, and nolde soffre ham come into þe toune, neyþer to 3elde þe citee to ham; and he bisegede þe toune anone ry3t, and 3af þerto a stronge assaut,[15] but tho[16] of þe citee ham kepede wel and strongely. ¶ And when Vter herde þerof', he come þider' wiþ a stronge[17] power' forto helpe and rescue þe toune, and put away þe sege, & 3af a stronge bataile; and Octa & his company ham defendede as wel as þai my3t, but at þe[2] last þai were descomfitede, and þe moste part' of ham quellede; and Octa & Ossa were taken,[18] and put into prisoun at London. ¶ And Vter' him-self duellede awhile at 3ork', and after', he went to Londoñ. and at[19] Ester after'[20] sewyng', he wolde bere crone, and helde[21] a solempne feste, and [22]lete sompne alle þe[23] Erles and barons, þat þai shulde come to þat

[1–1] done make D. do made O. [2] *om.* O.
[3–3] bilonge D. be-longen O. [4–4] *MS.* me shal; men may D.
[5] and how D. [6–6] Erle of Cornewalys wyf O. [7] dragoun DO.
[8–8] be borne D. be bore O. [9] *MS.* bifore bifore; tofore O.
[10] *leaf* 30, *back.* [11] to DO. [12] taken D. [13–13] *supplied from* D.
[14] strong D. [15] saut D. [16] þai D. þey O.
[17] grete D. gret O. [18] take O. [19] at the D. at þe O.
[20] *om.* D. [21] holde D. hold O. [22–22] *om.* O. [23] his D.

feste; and[22] alle þai[1] comen at[2] þe kynges co*m*mandement, [3]as þai were co*m*mandede.[3] ¶ The feste was richely holden,[4] and alle worþely sette to þe[5] mette after' þat þai were[6] of' state,[7] so þat [8]þe Erl[8] of Cornewaile & Igerne his wif' setten alþer' next þe kyng'. and þe kyng' saw þe fairenesse of þat lady þat she hade, and was rauisshede for' here beaute; and after',[9] he made towarde here nyce[10] semblant in lokyng' and leiȝhyng'. so at þe laste þe Erl perseuede þe priue[11] lokyng and Laughing', and þe loue bituene hem, and arose vp[5] fram þe table al in wraþ, and tok his wif', and callede to him his knyȝtes, and went þens al in wraþ, wiþouten[12] takyng' Leue of þe Kyng'. þe kyng anone sent after' him þat he shulde come aȝeyne, & go nouȝt þens in despite of him; and þe Erl wolde nouȝt come aȝeyne in no maner wise. ¶ Wherfor þe kyng was ful wroþ, & in wraþ him defiede as his dedelich[13] enemy. and þe Erl went þens into Cornewaile wiþ his wif', into þe castel of TyntageH. and þe kyng lete ordeyne a grete host, & come into Cornewaile forto destroie þe erl, if he myȝt; but he hade put him in[14] soche a castel þat was stronge and wel arraiede, of TyntageH, and wolde nouȝt ȝelde him to[15] the Kyng'. ¶ The kyng anone bisegede þe castel, & þere duellede xv daies, þat neuer' myȝt spede, and euer þouȝt so miche of[16] Igerne, and oppoñ her' laide so miche loue, þat he nyst what to done. ¶ So at þe[5] laste he callede to him a knyȝt þat me[17] callede Vlfyne, þat was priue wiþ him, and tolde him al hes conseile, and axede of him what was best to done. ¶ "Sire," quod he, "doþ sende after' Merlyn, for he can telle ȝow þe best consel of eny man leuyng'." Merlyn anone was sent after', and come to þe kyng', and þe kyng tolde him al his wille. "Sire," [18]quod Merlyn,[18] "I shal do so miche þrouȝ crafte þat I can, þat I shal make ȝow come þis nyȝt into þe castel of TyntageH, & shal haue al ȝoure wille of þat Lady."

How Vter' bigate on[19] Igerne, þat was þe Erleȝ wif of[20] Cornewaile, Arthure þe kyng'. ¶ Capitulo Septuagesimo primo.

[1] þo þat hade wyfes shulde bryng' ha*m* also to þat fest & alle D. þo þat hade wyues schuld bryng hem also to þat fest & all O.
[2] to O. [3–3] *om.* D. [4] hold O. [5] *om.* O. [6] werne D.
[7] astat O. [8–8] þe Gorlois D. Gorloys O.
[9] ofte D. oft O. [10] *MS.* nyci. [11] *leaf* 31.
[12] withoute DO. [13] dedely D. dedly O. [14] into D.
[15] vnto D. [16] vppon D. vpon O. [17] he D.
[18–18] *MS. has* quod Merlyn *quod, with* 2nd quod *underlined for erasure.*
[19] in D. [20] *om.* D.

MErlyn,[1] þrouȝ crafte þat he coupe,[2] chaungede þe kyngus [3]figure into þe likenesse of Vlfyne his chaumberleyn, and [4] to þe figure of Iordan þat was þe erleȝ chaumberleyn, so þat eche of ham was *trans*figurede into[5] o*þe*re likenesse. and when Merlyn hade so done,[6] he saide to þe kyng: [7]"sire, now may[7] ȝe gone[8] sodeynely to þe castel of Tyntagel, and axen[9] entre þere, and haue ȝoure wille." the kyng tok priuelich,[10] al þe host to gouerne & [11] lede, to a knyȝt þat he miche louede, and toke[12] his way toward þe castel; and wiþ him went[13] Vlfyne and Merlyn. and when [14]þat he[14] come þider, þe Porter wende [15]þat it[15] hade bene[16] his owen lorde. and when tyme come forto gone[17] to bedde, the kyng went to bedde wiþ[18] Igerne, þe Erleȝ wif, and dede wiþ her al his wille, and þo *bigate* on[19] here a sone þat me clepede[20] Arthure. ¶ Oppoñ þe morwe þe noble myȝty kyng toke[21] his leue of þe lady, and went aȝeyn to his hoste. and þe same nyȝt *þat* þe kyng lay by Igerne in bedde ifere wiþ þe erleȝ wif, þe kynges men ȝaf a strong assaute to þe castel. and þe Erl and his men manliche[22] ham defendede; but at þe[23] laste hit bifelle so þat at þat assaut þe erl him-self[23] *was* slayn, and þe castel *was*[18] taken. and þe kyng anone *turn*ede aȝeyne to Tyntagel, and spousede Igerne wiþ michel[24] honoure, & made hir Quene. & sone after, tyme come þat she shulde bene[25] delyu*e*rede, and bare[26] a sone þat [27]*was* callede[27] Arthure. and after [28]he gate[28] on here a dou*ȝ*ter þat me clepede[29] Amya; and[30] when she come to age, [31]she *was* nobly[31] mariede to a noble Barouñ þat me callede Aloth, þat was lorde of Leones.

¶ When Vter longe tyme hade regnede, *þe*re come vppoñ him a grete sikenesse, as it were a sorwe. & in þe mene [32]tyme þo þat haden[33] to kepe Octa, þat was Engistes sone, and Ossa his bro*þe*r, þat þo were in prisouñ, men lete ham gone[34] for grete ȝiftes þat þai ham ȝaf, and went [35]wiþ ham.[35] ¶ And when þo ij bre*þe*rne were ascaped, and comen[36] aȝeyne into hier owen contre, þai ordeynede ham a grete host & a[37] grete power, & bigon to werre eftesones vppoñ þe kyng.

[1] Helyn *sic* D. [2] coube he D. coude O. [3] *leaf* 31, *back*. [4] *in* O. [5] to DO. [6] y-do O. [7–7] Sir *quod* he now mowe D. Sir *quod* he now mow O. [8] go O. [9] axe O. [10] priuyly O. [11] & to O. [12] nome DO. [13] *om.* DO. [14–14] þai D. þey O. [15–15] þat he D. he O. [16] be O. [17] go DO. [18] to D. [19] vpon O. [20] callede D. called O. [21] nome DO. [22] manly DO. [23] *om.* O. [24] mych O. [25] be DO. [26] bare a childe D. bare a child O. [27–27] callede was D. Called was O. [28–28] begate O. [29] Called O. [30] & sche O. [31–31] nobly was O. [32] *leaf* 32. [33] hadde D. had O. [34] go DO. [35–35] hem with O. [36] come O. [37] *om.* D.

How Kyng Vter chees[1] Aloth to kepe þe lande of Britaigne whiles þat he was sik.[2] ¶ Capitulo ¶ Septuagesimo ¶ Secundo.

AND for-asmiche as Kyng Vter was sik, and myȝt nouȝt helpe him-self, [3]he ordeynede Aloth, þe sone of Elyne,[3] þat þo was to bene[4] wardeyne and chyueteyne of al his folc; & he anone, and his Britons, assemblede a grete host, & ȝaf bataile to Octa and to his folc; but Octa at þe laste was descomfitede.[5] ¶ Hit bifelle þus afterwarde, [6]þat þise Britons[6] haden[7] indignacioun[8] [9]at þis[9] Aloth, & wolde nouȝt to him bene[10] entendant; wherfore þe kyng was annoyede wonder sore, and lete put him in a liter in þe hoste amonges[11] his folc; and þai ladde him to Veroleyne, þat þo was a faire citee, þere þat seynt Albone was martrede; and after was þat citee destroiede þrouȝ paynemys & þrouȝ werre. and þider went[12] [13]Ossa and Octa[13] & her peple, & entrede into þe toune, and lete [14]make faste[14] þe ȝates, & þere þai[15] helde ham. & þe kyng come, and ham bisegede, & made a stronge assaut; but þo þat were wiþin, manliche ham defended. ¶ The kyng [16]lete ordeyne[16] his gunnes & his engynes forto breke þe wallys; & þe wallis were so stronge þat noþing myȝt ham misdo. ¶ Octa & his peple hade grete despite þat a kyng liggyng in a liter [17 18]ham hade[18] bisegede, & þai token[19] conseil amonges ham, forto stande vp in þe morwe, & come oute, and ȝeue bataile to þe kyng; and so þai deden.[20] and in þat bataile were boþe Octa & Ossa slayne; & al þe oþere þat ascapede alif, fledde þens[21] into Scotland, and made[22] Colegryne her cheueteyne. & þe Saxoynes þat were alif, and[23] ascapede fro þe bataile, brouȝt[24] aȝeyne a[25] grete strengþ, & amonges ham[26] saiden þat, if the[15] Kyng Vter were dede, þai shulde wel conquere þe lande; and amonges ham þai þouȝt[27] enpoysone þe kyng, and ordeynede men forto done[28] þis dede, & ȝaf ham of ȝiftes grete plente, þis þing to done. & þai ordeynede ham þiderward þere þat þe kyng was

[1] chose D.
[2] syke for-asmiche as he myȝt nouȝt *trauaile* for his sikenesse D. sike for-as-mych as he myght not for siknes O.
[3–3] he ordeynede Aloth sone of Elyne D. he ordeyned Aloth sone of Eleyne O. þe sone of Elyne R.
[4] be O. [5] descomfite D. [6–6] *om.* D. [7] had DO.
[8] dedignacion *sic* O. [9–9] of DO. [10] be O. [11] among O.
[12] þai hade seynt D. þey had sent O. [13–13] Octa and Ossa O.
[14–14] fast make O. [15] *om.* D. [16–16] ordeigned O.
[17] *leaf* 32, *back.* [18–18] hade ham D. had hem O. [19] took O.
[20] ded O. [21] *om.* DO. [22] maden DO. [23] that D.
[24] broghten O. [25] *om.* O. [26] ham þai D. hem þey O.
[27] boughten O. [28] do O.

duellyng', & clo|ede ham in pore wede, |e bettre[1] forto spede hire lu|er *pur*pos; but no|elesse, for al her' falsenesse & queyntise, |ai my3t *neuer* come ney |e kyng. But[2] at |e laste |ai aspiede |at |e kyng drank none o|ere licoure but [3]oneliche *wate*r[3] of a clere welle |at was ney3 bisides; and |ise false *trai*toures[4] vppo a day *pri*ueliche[5] went to |at wel, and put *her*in poisou, so |at al |e *wate*r was enpoysenede. And anone after' as |e Kyng hade dronke of |at wate', he biganne to swelle, & sone after[6] deide; & alse meny as drank[7] of |at *wate*r deide[8] also. And anone as |is falsenesse was aspiede, folc of |e toune lete stoppe |e welle for *euer*more. ¶ When [9]|e Kyng[9] was dede, his[10] folc bare him to Stonehynge wi| grete solempnite of bisho|p3 and barons |at were *here*, |at buriede him bisides Aurilambros his bro|er; and after *tur*nede a3eyne |o *euer*ycheo, & lete sende after' Arthure his sone; and |ai made him Kyng of |e lande wi| [11]michel[12] reu*er*ence, after his faderes de|, |e xvij 3ere of his regne.

How Arthure, |at was |e sone of Vter', was *cr*onede after his faderes de|; & how he drof Colegryn & |e Saxoynes, and Chelduc[13] of [14]Almayne, out of[14] |is lande. Capitulo lxxiij°.

WHen Arthure was made kyng of |e lande, he was[15] but 3onge, of xv 3ere age, but he was faire, and bolde, & dou3ti of body, & to meke folc he was gode & curteise, & to prout folc he was stout & sterne; & also he was [16]gentil and curteise,[16] and large of spendyng', & [17]made him[17] wel biloued [18]of al men *here* |at[18] it was nede. And when he biganne to regne, he swore |at Saxones neu*er*[19] shulde haue pees ne reste til |at[20] he hade drif[21] ham out of his[22] lande. & he lete assemble a grete host, & fau3t wi| Colegrin, |at,[20] after' tyme |at Octa was dede, |e Saxones mayntenede. And |is Colegryne was descomfitede, & fley[23] to 3ork', & tok |e tone, & *here* helde him. And |e Kyng bisegede |e tone; but he mi3t no|ing[24] spede, for[19] |e toune was so strong, & |ai wi|in

[1] bett*er* al DO. [2] But so DO. [3–3] wat*er* onlych D. only water O.
[4] *trai*tous *sic* D. [5] pryuyly O. [6] aft*er* he DO.
[7] dronken D. drunken O. [8] deiden D. diden O.
[9–9] kyng Vter D. [10] *om.* O. [11] *leaf* 33. [12] mych O.
[13] Sheldruk kyng' D. cheldrik out O. [14–14] *om.* O. [15] nas O.
[16–16] curteise & gentile D.
[17–17] made him D. made hym O. made R.
[18–18] amonges al men *here* |at D. among al men |at *per* O.
[19] *om.* D. [20] *om.* O. [21] dryuen D. dryve O. [22] |is O.
[23] come D. fly O. [24] nou3t D.

kepte þe toune wel & horpedly. ¶ And in þe mene tyme Colegryne lete þe toune to Bladulf, & fley[1] him-self to Cheldrik, þat was Kyng of Almaigne, forto haue of him soco*ur*. and þe Kyng assemblede a grete powr, and come & arryuede in Scotland wiþ 4
v. C. shippis. & when Arthure wist of þis tydyng*us*,[2] þat he hade nouȝt powr ne[3] strengþ ynow to feiȝt aȝeyne[4] Sheldrik, he lete bene[5] þe sege, and went to Londoñ, and sent anone his l*ett*res to þe Kyng of Litil Britaigne, þat me[6] callede[7] Hoel, his [8]neveu, his 8
sustres[8] sone, þat he shulde come to him wiþ [9]al þe powr þat he myȝt. And he assemblede a grete hoste, & arryuede at Southamptoñ. ¶ And when Kyng Ar[t]hure hit wiste, he was glade ynow, & went aȝeynes ham,[10] & ham resceyuede wiþ michel[11] hono*ur*, 12
so þat þo ij hostes ham assemblede, and toke[12] her way euen to Nichole, þat[13] Cheldrik hade bisegede but nouȝt ȝitte taken. And þai comen[14] vppon Cheldrik & vppoñ[15] his peple or þai hit wiste, þere[7] þat þai werre,[16] and ham egrely assailede. þe Kyng Cheldrik 16
and his meny defendede ham manly by here powr, but Kyng Arthure and his men[17] quellede so meny Saxones, þat neu*er* er[18] was seyne soche a slauȝ*ter*; and[19] his men þat were lefte alif, fledden away, and Arthure ham pursuede, and drof ham into a 20
wode þat þai miȝt no ferþ*er* passe. ¶ Cheldrik and his men saw wel þat þai were brouȝt into miche disesse, & ham ȝolden to Arthure in þis manr wise, þat he shulde take here horse and Here armure, & al þat þai hadde, þat þai most oneliche gone on fote to here 24
shippes, and so þai wolde gone[20] into here owen lande, & neuer come aȝeyne into þis lande. And vppon assuraunce of þis[7] þing, þai ȝeuen[21] hi*m* gode hostages; and Arthure, þrouȝ conseile of his men, gr*a*untede þis þing, and resceyuede þe hostages. & oppoñ þis, 28
þise op*er* went vnto[22] here shippes: and when þai werne[23] in þe hye see, hir wille chaungede, as þe deuel it wolde, & þai retou*r*nede hire nauye, & come aȝeyne into þis land, & arryuede at Tottenesse, & went out of here shippis, & toke[24] þe lande, & clene robbede hit, 32
& michel[25] peple slouȝ, & token[26] al þe Armure þat þai myȝt fynde; & so þai wenten[27] forthe[28] til þai comen[28] to Bathe; but þe men of

[1] fly O. [2] tidyng' D. tydynge O. [3] and D. [4] aȝens O.
[5] be DO. [6] he D. [7] *om.* O. [8–8] nevews souster O.
[9] *leaf* 33, *back*. [10] hym O. [11] mych O. [12] token O.
[13] *MS. has* þat þat. [14] come D. [15] on D. [16] were þere O.
[17] meny D. [18] tofore D.
[19] & sheldrik & D. And Cheldrik & O. [20] go D. [21] ȝaf D.
[22] to DO. [23] were DO. [24] nome DO. [25] mych O.
[26] *leaf* 34. [27] went DO. [28–28] *om.* D. tyl þey come O.

þe toune shitten faste here 3ates, and wolde nou3t suffren[1] ham come þer in[2] þe toune, and þai defendede ham wel and horpedly a3eyn3 ham.

4 [3]**How Arthure 3af bataile to þe Saxones when þai comen[4] a3eyne, and bisegede þe toune of Bape, & [5]ham ouercome.[5]**
¶ Capitulo lxxiiij[to].[3]

WHen Arthure herde þis tydynges,[6] he lete honge anone þe
8 hostages, & lefte Hoel of Britaigne, his nevew, forto kepe þe Marche toward Scotland wiþ half his peple, and him-self went[7] helpe rescue þe toune of Bathe. And when he come þider, he 3af a strong batail to Cheldrik, and quelde almost al þe peple þat he
12 hade; for no man my3t [8]him wiþstande,[8] ne endure vnder þe stroke of his swerde; and þere boþe were slayn, Colegrin and Bladud his broþer. ¶ And Cheldrik fledde þens, and wolde haue gone to his shippis; but when[9] Arthure hit wist, he tok xv[10] M[l] kny3tes to
16 Cador, þat was erl of Cornewaile, forto lette and stoppe his commyng; and Arthure him-self went a3eyne towarde þe Marche of Scotland, ffor messagers tolde him þat þe[11] Scottes hade bisegede Hoel of Britaign þere þat he lay sike; and þerfore he hastede
20 þiderward; & Cador pursuede after Cheldrik, & toke him or þat he my3t[11] come to his[12] shippis, & quellede Cheldrik & his peple. And when Cador hade done þis viage, he hastede him [13]a3eyne, as faste as[13] he my3t, towardes Arthure, and founde him in Scotland
24 þere þat he hade res[14]cuede Hoel of Britaigne. But þe Scottes were al feire wiþin Mounref, and þere þai helde ham awhile; but Arthure ham pursuede, and þai fledde þens fourþ into Lymoigne, þat were in þat contre lx Iles, & grete plente of briddes, & grete
28 plente of Egles, þat were wont to crie and fei3ten[15] to-gederes, and make grete noise when folc come[16] to robbe þat lande, and weren as miche as þai mi3t; and so þai deden, for þe Scottes were so grete rauenours þat þai token al þat þai my3t fynde in þe lande of
32 Lymoigne wiþ-outen[17] eny sparyng; and þerwiþ þai chargede a3eyne þe folc, into Scotland forto wende.[18]

[1] suffre DO. [2] with-in D. with-Inne O. [3–3] *om.* O.
[4] come D. [5–5] ouercome ham D. [6] tydyng DO. [7] went to O.
[8–8] *with* hym stande O. [9] when kyng D. [10] x DO.
[11] *om.* D. [12] here O. [13–13] al þat D. [14] *leaf* 34, *back.*
[15] fight O. [16] comen D. [17] *with*oute O.
[18] *MS. Trin. Coll. Dubl.* 490 *(D) has several pages missing here, and does not continue until f.* 39 *of the Rawlinson MS., p.* 78 *below.*

How Kyng Arthure axede of Merlyn þe aventures of vj the laste kynges þat weren to regne in Engeland, and how þe lâde shulde ende. ¶ Capitulo ¶ Septuagesimo· ¶ Quinto.

"SIre," *quod* Merlyn, "in þe ȝere of Incarnaciouñ of [1]oure Lorde[1] Ihesu Crist M[1] CC xv *þere*[2] shal come a lambe oute of Wynchestre þat shal haue a white tong and trew lippis, and he shal haue wryten in his hert 'Holynesse.' ¶ This lambe shal make meny Goddes house,[3] and he shal haue pees þe most parte of his lif, & he shal make one[2] of þe faireste places of þe worlde þat in his tyme shal nouȝt fully ben[4] made an ende. And in þe ende of his lif, a wolf of a straunge lande shal do him grete harme[5]; but at þe ende þe lambe shal be maistre, prouȝ helpe of a rede Fox þat shal come out of þe Northwest, and him shal ouercome; and þe wolfe shal dye [in] water; and after þat tyme þe lambe shal leue no while þat he ne shal [6]dye. ¶ His sede [7]þan shal bene[7] in strange lande, and þe lande shal bene[4] wiþout a gouernoure a litil tyme.

"ANd after him[8] shal come a dragouñ mellede wiþ mercy and ek[9] wodenesse, þat shal haue a berde as a goot, þat shal ȝeue in Engeland shadewe, and shal kepe the lande from[10] colde and hete; and his o foote shal be sette in Wik', and þat opere in Londoñ; and he shal vnbrace[11] iij habitacions,[12] and he shal oppen his mouþ toward Walys, and þe tremblyng of þe hidure of his mouþe, his heres shal strecche towarde meny habitaciouns and contres, and his breþ shal bene[4] ful suete in straunge landes[13]; & in his tyme shal ryuers renne wiþ bloode and wiþ brayne, & he shal make in[14] places of his lande, walles, þat shal done[15] miche harme to[16] his seede after his tyme.

¶ Than shal þere come a peple out of þe Northwest duryng his regne, þat shal bene[4] lade prouȝ an[17] wickede hare, þat þe dragouñ shal done[2] crone Kyng, þat afterwarde shal flee ouer þe see wiþout comyng aȝeyne, for drede of þe dragouñ. ¶ In[18] þat tyme þe sonne shal bene[4] also rede as blode, as meny[2] men shul see[2] prouȝ al þe worlde: þat shal bitoken grete pestilence, and deþ of folc prouȝ dent of swerde; and þis[19] peple shal bene[4] faderles til þe tyme þat þe dragon shal dye prouȝ an hare þat shal meve[20] aȝeynes him werr'

[1–1] *om.* O. [2] *om.* O. [3] houses O. [4] be O.
[5] harm þurgh O. [6] *leaf* 35. [7–7] schal be O.
[8] his tyme O. [9] eek with O. [10] fro O. [11] vnbracen O.
[12] habitacions & cuntres O. [13] londe O. [14] in al O. [15] do O
[16] vn-to O. [17] a O. [18] And in O. [19] þat O. [20] neuere O

in þe ende of his lif, þat shal nouȝt [1]bene fulliche[1] endede in his tyme. ¶ This *dragoun̄* shal [2]bene holden[2] in his tyme þe best body of al þe worlde; & he shal dye bisides þe Marche[3] of a straunge lande; and þe lande shalle [4]duelle fade[r]lesse, wiþouten[5] a gode gouernoure; and me shal wepe for his deþ fram þe Ile of Shepe vnto þe hauen of Marciℍ; wherfore, 'allas' shal bene[6] þe commune songe of faderles fole, þat shal ouerleuen in his land destroiede.

"AND after þis *dragone* shal come a gote oute of a[7] Kar', þat shal haue hornes &[8] berde of siluer'; and þere shal come out of his noseþrelles[9] a drop þat shal bitoken hunger' & sorw, & grete deþ of þe peple; and miche of his lande in þe bigynnyng' of his regne shal be wastede. ¶ This goot shal go[10] ouer' into *Fr*aunce, & shal oppon̄[11] þe floure of lif and of deþ. In his tyme þere shal arise an Egle in Cornewaile þat shal haue feþeres of golde, þat' of pride shal [12]bene wiþouten[12] pere of alle þe lande; and he shal despise lordes of blode; and after', he shal flee shamefully by a Bere at Gauersiche; and after' shal bene[6] made brigges of men oppon̄ þe costes of þe see; and stones shal falle [13]fram castelles,[13] and meny o*þ*ere tounes shal ben[6] made pleyne[14]; and a bataile shalle [15]bene done vppon̄ an Arme[15] of þe see in a felde ordeynede as a shelde[16]; and at þat[17] bataile shal dye meny white hedes; wherfore þat[18] bataile shal bene[6] callede 'þe white bataile.' ¶ And þe forsaide Beere shal done[19] þis goote michel[20] harme, and it shal bene[6] oute of þe Southwest; & of his bloode þan shal þe goote lese miche of his lande til at þe tyme þat shendeship shal him ouer'-comen[21]; & þan shal he cloþen[22] him in a lyoneȝ skyn; and þan shal he wynne þat he hade loste, and more þerto, ffor a peple shal [23]come out of þe northwest þat shal make þe goot sore to bene[6] adrade; and he shal avenge him oppon[24] his enemys, þrouȝ conseil of[25] ij oweles, þat ferst shal bene[6] in peril forto bene vndone[26]; but þe olde owel shal wende ouer þe se into[27] a st[r]aunge lande, and þere he shal duelle vnto a certeyne tyme; and after', he shal come aȝeyne into þis lande. ¶ þise ij oweles shullen[28] do grete harme

[1–1] *MS. has* bene fulliche bene; fully be O. [2–2] behold O. [3] marches O. [4] *leaf* 35, *back*. [5] withoute O. [6] be O. [7] *om.* O. [8] & a O. [9] nostreℍ O. [10] gon O. [11] *i.e.* open. [12–12] be without O. [13–13] fro Casteℍ O. [14] playn In his tyme schal seme þat þe bere schal brenne O. [15–15] be do vpon þe Armes O. [16] Childe O. [17] þe O. [18] his O. [19] do O. [20] mych O. [21] ouercome O. [22] cloþe O. [23] *leaf* 36. [24] on O. [25] of þo O. [26] vndo O. [27] *MS. has* into ffraunce, *with* ffraunce *underlined for erasure*. [28] shul O.

to meny on; and so þai shullen[1] counseil þe gote þat he shal arere werre aȝeynes þe forsaid bere; and at þe last, þe goot and þe oweles shullen[2] come atte Bur' vp Trent, and shullen[3] wende ouer'; and for drede, þe Bere shal flee, and a swan wiþ him, for[4] his company, to Bur' towarde þe North, & *þere* þai shal bene[5] wiþ an harde shoure. And þan þe swan shal bene[5] slayne wiþ sorwe, and þe Bere taken & biheuedede,[6] alþer' nexte his neste, þat shal [stand] vppoñ a broken brigge, vp wham þe sone shal caste his beemes; and meny shal him seche, for vertu þat fro[7] hym shal come. ¶ In þat same tyme shal dye, for sorwe and care, a peple of his lande, so þat meny [8]shal bene[8] oppoñ him þe more bolder' afterward. And þo ij oweles shullen[2] do miche harme to þe forsaide floure of lif', and here shul lede in distresse, so þat she shal passe ouer into *Fr*aunce, forto make pees bituene þe gote & þe flour' delice; and *þere* she shal duelle to[9] a tyme þat her' sede shal come to seche here; and *þere* þai shul bene[5] stille til a tyme þat þai shul ham cloþe with grace: and þai shul seche [10]the [11]Owelyn, and[11] put ham vnto[12] despitous deþ. And after' shal þis goot bene[5] brouȝt to disese; and in[13] grete anguisshe and sorwe he shal leue al his lif'.

"Aftre þis goote, shal come out of Wyndesore a Boor', þat shal haue an heuede[14] of witte, a lyons hert, a pitouse lokyng; his vesage shal be reste to sike men; his breþ[15] shal bene[5] stanchyn of þerst to ham þat bene aþreste *þer*of shal[16]; his worde shal bene[5] gospelle; his beryng shal bene[5] meke as a Lambe. In þe ferste ȝere of his regne he shal haue grete payne to iustifien[17] ham þat bene vntrew; and in his tyme shal his lande bene[5] multipliede wiþ Aliens. ¶ And þis Boor, prouȝ fersenesse of hert þat he shal haue, shal make wolfes bicome lambes; & he shal bene[5] calledc prouȝ-oute[18] þe worlde 'Boor of holynesse and[13] of fersenesse, of nobeleye and of mekenesse,' and he shal do mesurabli al þat he shal haue to done[19] vnto þe Burgh of Ier*usalem*; and he shal whet his teiþ vppoñ þe ȝates of Parys, and vppoñ iiij landes. Spayne shal tremble for drede of him; Gascoyne shal swete; in *Fr*aunce he shal put his wynge; his grete taile shal reste in Engeland softely; Almayn shal quake for drede of him. ¶ þis Boor shal

[1] schuⁿ O. [2] shul O. [3] schul O. [4] fro O. [5] be O.
[6] byheded' O. [7] for O. [8–8] landes shul be O. [9] tul O.
[10] *leaf* 36, *back*. [11–11] owles & schul O. [12] to O. [13] *om*. O.
[14] heed' O. [15] brest O. [16] shul haue O. [17] iustifye O.
[18] þurght O. [19] do O.

3eue mantels to ij tounes of Engelande, and he shal make þe ryuer' ryme wiþ blode & wiþ brayn, and he shal make meny[1] medowes reede, and he shal gete as miche as his auncestres deden; & er' þat he bene[2] dede he shal bere iij crones; and he shal put on[3] lande into gret subiecciouñ; and after' hit shal bene[2] releuede, but nou3t in his tyme. ¶ This Boor, after' þat he is dede, [4]for his dou3ty-nesse shal bene[2] enterede at Coloigne, and his lande shal bene[2] þan fulfillede wiþ[5] al goode.

"After' þis Boor shal come a lambe, þat shal haue feete of leede, an heuede[6] of bras, an hert of a loppe, [7]and a swynes skyn, and[7] herde; and in his tyme his lande shal bene in pees. þe ferst 3ere of his regne he shal do make a citee, þat al þe worlde shal speke þerof'. þis lambe shal lese in his tyme a grete parte of his lande þrou3 an hidouse wolf'; but he shal recouer it, an 3if an[8] Lordeship to an Egle of his landes; and þis Egle shal wel gouerne hit, til þe tyme þat pride shal him ouergone,—allas þe sorwe!—for he shal dye þrou3 his broþeres suorde.[9] and after shal þe lande falle to þe forsaide lambe, þat shal gouerne[10] in pees al his lifes tyme; and after', he shal dye, and þe lande bene[2] fulfillede wiþ[5] al maner gode.

"After' þis lambe shal come a Moldewerpe acursede[11] of Godes mouþ, a caitif, a cowarde as an here. he shal haue an elderliche[12] skyn as a goot; and vengeance shal fal vppoñ him for synne. In þe ferst 3ere of his regne he shal haue of al gode grete [13]plente in his lande, and toward him also; and in his lande he shal haue grete[13] praising til þe tyme þat he shal soffre his peple lyuen[14] in to miche pride wiþouten[15] chastisyng', wherfore God' wil ben[2] wroþ. ¶ Than shal arisen[16] vp a dragouñ in[5] þe North, þat shal bene[2] ful fers, and shal meve werre a3eynes þe forsaide Moldewerpe, and shal 3eue him bataile vppoñ a stoñ. þis dragouñ shal gadre a3eyne into his company a wolf' þat shal [17]come oute of the West', þat shal bygynne werre a3eynes þe forsaide Moldewerp in his side; & so shal[18] þe dragoun and he bynde here tailes to-geder'.

"¶ þan shal come a lyon oute of Irlande, þat shal fal in company wiþ ham; and þan shal tremble[19] þe lande, þat þan shal bene[2] callede Engelande, as an aspe[20] lef, and in þat tyme shal

[1] *MS.* nemy. [2] be O. [3] o O. [4] *leaf* 37. [5] of O.
[6] heed O. [7–7] a Swynes skyn & an O. [8] a O. [9] deth O.
[10] gouerne þe land O. [11] cursed O. [12] erdelich O. [13–13] *om.* O.
[14] lyve O. [15] *with*oute O. [16] aryse O. [17] *leaf* 37, *back*.
[18] schullen O. [19] tremblen O. [20] Aspyn O.

[1]castelles bene[1] fellede adoune vppoñ Tamise; and it shal semen[2] þat Seuerne' shal bene[3] drye, for þe bodyes þat shal [4]fallen dede þerin.[4] ¶ þe iiij chief' flodes of Engeland' shal rynne in blode; and grete drede shal bene,[3] and anguisshe, þat shul arisen after' þe Moldewerpe shal fle for drede; and þe dragouñ, þe lyouñ and þe wolf', him shal dryuen away, and the lande shal bene[3] wiþout ham, and þe Moldewerpe shal haue no maner power', saf onely a shipp wherto he may wende; and after þat, he shal come[5] to lande when þe see is wiþdraw. ¶ And after' þat he shal 3eue þe þride part of his lande forto haue þe ferþe part in pees & reste; and after' he shal leue in sorw al his lif-tyme[6]; and in his tyme þe hote bapes [7]shullen bicome[7] colde; and after' þat shal þe Moldewerp dye aventurly and' sodeynely,—allas þe sorwe!—for he shal [8]bene drenchede[8] in a flode of þe see, his seede shal bicome pure[9] faderles in straunge lande for euermore, and þan shal the lande bene[3] departede in iij parties, þat is to seyn, to the Wolf, to þe dragoune, & to þe liouñ; and so shal it bene[9] for euermore. And þan shal þis[10] land bene[3] callede 'þe lande of conquest,' & so shal þe riȝt[11] heires of Engeland' ende."

[12]How Arthure ouercome Guyllomer' þat was Kyng of Irland' & how þe Scottes bicomen[13] his men. Capitulo lxxvjto.

WHen Guillomer', þat was Kyng' of Irlande, hade tidynges[14] þat Kyng' [Arthur] was entrede at Glastenbery, he ordeynede a grete power' of Irisshemen, & come to þe see wiþ his Yrisshe peple, and so come into Scotteland' ouer' þe see, and arryuede faste [15]by þere þat Kyng Arthure[15] was wiþ his hoste. and anone as he herde þerof, he went towarde[16] him & ȝaf him bataile, and ouercome him anone ryȝt; and Guillomer' fledde wiþ his men aȝeyne into Irland', and when þis scomfiture[17] was done,[18] Arthure turnede him aȝeyne þere þat he was, into þe place þat he hade lefte þe Scottes, & wolde haue ham al slayne. But þe bisshoppes, Abbotes, & oþere folc of þe contre, and Ladies, [19]openheuedede, comen[19] bifore Kyng Arthure, and criede him mercy, & saide:

[1–1] Castell be O. [2] seme O. [3] be O. [4–4] falle þerin ded' O.
[5] go O. [6] liues-tyme O. [7–7] schul be-comen O.
[8–8] be dreynt O. [9] *om.* O. [10] þe O. [11] rightfull O.
[12] *leaf* 38. [13] become O. [14] tydyng O.
[15–15] *MS. has* by þere þat kyng Arthure þere þat kyng Arthure; þerby as kyng Arthure O.
[16] towardes O. [17] discomfytur' O. [18] do O.
[19–19] openhede come O.

"sire, gentil kyng' & my3ty, haue *mercy* & pitee of[1] vs! and as 3oure-self' is[2] of þe ri3t lawe, to holde and mayntene cristendome, ful grete dishonou*r* it shulde be to quelle ham þat leueþ in almy3ty Gode as 3e done. & for Godes loue haue mercy and pitee of vs, and suffren[3] vs forto lyuen,[4] for we haue hade michel[5] sorwe and pyne; for þe Saxones hauen meny tymes þrou3 oure lande[6] passede; but þat is nou3t ynou3t to 3ow; for often-tymes þai haue done vs miche sorwe & disese. ¶ ffor oure [7]castelles þai hauen[7] taken, & oure bestes slayne & eten, & mich harme þai hauen[8] vs done; and if 3e wolde vs now quelle, hit were [9]none Honoure to a Kyng' to quelle[10] ham þat *crien* him[11] *mercy*; for ynow 3e haue [12]y-done vs, & vs ou*er*comen eu*er*ycheon[12]; &, for þe ¶ loue of God', soffre[13] vs forto lyue, & haueþ[14] mercy of[1] *Cristen* peple þat bileueþ[15] in God' as 3e done!" ¶ when Kyng' Arthure herde þis sorwe, he hade pite of ham, and 3af' ham lif and lyme; and alle þai felle adoune to his feete, and bicome[16] his lege men, and he toke of ham homages. ¶ And after' þat, Kyng Arthure t*ur*nede a3eyne wiþ his host, and come a3eyne to 3orke, and þ*er*e he abode duryng þat Viage. ¶ And þo 3af he al[17] Loegers to Loth, þat hade spousede his sustre, and o*þer* 3iftes grete plente. and þo was Gaweyn, his cosyn, [18]but 3ong of[18] age; and to alle his o*þer* men þat him hade seruede in his werr', he 3af riche 3iftes, & he þankede ham miche of here gode seruise.

How Kyng Arthure spousede Gunnore, þat was Cadore3 cosyn, Erl of Cornewaile; & after' he co*n*querede of Guillome' all Irland'. ¶ Capit*ulo* Septuagesimo ¶ Septi*mo*.

When Arthure hade brou3t his lande in pees and reste, & in gode state, & reste was in eu*er*y contre, þo [19]toke he and wedede a wif'[19] þat me callede Gunnore, & made here quene, a faire lady and a gentil, þat Cador þe erle of Cornewail hade longe tyme norisshede in his chaumbre, þat was his owen cosyn; but neuer' þai [20]haden childe to-gedres,[20] and noþelesse Kyng Arthure louede her' wonder wel and derlich. ¶ And anone as wynt*er* was passede, he lete assemble a grete hoste, & alle his barons, and' saide

[1] on O. [2] be O. [3] suffre O. [4] leue O. [5] mych' O.
[6] lond' & O. [7–7] Casteli þey haue O. [8] haue O.
[9] *leaf* 38, *back*. [10] quellen O. [11] hem O.
[12–12] don' & vs ou*er*come O. [13] suffreþ O. [14] hath O.
[15] beleuen O. [16] bycomen O. [17] *om.* O. [18–18] but of 3onge O.
[19–19] nome he a wedded wyf O. [20–20] had childryn to-gidere O.

þat he wolde wende into Irland[1] forto conquere [1]the Lande; and he tarede nouȝt ful[2] longe þat he ne passede ouer into Irland. ¶ And Guillomer', þe Kyng of Scotland[3], lete assemble a grete hoste, and ȝaf batail to Kyng Arthur'; but Guillomer' was descomfitede, & ȝelde him to þe Kyng Arthure, and bicome his man, and to him dede feaute & homage, and of him helde al þat lande fro þat tyme forward. and after passede Kyng' Arthur' ferþer,[4] and conquerede Gutland and Irland, and toke homages of folc of þe lande, and þere duellede xij ȝer' in pees, & regnede wiþ [5]ioye and merþe, & werrede vppon no maner man, ne no man vppon him. ¶ And he bicome so curteys and[6] large, and so[6] honourable, þat þe Emperoureȝ court of Rome, ne none þrouȝ-out al þe worlde, was none acountede to Kyng' Arthures, þat eny man wist', ne none so[7] preisede[8]; and þerefore þe beste knyȝtes of al maner[2] landes comen to him forto duelle, &[9] ham resceyuede wiþ gode wille and reuerence[10]; and alle þe knyȝtes weren[11] so gode þat no man knew [12]þe werst[12]; and þerefore Kyng' Arthure made þe rounde table, þat when þai shulde sitte to þe[2] mete, alle shulde bene[13] aliche hye, and euenlich[14] seruede[15] at þe table, þat none myȝt maken[16] auant þat none were hyer' þan oþere.[17] and Kyng Arthure hade at þat table ¶ Britoñs, Fraunchemen, Normannes, Flemynges, Burgoyners, Mansers, Loheriȝ, and of alle þe[6] landes a þis half þe mount of[2] Gorie, and of his lande of Britaigne, and of þe[6] grete Cornwaile, of Walys, & of Irland, & of Scotland; and shortely to telle, of alle þe landes þat wolde[18] worshipe and[19] chyualry seche, comen to Kyng Arthurus court'.

How Kyng Arthure come into Fraunce, & conquered þat [20]londe of FroH, þat was a Romayn, & [21]him quellede.[21] Capitulo lxxviij°.

SIth' hit bifelle þat Kyng Arthure, þrouȝ conseile of his barons and lordes, wolde gone[22] to conquere al Fraunce, þat þo was clepede Galle, þrouȝ Romayns þat þo helde[23] þat lande in here powe[r] & in here lordeshipe. and þe Romayns [24]hade take þat

[1] *leaf* 39. [2] *om.* O. [3] Irland' O. [4] ferthermore O.
[5] *MS. Trin. Coll. Dublin* 490 (*D*) *continues again here.*
[6] *om.* D. [7] so well DO. [8] preferred' O.
[9] & he O. [10] reuerencede D. [11] were DO. [12–12] ne wyst O.
[13] be DO. [14] euenly D. [15] y-serued' O. [16] make DO.
[17] another O. [18] wolden DO. [19] or D. [20] *leaf* 39, *back.*
[21–21] quellede him D. [22] go DO. [23] helden O.
[24–24] hade tak þat lande D. hade take þat land O. *om.* R.

lande[24] to a noble kny3t, and a wor|i[1] of body, þat me calle[2] Frolle. and when he wist þat Arthure come, he ordeynede an host &[3] grete power, & fau3t wiþ þe kyng; & he & his folc weren[4] descomfitede; and þens þai fledde vnto Parys, and entrede þe toun, & closede þe 3ates, & þere ham helde. Arthure wist þat FroH was gone to Parys, he pursuede after, & come þider, & him bisegede; but þe citee was so strong and wel arraied; & þo þat were wiþin defendede ham wel and manliche.[5] ¶ Kyng Arthu[r]e duellede þere more þan a moumþe; & þere was so miche peple in þe citee, & hade despendede al her vitailes þat were wiþin, & so grete hunger bicome amonges ham, þat þai [6]deide[7] wonder þik wiþin the citee[6] for hunger, and comen[8] to FroH, & prayede him to bene accordede wiþ Kyng Arthure forto haue pees; & þai wolde 3elde ham to him, & þe toun also. ¶ FroH saw[9] þat [10]no longer he[11] my3t[10] holde þe toun a3eynes her[12] wille, and truste greteli oppon[13] his owen strengþ, & sent to Kyng Authure þat he shulde come to[14] fei3t wiþ him, body for body, and so [15]þai shulde[15] departe Fraunce bituene ham ij. ¶ Kyng Arthure anone[9] graunte[16] hit, and wolde þat none of his peple vndertoke þe batail for him. ¶ And oppon þe morwe, boþe comen[17] wel armede wiþouten[18] Parys, þere þat þai shulde fi3t; and anone þai smyten togederes[19] so fersely; and so wel, þai fou3ten in boþe si[20]des, þat no man couþe deme þe bettre of ham. and so Hit bifelle[21] þat FroH 3af Arthure soche a stroke þat he knelede to þe grounde, wolde he nolde he. & as FroH wiþdrow his suerde, he wonded Kyng Arthure in þe forheuede, þat þe blode felle adoune by his eyen and[22] face. ¶ Arthure anone sterte vp hertly, when he felede[23] him hert, as a man þat semede almoste wode; & he toke[24] Tabourn, his gode suerde & drowe[9] it vp an hye, & 3af FroH soche a stroke þat þerwiþ he [25]cleuede his heuede[25] doun to þe shuldres, so þat his helme my3t nou3t bene[26] his warant; & so he felle adoun dede þere in þe place, and þo of þe citee maden[27] grete sorwe for FroH; and anone euerycheon 3elde ham to Kyng Arthure, & þe toune also, and

[1] worthy DO. [2] callede D. called O. [3] & a O.
[4] were D. wer O. [5] manly O.
[6–6] deiden with-in the citee wonder þik D. [7] dyden O.
[8] come D. [9] *om.* D. [10–10] he myght no longer D. [11] he ne O.
[12] her D. her O. *om.* R. [13] in D. [14] & O.
[15–15] shul þai D. shul þey O. [16] *grantede* D. *graunted* O.
[17] come D. [18] with-oute DO. [19] to-geder D. to-gydere O.
[20] *leaf* 40. [21] felle D. [22] & his D. & by his O.
[23] felt O. [24] nome DO.
[25–25] cleuede heuede R. cleue his heuede D. cleft his heed O.
[26] be DO. [27] made O.

bicome[1] his men, and deden[2] to him homage & feaute, & he vnder-
fonge ham & toke of ham gode hostages. & Kyng Arthure, *after*
þat, went forþe wiþ his host, [3]and conquerede[3] Angoñ & Aungers,
Gascoigne, Peihto, Nauerne, Burgoyne, Bery, Loherne, Turyn[4] and 4
Peihters; and alle þe o*þer*e landes of Fra*u*nce he conquerede
hollich. and when he hade alle conquerede, & taken bi homages
& feautes, he t*ur*nede aʒeyne to Parys, & þe*re*[5] duellede longe
tyme, and ordeynede pees[6] [7]ou*er* al the contrey, &[7] þrouʒ-out al 8
Fra*u*nce. ¶ And when pees was made ou*er*al, þrouʒ his noble
knyʒthode þat he hade, & also for his owen worþynesse, and no
man, were he neuer so grete a lorde, derst nouʒt meve[8] werre
aʒeynes him, no*þer* to arise and forto make þe lande of Fra*u*nce in 12
quiete & pees, he wonede þe*re* ix ʒere, & dede þe*re* meny grete
wonders, & repr*o*uede meny prout men & lu*þer* tyrauntes, & ham
chastisede after her deseruise.[9]

[10]**How Kyng Arthure auauncede alle his men þat hade tr*a*uailed 16
in his seruise. ¶ Capitulo ¶ Septuagesimo Nono.**

AND after,[11] hit bifelle þus at Ester, þe*re* þat he helde a feste at
Parys; richely he gan[12] auaunce his knyʒtes for here seruise
þat[13] him hade holpen[14] in his conquest; he ʒaf to his stywarde þat 20
men[15] cleped[16] Kay, Angoñ & Angers, and to Bedeler his boteler
he ʒaf Normandye, þat þo was callede Neustrie; and to Holden his
chaumberleyn he ʒaf Flaundres and Mance; and to Doreꝺ his
cosyn he ʒaf Boloyne; and to Richard his Nevew he ʒaf Pountif; 24
And to alle o*þer*e he ʒaf largely[17] landes & fees after þat þai were
of state. ¶ And when Arthur hade þus his knyʒtes feffede, at
[18]Apriꝺ after[18] nexte sewyng he come aʒeyne into Britaigne, his
owen lande. And after,[19] atte Whitsontide next sewyng, by conseil 28
of his barons, he wolde bene[20] cronede Kyng of Glomergoñ, and
halde a solempne feste, & lete sompne kynges, Erles and barons,
þat þai shulde come þider eu*er*ycheoñ.[21] Ther was Skater, kyng of
Scotlaꝺ; Cadwere, kyng of South-walys; Guillomer, king of 32
North Walys; Madede, kyng of Irlaꝺ; Malgam*us*, kyng of

[1] bycomen O. [2] dede D.
[3–3] *MS. has* and conquerede and conquerede. [4] Tulyn O.
[5] þere he D. þer he O. [6] pees longtyme O. [7–7] *om.* D.
[8] *om.* O. [9] deseruyng D. [10] *leaf* 40, *back.*
[11] afterwarꝺ D. aftirwarꝺ O. [12] began to O. [13] *MS.* þan.
[14] holp D. [15] me DO. [16] called O.
[17] *MS. has* langely; large D. [18–18] Auerill D. Auerill after O.
[19] *om.* D. [20] be DO. [21] echeoñ O.

Gutland'; Achilles, kyng of Ikeland'; Aloth, kyng of Denmerc; Gonewas, kyng of Norweye; and Hoel his cosyn, kyng of Dorkeneye; Cador, kyng of litel Britaigne; ¶ Morwiþ, erl of Cornne-
4 waile; Mauran, erle of Gloucestr'; Guerdoñ, erl of Wynchestre; Boel, erl of Herford'; Vrtegi,[1] erl of Oxenford[2]; Cursal, erl of Bathe; Ionas, erl of Chestre; Eueral, erl of Dorcestre; Kymar', erl of Salesbury; Waloth, erl of Kaunterbery; Igern, erl of Checestre;
8 Aral, erl of Leycestre, & þe Erl of [3]Warwik, &[3] o*þe*re riche [4]Lordes. Britons also *þe*re were ynow, þat is to seyn,[5] Dippon, Donand', Genuȝ; and meny o*þe*re þat beþ[6] nouȝt here nempnede[7] weren at þat fest; and meny ano*þe*re[8] faire feste Kyng Arthure hade holden[9]
12 biforn, but neue*r* none soche, ne so solempne; and þat laste xv dayes [10]wiþ michel[10] Honoure and merþe.

Of þe lettre þat was sent fram[11] þe Citee of Rome for pride to Kyng Arthure ¶ Capitulo ¶ Octogesimo.

16 THe þridde day, as kyng Arthure satte at his[12] mete amonges[13] his kynges, & amonges[14] ham þat seten at þe fest biforne ham, comen[15] in xij elderne men of age, rychely arraiede, and curteisly saluede þe kyng', and saide[16] þat[17] þai comen fro Rome, sent
20 messagers fram þe Emp*e*rour, and tok to him a lettre þat þus miche[18] was to vnderstounde: ¶ "Gretely vs m*e*rvailes,[19] Arthure, þat þow art on[20] so hardy, wiþ eyen in [21]þi heuede,[21] to maken[22] oppen werr' and contak aȝeyns vs of Rome, þat owen al þe worlde to
24 deme;[23] for þow haste neu*e*r ȝitte bifore[24] þis tyme pr*o*uede ne assaiede þe strengþ of þe[25] Romayns, and þ*e*rfor, þow it shalt[26] in[27] litil tyme. For Iulius Cesar' conquerede al þe lande of Britaigne, and tok' þ*e*rof tr*u*age, and oure folc longe tyme haue it hade; and
28 now, þrouȝ þi pryde, þow hit witholdes[28]; wherfore we co*m*mande þe þat þow ȝelde[29] aȝeyne. ¶ and [30]ȝitte haste þow[30] more folye done, þat þow hast slayn FroH, þat was oure baroñ of Fr*a*unce, al wiþ wrong'; and þ*e*rfore alle þe co*m*munes of Rome warnen and
32 co*m*manden þe, oppoñ lif and Lyme, þat þow in haste bene[31] at

[1] Vrgety DO. [2] Oxoñ D.
[3–3] Warwik' and meny D. Warwyk' & meny O. Warr' & R. [4] *leaf* 41.
[5] say D. sey O. [6] ben D. be O. [7] ynempned' O. [8] a DO.
[9] holde D. hold' O. [10–10] withel *sic* D. [11] fro D. [12] the D.
[13] among' O. [14] amonge D. among O. [15] come D. [16] seyden O.
[17] *om.* DO. [18] myċh yt O. [19] m*e*rveylleþ O.
[20] ones D. onys O. [21–21] þine hede D. þy heed O. [22] make O.
[23] demen D. [24] afore D. [25] *om.* O. [26] shal D. [27] in a O.
[28] withholdest O. [29] ȝelde it D. yt ȝelde O.
[30–30] ȝif þou hast O. [31] be O.

Rome, amendes to make of þe[1] misdede3 that þow haste done; and if hit so be þat þow come nou3t, [2]we shul passe þe huH of Ioye wiþ strengþ, and we shul [3]þe seke[3] wher'-euer' þow may[4] ben[5] founde, and þow shalt nou3t haue a[6] foote of lande of[7] þyn[8] owen þat we ne shal destroy; and aftirward wiþ þi body we shal done[9] oure wille." ¶ When þis lettre was rade, & alle men hit herde, þai were annoyede, alle þat were at þe[10] solempnite; and þe Britons wolde haue slayne þe messagers, but Arthure wolde nou3t soffre hit, and saide þat þe messagers shulde haue none[11] harme, and mow by resoun none deserue; but he commanded[12] hem to bene worþely[12] seruede. and after mete he toke[13] conseil of kyngus, Erles and Barons, what ansuere me my3t 3eue[14] to þe messagers; and þai conseilede[15] at ones [16]þat he shulde[16] assemble a grete power' of alle þe landes of þe whiche he hade lordeshipe, & manliche avenge him oppoñ þe Emperour, of þe despite þat he hade[17] sent to him soche a lettre; and þai suoren bi God and by his names þat þai wolde[18] him pursue & brenne in-alsemiche[19] as þai[20] my3t, & saide þat þai wolde[21] neuer faile[22] Kyng Arture, and raþere to bene[23] dede: and þai lete writen[24] a lettre to sende to þe Emperour by þe same messagers in þis maner':

Of þe bolde ansuere [25]þat Kyng Arthure[25] sent to þe Emperour of Rome & to þe Romayns. Capitulo ¶ iiij^{xx} primo.

"UV[n]derstondes[26] amonges 3ow of Rome,[27] þat I am Kyng Arthure of Britaigne, and frely hit[28] holde, and shal holde; and at Rome hastely y[27] shal be, nou3t to 3eue 3ow truage, but forto axen truage[27]; ffor Constantyne, þat was Elynus sone, þat was Emperour of Rome [29]and of al þe honour þat þereto bilongede[30]; ffor Maxinian[31] conquerede al Fraunce and Almaigne, & mount Ioye passede, & conquerede al Lumbardye; and þise ij were myn ancestres; and þat þai hade and helde, I shulde[32] haue, þrou3 ¶ Godes wille."

[1] þi D. þyn O. [2] *leaf* 41, *back*. [3–3] seke þe O. [4] myght O. [5] be DO. [6] oo O. [7] o D. [8] þi O. [9] do DO. [10] þat DO. [11] no O. [12–12] ham to ben worshiply D. hem to be worschipfully O. to bene worþely R. [13] nome DO. [14] 3eue DO. 3e R. [15] conseilede him D. counseyled hym O. [16–16] *MS. has* þat he shulde þat he shulde. [17] hathe D. [18] shulde D. schuld O. [19] in-as-mychel O. [20] þai D. þey O. he R. [21] nolde O. [22] fayle þe O. [23] be O. [24] write D. [25–25] *om.* O. [26] Understondeth D. Undirstondiþ O. [27] *om.* D. [28] y O. [29] *leaf* 42. [30] bilongeth D. [31] Maximian Kyng' of Britayne D. Maximian kyng of Brytaigne O. [32] shal D. schal O.

Of þe reu*e*rence þ*a*t Kyng Authure dede to þe Emp*e*rou*r*e3[1] messagers of Rome. Capitulo ¶ xx iiij Sec*un*do.

WHen þis lettre was made and enselede, Kyng Arthure to þe messagers 3af grete 3iftes; and aft*er* þat, þe messagers toke[2] here leue, & went þens[3] to þe co*ur*t of Rome a3eyne, and tolde þe Emp*e*rou*r* how worþely þei were vnderfonge,[4] & whiche[5] real co*m*pany he [K. Arthur] hade him forto[6] serue, & how he was more really se*r*uede þan þe Emp*e*rou*r*, or eny kyng leuyng in þe worlde. ¶ And when þe Emp*e*rou*r* hade seyne[7] þe lettre of Arthure, & herde what was þe*r*in, and saw þat Arthure wolde nou3t bene[8] rewelede by[9] him, he lete assemble & ordeyne an huge hoste forto destroie Kyng Arthure if[10] he my3t. and Kyng Arthure, as tochyng his p*ar*tye, ordeynede his powe*r* [11]of kny3tes[11] of þe rounde table.

Of þe kynges & lordes þ*a*t comen to helpe[12] Kyng Arthure a3eyne3 þe Emp*e*rou*r* of Rome. Ca*pitul*o Octogesimo ¶ Tercio.

THe kynges[13] of Scotlande, & of Irlande & of Gutlande, of Denmarc and of Almaigne, eu*e*ryche[14] of ham hade x M[l] of[15] men. ¶ Thei of Normandye, Gascoigne [16]& Spaigne,[16] Flaundres & Pehito, & of Boloigne, hade xx iiij M[l]. Geryn of Chartres hade x M[l]; Hoel of Britaigne hade[17] xij M[l], and him-self[e] [Arthur] [18]hade[17] of his owen Londe xij M[l], & of Arblasters and of Archires,[19] & of op*e*re folc on foote, þat noman coupe ham nombre. and when [20]þai weren al[20] redy forto wende, Kyng Arthure, his lande & Gunore his wife, [21]he bitoke[21] to one of his Nevewes þat was a wise kny3t, & an herdy, þat me callede Mordrede; but he was nou3t al trewe, as 3e shul here aft*er*warde. Kyng Arthure toke al his reame to þis Mordrede, saue oneliche þe crone. ¶ And after þat, kyng Arthure tok[22] his host and went to Southamptoñ, þ*er*e þat þe shippes were brou3t. and þe folc assemblede, and[23] þai deden ham to þe

[1] Kynges D. [2] nomen D. nome O.
[3] þens and comen D. þens & come O. [4] vndirfongen O.
[5] which a O. [6] to DO. [7] sey O. [8] be DO. [9] aft*er* DO.
[10] if þat D. [11–11] and kny3te D. & knyghtes O. [12] helpen O.
[13] kyng D. [14] eu*e*ry D. eche O. [15] *om.* O.
[16–16] & D. Almaigne O. [17] *om.* DO. [18] *leaf* 42, *back.*
[19] Arches O. [20–20] þai al were D. alle weren O.
[21–21] tok to kepe D. toke to kepe O. [22] nome DO. [23] as O.

see, and hade gode wynde & weder at wille. and as sone as þai myȝten,[1] þai arryuede at Berflete, & wenten[2] oute of here shippis, and spraden al þe contreye.

How Kyng Arthure fauȝt wiþ a Geaunt in Spaigne, þat me callede Denabȝ, þat quellede Elyne, þat was[3] Kyng Hoelès Cosyne, of litel Britaigne. Ca*pitulo* xx iiij iiijto.

KYng Arthure hade[4] duellede in þe contre but a litil while, þat men ne tolde him þat *þer* was comen a grete Geaunt into Spayne, and hade rauesshede faire Elyne, þat was cosyn to Hoel[5] of Britaigne, & hade brouȝt here vppon an huH þat is clepede[6] þe Mount of seynt BarnarH; & *þer*e was noman in þat contre so bolde, ne so hardy, þat derst wiþ him to[7] feiȝt, ne come neyȝ þe place *þer*e[8] þe Geaunt duellede; and men[9] callede him Dynabȝ, þat miche sorwe dede in þe contre. ¶ When Kyng Arthure herde þis tydynges,[10] he callede Kay & Bedewer, & *com*maundede ham þat þai shulde [11]gon [12]pryuely,[11] and aspie Where þe [13]Geaunt myȝt bene[13] founde. and þai come[14] to þe Ryuage *þer*e þat[3] men shulde gon[15] to þe mount, þat was al enclosede about wiþ wat*er*, and ȝit is and eue*r*[16] shal be; and þai saw a brynnyng fire oppoñ[17] þe HuH; and *þer*e was also anoþ*er* huH neyȝ, þat *þer*e was oppon anoþ*er*e fire brynnyng. ¶ Kay and Bedewer comen[18] to þe nexte huH, and founden[19] a widowe openheuede,[20] sittyng bisides a tounbe, sore wepyng, & grete sorwe made; and ofte she saide "Elyn! Elyn!" and Kay & Bedwere axede what her ailede,[21] & wherfore she made so miche sorwe, & who lay in þat tombe. ¶ "O," q*uod* she, "what sorwe and what mysauenture, faire lordes, make[22] ȝe here? for if þe Geant may ȝow here fynde, ȝe worþ dede anone." [23]"ben stille,[23] gode wif," q*uod* þai, "*þer*of dismai þe nouȝt, but tel vs þe soþe whi þow makes[24] so myche[25] sorwe & wepyng." ¶ "Sires,"[26] q*uod* she, "for a damiselle þat I norisshede wiþ my brest, þat me callede[27]

[1] myght O.
[2] as sone as þai miȝt þai wenten D. as sone as þey myght þey went O.
[3] *om.* D. [4] nad nouȝt D. had not O. [5] Hoel kyng D.
[6] callede D. called O. [7] *om.* DO. [8] *þer þat* O.
[9] me DO. [10] tydyng DO.
[11–11] go p*r*iuelich D. go pryuyly O. [12] *leaf* 43.
[13–13] Geauntes miȝten be D. Geaunt myght be O. [14] comen D.
[15] go DO. [16] eu*er*more D. eu*er*mor O.
[17] on O. [18] come O. [19] founde D. [20] openhed O.
[21] was O. [22] seke DO. [23–23] Bistill D. Be styH O.
[24] makest DO. [25] michel D. [26] Sire D. [27] calles D.

Elyne,—þat was nece to Hoel, Kyng of litel[1] Britaigne, and here liþ þe bodye in þis tombe,—þat to me was bitaken[2] to norisshe. so þere come a deuel, a Geaunt, & rauasshede here, & me Also, & lade vs boþe away; and he wolde haue [3]forleyn þis[3] maide þat was so 3onge & tendre of age, but she my3t hit nou3t soffren, so grete and so huge þe Geant is. and if he now [4]come as he was[4] wont to done, certes he wille 3ow quelle, boþe ij; and þerfore faste wende 3e hens." "and wherfore," saide þai, "go 3e nou3t hens?" ¶ "Certes, Sires,[5]" quod she, "When þat Elyne was dede, þe Geaunt made me to abide, [6]to done and haunt his wille, and me most nedes [7]it soffren.[7] and God hit wote, I do hit nou3t wiþ my gode[8] wille, for leuer me were to bene[9] dede þan wiþ him to dele, so miche payne I haue when he me forlei3."[10] ¶ When Kay and Bedwere hade herde al þat þis woman hade tolde, þa turnede a3eyne, and comen to Kyng Arthure, & tolde him al þat þai [11]hade seyne[11] & harde. ¶ Arthure anone toke[12] ham boþe with him, and went priuely by ny3t, þat none of his hoste it wiste, and come [13]on þe morne[13] to þe Geaunt, and fau3t wiþ him strongely, and at þe laste him slou3. and Arthure bede[14] Bedwere smyte of hes heuede,[15] and bryng' it to þe hoste to[16] shewe ham for a wonder', for it was so grete & so huge. ¶ When þai comen[17] a3eyne to þe hoste, þai tolde wherfore þai hade bene out, and shewede to' ham þe heuede;[18] & euery man was glade & ioyful of þe worþi dede þat Kyng Arthure hade done, her' lorde. ¶ And Hoel was ful sorweful[19] for his nece þat was so loste; and after', when he hade space, he lete make a faire chapel of oure Lady ouer Elyne3 Tumbe.

How Kyng Arthure 3af bataile to þe Emperour, in þe whiche bataile þe Emperoure was slayn. Capitulo Octogesimo v^to^.

ARthure and his peple hade tydynges[20] þat þe Emperour hade assemblede[21] grete power', as wel of Sarasynes and of[1] paynemys [22]as of[22] Cristen men, [23]Wherof þe noumbre was xx iiij M[t] of horsemen and of[8] fote men.[23] Arthure and his peple ordeynede[24]

[1] *om.* DO. [2] betake O. [3—3] forlaide þe D. forleyn þat O. [4—4] as he is O. [5] Sire D. [6] *leaf* 43, *back.* [7—7] y-suffren O. [8] *om.* D. [9] be O. [10] forlith DO. [11—11] seye D. [12] nome DO. [13—13] in þe morwe erly D. on þe morowe erly O. [14] bad' O. [15] heed' O. [16] & D. [17] come O. [18] heed O. [19] sory O. [20] tydyng O. [21] assemble a D. Assembled' a O. [22—22] and D. as O. [23—23] *om.* O. [24] ordeynede D. ordeigned' O. *om.* R.

ham[1] fast forþ in[2] [3]here Way towarde þe Emp*erour*, and passede Normandy & Fr*a*unce vnto Burgoyne, and wolde euen haue gone[4] to þe host, for men tolde him þat þe Emp*eroure*ȝ host [5]was comen[5] to Lucye. ¶ The Emp*erour* and his host, in þe byginning of 4 August', remevede fram Rome, and come fourth ryȝt þe way toward þe host. ¶ tho [6]comen Kyng[6] Arthures aspieȝ, and saide, if þat Arthure wolde, he shulde fynde þ*er*e faste bisides, þe Emp*erour*; but þai saiden[7] þat þe Emp*eroure* hade so grete powr' 8 wiþ him of kynges of þe lande, & of Paynemys yfere, & also *cristen* peple, þat it were[8] but grete folie to Kyng Arthure forto mete wiþ[9] him, for þe espies tolde þat[10] þe Emp*erour* hade v men or vj aȝeynes one of his. ¶ Kyng Arthure was bolde and hardy, and for noþing 12 him dismaiede, & saide: "gò we forþ[11] in Goddes name aȝeynes þe Romayns, þat wiþ ham ledeþ[12] Sarasines & Paynemes þat no man*er* truste þai hauen[13] to God', but oneliche[14] oppoñ here strengþ! Go we now, and seche h*am* sharpely[15] in þe name of almyȝty God', 16 and slee we þe paynemys and *Cristen* men þat bene enemys wiþ ham forto destroe *Cristen* men; and God shal vs helpe, for we haueþ[16] the ryȝt, & þ*er*fore haue we gode trust in God'; & done[17] we so þat þe enemys þat bene[18] to *Cristen*dome & to Gode mow 20 bene[19] dede & destroiede, & þat men mow recorde þe worþinesse of knyȝthode!" ¶ When Kyng Arthure hade þus saide, þai *criden*[20] al wiþ an hye voice, "God', fader almiȝty, [21]Worsheppede be þine[22] name Wiþouten[23] ende, Amen! and' gr*ant* vs *grace* wel to done,[24] and 24 to destrie oure enemys þat beþ[25] aȝeynes *Cristen*dome! In þe name of þe fader' & [26]of þe sone and of þe[26] holy gost, Amen! And God ȝeue ham[27] neuer' *grace* ne worshipp̄ in the worlde, ne m*er*cy of him to[28] haue, þat þis day shal feynten wel forto smyte, and 28 egrely!" and so þai riden softly, and ordeynede her' wenges wel and wisely.

¶ The Emp*eroure* herde telle þat Kyng' Arthure & his folc were redy arraiede forto feiȝt wiþ him; and þider [29]þai comen,[29] wher' he 32 ordeynede his wenges in þe best man*er*e þat he myȝt, and more

[1] *om.* DO. [2] on O. [3] *leaf* 44. [4] go O.
[5–5] wolde come D. wold come O.
[6–6] come D. come kyng O. [7] seid O. [8] nere DO.
[9] *MS.* wiþ wiþ. [10] *om.* O. [11] boldely D. boldly O.
[12] ledes D. lede O. [13] haue DO. [14] only O. [15] scharplich O.
[16] haue O. [17] do DO. [18] beth D. [19] be O. [20] cryede O.
[21] *leaf* 44, *back.* [22] þi D. þy O. [23] *with*oute O. [24] do O.
[25] ben O. [26–26] sone & D. [27] hy*m* O. [28] for-to D.
[29–29] þai come D. heiȝ come O.

trust oppoñ his strengþ þan[1] in God almyȝty. and þat was seyn afterward', ffor when þo ij hostes metten,[2] the Emperour loste soche foure of his[3] folc as dede Kyng' Arthur'; and so meny were slayne, what in o[4] side and[5] in þat opere, þat[3] hit was grete pite to wete and to seen.[6] ¶ In þis bataile were slayn þrouȝ Kyng Arthure, v kyngȝ of[7] paynemys, & of opere, Wonder[8] miche peple. ¶ And Kyng Arthures men fouȝten so wel, þat þe Romaines and[9] paynemys hade no [10]more power' ne strengþ[10'] to wiþstande ham,[11] þan xx shepe aȝeynes v. wolfes. ¶ And so hit bifelle [12]þat in þis bataile,[12] in a shoure þat was wonder herde and longe duryng', in þat o[13] side and in þat opere, þe Emperour, amonges ham þere was slayn; but noman wist forsoþ who him slouȝ.

How Kyng Arthure lete entere his knyȝtes þat he hade Loste in bataile; and how he sent þe Emperourreȝ body [14]to Rome, þat þere was slayne in bataile. Capitulo Octogesimo vj^to^.

WHen þe Romayns wist þat þe Emperour was dede, þai forsoke þe felde, and þe paynemys also; and Kyng' Arthure after ham chasede[15] til it was nyȝt, and so meny of ham quellede þat hit was wonder' to telle; and þo turnede Kyng Arthure aȝeyne [16]when it[16] was nyȝt, and þankede almyȝty God' of his Vittorie. And [17]on þe morwe[17] he lete loke [18]& seke[18] al þe felde for his knyȝtes þat he hade þere lost,[19] þat is to seyne, BoreH, erl of Maans; Bedwere & Kay, and[20] Lygers, Erl of Boloigne; Vrtegi,[21] erl of Baat,[22] Aloth, erl of Wynchestre; Cursale, erl of Chestre; and[23] Holdeyn, erl of Flaundres: þise were þe grete Lordes þat Kyng' Arthure Loste in þat bataile amonges[24] opere worþi knyȝtes; and somme he lete entere in[25] Abbayes by þe contre, [26]and some he lete bene[27] borne into here owen contre[26]; and þe Emperourres body he lete take and put oppon a bere, & sent hit to Rome, and sent to say to þe Romaynes þat 'as for Britaigne & Fraunce whiche þat he helde, opere truage he wolde none[28] paie; and if[3] þai [29]axend him eny opere,[29] riȝt suche[30] he wolde ham paye.' ¶ Kyng[31] Arthur' lete

[1] *MS.* þat. [2] mette DO. [3] *om.* O. [4] þat one D. on O.
[5] & what O. [6] see O. [7] of þe O. [8] *om.* D. [9] & þe O.
[10–10] power' D. more strengþe O. [11] *om.* DO. [12–12] *om.* D.
[13] on D. [14] *leaf* 45. [15] I-chacede D. [16–16] þo it DO. when R.
[17–17] in þe Morne O. [18–18] *om.* D. [19] ylost O. [20] *om.* D.
[21] Vrgeti DO. [22] Baak' O. [23] & aftir O. [24] amonge D. among O.
[25] at D. [26–26] *om.* D. [27] be O. [28] not O.
[29–29] axede him eny opere truageȝ D. axed ony oþer truage O.
[30] such truage O. [31] þe kyng O.

bere Kay to Kenen, his owen castel, and þere he was enterede; and Ligers was born[1] to Boloyne, þere þat he was lorde; and Holdeyn was borne[1] to Flaundres, & þere he was enterede; and alle the oþere he lete entier [2]wiþ michel honour[2] in Abbayes & in houseȝ of Religiouñ in þe contrey þere þat þai were dede. ¶ And Arthure him-self soiournede þe[3] same ȝere in Burgoigne [4]wiþ his[5] host, and þouȝt þat[6] same ȝere follewyng passe þe mount[7] Ioye, & haue gone[8] to Rome,[9] forto hãue[10] take þe citee, and haue put þe Romayns in subieccioñ; but þe wickede tiraunt Mordrede him lettede,[11] as after ȝe shul here.

How Mordrede þe traitour to whome Kyng Arthure tok his lande to kepe, and his castelles,[12] and helde hit aȝeynes him. ¶ Capitulo ¶ Octogesimo ¶ Septimo.

WHen [13]Kyng Arthure[13] hade taken[14] to Mordrede his reaume to kepe, and was gone aȝeynes þe Emperoure of Rome, & was passede þe see, Mordrede anone toke homages and feautes of al ham þat were in þis lande, and wolde haue hade þe lande[15] to his owen vse, and [16]toke castelles about,[16] and lete ham arraie; and after his falsenesse he dede anoþere grete wrong, ffor, aȝeynes þe law of Cristiente, he toke[17] his owen Emes wif, as a traitour shulde, and ordeynede him a grete hoste aȝeynes Arthures comyng, to halde the lande aȝeyns him wiþ strengþ for euermore, and to slee Kyng Arthure yf[18] he myȝt; and lete sende by þe Cee and lande, and lete assemble Paynymes and cristen peple; and he sent to Saxones and to Danoys[19] forto help him. and also Mordrede sende[20] to Cheldrik, to done[21] men come to him out of Saxoyne, þat was a worþi Duc, and bihiȝt[22] him, if þat he brouȝt wiþ him[23] peple,[24] he wolde graunt him[25] al þe lande fram biȝonde Humber vnto Scotland, and al þe lande þat Engist hade [26]of Vortigers ȝifte, When þat he hade spousede his douȝter. And Cheldrik come wiþ grete strengþ [27]and power[27] of Peple: and Mordrede him[28] assemblede also in his half, þat þai hade xl M[l] of stronge knyȝtes when þat[5] þai hade nede.

[1] bore O. [2–2] *om.* D. *with* mych honour O. [3] þat O. [4] *leaf* 45, *back.* [5] *om.* D. [6] þe DO. [7] mount of DO. [8] go O. [9] Rome al DO. [10] *om.* DO. [11] lette DO. [12] castell D. [13–13] Arthure the kyng D. Arthur þe kyng O. [14] take O. [15] lande al D. [16–16] nome castell D. nome Castels aboute O. [17] nome DO. [18] yf þat O. [19] Danes O. [20] sent O. [21] do D. [22] behete O. [23] him miche D. hym mych O. [24] *om.* O. [25] him in heritage for euermore D. hym in herytage for euermore O. [26] *leaf* 46. [27–27] *om.* D. [28] hade D. had O.

How Arthure enchacede[1] Mordrede þe *trai*tour, and how he was slayne, and [2]Kyng Arthure also[2] wondede to þe[3] dethe. ¶ Capitulo ¶ Octogesimo ¶ Octauo.

WHen þis tydynges[4] come to Kyng Arthure *þere* þat[5] he was in Burgoyne, he was ful sore annoiede, and toke al *Frau*nce to Hoel forto kepe, wiþ haluendele[6] his men, & *prai*ede him þat he wolde hit kepe til þat he comen[7] aȝeyne, ffor him-self wolde wende into Britaigne and avenge him oppoñ Mordrede *þat* was his *trai*toure; and [8]fourþ went[8] his waye, and come to Switsand', & made his men to[5] gone[9] into shippe, & wolde haue arryuede at Sandewiche, and brouȝt wiþ him an[10] grete hoste of Fraunce also wiþ his owen lande. but er' þat he myght come to lande wiþ his peple þat were comen[11] out of þe shippis, Mordrede was comen wiþ all his power, and ȝaf a stronge bataile, so þat Kyng Arthure loste meny a man er' þat he miȝt [12]comen to land[12]; ffor *þere* was Gaweyn his Nevewe slayne, and Anguissel þat helde Scotland', and meny o*þere*, wherof Kyng' Arthure was ful sory. ¶ But after þat þai were comen[13] to lande, Mordrede myght nougt aȝeynes him endure, but anone *was* [14]descomfitede, and flede þens þat[15] same nyȝt Wiþ his men, and oppon þe morwe[16] come to Londoñ; but þo of the citee wolde nouȝt soffre ham[17] come in; and fro þens he fledde to Wynchestre, and *þere*[18] helde him wiþ his peple þat [19]with him come.[19] Kyng Arthure[20] lete take þe body of[21] Gaweyn his cosyn, & þe body of Anguissel, and lete ha*m* [22]bene borne[22] into Scotland' into[23] her' owen contre, and *þere* þai were en*t*erede.

¶ And [24]anone after' þat,[24] Kyng Arthur' toke[25] his wey to destroie Mordrede; and he fledde fro þens into Cornewaile. ¶ The Quene Gunnore, þat was Kyng Arthures wif', þat þo soiournede at ȝork', and herde þat Mordrede w*as* [26]fledde þens þat he was,[26] and miȝt nouȝt endure aȝeynes Kyng Arthure, she was sore adrade, and hade grete doute, and wist nouȝt what was best al forto done,[27] for she wiste wel[28] here lorde Kyng' Arthure wolde nouȝt[29] of her' haue

[1] enchase D. [2–2] also þat Kyng Arthure was DO. [3] *om.* DO.
[4] tydyng' DO. [5] *om.* D. [6] haluendele of D. haluendel of O.
[7] come DO. [8–8] went forth D. [9] go O. [10] a DO. [11] come O.
[12–12] come to Lande with his peple D. come to londe O.
[13] come O. [14] *leaf* 46, *back.* [15] the D. þe O. [16] morne D.
[17] him D. hym O. [18] þere he O.
[19–19] come with him D. *with* hym comen O. [20] *om.* O.
[21] *MS. has* of Arthur' *with* Arthur' *scratched out.* [22–22] be bore DO.
[23] in O. [24–24] *after* anon D. aftir anon O. [25] nome DO.
[26–26] fley D. [27] do O. [28] wel þat DO. [29] neuer D. neu*ere* O.

mercy, for þe grete shame þat she to him hade done; and toke[1] her' wai priuely[2] wiþ iiij men [3]and wiþ no mo,[3] & come to Kerliouñ, and [4]þere she[4] duellede al her' [5]lifes tyme, þat[5] neuer was seyn amonges folc, her lif duryng'. ¶ Arthure wist þat' Mordrede was fledde into Cornewail. he[6] lete sende after his men into Scotland, & into[7] Northumberland vnto Humber', and lete assemble folc wiþout noumbre, & come[8] fro þens into Cornewaile to seche and pursue after Mordrede. and Mordrede hade assemblede[9] al þe folc of' Cornwayle, and hade peple wiþoute nombre, & wist þat' [10]Arthure Was [11]comyng'. he[11] hade leuer' to[12] Dye and tak his chaunce, þan lenger' flee, and abode and ȝaf an harde bataile to Kyng Arthur' & to his peple, so þat so miche peple was slayn,— What in þat' one halfe[13] and in þat oþer,—þat noman wiste who þat[12] hade þe better partie. ¶ But so hit bifelle at the laste, þat Mordrede was slayn, and al his folc, and al þe gode chiualry þat Kyng' Arthure hade gaderede and norisshede of diuerseȝ[14] landes; and also þe noble Knyghtes of þe rounde table, þat so miche[15] were preisede þrouȝ al þe worlde, weren[16] þere slayn; and Arthure himself was wondede to þe deth. but he lete him bene[17] born in a liter to Auyouñ, to bene[17] helede of his wondes; and ȝitte þe Britons supposen þat he Leueþ in a-noþere lande, and þat he shal come ȝit and conquere al Britaigne; but certes þis is þe prophecie of Merlyn: he saide þat his deþ shulde bene[17] dotous; and he saide sothe, for men þerof ȝitte hauen[18] doute, and shal[19] for euermore, as me[20] saiþ, for men weten[21] nouȝt wheþer þat he leueþ[22] or is dede. ¶ Arthure was born[23] to Auyouñ þe xxij[24] ȝere of his regne After' þe Incarnaciouñ of oure lorde Ihesu Crist' v. C̄ and xlvj[ti] ȝere.

How Kyng Arthure delyuerede þe[25] reame to Constantyn, þe sone of Cador, his nevew. ¶ Capitulo ¶ Octogesimo ¶ Nono.

WHenne Kyng Arthure wist þat he miȝt no longer' regnè, he lete come bifore him Constantyne, þat was Cadoreȝ[26] sone, erl of Cornwail, his cosyn, and to him bitoke al his reaume, and to

[1] nome DO. [2] pryuelych D. [3–3] wiþ-out mo D. *with*oute mo O. [4–4] þere D. þere nome & þere sche O. [5–5] lif and D. lyf þat O. [6] and DO. [7] *om.* DO. [8] went D. comen O. [9] assemblede to him D. Assembled' to hym O. [10] *leaf* 47. [11–11] Comyng' & D. comynge & O. [12] *om.* D. [13] side D. [14] dyuerse D. diuers O. [15] michel D. [16] were O. [17] be DO. [18] haue O. [19] *om.* O. [20] he O. [21] wete DO. [22] leue O. [23] bore O. [24] xij D. [25] þis D. [26] Cador O.

him saide, & bade him þerof to bene[1] Kyng til þat he come aʒeyne, for-asmiche as he hade none heire of his body bigeten: and grete harme was hit þat [2]soche a noble[2] Kyng, and so doughty, hade none[3] childe of his body bigeten[4]; [5]but al þing þat God wil haue done,[6] moste [7]bene done,[7] Whos name ben[8] blessede wiþouten ende! Amen.

How Kyng Constantyne was werrede of Mordred*us* ij sones. Capitulo Nonogesimo.

THis Constance[9] was a noble knyght and a worþi of body; and þo ij sones þat Mordrede hade bigeten,[10] hade grete en[u]y to Constantyne, þat þo was cronede kyng; and so þat[11] þai bigonne to meve werr aʒeynes him, and assemblede a grete hoste of ham þat [12]were to-fore[12] wiþ Mordrede, and[13] hade bene dryuen away.[14] þai deden[15] miche sorwe [16]þrouʒ al þat[16] lande: þat o[17] broþer ordeynede him to Londoñ forto take þe citee, and þat oþere to Wynchestre; but Constantyn come [18]to Londoñ[18] and slough him þat was þere; and after, he went to Wynchestre, and slough him þat þere was also, so þat boþe his enemys were dede. and when Constantyn had regnede worþely iiij ʒer, he deide, & liþ at Londoñ.

Of [19]þe Kynges[19] Adelbright and of Edelf. Capitulo Nonogesimo primo.

After Kyng Constantyn*us* deth þere were ij kynges in Britaigne: þat on me callede Adelbright, þat was a Danoys, þat[20] helde þe contre of Northfolc and Southfolc; þat oþere hiʒt Edelf, and was a Britoun, þat[21] helde Nichole, Lyndeseye, and al þe lande vnto Humber. ¶ þise ij kynges faste werrede to-geder*es*,[22] but afterwarde þai were accorded, and louede to-geder[23] as þai [24]haden bene borne of o body.[24] ¶ The Kyng Edelf hade a sustre þat me callede Orewenne, and he ʒaf here þrouʒ grete frendeship to Kyng Adelbright to wif, and he bigate on[25] here a doughter þat me callede Argentiłł. and in þe þridde ʒere after, him come vppon[26] a stronge

[1] be DO. [2–2] so noble a DO. [3] no DO. [4] begete O.
[5] *leaf* 47, *back*. [6] do O. [7–7] be done D. be do O. [8] be D.
[9] Constantyne D. Constantyn O. [10] biget D. bygete O.
[11] *om.* O. [12–12] wern bifore D. ben byfore O. [13] þat D.
[14] away & DO. [15] dede O. [16–16] þrouʒ-oute þe D. [17] on D.
[18–18] *om.* D. [19–19] Kyng D. [20] and DO. [21] & DO.
[22] to-gidere O. [23] to-ged*er*es D.
[24–24] hade bene borne bre*per*ne D. had be bore of o body O.
[25] in DO. [26] vpon hym O.

[1]sikenesse, þat nedes he moste dye; and he sent to Kyng Edelf his brother-in-lawe, that he shulde come and speke with him; & he come to him with gode wille. ¶ Tho praiede he the [king], and coniurede also in the name of God, þat after when he were dede, he shulde tak' ArgentiH his dou3ter, & þe lande, & þat he kepte here wel, and norisshede[2] in his Chaumbre, and when she were of age he shulde [3]done here bene[3] marede to þe strongest and worþieste man þat he myȝt fynde, and þan he shulde ȝelde[4] vp her' lande a3eyne. Edelf hit grauntede, and by oth hit confermede [5]at his power'.[5] ¶ And when Adelbright was dede and enterede, Edelfe toke þe damisel Argentil, and norisshede her' in his chaumbre, and she bicome þe faireste creature þat[6] eny man [7]myȝt fynde.[7]

How þe[8] Kyng Edelf' mariede þe damisel Argentil to a knaue of his Kechyne. Capitulo xx iiij &[8] xij°.

THis Kyng Edelf, þat was Vncle to the Damisel Argentil, biþou3t how þat he myght falseliche[9] haue þe lande fram his nece for euermore; & falsely, a3eynes his oth, þou3t to desceyu þe damiseH, and mariede here to a knaf of his kechyne þat me callede Curan[10]; and he bicome þe worþiest man[8] & strongest[11] of body þat eny man wiste in eny lande þat þo leuede; and to him he þou3t here shendefully haue mariede forto haue hade hir' lande afterward; but he was clene desceyuede. ¶ ffor þis Curan[12] was Hauelockes sone, þat was Kyng of Kirkelane in Denmark; and þis Curan conquerede his wifes landes, and slough Kyng Edelf þat was his wifes Vncle, & hade al here lande as [13]in anoþer stede hit telleþ more oppenly; and he ne regnede but iij ȝere, for Saxoynes and Danoys[14] him quellede; and þat was grete harme to al Britaigne; and Britons bere him to Stonehynge, and þere þai[8] him enterede wiþ michel[15] honoure and solempnite.

Of[16] Kyng Conan. Capitulo Nonogesimo Tercio.

AFter þis Curan, regnede Conan, [17]þat was[17] his cosyn, þat was a wonder proude kny3t[18] and regnede.[19] he couþe[20] haue no maner loue, but euer' he was medlyng wiþ his owen peple, and toke

[1] *leaf* 48. [2] norisshe here D. [3–3] do her' be D. do here be O.
[4] ȝeue DO. [5–5] his prayer' DO. [6] þat myght lyue or O.
[7–7] wist D. fynde O. [8] *om.* DO. [9] falsely D. falsly O.
[10] Hykke Curan O. [11] strongest man D. strengest man O.
[12] Curan þat O. [13] *leaf* 48, *back.* [14] Danes O.
[15] *om.* D. myeh O. [16] Of þe O. [17–17] *om.* D. [18] man O.
[19] regnede & D. regned' & O. [20] coude not O.

his Vncle wiþ werre, and helde[1] his ij childerne.[2] ¶ The Saxoynes werrede aȝeynes him oftetymes, but he ham[3] ouercome at þe laste; & so he was in pees al his lifes[4] tyme; and he regnede xiiij ȝere, and after,[5] he[6] deide, and ¶ liþ at Londoñ.

Of Kyng Certif; and of Gurmonde, þat come þrouȝ paynemys[7] into Britaigne. Capitulo Nonogesimo Quarto.

After þis Conan, regnede his cosyn Certifᵗ, þat was bihatede of all his peple, and noþing bilouede. and þis Certif loste al Britaigne þrouȝ werre. And in his tyme felle þat[8] grete meschief in[9] Britaigne, þat Cristendome was destroede, and alle þe Britons were dryuen oute, & þe lande loste[10] wiþouten[11] eny recouerynge[12]; but afterwarde lefte þe lande to Saxoynes, as ȝe shul afterwarde hure. ¶ For in þat tyme þere was a paynyme þat me callede Gurmonde, þat was þe Kynges sone Daufrikᵗ, of þe Paynymes folc, þat hade þe reaume after his fader, and was kyngᵗ, saf he biquaþ & ȝaf hit to his broþer, and saide þat[6] he wolde[13] neuer bene[14] kyngᵗ but[3] if he might[15] conquere and gete[15] a reaume in a[16] straunge contrey; for he was bolde, and ekᵗ[3] stronge of body. & of him[17] prophecied Merlyn, and saide þat 'he shulde bene[14] a wolfᵗ of þe see'; and[18] lete assemble paynymes wiþout[19] nombre, and lete apparaile shippis, and went by meny londes, and toke homages and feautes of meny. and so he went by þe[16] see fram lande to lande, & conquerede diuerses[20] landes, so þat he come to[21] Irlandᵗ, and conquered þat [22]lande, þat[22] ofte-tymes werrede vppon Britaigne,[23] and Britons[24] vppoñ ham; and often[25] [26]wonnen, & ofte[26] losten,[27] and ȝeuen hostages to Britons. and so þai senten[28] to Gurmondᵗ, þere þat he was in Irlandᵗ, þat he shulde come into Britaigne, and helpe ham aȝeynes[29] þe Britons, to helpe ham deliuere[30] þat lande of ham; and þai wolde [31]him holde[31] gladly for her lorde; for he was a paynyme, and þai were paynemes, and þe Britons were cristen: wel auȝt him[32] þan ham forto helpe, so as

[1] quelde D. welde O. [2] sones D. [3] *om.* O. [4] lif D. lyf O.
[5] aftirwardᵗ O. [6] *om.* DO. [7] Parys O. [8] þe D. [9] of D.
[10] lost D. y-lost O. [11] with-oute O. [12] retourne D. recouere O.
[13] nolde O. [14] be DO. [15] gete and conquere D. [16] *om.* D.
[17] *leaf* 49. [18] and he DO. [19] withouten D.
[20] diuerse D. diuers O. [21] into DO. [22—22] *om.* D.
[23] Brytonys O. [24] britayne D. [25] ofte D. [26—26] *om.* O.
[27] lost D. [28] senden D. sent O. [29] ȝens O.
[30] *MS. has* deliuerede *with the last* de *underlined for erasure.*
[31—31] holde hym O. [32] he O.

þai weren[1] of on law. ¶ When Gurmond' herde þis praier', he hastede him as miche as he mi3t, and arryuede in Scotland', and come into Northumberlond' *þere* þat þe Saxones were duellyng'; & þai confermede þe couenaunte3 bituene[2] ha*m*, þat were made by oþes and by hostages, forto beren[3] him trew fay, & halde him for lorde, and paye to him truage by 3ere. ¶ Tho bigonne þe Saxoynes & þe Aufricans to[4] destroye, robbe and brenne tounes, and destroye [5]al þing', as michel[5] as þai my3t, and sparede[6] neiþ*er*e man, woman, ne childe, Lewede ne lernede,[7] þan[8] alle þai quellede, & caste adoun tou*n*us, & castelle,[9] & cherches, & so put þai al þe lande to[10] grete destruccioun. [11]And as sone as the Britons[11] my3t [12]flee,[13] þai fledde þens, as wel poer' as ryche, Bisshoppis, Abbotes, Chanons, & alle o*þer*e, grete and smale; so*m*me into litel Britaign, & some into Cornwail; alle þo þat shippis mi3t haue.

How[14] Kyng Gurmonde drof þe[4] Kyng Certif to Chichestre, and quellede þe Britons, & prou3[4] quey[n]tise ¶ gete the toune. [Capitulo nonagesimo quinto.]

SErtif þe[4] kyng, fleye þens into[15] Chichestre, þat þo was a gode cite and a[4] st*r*ong, and þ*er*e helde him xx daies. and þis Gurmonde hit bisegede; but þe citee was so strong' þat he mi3t nou3t [16]hit gete[16] be no maner' engyne þat he my3t done.[17] þo biþou3t þai oppoñ a grete queyntise forto brenne the toune: þai maden[18] engynes of[19] glew and of nettes, and token[20] peces of tunder' &[21] fire, and bonde to[22] sparwe[23] feet, & aft*er*ward lete ha*m* flee; and þai [24]fley anon ry3t,[24] and loggede ham in þe toune þ*er*e þat her' nestes were, and in stackes & in euesynges of house[25]; & þe fire biganne anone to tende and brenne[26] al þe toune. and whenne þe Britons saw þe toune brenne on[27] eu*er*y side, þai hiede ham out, and fau3t; but anone þai were slayn & descomfitede. and whiles þe bataile durede, þe kyng p*r*iuely [28]hud him, &[28] stale away into Walys, & men wiste neu*er* where[29] he bicome; & so was þe toun

[1] were O. [2] bituene D. betwen O. bitue R. [3] ber' D. bere O.
[4] *om.* D. [5–5] as michel D. al thing in-as-mych O. [6] spare D.
[7] lered' O. [8] þat D. þat O. [9] Castels O. [10] in D.
[11–11] & as fast as þei D. & as sone as þey O. [12] *leaf* 49, *back.*
[13] fleen D. [14] How þe D. [15] vnto D. to O.
[16–16] get þat citee D. gete þat Cytee O. [17] do O.
[18] made D. [19] with DO. [20] tok D. [21] & of DO.
[22] to þe D. hem to þe O. [23] sparowes O.
[24–24] anone ri3t fley D. anon right fley O. [25] houses O.
[26] brennede D. brent O. [27] in DO. [28–28] *om.* D. [29] qwer *sic* O.

of Chichestre taken[1] & destroiede. and after, went Gurmonde, & destroiede citees & tounes þat neuer were afterward made aȝeyne, as it is seen ȝitte in meny stedes.

4 How þis lande was clepede Engeland for þe name of Engist; and how meny Kynges [2]were [3]made[2] after in þe Londe. ¶ Capitulo Nonogesimo Sexto.

WHen Gurmonde hade[4] wastede and destroiede al þe lande þrouȝ-out, he ȝaf þe londe to þe[5] Saxones; and[6] þai toke hit wiþ gode wille, for þe Saxones longe tyme hade desirede hit, for-asmiche as þai were of Engistes Kynrede, þat first hade al þe lande of Britain; and þo lete ham bene[7] callede Englisshemen,[8] for-asmiche as in his tyme hit was callede Engistes lande, when he hade conquerede it of[9] Vortiger þat hade spousede his douȝter. but fram[10] þe tyme þat Brut come[11] ferst into[12] Engeland, þis land was callede Britaigne, & þe folc Britons, til þe tyme þat þis Gurmond eftesones conquerede hit & ȝaf it vnto[13] Saxonus, and þai anone riȝt chaunged þe name, as [14]bifore is[14] saide. ¶ And when þis was done, Gurmond passede ouer into Fraunce, & þere conquered meny londes, & destroed all[15] cristen peple þere þat he come. and þe Danois[16] duellede in þis[17] lande, & bigonne faste hit[18] inhabit at here owen wille; and þai wolde haue made newe kynges and lordes, but þai myȝt neuer assenten[19] to haue onelich o kyng, forto bene[7] to him entendaunt: and þerfore þai [20]maden meny[20] kynges [21]in diuerses[21] shires, as hit was in Engistes tyme. ¶ The ferst kyngdome was Kent, and þat[22] opere Southsex,[23] and þe þridde Westsex, and þe ferþ Estsex, and[5] þe fifte Northumberland, and þe sixte Estangle, þat is to seyn Northfolc & Southfolc, and þe seueneþ Merchenoroth, and þat is þe Erl[24]dome of Nichole,[25] Huntyngdon and[26] Hereford, Gloucestre, Wynchestre, Warwyk[27] and Darby; and so departede[28] þe Englisshe-men[28] al Engeland into[29] vij parties. ¶ And after,[30] hit

[1] take D. [2–2] weren y-made O. [3] *leaf* 50. [4] hast O.
[5] *om.* O. [6] anon DO. [7] be DO.
[8] Englisshmen for encheson of Engistes name & þe lond þey lete Calle Ingelond in here langage & þe folk ben called Englisshmen O.
[9] of kyng O. [10] fro D. [11] *MS.* cocome.
[12] *MS. has* into fr, *with* fr *underlined for omission;* in D.
[13] vnto þe DO. [14–14] it is afore O. [15] *om.* D.
[16] Saxoynes D. Danes O. [17] the D. [18] it to D. [19] assent DO.
[20–20] made diuerse D. [21–21] in al D. in diuers O. [22] þer D.
[23] Sussex O. [24] *leaf* 50, *back.* [25] Lyncolne D. [26] *om.* DO.
[27] Warwyk DO. Warr R. [28–28] Englyssh O. [29] in O.
[30] after þat D.

bifelle þat þo kynges werrede [1]to-gederes ofte-tymes[1]; and euer he
þat *was* strongest binome ham[2] þat were[3] feblest; & so hit was
longe tyme þat þai nade no kyng[4] *cronede* amonges ham, ne no *cristen*
men *was* þo amonges ham, ne *cristendome* neiþ*ere*, but were[4] pay- 4
nemys l. ȝere, til þat seynt Gregori was pope[5] of Rome, þat hade
seyne childerne of þe naciouñ in þe citee of Rome, þat were wonder-
faire *creatures*, & hade grete wille and desire ham forto[6] biholde,
and axede of þe marchauntes whens þai were, & of what naciouñ; & 8
men[7] tolde him þat þai were of Engeland, & Englisshe[8] þai were
callede; but þai and all þe peple of Engeland were paynemes, &
bileuede nouȝ in[9] God. ¶ "Allas," *quod* seynt Gregori, "wel
mow þai [10]bene callede[10] Englissh, for þai haue þe visages[11] of 12
Angeles; and *per*for wel auȝt [12]ham þen ben *cristen* men.[12]" And
for þis enchesouñ seynt Gregor sent seynt Austyne into Engeland,
and xl. goode men wiþ him, þat were of gode lif, and holy men, to
*pre*che and[13] teche, and to conu*er*te þe Englisshe peple, and ham 16
turne to God: and þat *was* in þe vj ȝere þat seynt Gregor hade
bene Pope,[14] þat is xx to seyne, aft*er* þe Incarnaciouñ of oure Lorde
Ihesu Crist, v. C. iiij and[15] vij ȝere, as þe *cronicles* telleþ.[16]

How Seynt Austyne baptisede & conu*er*tede Kyng Adelbright, and ij bisshopis *þat* he callede[17] his felawes. Ca*pitulo* xx iiij xvij°. 20

WHen Seynt Austyne come ferst into Engeland, he [18]arryuede
[19]in þe Ile[19] of Tenet, and so passede fourth, & come vnto 24
Kaunt*er*bery, and *þere* soiournede. And Kyng Adelbright of
Kent, þat *was* of þe lynage of Engist, faire vnderfong seynt Austyn
& his felowes wiþ michel[20] hono*ur*, & [21]ham fonde[21] al þat ham
nedede; & ferþ*er*more he ȝaf ham a faire place þat now is callede 28
þe Abbay of seynt Austyn*us*, in whiche place he liþ him-self
shrinede. ¶ This Kyng Adelbright *was* a gode man, and wiþ
godewel herde seynt Austyn*us* pr*e*dicaciouns, and ȝaf him leue to

[1–1] ofte-tyme togedre D. often-tymes to-gidere O.
[2] hym O. [3] was O. [4] weren O.
[5] O *has* pope *struck out, and* bisshope *written in margin, in same* (?) *hand.*
[6] to D. [7] þai D. [8] englisshe-men D. [9] vpon O.
[10–10] called be O. [11] visage D. vysage O.
[12–12] þa þan bene cristen D. þey þat be cristene O. [13] & to O.
[14] O *has* pope *struck out, and* bisshope *written over.* [15] *om.* D.
[16] telles D. [17] made D. made of O. [18] *leaf* 51.
[19–19] at Totten *sic* O. [20] mych O. [21–21] fonde ham D.

preche þrouȝ[1] al his lande of Kent, to tourne & to[2] conuerte [3]to him al þe peple[3] þat he miȝt.* ¶ Hit bifelle[4] so afterwarde, þrouȝ Goddes grace, þat in litel tyme þe kyng him-self was conuertede [5]to Gode,[5] and all his peple of his [6]lande was[6] baptisede. And in the [7]mene-while þat[7] þe peple turnede ham to God, seynt Austyn come to Rochestre, and þere prechede Goddes worde.[8] þe paynemys þerfor him scornede, and caste on[9] him righe tailes, so þat al his [8]mantel was hongede ful of righe tailes; and for more despite þai[10] caste oppon him[11] þe guttes of ryghe & of ffisshe; wherfore þe gode man seynt Austyn was sore agreuede,[12] and prayede to God[13] þat alle þe childerne þat shulde [14]bene borne[14] afterwarde in þat citee of [12]Rouchestre moste haue tailes. ¶ And when þe Kyng herde and wist of þis vengeance þat[15] was falle þrouȝ seynt Austynus praier, he lete make an house in þe[2] honoure of God, wher-in wymmen shulde haue childerne at þe bruges ende, in[16] whiche hous wymmen [16][17]ȝit beþ delyuere[17] of childe. ¶ When[18] seynt Gregory hade[19] herde tel þat[20] þe Englisshe-men were turnede to Gode, and conuertede, He sent to seynt Austyn his Pallyoun̄, by a bisshop þat me callede Paulyn, and made him primate & Erchebisshop̄ [21]of al Engeland, [20]And sent him[22] worde þan[22] þat he shulde[23] make bisshopis in þe land. And anone as seynt Austyn hade þe Pallioun̄ of þe[22] dignite of þe erchebisshop̄, he made ij bisshoppes of his felawes þat come wiþ him fram[24] Rome: on þat me[2] callede Mellite, & he duellede [24]at London̄, And þat opere me callede Iustyn, þat helde þe dignite of Rouchestre. ¶ And þis[25] bisshop Mellyt[26] went to preche into Esse x̄, & baptisede þe kyng of þe contre, þat me callede Sicwith, þat was Kyng Adelbrightȝ cosyn, his sustres[27] sone. ¶ This [28]Iustyne went to preche in Southse x̄, & turnede miche of þe peple to[28] god; and seynt Austyne went him-self prechyng þrouȝ-oute [29]þe lande.[29]

[1] þurgh-out O. [2] *om.* O. [3–3] þe peple vn-to hym al O.
[4] fel D. [5–5] *om.* D. [6–6] house-holde & of the lande weren D.
[7–7] mene-tyme whil D. mene-tyme whyle O. [8] *MS.* wrorde.
[9] vppon̄ D. [10] the *sic* D. [11] oppon̄ him D. on hym O. oppon R.
[12] annoyede & greuede D. anoyed O.
[13] *MS.* gode *with the e underlined for omission.*
[14–14] be borne D. be bore O. [15] þat þus D. [16] in the D.
[17–17] ȝit of the Citee beth delyuerede D. ȝyt of þe Cytee be deliuered O.
[18] And when D. [19] *om.* D. [20] how DO.
[21] *leaf* 51, *back.* [22] *om.* DO.
[23] shulde þan ordeyne & D. þan schuld ordeyne & O.
[24] fro O. [25] þe O. [26] Mellite þo D. Mellyt þo O.
[27] suster D. Suster O. [28] vnto O. [29–29] Engelond DO.

How seynt Austyne went into Walys, þere þat þe Britouns were; & how[1] þai nolde nouȝt bene[2] obedient to þe Erchebisshop of Kanterbury. Capitulo xxiij° xviij°.

WHen al Engeland was baptisede and turnede to God, seynt Austyn went into þat lande þere þat þe Britons were, and forto kepe ham fro[3] Englisshe-men, þat is to seyn,[4] into Walys, & þere[5] he founde monkes & Abbayes, & vij bisshoppes; for þe Britons destroiede[6] alwai[7] þe cristen peple þat seynt Austyne hade baptisede,[8] & saide to þe bisshoppes þat 'he was a legate of Rome, & primat of al Engeland, & þat þai shulde[9] by al resoun to him bene[10] obedient.' And þai saide þat 'þai nolde but to þe Erchebisshop of Kerlyoun'; & saide 'þai nolde neuer, for no maner þing, bene obedient vnto þe Englisshe-men'; "ffor þe Englisshe-men," þai saide, "beþ[11] oure aduersaries & oure enemys, and hauen[12] dryuen vs out of oure owen contre; & we beþ[11] Cristen men, and euer haþ[12] bene; & þe Englisshe-men [13][14]haueþ euermore[14] bene Paynymes, but now late þat þai beþ[15] conuertede." ¶ Seynt Austyne myȝt [16]of ham[16] none opere ansuere haue,[17] but saide[18] apertely þat 'þai nolde neuer [19]ham meke[19] to him ne to þe[20] peple[21] of Rome.' And seynt Austyne turnede þo aȝeyne to Kyng Adelbright, þat was kyng of Kent, and tolde him þat þis[22] folc [23]wolde nouȝt[23] to no man bene[24] obedient[25] but to þe Erchebisshop of Kerlyoun. and when þe Kyng herde þis, he was sore annoiede, and saide þat he wolde ham destroye, & sent to Elfride,[26] Kyng of Northumberlande, þat was his[29] frende, þat he shulde come to him wiþ[27] al þe power[28] þat he myȝt, & þat he wolde[29] mete him at Leycestre, and fro[30] þens þai wolde gone[31] into Walys, & destroye þe Erchebisshop of Kerlyoun, & alle þo[32] þat hade refusede seynt Austyn.

[1] þat O. [2] be D. [3] from O. [4] say O.
[5] *þere* he fonde DO. þere R. [6] dystroyeden O. [7] alwayes D.
[8] conuertede D. conuerted O. [9] shulde be D.
[10] *om.* D. be O. [11] ben O. [12] haue DO.
[13] *leaf* 52. [14–14] haue euere D. han euermore O.
[15] bene D. ben O. [16–16] *om.* O. [17] haue of hem O.
[18] sayden D. seyden O. [19–19] meke hem O. [20] *om.* O.
[21] pope D. pope *struck out and* bisshop *written in the margin* O.
[22] his O. [23–23] nolde nouȝt bene D. nold not be O.
[24] *om.* DO. [25] obedient ne to non oþer man O. [26] Elbright D.
[27] in D. [28] hast D. [29] shulde D. schulde O.
[30] from O. [31] go D. [32] *om.* D.

How Kyng Adelbr[i]ght and þe[1] Kyng Elfride quellede Brecyual, þat was a Kyng of Britons þat helde þe contre of Leicestre. Capitulo Nonogesimo ix°.

HIt bifelle so þat þere was a Kyng Britoun þat helde þe contre of Leycestre, and al þe cuntre aboute him, of Brecyual. And þis Kyng Briton herde telle þat þo ij Englisshe kyngȝ wolde[2] mete þere at Leycestre, forto wende into Walys,[3] he lete ordeyne al þe power þat he hade, forto feiȝt wiþ þise ij kynges; but litil hit availede *him*, for his folc þat he hade was[4] slayn, & him-self fledde, & loste his landeȝ for euermore. ¶ And þise ij kynges, Adelbright and[5] Elfride, duellede [6]awhile at Leycestre,[6] & departede þe lande amonges ham, & toke[7] homages & feautes of þe[8] folc of þe cuntree; and after', þai wenten[9] towarde Walys, & [10]þo of Walys hade herde telle of þe scomfiture of[11] Brecyual hade at[12] Leycestre, and were wonder' sore adrade of þo ij kynges, and toke[13] and chose amonges ham gode men & holy, of heremytes, monkes and prestes, and[14] opere folc grete plente, þat wenten[15] bare-fote and wolward', forto haue mercy of þo ij kynges. ¶ But þo[16] kynges were[17] so sterne and so wickede þat þai nolde neuer speke with ham, but quellede ham euerychoñ—Allas þe sorwe!—for þai ne sparede ham nomore þan [18]þe wolfe doth þe[18] shepe, but smyten of [19]þe heuedes of[19] euerychoñ; & so al were þere martrede þat to ham come, þat is to vnderstonde, v^c^. & xl. ¶ And after,[20] þo ij kynges went[21] to Bangor, forto quelle al þo[1] þat þai [22]myȝt þere[22] fynde of þe Britons. And when þe Britons þat herde, þai assemblede & ordeynede al here power' forto fiȝt wiþ ham. ¶ þo was þere a Britoun[23] in Walys, þat me callede Bledrik' of Cornwaile, þat somme-tyme was lorde of Deuenshire, but þe Kyng Adelbright hade dryuen him into Walys, and ȝeue[24] him bataile; and at þat bataile was Kyng Adelbright slayne, & Elfride[25] woundede sore, & forsoke þe felde, & þe most parte[26] of his folc slayn; and Elfride fleye[27] into Northumberland, þat was his owen

[1] *om.* D. [2] wolden O. [3] Walys and D. [4] weren D. were O.
[5] *MS.* and Edelf, *with* Edelf *underlined for omission; om.* D.
[6–6] at Leycestre awhile D. [7] token DO. [8] *om.* O.
[9] went D. wente O. [10] *leaf* 52, *back.* [11] þat DO.
[12] of O. [13] nome O. [14] & of DO. [15] wenten O. weren R.
[16] the D. [17] weren D. [18–18] wolfes done D.
[19–19] here hedes O. [20] afterwarde D. afterward' O.
[21] went fro þens DO. [22–22] þere miȝt D.
[23] baroñ DO. [24] ȝaf D. [25] Eldryd O. [26] partye D.
[27] flye O.

lande; and afterwarde þe peple of Leycestres*hire* made wiþ streng[þ] Cadwaladre, þat was Brecyuales sone, Kyng of Leycestre, & he after[1] regnede nobli & wiþ grete[2] honoure.

How Cadewaladre, [3]þat was[3] Kyng[e] of Leycestre, and Elfride, Kyng of Northumberland[e], weren[4] frendes; & of þe debate þat after was bituene Edwyne & Cadewalayn, þat were [5]boþe here[5] sones. Capitulo Centesimo.

AND after[e] þat[6] þis bataile was done, þe Britons [7]assemblede ham, and went þens, and come[8] vnto Leicestre, & made Cadwaladre, þat was Brecyuales sone, kyng of Leicestr[e] and of alle þe contre. and[9] he toke homages & feautes of[10] þe folc of þat[11] contre; and after þat, he assembled[12] a grete hoste, and saido 'he wolde go[13] into Northumberland[e] forto[14] destroi Kyng Elfride, & slee him, if þat he myght.' and when he was comen[15] þider, frendes[16] went so bituene ham, & made ham accordede in þis maner[e], þat Elfride shulde holde al þe lande fram Humber[e] vnto[17] Scotlande, and Cadwalader[e] shulde halde[18] al þe lande a þis half[e] Humber[e] vnto[19] þe South; and after[e] þat þai bicome[20] gode frendes al here lif duryng[e], & louede to-gedre as [they] hade bene[21] ij breþ*er*ne. ¶ And þis Elfride hade a sone þat me callede Edwy*n*ne, þat hade and helde al þe lande of Northumbreland[e] after[e] his fadres deth, as his fader[e] hade holde al his lif-tyme.[22] ¶ And Cadwaladre hade anoþ*er*e sone þat me callede Cadwalayn, þat helde his fadres lande as he it helde while he was alif[e]; and þai louede to-gedre as þai hade bene breþ*er*n. and þe loue laste bituene ham but onely ij 3ere, and after biganne debate bituene ham þrou3 a luþ*er* eneuious cosyne of[23] Cadwalayn, þat men[24] callede Briens, so þat þai assemblede a grete[25] hoste in boþe parties; & at þe laste hit bifelle þat[e] Cadewalayn was descomfitede, & Edwyne him pursuede, and drof[e] fram[26] place to place. so at þe[27] laste he fleye into Irlande; and þis oþ*er*e destroiede his lande, & caste adoune[28] his castelles,[28] and brennede[29] his man*er*es, and dep*ar*tede al Cadwalaynes[30] lande amonge his frendes.[30] ¶ And longe tyme after come Cadwalayn

[1] afterward O. [2] gode D. [3–3] *om.* DO. [4] were DO.
[5–5] her boþe O. [6] *om.* D. [7] *leaf* 53.
[8] comen O. [9] and after þat D. [10] of al DO. [11] þe DO.
[12] assemblede D. assembled[e] O. assemble R. [13] gon O. [14] to DO.
[15] come O. [16] frende D. [17] in-to O. [18] haue DO. [19] into D.
[20] becomen O. [21] be O. [22] lyuystyme O. [23] *MS.* of of.
[24] me D. [25] stronge D. [26] him fro D. hym fro O. [27] *om.* O.
[28–28] casteH D. castels O. [29] brent O. [30–30] amonges his frende D.

ayeyne fram Irlande, with a stronge power, and in pleyn batail[1] quellede Edwynne and alle his frendeshippes, & namely þo þat wiþhelde his landes þrouȝ Edwynes ȝifte.

4 How Kyng Oswolde was quellede þrouȝ Kyng[2] Cadwaleyne and Peanda; & how Oswy, þat was seynt Oswoldes broþer, regnede after him, & quelde Peanda. Capitulo Centesimo primo.

WHen þat Edwynne was slayn, Offris his sone vnderfonge[3] þe werr' ayeyns Cadwaleyn his Eme, so þat þis Offris deide durynge þe werre. and after þe deþ of Offris, þo regned a gentile Cristen man þat miche louede God,—þat hade all þe lande of Northumberland' by[4] herytage,—þat me [called] Oswolde, and he was kyng of al þat lande. but for-asmiche as he was frende to Edwyne, and helde a grete parte of þe lande of Cadwalyn, þe same Cadewalyn werred oppon him, and drof him toward Scotland'. and when Cadwalyn saw þat he wolde[5] nouȝt abide, Cadwalyn wolde no longer him pursue, but toke some of his folc to Peanda, his broþer-in-law, & praiede Peanda to pursue Oswolde til þat he were take and slayne; and Cadwalyn turnede þo[6] home ayeyn.

¶ When Oswolde herde þe tidynges[7] þat Cadwaleyn turnede home ayeyne, he wolde no longer flee, but abode Peanda, & ȝaf him batail; & Peanda was descomfitede and fley,[8] and come ayeyne to Cadwaleyn, & saide þat[2] 'he wolde neuere holde a[9] foote of lande of him but[10] if it were so þat[10] he wolde avenge him oppon[11] Oswolde.' Cadwaleyne lete assemble a grete host forto fiȝt wiþ Oswolde; so þat he and Peanda come into Northumberland',[12] and ȝeuen batail vnto Oswolde; and in þat same batail was Oswolde slayn,[13] & his heuede[14] smyten of; & after he was enterede at þe Abbay of Berdeneye, in whiche place[15] God haþ wrouȝt for him meny a faire miracle, boþe here and elles-where.

¶ And anone Oswy[16] his[17] broþer seisede into[18] his hande al þe[19] lande þat was Oswoldes; & þe folc of Northumberlande louede him wonder wel, and helde him for here lorde; but he hade men of his kyn worþi ynow þat wolde haue departede þe lande; & þai

[1] *leaf* 53, *back.* [2] *om.* D.
[3] vnderto*k*[1] D. vndirtoke O. [4] by þe O. [5] nolde O.
[6] þo home D. þo hoom O. þo R.
[7] Tydynge O. [8] fled O. [9] o O. [10–10] *om.* D. [11] of DO.
[12] *leaf* 54. [13] y-slayn O. [14] heed O. [15] places D.
[16] Oswyne D. [17] *MS.* him. [18] vn-to O. [19] his O.

werrede to-gedre.[1] & for-asmiche as þai were nou3t stronge ynow,[2] þai come to Peanda, & *prai*ede him of helpe and soco*ur*, & bihighte him of þat lande largely, oppoñ þat[3] couenant þat he wolde ham [4]ghye, helpe,[4] & conseile. ¶ Peanda herde her' *prai*er', & so spake wiþ þe Kyng Cadwalyñ þat he shulde ordeyne a grete hoste, and faste ordeyne him into Northumberland' forto fi3t wiþ Oswy. and Oswy was a meke man, & miche louede pees and [5]charite, & *pray*ede Peanda of loue and pees, & [5] *proferede* him[2] of golde & siluer' grete plente. ¶ And[7] þis Peanda was so proude þat he wolde[8] *grau*nt him no[3] pees for no *maner* þing, but for al þing h[e] wolde wiþ him[9] fei3t. so at þe[2] laste þere was sette a day of ba[ta]ille; and Oswy e*uere* hade truste oppoñ Gode, & þis Peanda triste to miche oppoñ his *pride* & oppoñ his host þat he hade. and to-gedre þai smyten e*grely*; but Peanda anone was descomfitede & slayn. And þat was a*fter* þe Incarnaciouñ of oure lorde Ihesu *Cris*te [10]V. C. & lv.[10] ¶ And þis Oswy þo regnede xxviij[11] 3ere. [12]And a kyng[13] þat me callede Oswyn, þat was Peandae3 cosyn, werrede oppoñ Kyng Oswy, and to-gedre fou3te*n*; but Oswy hade þe victorie; and Oswyne was descomfitede & slayn, and lith at Tynnemouthe.

Of Kyng Ossa, þat was sou*er*eyne of alle þe kynges of Engeland'; & how e*uer*yche[14] werrede oppoñ o*þer*e in his tyme. Cap*itu*lo C*entesim*o Sec*un*do.

HIt bifelle so þat alle þe kynges in þat tyme þat were in þe londe, as þo of Westsex̄, Mercheneriche, Est Angle, of Kent, & of Southsex̄ & of o*þer*e costes, e*uer*yche[14] werrede oppoñ o*þer*e; and [15]þai þat were[15] moste my3tiest[16] toke þe lande of ham þat were moste feblest.[16] ¶ But þere was a kyng amonges ham þat me callede Ossa, þat was seynt Oswoldes bro*þer*. þis Ossa conquerede alle þe kynges of þe lande, & regned aboue ham alle. ¶ And so grete was þe werr' in e*uer*y contre bituene kyng*us*, þat no man my3t wete how þe lande went. But Abbotes, prioures, & men of religiouñ, writen þe lifes and[17] dedes of kynges, & how

[1] togederes D. [2] *om.* O. [3] *om.* DO.
[4–4] helpe lede D. gye & helpe O. [5–5] *om.* D. [6] & of D.
[7] But D. [8] nolde DO. [9] hem O. [10–10] D. & lv 3eer O.
[11] xviij D. [12] *leaf* 54, *back*. [13] kyn D. [14] eche O.
[15–15] he þat was DO.
[16–16] bynomen ham þat were most feblest þe lande D. byname þe lond of hym þat was feblest O. [17] & þe O.

longe [1]eueryche hade regnede,[1] & in what contre; & in what [2]maner euerychе[2] kyng deide, and of[3] bisshoppis also, and þerof[4] made grete bokes, & lete calle ham þe Cronicles: and þe goode Kyng Alurede hade þat boke in his warde, and lete brynge hit to Wynchestre, & lete hit faste bene[5] tackede to a piler, þat men myȝt hit[6] nouȝt remeve ne bere[7] penns, so þat euery man miȝt hit see and þereoppoñ loke, for þerin beþ[8] þe lifes of alle þe Kynges þat euer wer' in Engeland.

How þe Kyng of Northumberlond', Osbright, forleye þe wif of Buerne Bocard' þrouȝ strengþ; & after þis Buerne conquerede þe [9]Kyng wiþ stronge power.[9] Capitulo Centesimo tercio.

AND þus hit bifelle in the same tyme, þat þere was a kyng in [10]Northumberlond' þat me callede Ossebright, & soiournede in ȝork, and' þis kyng wente him oppoñ a day into a wode, him forto[11] desporte; and when he come aȝeyne, he went priuely[6] into a gode manius house þat me callede Buerne Bocard'.[6] & þe gode man of þat[12] place was gone þat tyme to þe see, for ofte-tymes he was wonede[13] þere aspie[14] þeues & robboures, þat ofte-tymes[15] were wont to[6] come into þe londe to robbe &[6] brenne and slee. ¶ þe lady þat was þis Buernes wif, was a[6] wonder' faire woman, and welcomede þe Kyng wiþ michel[16] honour, and worþely him seruede in al þing'. ¶ When þe Kyng hade[17] eten, he toke[17] þe lady by þe hande, and lad her' into chaumbre, & saide þat he wolde speke wiþ here a counsele. and al þe folc fram[18] þe chaumbre he made voyede, saf onely[19] þe lady and he. but þe Lady wiste nouȝt wherfore he it dede, til þat he hade done wiþ here his wille. and when he hade done þis dede, he turnede aȝeyne to ȝork', & þe lady he lefte þere wonder' sore wepyng' for þe dede þat he hade ydone. ¶ And when here lorde was come[20] home, & saw here wepe, and soche mornyng make, he axede of here what she hade done, & whi she made soche sorwe. ¶ "Sire," *quod* she, "queyntly and

[1–1] euerychе regnede hade D. eche had regned O.
[2–2] manere-wyse eche O. [3] of his O. [4] þerof þai D. þerof þey O.
[5] be O. [6] *om.* DO. [7] bere it DO. [8] ben O.
[9–9] lande with strengþ D. kyng with poer & strengþe O. [10] *leaf* 55.
[11] to O. [12] þe DO. [13] wont DO.
[14] aspie & awayte D. aspye & awayte O. [15] oftyn-tyme O.
[16] mych O. [17–17] ete he nome O. [18] fro DO. [19] onlich D.
[20] comen D.

falsely þe Kyng' Osbright me haþ done shame and vilonye, a3-ynes my wille"; and' tolde him treuþe, How the kyng' hade her' forleyn wiþ strengþ; wherfore she[1] saide she hade leuer' to dye þan leue. ¶ "Faire leef, bistille," *quod* he, "for a3eynes strengþ[2] [febleness] is litel worþ; & *per*fore of me [3]shal yow[3] neuer þe lesse bene[4] Louede, and namely for yow[5] haste tolde me treuþe. and if Almyghty God' grant[6] me lif, y shal þe wel avenge."

¶ This Buerne was [7]a gret man and[7] a mi3ty lorde, and was wel bilouede, & grete frendes hade, and lete sende for þe gretest lordes of þe lande, & to ha*m* made his compleynt of þe[8] despite þat þe kyng to him hade done, & saide þat he wolde bene[9] avengede, how[10] þat eue*r* it were. and alle his frendes[11] conseilede[12] and gra*n*tede to wende towarde 3ork', *per*e þat þe kyng was. & Buerne toke[13] his menye, & [14]come to[14] þe kyng'. and when þe kyng him saw, he callede him curtesly Buerne by[15] name; and Buerne him ansuerede &[16] saide: "Sire, y 3ow defye, & 3elde op[17] feautes, homages, and[17] londes, and as miche as y haue holde of 3ow; and so, fro[18] þis tyme afterwarde, y wil no þing of þe holde." & so he dep*ar*tede fram[19] þe kyng with-outen[20] more speche or eny abidyng', & toke[21] leue of his frendes, and went to Denmarc, and pleynede to þe Kyng Godryn,[22] & tolde him of þe dispite þat Kyng' Osbright to him hade done of his wif, & p*rai*ede him of socoure & of helpe, him to avenge. ¶ When Kyng Godrin[23] of Denmarc & þe [24]Danoys, when þai[24] hade herde þe pleynt of þis Buerne & of þe p*rae*r' þat he bade, þai were wonder' glade in hert, for-asmiche as þai my3t fynde cause forto gone[25] into Engeland' forto werr' oppoñ þe Englisshe-men, & also forto avenge Buerne of þe despite þat þe[26] kyng hade done[27] to his wif', & for-asmiche as Buerne was sib to þe Kyng of' Denmarc. ¶ Anone[28] þai lete ordeyne a grete hoste of men, & lete ordeyne shippis, and as miche as[29] was nede[29] to þat Viage. and when alle þe hoste was

[1] he *sic* D. [2] strengþe þe O. [3–3] shalt þow D. þou shalt O.
[4] be DO. [5] þow D. þou O.
[6] *leaf* 55, *back*. [7–7] *om.* D. [8] *om.* O. [9] be D.
[10] how so O. [11] frende D. [12] counceilled hym O.
[13] nome O. [14–14] went towarde D. [15] by his O.
[16] and to him D. & to hym O.
[17–17] feautes & homages and D. feautes homages & O. feautes, homages K.
[18] fram D. from O. [19] fro DO. [20] withoute DO.
[21] nome O. [22] Gordryne D. [23] Gordyn D.
[24–24] Danoys D. Danes whan þey O. [25] go DO.
[26] *MS. has* þe englisshe men, *with* englisshe men *underlined for omission.*
[27] y-done O. [28] And anone D. [29–29] nedede D.

redy, þe kyng made[1] his ij breþerne cheueteyns, þat were noble Knyȝtes and holde: þat one me callede Hunger',[2] & þat oþere Hubba.

4 How þe [3]Danoys toke[3] ȝork' & quellede[4] Kyng Osbright, and afterwarde[5] Kyng Elle. ¶ Capitulo ¶ Centesimo ¶ Quarto.

WHen al þing was aredy,[6] þo ij breþerne tok' leue of þe Kyng Godrin, and went towarde þe see, forto wende into Engelande as faste as þai myȝt spede. ¶ Now is Buerne so[7] wel comfortede, & faste hiede him wiþ þe [8]Danoys; and þai arryue[8] in þe Northcontre, & [9]come þrouȝ-out[9] Holdernesse, & destroiede al þe contre,[10] and brent tounes and robbede folc, & quellede al þat þai myȝt take, til þat þai come to ȝorke. ¶ And when Kyng Osbright saw ham come, he toke[11] þe[12] peple þat he hade, and come out of þe citee, & with ham fauȝte; but no foysoun he nade[13] aȝeynes ham; & miche was þe peple þat þere was slayn in boþe parties: and Kyng Osbright himself þere was slayn, and þe citee anone was take, & þe [14]Danoys wenten[14] in. ¶ And þere was also anoþere kyng in Northumberlond þat Buernes frendes hade chosen, & helde him for kyng, a man þat me clepede[15] Elle, for-asmiche as þai nolde[16] nouȝt to Kyng Osbright bene[17] entendant, for þe despite þet he hade done to Buerne here cosyn. ¶ Hit bifelle þus, þat þe[18] Kyng' Elle was goñ to þe[18] wode him[19] forto desporte: and of venysouñ somdele he hade take, and as he satte in the wode at mete, to a knyght he saide: "we haue wel y[20]spedde, & michel[21] venysouñ taken.[22]" and wiþ þat worde þere come[23] in[18] a man, [24]& to him[24] saide: "Sire, if ȝe so miche of venysouñ haue y-wonne,[25] an C. tymes so miche þere aȝeyns [26]ȝe hauen[26] loste; for al þis contre þe Danois hauen[27] gete, & take[28] þe cite of ȝork; & aȝeynes ȝow shal it holde, þat neuer ȝe shul come þerin; & forsothe þai

[1] *leaf* 56.
[2] *altered from* Humber', *or perhaps* Humber' *altered from* Hunger'; Humber' D. Hungar O.
[3–3] Danes token O. [4] quellede the D. [5] after O.
[6] redy D. [7] *om.* D.
[8–8] Danoys and arrynede D. Danes þat þei beþ aryued' O.
[9–9] comen þrouȝ D. comen þurgh-out O. [10] land D.
[11] nome O. [12] his DO. [13] hade D. [14–14] Danes went O.
[15] callede D. called O. [16] wolde D. wold O. [17] be D.
[18] *om.* DO. [19] him al D. [20] *leaf* 56, *back.*
[21] miche D. mych O. [22] take O. [23] cam O. [24–24] *om.* D.
[25] wonne DO. [26–26] haue ȝe D. ȝe haue O. [27] han D.
[28] taken D.

[1]hauen slayn[1] Kyng Osbright." ¶ And when Kyng Ella þise wordes herde, he lete assemble al þe folc of þe cuntre, & ordeynede al þe power þat he miȝt haue,[2] and wold haue gete[3] þe toune of ȝork wiþ strengþ. but þe [4]Danois comen[4] out anon & ȝaf hame bataile, & quellede[5] þe kyng & þe moste part[6] of his men þat he hade[7] brouȝt wiþ him: and þe same place þere þat þai were slayne shal euer[8] bene[9] callede Ellecrofte; and þat place is a litel fram ȝork. and þo[7] abode[10] þe [11]Danois neuer,[11] til þai hade conquerede al Northumberland. and in þat contre þai made Werdeynes, & went ferþer into þe lande, and token Notyngham. and þere þai abiden al þe wynter, and deden[12] al þe sorwe þat þai myght. and after, when somer tyme come, þai remevede fram Notyngham, & [13]come vnto[13] Nichole, & to Lyndessey, & to Holand, for no man miȝt ham withstande, so miche power & strengþ[14] þai hade.[14]

How Seynt Edmunde þe Kyng was martrede. *Capitulo Centesimo v^to^.*

AND so ferre[15] hade þe Danois[15] passede fram[16] contre vnto[17] contre, & euermore brennyng & robbyng, & destroiede[18] al þat þai miȝt, til þat[19] þai come vnto[20] Tetteford. & in þat[21] contre þai fonden a Cristen Kyng[22] þat miche louede God and[23] his Werkes, þat me callede Edmunde; & he was Kyng of Northfolc and[24] Southfolc.[25] ¶ þis Seynt Edmunde þe kyng ordeynede as miche folc as he myȝt, & fauȝt wiþ þe Danois[26]; but he and his folc were scomfitede,[27] & [28]þe kyng[28] him-self dryuen vnto a[29] castel of Framelyngham. & þe Danois[26] him pursuede, & comen[30] vnto þe same castel. and when Kyng Edmunde saw þat þe castel myst nouȝt ham[31] wiþstonde, he comen[32] aȝeynes ham. with whame þe Danois[26] ferst speken[33]; and anone þai axede of him where Kyng Edmunde was. "now forsoth," *quod* he, "when y was in þe castell, [34]y was[34] kyng; & when y went oute[7] of þe castel, he went out also; and [35]whe*þer* þat[35] he shal ascape or dye, at Godes wil

[1–1] haue slayn the D. han slayn O.
[2] haue and wolde haue D. haue & wold haue O. haue R.
[3] y-gete O. [4–4] Danoys come D. Danes comen O. [5] quelle D.
[6] *party* D. *partye* O. [7] *om.* D. [8] *euermore* O. [9] be DO.
[10] abide neuer O. [11–11] Danes O. [12] dede O. [13–13] comen to D.
[14–14] *om.* D. [15–15] þe Danoys had D. had þe Danes O.
[16] fro O. [17] to D. [18] destroyng D. [19] *om.* DO. [20] to D.
[21] the same D. [22] *leaf* 57. [23] and al D. [24] & of D.
[25] Suffolk O. [26] Danes O. [27] descomfitede D. [28–28] *om.* D.
[29] the D. þe O. [30] come D. [31] hym O. [32] come DO.
[33] spoken D. [34–34] *per* was þe O. [35–35] whedir O.

most[1] hit be." ¶ When Seynt Edmunde hade nempnede God', by
þat [2]worde þai wiste[2] alle þat it[3] was he him-self'. and anone
Hubba & Hungar'[4] tok[5] him, & saide þat he shulde God forsake,
& al cristen law, as alle[6] o*þe*re hade[7] done þrou3 ham biforn. and
Seynt Edmunde saide þat[8] 'he wolde[9] neuer, but ra*þer* [10]he wolde
suffre deth[10] for Godes sone,[11] and his law[12] to kepe.' ¶ þo tok[13]
þai Kyng Edmunde, & bounde him vnto[14] a tree, and made[15]
Archires [16]to him[16] shote with Arwes, til þat his body stickede
alse[17] ful of Arwes as an hirchone is ful of prickes; but for alle þe
payne þat he hade, he wolde[18] neuer' God forsake. & in[8] þe same
pyne [19]he deide wiþ þat *tur*mentyng',[19] & bitoke his soule to[20]
almy3ty God'. & when þai saw þat he was dede, þai smyten of his
heuede[21]; & in þis maner' was Seynt Edmunde martrede.

[22]**How Hubba & Hungar' toke þe toune of Redyng. Ca*pitulo* *Centesimo* vj^to^.**

[W]Hen sent Edmunde was martrede, Hunguar' and Hubba
went þens, with al here Danoys,[23] vnto Redyng'. and
as þai went þiderwarde, þai brent tounes & citees, & quellede al
Cristen peple þat wolde nou3t God'[24] forsake, and caste adoun[25]
cherches, and comen[26] to Redyng, and toke[27] þe toun, and *þere*
holde[28] ham til þat þe Kyng Edelf' of Westsex come þider' wiþ al
his power' forto take þe toune. ¶ þo come[29] oute þe Danoys[23] forto
3eue bataile to Kyng' Elfride[30]; and at þat bataile was quellede an
Erl of Danoys[23] þat me callede Gydrak'. ¶ Oppon þe morwe come
þe Kyng Eldrede, and his bro*þer* Alurede, with a stronge power'
and[31] grete host, and þe Kyng Edelf' come a3eyne (þat hade
[32]fou3ten wiþ þe Danois[32] þe day toforne[33]) to þat bataile. & þe
Danois[23] þo comen[34] out forto feiȝt wiþ *ham*. and þat[35] batale was
wonder strong, for meny a man was *þere* slayn[36]; and þe Danois[23]
þat day hade þe vittori; and þe Kyng Eldrede & his bro*þer*

[1] miȝt D. mote O. [2–2] þai wisten D. þei wysten O. [3] þat D.
[4] *D has* Humber' *with* ber' *struck out.* [5] nomen O. [6] meny DO.
[7] hadden O. [8] *om.* D. [9] nolde O.
[10–10] suffren deth he wolde D. [11] loue D. [12] lawes O.
[13] nome O. [14] to D. [15] made her' D. made here O.
[16–16] him to D. [17] *om.* D. as O. [18] nold O.
[19–19] and *tur*ment he deide D. & turnement he dide O. [20] vn-to O.
[21] hed' O. [22] *leaf* 57, *back.* [23] Danes O. [24] *om.* O.
[25] doune D. [26] come D. [27] token O. [28] helde D. held O.
[29] comen O. [30] Edelf' D. Edilf O. [31] and a D. & a O.
[32–32] fou3ten D. fought O. [33] tofore D. byfore O. [34] come D.
[35] the D. [36] y-slayn O.

Alurede þat day were descomfited. but þe xiiij day afterwarde, þe Danois[1] and þe Englisshe-men fou3ten to-gederes[2] oppoñ Elkelden, & *þere* was slayne a kyng of Denmarc þat was callede Rasyng', and iiij Erles of grete power'; and þat day hade þe Danoys[1] shame, for þai were dryuen[3] vnto Engelfilde. and þe xv day after', þe Danois[1] & þe Englisshemen fou3ten[4] anoþere tyme at Rasyng'[5] [*sic*], and *þere* were þe Englisshe-men descomfitede. and fram[6] þens a Danois, þat me callede Roynt, went to Redyng' wiþ his hoste, & destroiede al þat [7]he myght tak'; and[8] Kyng Eldrede fau3t wiþ him, but he was [9]woundede so, wherfore[9] he was dede; and he[10] nade regnede but v. 3ere, and [11]deide, and[11] lip atte Wonburne.

Of Kyng Alurede; & how þe Danoys[1] in his tyme *praiede* him of *mercy*, *þat* þai moste gone[12] out of þe lande. Ca*pitulo* Ce*ntesi*mo vij°.

After þe deth of þis Eldrede, regnede his broþer Alurede, þat Dolfynes was callede. þo went þe Danois,[1] & assemblede ham, and went forto seche Alurede, *þat* þo was þe new[13] kyng of Southsex. and *þere* þai fonde[14] him at Wiltoñ,[15] wiþ a litel peple; & noþeles he fau3t with ham; but at the laste he fledde þens fram[16] þe felde, and went vnto Westsex. and ordeynede so miche peple of his owen[17] reaume & also of o*þer*e, so [18]til þat[18] he hade a stronge host, so þat þe Danois[1] hade non[19] power' [20]a3eynes him[20] to stande. and he come to Londoñ wiþ his host, [21]*þere* as[21] þe Danois soio*ur*nede; and *þere* [22]wolde he haue fou3ten[22] wiþ ham, but þe Danois[23] derste nou3t wiþ him[24] fei3t, but *praiede* him of pees, & þat þai most gone[25] a3eyne into her' owen contre, & neu*er*more into Engeland forto come a3eyne, eny harme forto[26] done, and oppoñ þis couenant þai shulde 3eue[27] him to plegge,[27] gode hostages, & soche as þe[10] Englisshe[28]me*n* wolde axen.[28]

[1] Danes O. [2] togeder' another' tyme D. to-gidere anoþer tyme O. [3] dryue O. [4] fou3t D. [5] Rafyng' D. Rasyng O. [6] fro D. [7] *leaf* 58. [8] but D. [9–9] wondeth so wherthou3 D. [10] *om.* D. [11–11] *om.* DO. [12] go O. [13] mewe *sic* D. [14] fonden D. [15] *corrected from* Waltoñ. [16] fro O. [17] *om.* O. [18–18] þat til O. [19] no DO. [20–20] *MS.* a3eynes him a3eynes him. [21–21] and *þere* D. & *þere* were O. [22–22] he wolde haue fou3t D. [23] Danes ne O. [24] him þo D. hem tho O. [25] go DO. [26] to DO. [27–27] to hym O. [28–28] *om.* D., Englisshe *ends a page, and the following page continues with* How Hubba, &c.

How Hubba & Hunguar were quellede at Chippenham; & how þe Danoys[1] brou3t hir kyng vnto[2] oure kyng. Capitulo Centesimo Octauo.

AND þe same day þat[3] þe Danois[1] departede fram[4] London, so faste þai riden, bope [5]nyght and day,[5] and neuer toke reste of goyng til þat þai [6,7]comen vnto[7] Excestre, and token[8] þe toune, & þere helde ham. ¶ When Kyng Alurede herde [9]þo tidynges,[9] anone he lete tak þo hostages, and went fram[10] þens vnto[11] Excestre wiþ al þe power þat he hade. ¶ And when þe Danois[1] herde tel of his[12] comyng, þai went fro þens forth into Westsex, and comen to Chippenham; and þere þai deden miche harme in þe contre; þai robbede folc, & brou3t[13] ham into[14] prisoun. The Kyng Alurede ham pursuede, & [15]come oppon ham, and fersly[15] ham assailede; & þere were[16] slayn bope Hubba, and Hunguar his broþer, and Buerne Bocard, and in þat[17] bataile was michel[18] folc slayn in þat[19] o partye and in[19] þat opere, but þe gree of þe felde lefte wiþ þe Danois,[1] forasmiche as þe kyng þo[20] come but with litel company.[21] ¶ The Kyng Hastede him as miche as he myght, forto wende a3eyn; and when þe Danois[22] fonden [23]Hubba his bodye[23] liggyng dede, þai entered hit, & made oppon him a grete logge, and lette calle hit Hubbeslaw; & so it is callede into þis day; and þat place is in Deuenesshire. ¶ þe barons of Westsex,[24] Wilteshire and Dorset, harde telle how þat here[25] kyng was descomfitede; and ordeynede al þe power þat þai mi3t haue, and come to þe kyng þere þat he was, & þankede God þat þai hade[26] him fonden[26] alif, for þai wende þat þe Danois[1] hade him slayne. ¶ þo toke[27] þai a[3] counseil, þe kyng and his barons, & [28]þai wolde [29]gone seche[29] þe Danois,[1] [30]with ham forto fei3t.[30] and so þai riden al þat ny3t [31]ham forto seche,[31] and come[32] amorw,[33] about prime, to Abyngdon, þere þat þe Danois[1] were.

¶ þe kyng þo, Alurede [34]and his barons, assemblede, and þere

[1] Danes O. [2] to O. [3] *om.* D. [4] fro O. [5–5] day & nyght O.
[6] *leaf* 58, *back*. [7–7] come to DO. [8] toke O. [9–9] þe Tydyng O.
[10] fro DO. [11] to D. [12] þis O. [13] put D. [14] in DO.
[15–15] fressheliche D. [16] was O. [17] this D. þis O. [18] mych O.
[19] *om.* O. [20–20] tho as the kyng D. [21] meny D. [22] Danes had O.
[23–23] Hubbaus body D. Hubba his body O. Hubba his bodyes R.
[24] Somerset D. Somersete O. [25] *MS.* here here.
[26–26] founden him D. founde hym O. [27] nome O. [28] þat O.
[29–29] go sechen D. go to seche O.
[30–30] forto fy3t with ham D. *with* hem al for-to fight O.
[31–31] forto seche ham D. hem al for-to seche O. [32] comen O.
[33] in the morwe D. [34] *leaf* 59.

assailede þe Danois[1] egrely,[2] and þere ȝaf ham a stronger[3] batalle þan euere he dede bifore; and þe Danois[1] nobli put ham of, longe tyme, þat no man wist in whether partie more peple were[4] slayn. ¶ But þus hit bifelle, as God wolde, þat[5] Kyng Alurede hade þe vittorie with michel[6] honoure; for þe Danois[1] were so dryuen[7] þat þai[7] wist nouȝt[8] whider to wende.[9] xv dayes þe kyng ham pursuede at his wille, þat glade & fayne[10] þai were forto speken[10] of pees & of accorde, & toke[11] him gode hostages, & saide þat þai wolde[12] neuer[13] oppon him werre, ne[14] debate arere. ¶ And moreouer þai bihight to þe Kyng Alurede þat þai wolde go and brynge her owen kyng vnto him, and þat her kyng[8] & þai aH shulde[15] bene[16] baptisede. & oppon þis condicioun, Kyng Alurede[17] ham grauntede[17] lif and lyme, and saide to ham þat þai shulde gon[18] here kyng forto fecche,[19] and at a certeyne day to come aȝeyne, þat to ham was sette. ¶ And so þai went forþ fast, and come[20] aȝeyne at here day þat was assignede, and alle þe Danois[1] brouȝt here kyng wiþ ham. ¶ The Kyng Alurede anone lete ham ben[16] baptisede, and here names chaunged,[21] so þat þe kyng of [22]Danois was callede[22] Athelstoñ, & xxx[ti] of his felawes names[23] were chaunged also, & þe opere were baptisede to þe right bileue; and at þis was done[24] at Westmynstre.[25] and after,[26] Kyng Alurede helde wiþ him Kyng Athelstone & alle his Danois[1] xij daies at soiune[27] wiþ miche[28] solempnite, and ȝaf ham grete ȝiftes after[29] þat þai were ouercome,[29] and so þai departede. ¶ Tho was[30] Kyng Alurede al at ese when he hade his enemys[31] ouercomen,[32] & þat þai were turnede to þe[33] bileue of almiȝty God.

How þe Danois[1] þat comen[34] into Fraunce wiþ Gurmonde, come[35] aȝeyne into Engelande; & of þe deþ of Kyng Alurede. ¶ Capitulo ¶ Centesimo ¶ Nono.

[1] Danes O. [2] egreliche O. [3] strong O. [4] was O.
[5] þat þe O. [6] mych O. [7–7] *MS.* þat þai þat þai; þat þei ne O.
[8] *om.* O. [9] wende and D. turne and O.
[10–10] they . . spek D. þey . . speke O. þai *om.* R. [11] token DO.
[12] þai nolde D. þei nold O. nolde R. [13] neuere-more O.
[14] ne no DO. [15] schulden O. [16] be DO.
[17–17] *grantede* ham D. [18] go to D. go O. [19] fecche him D.
[20] comen O. [21] chaunge DO.
[22–22] Danoys callede was D. Danes called was O. [23] *om.* D.
[24] do D. [25] Wynchestre O. [26] after þat the D. after þe O.
[27] soiourne O. soionne or soioune R. [28] michel D.
[29–29] *om.* D. þat þai were R. [30] was þe O. [31] *leaf* 59, *back.*
[32] ouercome DO. [33] þe right D. [34] come D.
[35] comen DO.

And þus hit bifelle afterwarde, þat þe Danoys[1] of Northumberland, þat were paynemys, comen[2] with a grete host of Fraunce, þat is to vnderstonde, with ham þat went into Fraunce with Gurmonde of Aufrik', when he hade conquerede Engeland', & it ȝaf vnto Saxon*us*. and þo þat come fro Fraunce arryuede in Kent, and sent into Northumberlande þat þai shulde come to ham: and whan þo ij hostes were comen[3] & assemblede, anone þai went to destroie þe Cristen peple of Engeland' fram[4] place vnto[5] place, and deden[6] miche sorwe. ¶ Hit bifelle þus, as almiȝty God' hit[7] wolde, an harde chaunce in Engeland'; ffor þe gode Kyng Alurede, þat was wont to abate þe Danois,[1] deide in þe mene-tyme. þis Alured' regnede xxx^ti ȝere, and a gode kyng' hade bene, and [8]wel coupe[8] chastice his enemys; And[9] was a gode clerc, and lete mak menye bokes. & on[10] boke he made of Englisshe, of Auentures of kynges and of batailes þat hade bene[11] done in þe lande; and meny o*pere* bokes of gestes, he lete ham write, þat were of grete wisdome and of gode lernyng',[12] þrouȝ whiche bokes meny man[13] may him amende þat wille[14] ham rede and oppon lok; oppon whos soule almighty[7] God' haue mercy! & þis Kyng Alurede lip at Wynchestr'.

Of Kyng Edward', þat was Kyng Alured*us* sone. Ca*pitulo* Ce*n*tesimo x^mo^,

And after þis Alurede, regnede Edward his sone, þat was a gode man & a wise, þat men callede [Edward], þat was[7] wonder curteise. ¶ The[16] Danois deden[16] miche sorwe in þe lande, and her[2] power' encresede,[17] and biganne forto wexe[17] fram[18] day to day, for þe Danois[1] comen ofte wiþ here companies into þis lande. and when þe kyng saw þat[7] he [19]miȝt no[19] bettre [20]done, he tok[20] trewes with ham, and *granted* ham his pees. ¶ And nopelesse þe trewes durede nouȝt longe, þat þe Danois[1] ne[7] bigonne [21]strongliche forto were[21] oppon þe Englisshe-men, & dede ham miche sorwe. Wherfore Kyng' Edwarde dede assemble a grete hoste forto fiȝt with

[1] Danes O. [2] come D. [3] come O. [4] fro O.
[5] to DO. [6] dede O. [7] *om.* D. [8–8] couthe wel D.
[9] and he D. for he O. [10] o O.
[11] be O. [12] lyuyng O. [13] may *sic* D. [14] wole O.
[15] *leaf* 60. [16–16] Danes dide O. [17–17] *om.* D. [18] fro DO.
[19–19] ne myghte O. [20–20] do he nome DO.
[21–21] forto wer' strongliche D. strongly for-to werre O.

ham; and þo þis[1] Kyng Edwarde deide whēn God[2] wolde. This Kyng Edward regnede [3]xxiiij 3ere,[3] & lip at Wynchestre bisides[4] his fader.

Of Kyng Athel[s]tone, & of Edmunde, Eldrede, & of[5] Edwynne his broþer. ¶ **Capitulo Centesimo** ¶ **Vndecimo.**

After þis Edward, regnede Athelstoñ his sone; & when he hade regnede iiij 3ere, he helde batail̃e a3eynes þe Danois,[6] and drof Kyng Gaufride, þat was kyng of þe Danois,[6] and al his hoste vnto þe see, & restede by Scotland, & nomen[7] stronglich[8] þe contrey al a 3ere. ¶ And after þat, þo of Cumberland, & þe Scottes of Westmerlande, bigonne to werre oppon Kyng Athelstoñ; and he ham 3af so strong bataile þat he quellede so meny of ham þat no man coupe telle þe nombre [9]of ham.[9] and after þat he ne regnede but iij 3ere; & he regnede in al xxv 3ere and lip at Malmesbery.

¶ And after þis [10]Athelstoñ, regnede Edmund his broþer, for-asmiche as Kyng Athelstoñ hade none[11] sone. and þis Edmu[n]de was a worþi knyȝt, and a douȝty man[1] of body, [9]and a noble knyght.[9] and þe[12] þridde 3ere after[1] þat he was kyng, he went ouer Humber, in whiche place he hade ij Kynges[13] of Danois[14]: þat one me callede Enelaf, and þat[15] oþer Renaud. ¶ This Kyng Edmund drof ham bope fram[16] þe lande, and after went and tok grete preye in Comberland. ¶ This Edmund ne[5] regnede but vij 3er, and lip at Glastynbery.

¶ And after þis Edmunde, regnede[17] Eldrede his broþer,[18] þat vengede Edwarde his fadre of his enemys þat him quelde; and aftirwarde[19] he seisede[20] Northumberland into[21] his hand,[22] and made þe Scottes abowe and meke vnto his Wille. ¶ And þe secunde 3ere [23]þat he hade regned[23] [come] Arnalaf Quyran, þat was kyng of Denmarc, and seisede al Northumberland, and helde þat lande ij 3ere. and after þat come Kyng Eldrede wip a[1] grete power, and drof him oute of þis[24] lande. ¶ And þis Kyng Eldrede was a[25] noble man and a goode, of whos godenesse seynt Dunstoñ prechede. & [26]þis Kyng Eldrede[26] regnede xj 3ere, & lip at Wynchestr.

[1] *om.* D. [2] *MS.* gode *with the* e *underlined for omission.* [3–3] xiiij D. [4] bysyde O. [5] *om.* O. [6] Danes O. [7] nome DO. [8] strongly O. [9–9] *om.* D. [10] *leaf* 60, *back.* [11] no DO. [12] and the D. & þe O. and R. [13] knyghtes O. [14] Danes O. [15] þe O. [16] fro O. [17] regne D. [18] sone D. [19] after þat O. [20] sesed all O. [21] in O. [22] honde D. hond O. land R. [23–23] of his regne D. after þat he had regned O. þat he hade reg R. [24] his O. [25] was a DO. was R. [26–26] he O.

¶ And after þis Eldrede, Edwynne his broþer regnede, & was a[1] luþer man towarde God and to þe peple; for he hatede folc of his owen land, and louede & honourede [2]*stra*nge men,[2] & sette litel by holy cherche, and[3] bynom[4] of holy cherche aH þe *tre*soure þat he myȝt haue: þat was grete shame and velonye to himself, and *per*ile of his soule, & *per*fore God wolde nouȝt þat he shulde regne no longer than iiij ȝer, [5]and after[6] deide, and Lith at Wynchestre.

Of Kyng Edgare, þat regned aboue þe kyng*us*[7] of Scotland & of Walys; & how he was bigilede þrouȝ takyng of his wif. ¶ Capitulo ¶ Centesimo ¶ Duodecimo.

AND after þis Edwynne, regnede Edgarè his sone, a man þat [8]miche louede[8] God, and pees, & holy cherche also, and was a worþi lorde, bolde and myghty, & mayntenede wel þis land in pees. ¶ And þis Edgare was [9]Kyng and lorde aboue[9] alle þe kynges of Scotland and of Walys: fram[10] þe tyme þat Arthure was gone,[11] neuer was siþen[12] kyng of[13] his power. ¶ And þis Edgare was seynt Edwardes fader. And when Edgar*us* wif was dede, þat was seynt Edwardes moder, & enterede, he herde speke of þe fairenesse of Estrilde, þat was Orgar*us* douȝter, a barouñ of Deuens*hire*, þat was so faire a woman þat alle men spake[14] *per*of. He callede one of his knyȝtes þat he miche louede & trust oppoñ, and tolde him: "Go," *quod* he, "to þe noble Baroñ Orgar of Deuenshire, and se if his douȝter be so faire as men speke[15] of; & if it be soþ, y wil haue here vnto[16] my wif." ¶ þis knyȝt, þat me callede[17] Edelwolde, went forþ[18] *per*e þat[19] þe lady þo[20] was; & when he saw her so faire, he þouȝt haue her himself to wif, and *per*fore[21] spake to Orgar here fader. and Orgar was an olde[22] man, & hade no mo childerne but here on; and saw þat Edelwolde was a faire ȝonge knyȝt, and worþi and riche, & was wel with þe kyng. & þouȝt his douȝter shulde wel [23]bene[24] mariede, & wel bisette oppoñ him, and *grau*ntede him his douȝter, if þe gode lorde þe Kyng wolde assent[25] *per*to. ¶ þis Edelwolde come aȝeyn to þe

[1] *om* D. [2–2] Straungers O. [3] and DO. ne R.
[4] *MS.* bynoman *with* an *underlined for omission.* [5] *leaf* 61.
[6] *om.* DO. [7] kyng O. [8–8] loued mych loued *sic* O.
[9–9] lorde and kyng of D. lord & kyng aboue O. [10] fro O.
[11] gone & D. agoo & O. [12] seth O. [13] of Walys of O.
[14] speke O. [15] speken D. [16] to DO. [17] clepede D.
[18] forth his way & come DO. [19] as D. [20] *om.* O. [21] þerof O.
[22] *MS.* holde, *with* h *underlined for omission.*
[23] *leaf* 61, *back.* [24] be DO. [25] consent D. consente O.

Kyng', and saide[1] 'she was faire ynow oppoñ to see, but of body she was wonder'[2] lo|ly.' ¶ þo ansuerede þe Kyng, and saide þat he toke of her litel charge. ¶ "Sire," *quod* Edelwolde þo, "she is her' faderes heire, and y am nou3t riche of londes,[3] and if 3e wolde consent and *grant*[4] þat y most her haue, þan shulde y be riche ynow." "In Godes name," *quod* þe Kyng, "I assent[5] *þer*to." ¶ Edelwolde þankede þo michel[6] þe Kyng, and went a3eyne into Deuenshire, & spousede þe damisel, and in[7] þat contre[8] duellede. ¶ And þus hit bifel oppoñ a tyme, þat he tolde his conseil & al þis þing' vnto his wif', how & in what maner' he hade bigilede his lorde þe Kyng', þat wolde haue hade her' to[9] wif'. and anone as she it wist, she louede him neu*er*more aft*er*warde[10] as she hade done bifore. ¶ þis lady conseyuede by him a sone; and when tyme was *þat* þis[11] childe[12] shulde ben born,[12] Eldelwolde come to þe Kyng', & praede him to heue a sone of his at þe fountstoñ. þe Kyng him g*r*antede, and lete calle hi*m* Edgare, after' his owen name. ¶ And when þis w*a*s ydoñ, he þou3t þat he was siker' ynow of þe Kyng, for bifore þat tyme þis Edelwolde him[13] drede lest Kyng Edgare wolde haue taken[14] his wif', forasmiche[15] as his lorde was a Ioly man and an Amer*us*.

How þat[16] Kyng Edgare wedede Estrilde afte[17] þe deth of Edelwolde. ¶ Capitulo ¶ Centesimo ¶ terciodecimo.

THus hit bifelle, þat al men in Kyng Edgares court þo speken, and saide þat 'Edelwolde was richely auansede þrou3 þe mariage þat he hade by his wif'; 'and 3it,' þai saide, 'he was auauncede an hundred-folde more, for he hade spousede þe fairest woma*n* þat euer' was seyn.' and when þe Kyng herde speke so miche of here beaute, he þou3t þo þat Edelwolde[18] hade him desseyuede & bigilede, & þou3t p*r*iuely[19] in his hert þat he wolde gone[20] into Deuenesshire, as it were forto hunt for hert and hynde and o*þer*e wilde bestes, and þan he shulde see[21] *þer*e þe lady[21] or he departede þens. ¶ And þis lady was duellyng at a manere[22] bisides

[1] tolde him þat D. told' hym þ*a*t O. [2] *om.* O. [3] *om.* D.
[4] *grant þer*to D. [5] consent D. consente O. [6] myche D. myc̄h O.
[7] in DO. *om.* R. [8] contre he D. C*u*ntre he O. [9] *MS.* to to.
[10] after O. [11] þe DO. [12–12] shulde be be borne *sic* D. was bore O.
[13] hade D. had O. [14] tak D. take O. [15] *leaf* 62.
[16] þat Estrilde *sic* D. [17] aft*er* DO. [18] Edelde D. [19] p*r*iuelich D.
[20] go DO. [21–21] þan the lady *þer*e D.
[22] maner' D. Man*er*e O. mane R.

þe forest' *þer*e þat þe Kyng wolde hunte, and at þat maner was herburghede al[1] nyght. and when tyme come þat þe Kyng shulde sope, and þe sonne shoone, þe Kyng' axede after' his Gossib and after his godsone, and Edelwolde made here[2] come bifore þe Kyng'; and nopeles, [3]and it[3] o*per* my3t haue bene, she shulde nou3t haue come*n*[4] in his sight bi his wille. ¶ þe lady welcomede[5] þe Kyng, and suetely him kissede; and he[6] toke[7] her' by[8] þe hande, & þo[9] nexte him[10] her' sette, and so[9] soppede þai togeder'. ¶ And þo was a custume and an vsage þat, when a man drank' vnto[11] ano*per*, þe drynker'[12] shulde say 'Wassaile,' and þat o*per*e shulde ansure[8] 'drynkhaile': and þus dede[13] þe Kyng[13] & þe lady meny tymes, & also kiste. ¶ And after soper', when tyme was to gone[14] to bede, þe Kyn[g] went vnto his bed, hertly[15] penkyng oppoñ þe[16] ladies fairenesse; and þo was ouercomen[17] for here loue, þat him þou3t he wolde[18] dye, but of here his wille he hade. ¶ Oppoñ þe morwe þe Kyng aroos, and into þe fforeste went, him *per*e to desporte[19] & salace[19] wiþ hertes[20] and hyndes, and alle o*per* wilde bestes; & of þe[6] hertes grete plente, to þe[21] lady he sent; and prise[22] he went to salace[23] and speke wiþ þat lady whiles he duellede in þat contre. ¶ And after' þat, þe Kyng remevede þens, and þou3t how he myghte best delyuer' Edelwolde[24] f[r]am his wif', as he hade him ferste desceyuede. and þe Kyng anone, after' viij dayes, lete ordeyne a p*ar*lement at Salesbury of al his baronage, conseile to haue, & forto ordeyn how þe contre of Northumberland' mi3t beste bene[25] kepte,[26] þat þe Danoys[27] come nou3t *per*e, the londe forto destroye. ¶ And þis Edelwolde come also to[28] þe Kynges P*ar*lement; and þe Kyng sent him to 3ork' forto bene[25] keper' of þat contre. ¶ And þus hit fel,[29] þat men þat knew[30] him nou3t, slow him by þe waye. ¶ And anone as þe Kyng herde þat he was dede, he lete sende after þe lady Estrilde, þat she shulde come to þe citee of Londoñ, and *per*e bene[31] weded' to[32] þe Kyng wiþ grete[33] solempnite & worshipe; and[34] helde a solempne fest; and he werede[35] a crone of [gold], and[36] þe Quene[36] ano*per*. ¶ And seynt

[1] al a O. [2] here to O. [3–3] if it D. if þat O. [4] come O. [5] welcomed' þo D. [6] *om.* D. [7] name O. [8] *om.* O. [9–9] she sate next by hi*m* and D. [10] hym by O. [11] to O. [12] *leaf* 62, *back*. [13–13] *om.* D. [14] go DO. [15] hert *sic* D. [16] þat O. [17] ou*er*come DO. [18] shulde D. schulde O. [19–19] *om.* DO. [20] herte D. [21] þat DO. [22] iij O. [23] solacen O. [24] Edwolde D. [25] be O. [26] kepede D. [27] Danes O. [28] vnto O. [29] byfell' O. [30] knew D. knewe O. know R. [31] be DO. [32] vnto O. [33] miche D. [34] *leaf* 63. [35] wer' D. [36–36] sche O.

Dunstoñ [1]on þe morwe[1] come vnto þe Kyng' into þe Kyng*us*[2] chaumbre, and fonde þe Kyng' abed, & þe quene also in fere[3]; and seynt Dunstoñ axede who þat she was. ¶ þe Kyng ansuerede, "þis is þe Quene Estrilde." and þe Erchebisshop seynt Dunstañ saide þat 'he dede grete wrong', and a3eyns Godes wille to tak a woma*n* to wif, whos childe he haþ[4] take at þe funtstoñ'; and þe Quene for þat worde neue*r* after' louede seynt' Dunstoñ; and nopeles þe gode man[5] warnede ha*m* ofte-tymes[6] þat folie to lete; but his warnyng availede litel, for þe loue bituene[7] ham was so miche. ¶ þe Kyng bigate oppon her'[8] a sone þat me callede Eldred'; and when[9] þis childe was vj 3er' olde, þe Kyng his fader' deide; & aboute þat tyme he hade regnede xvij 3er', and lith at Glastynbery.

Of seynt Edward' þe Martir'; how Estrilde his stepmoder' lete him quelle, forto make Eldred', her' owen sone, Kyng'.[10] Capit*ulo* [11]C*entesi*mo xiiij°.[11]

ANd afte*r* þis Edgare, regnede Edward' his sone, þat he bigate in[12] his ferst wif', þat wel and noble[13] gou*er*nede þe lande; for he was ful of al mane*r*[14] godenesse, and lad' ful holy lif'; & aboue[15] al þing he louede God' & holy cherche. & þe quene Estrilde, his stepmoder', lete him slee, for enchesouñ to make her' owen sone Eldred' kyng'; and þus was he slayn,[16] as afterward 3e shul her'. ¶ Hit bifelle þus oppoñ a day, þat þis Kyng Edwarde went him into a wode forto play in þe Southcontre, bisides a toune þat is callede Warham; in þe whiche forest was grete plente of Hertes & of hyndes. and as he hade bene awhile *pe*re him forto playe, he þou3t[17] him[18] oppoñ his bro*þer* Eldred', þat Was wiþ his moder' þe quene, for her place was ney3 þe forest'; & þou3te forto go[19] visite & see his bro*þer*; and tok[20] wiþ him but[21] a litel meny,[21] and went him þo toward' his Stepmoders house, þat in þat tyme soio*ur*nede in þe castel of Corf'. and as he rode in þe þickenesse of þe wode, to aspie his game, hit bifelle þat he went amys, & loste his meny þat were wiþ him.[22] & at þe last he come out of þe

[1–1] amorowe O. [2] *om.* DO. [3] y-fere O. [4] hade D. had O.
[5] man often-tymes O. [6] *om.* O. [7] bitue D.
[8] þis wo*m*man D. þis woman O. [9] þo O. [10] *MS.* kyng' kyng'.
[11–11] cxv^to^ O. [12] on DO. [13] nobly DO. [14] mane*re* of O.
[15] aboþe *sic* D. [16] y-slayn O. [17] *leaf* 63, *back.*
[18] *MS.* he; *om.* DO. [19] and forto *sic* D. go & O. [20] nome O.
[21–21] litil meny D. a litil mayne O. [22] him comen D. hym come O.

wode; & as he lokede about, he saw þere faste [1]bisides him[1] þe maner þat his Stepmoder duelled in; & þiderward he went[2] alloñ. and anone hit was tolde þe Quene how þat þe Kyng was comen[3] allone wiþout[4] company; and þerfore[5] she made ioye ynow, & þou3t how [6]she my3t do[6] þat he were[7] slayn as priuely as she my3t. ¶ And anone [8]priuely she called to her[8] on of here kny3tes, to whom she hade tolde miche of here consel bituene[9] ham. and bope þai come[10] to þe Kyng, and curtesly him resceyuede; & þe Kyng tolde þat he was com[11] her to Visite, & also forto speke wiþ Eldrede his broþer. ¶ þe Quene meny tymes him þankede, and him praiede to[12] ali3t and herburgh wiþ her [13]forto haue[13] al þat nyght. þe Kyng saide þat he myght nou3t, but a3eyne he wolde wende vnto his folc, if he myght ham fynde. ¶ And when þe Quene[14] saw þat he wolde nou3t abide, she praiede him þat he wolde ones drynk; & he grauntede her.[15] and anone as þe drynk come, þe Quene drank to þe Kyng, & þe Kyng toke[16] þe coppe & sette hit to his mouþ. & in þe mene-tyme whiles þat he drank, þe kny3t þat was wiþ þe Quene, wiþ a knyf smote euen þe Kyng to[17] þe hert, & þere he felle adoune dede of his palfray [18]vnto þe erþe. ¶ the Quene, for þis dede, 3af to þe Kny3t golde & siluer grete plente, and of oþer richesse ynow. and þe kny3t, anone as þis was do,[19] went him ouere[20] þe see; & so ascapede he oute of þis[21] lande. ¶ When þis Kyng Edward þus was martrede, Hit was in þe 3ere [22]after þe[22] Incarnacioñ of[23] oure Lorde Ihesu Crist, ix C. & xx iiij 3er, and he hade regnede xij 3ere & an half, & lith at Glastenbery.

Of Kyng Eldrede; & how þe[24] Kyng Swyñ of Denmarc helde Engelond; & how Eldrede, þat was seynt Edwardes broþer, was nou3t bilouede in his[25] reme, and þerfore fledde into Normandye. ¶ Capitulo ¶ Centesimo ¶ Quintodecimo.

After þis Kyng Edward, regnede Eldrede his[26] broþer; and seynt Dunstañ cronede him. & þis seynt Dunstan deide sone after þat he hade for3eue þe Quene her trespasse,

[1–1] bisides D. beside allone O. [2] rode D. [3] come O.
[4] withouten D. [5] þerof D.
[6–6] þat she mi3t done D. þat sche myghte done O. she ne my3t do R.
[7] nere DO. ne were R. [8–8] she callede to her priuely D.
[9] bituene D. betwen O. bitue R. [10] comen DO. [11] comen D.
[12] forto D. al for-to O. [13–13] *om.* D. [14] kyng O. [15] *om.* D.
[16] nome DO. [17] vnto DO. [18] *leaf* 64. [19] done D. I-done O.
[20] ouer DO. oþere R. [21] the D. [22–22] of D. of of þe *sic* O. [23] aftir O.
[24] *om.* O. [25] þe O. [26] *MS.* his cosyn *with* cosyn *underlined for omission.*

Estrild', for enchesoñ þat she was cause of Kyng Edwardes deth. and seynt Dunstañ hade her' assoilede, and penaunce her' enioynede; and she leuede after, chaste lif & clene. ¶ þis Kyng Eldrede wedede an Englisshe-woman; & on[1] here he[2] bigate Edmunde Irenside, and anoþer sone[3] þat me callede Edwynne; and after', deide þe Quene his[4] moder'. ¶ And in þat tyme come into Engeland' Swyn, þat was Kyng of Denmarc, forto chalange and[5] conquere al þat his Ancestres hade[6] bifore þat tyme. & so he conquerede, & hade it al at[7] his axing'; ffor þe gode Erle Cuthbert of Lyndeseye, and al þe peple of Northumberlond', & almost al þe grete of Engeland', helde with Swyne þat was[2] Kyng of Dennemarc, for-asmiche as þai louede nouȝt Kyng Eldrede, ffor cause[8] þat his gode broþer Edward was slayn falsely [9]for enchesouñ of him[2]; and þerfore no man sette but litil bi hym; Wherfore Kyng Swyn hade al his wille, and toke al þe lande. ¶ And Eldrede þe Kyng [10]þo fledde[10] into Normandye,[11] and so[12] spak to þe Duk', þat þe Duc ȝaf him his sustre to wif; oppoñ þe whiche he bigate ij sones: þat on me callede Alrud, & þat oþere Edward. And when Swyn hade conquerede al þe lande, he regnede nobli, & leuede but xv ȝer', & deide, and liþ at ȝork'.

How Kyng' Eldrede come aȝeyne fram[13] Normandye; & how Knoth[14] þe Danoys[15] regnede; & of þe wer' bituene him & Edmunde Irenside. ¶ Capitulo ¶ Centesimo ¶ Sexto decimo.

After' þe deþ of Swyne, þat was a Danois, Knoght,[16] his sone, duellede in Engeland, and wolde haue bene[17] kyng'. and þo come aȝeyn Eldrede out of Normandy, with miche[18] peple & wiþ [19]stronge meny,[19] þat Knoght derst nouȝt abide, but fley þens into Denmarc. ¶ þe Kyng Eldrede hade aȝeyn his reaume, & helde so grete lordeshiþ þat he bigan to destroi al[20] þat hade holpen[21] Swyn, þat was a Danois, aȝeynes him.[22] ¶ And afterwarde come aȝeyn þis Knoght' fram Denmarc, with a grete power', so þat Kyng Eldre[de] derst nouȝt wiþ him fiȝt, but [23]fley fro[23]

[1] in O. [2] *om.* D. [3] broþer D. [4] her O. [5] & to O.
[6] haden D. [7] after D. [8] enchesoun D. encheson) O.
[9] *leaf* 64, *back.* [10–10] fled þo O. [11] Norway D. [12] þo O.
[13] fro DO. [14] Knogh D. Knoght O. [15] Danes O.
[16] knyght O. [17] be O. [18] michel D.
[19–19] a strong' nauye D. a strong meyny O. [20] alle ham D. aⁿ þo O.
[21] holpe O. [22] þym & his reume O. [23–23] fledde D. fledde fro O.

þens vnto[1] Londoñ, & þere helde him. ¶ þo come Knoght, and him bisegede so longe til[2] Kyng Eldrede diede in þe cite of Londoñ, and liþ at seynt Paules; & he regnede ix 3ere.

4 Of Kyng Knoght. ¶ Capitulo ¶ Centesimo ¶ Septuagesimo.[3]

After þe deth of þis Eldred', Knoght, þat was a Danois, bigan þo forto regne, but Edmunde[4] Irenside,[5] þat was Kyng Eldred*us* sone by his ferst wif', ordeynede a grete host, & bigan to werr' oppoñ Kyng Knoght; and so he dede meny tymes and ofte; and þe werre was so st[r]onge and harde, þat wonder' hit[6] w*a*s to wete. ¶ And þe Quene Emme, þat duelled'[7] þo at Wynchestre, hade g*r*ete drede of her' ij sones, for[8] þe werr' of[9] Alured & Edward, leste þai shulde ben[9] defoulede & misdoñ prou3 þis[10] werre, wherfore she sent ham ou*er* þe se into Normandy, to þe duc[10] Richard' her' Vncle; and þ*er*e þai duelled'[11] in safte and pees longe tyme. ¶ þis Edmunde[12] Irenside[13] & Knou3t[14] werrede strongliche to-geder'[14]; but at þe laste þai were accorded' in þis maner', þat þai shulde departe þe reaume bituenes[15] ham; and so þai deden; & after', þai bicome[16] gode frendes, and so wel louede[17] togederes as þai[18] hade bene bri*þer*,[18] geten[19] of o[20] body, & of[21] o mod*er* born̄.

20 How Kyng Edmunde Irenside t*rai*ter*ou*sely[22] was slayn, prou3 a tratour' þat me callede Edrith[23] of Stattoñ. Ca*pitulo* C*entesimo* xviij^mo^.

And after', þo regnede Kyng Edmunde Irenside and Knoght þe Danois. but þus it fel[24] aftirward, and in þe same 3ere þat þai were accorded', and somiche loueden[25] togeder', wherof[26] a false þef t*rai*toure hade enuy vnto þe loue þat was bituene ham, and frendeship, whos name was Edrith[27] of Strattoñ, þat w*a*s a grete lorde, þat[28] was Edmu*n*de Irensides man, & of him helde alle þe londe þat he hade. ¶ And noþeles he þou3t his lorde to bitraie,

[1] in-to O. [2] til þat D. [3] Sextodesimo D. [4] *leaf* 65.
[5] Irensides O. [6] *om.* O. [7] dwelt O. [8] of DO. [9] be DO.
[10–10] *om.* D. [11] dwelt O. [12] Edward D. [13] Irensides O.
[14–14] werrede st*r*ongely togederes D. werreddyn strongly to-gidere O.
[15] betwen O. [16] becomen O.
[17] loued þat þai bicome sworen bre*þer*ne and so wel loueden D. loued' þat þei becomen swore bretheryn & so wel loued O.
[18–18] hadene ben bre*þer*ne D. had ben brethryn O. [19] gotyn O.
[20] on O. [21] *om.* D. [22] *om.* D. traytoursly O.
[23] Edrik D. Edrich O. [24] bifel D. [25] loued O. [26] wherfore D.
[27] Edrik D. [28] & D.

& make Knoght kyng' of þe lande, [1]to þat[1] entent' richely to ben auauncede, & wiþ him bene[2] wel bilouede. ¶ Wherfore he praiede[3] his lorde, Edmunde [4]Irenside,[5] [6]oppoñ a day[6] wiþ him forto eten, and wiþ him duelle. and þe kyng curteisly him *gr*antede, & to him come at his praier'; and at þe mete þe kyng richely[7] *was* *ser*uede with diu*er*se metis & drynkes. ¶ And when nyght come þat he shulde gone[8] to bede, [9]þe kyng'[9] tok' his owen meny, & went into chambre. & as he lokede[10] aboute, he saw[11] a wond*er* faire ymage, & wel made,[12] & in[13] semblant [14]as it were[14] an Archire, wiþ a bowe bent in his honde, & in þe bowe a fyne Arwe. ¶ Kyng Edmunde went þo neir', to biholde hit bett', what it miȝte bene[15]; and anone as his honde tochede þe Arwe, anone þe arwe him smote [16]þrouȝ þe[16] body, & *þer*e slough þe kyng'; for þat engyne was made to quelle his[17] lorde *trait*e*r*ously.[18] ¶ And [6]when þe[6] Kyn[g] Edmund' [19]*þus* *was* dede &[19] slayn, he nad[20] regnede but x ȝere. his peple for him made miche sorw, and his body þai bare to[21] Glastenbury and *þer*e þai him ent*er*ede. ¶ And þus[22] *trait*o*ur* Edrik'[23] anone went to þe Quene, þat was Kyng Edmundes wif', þat wiste of here lordes deþ. anone he [24]toke fram her' hir'[24] ij sones, þat were faire and ȝong', þat her' lorde hade oppoñ hier' geten,—&[25] þat on me callede ¶ Edward, & þat o*þer* Edwyn,—& lade ha*m* wiþ him to[26] Londoñ, and toke ha*m* vnto Kyng Knoght, þat he shulde done[27] with ham what his willes[28] were; & tolde him how queyntly he hade [29]quellede Kyng Edmunde,[29] for enchesouñ & loue of him, so þat Kyng Knoght aH Engeland'[30] in his power' holly[31] miȝt haue. ¶ "O þow false *trait*oure! haste þow my trewe wedbro*þer*[32] slayn for cause[33] [34]of me? a man þat y moste Louede in þe Worlde. now, be myn[35] heuede,[36] I shal for þi *trau*ail þe wel reward' as þow hast dese*r*uede!" and anone [37]lete him take and bynde,[37] hondes & feete in man*er* of a *trait*our', & lete caste him into[38] Thamise; and in þis

[1—1] in O. [2] be D. [3] *prai*ede oppon a day D. [4] *leaf* 65, *back*.
[5] Irensides O. [6—6] *om.* D. [7] realy D. rially O. [8] go DO.
[9—9] *om.* O. [10] *MS.* lokede lokede. [11] say O. [12] y-made DO.
[13] in the D. [14—14] of D. [15] be O. [16—16] þroutoute his D.
[17] his owen D. his owne O. [18] treitously O.
[19—19] was dede & þus D. [20] had O. [21] vnto DO.
[22] þis false D. þis fals O. [23] Edrith O.
[24—24] toke fram *sic* D. nome fro here O. [25] *om.* DO.
[26] vnto DO. [27] do DO. [28] wil DO.
[29—29] quellede Edmund' Irenside D. y-qwelled Kyng Edmund' O.
[30] Engeland' holich D. [31] *om.* D. hollych O.
[32] wedded' bro*þer* D. brother O. [33] encheson DO. [34] *leaf* 66.
[35] my O. [36] *om.* D. hed O. [37—37] lete bynde hi*m* D.
[38] into the D. in-to þ^e^ O.

maner' þe false[1] *trai*tour' endede his lif'. ¶ þe Kyng [2]tok' þo ij childerne to[2] þe Abbot of Westmynstr', [3]to warde[3] and to kepe til he wiste what was beste [4]wiþ ha*m* to done.[4]

4 How Kyng Knoght sent Edmundes sones[5] boþe into Denmarc forto slee; & how[6] þai were sauede. Ca*pitul*o C*entesim*o xix^mo^.

HIt bifelle sone after' þat Kyng Knoght hade al þe lande into[7] his hande and spousede þe[1] Quene Emme þrouȝ consent of his baronage, for she was a faire wo*m*man, & was Eldredes wif', and þe dukes suster' of Normandye: & þai [8]leueden to-geder'[8] with miche[9] loue, as resoun wolde. ¶ þe Kyng axede oppon a day conseile of þe Quene, what was beste forto[10] done[11] wiþ the sones þat wer' [12]Edmundes Irenside.[12] ¶ "Sire," q*uod* she; "þai [13]beþ þe[13] right heir's of þe londe; & if þai leuen, þai wille do ȝow miche sorwe with[14] werr'; and *per*for lete sende ha*m* into a strange lande afer',[15] to some man þat may ha*m* defoule[16] & destroie." ¶ The Kyng anone lete calle a Danois *þat* me callede Walgar', and co*m*mandede him þat he shulde lede[17] þo ij childerne into Denmarc, and so do for ha*m*[18] þat neuer' [19]þai herde[19] more tydyng*us*[20] of ha*m*. "Sir'," saide þis Walg*er*, "gladely ȝoure co*m*mandement shal bene[21] done," ¶ And tok[22] þo[23] ij childerne, & lad ha*m* into Denmarc. & for-asmiche as [24]he saw þat þe childern were wonder' fair', and also meke,[25] he had of ham grete pitee and reuthe, & wolde nouȝt ham slee, but lade ha*m* to þe Kyng of Hungr*ie* forto norisshe: For this Walgar' was [26]wel knowen[26] wiþ þe Kyng, and [27]wel bilouede.[27] ¶ Anone þe Kyng axede whens þe childern were. ¶ And Walger tolde him, & saide þat 'þai were þe right heir's of Engeland', & *per*for men wolde ha*m* destroye'; "and *per*fore, sire, to ȝow þai [28]beþ comen,[28] mercy & helpe to biseche; & forsoþ [29]if þai mowen leue,[29]

[1] *om.* O.
[2–2] nome þe ij chelderne & tooke ha*m* D. nome þ^o^ ij Childryn & took hem O.
[3–3] forto norisshe D. [4–4] to done with hem O.
[5] sones Irenside D. [6] boþe D. [7] in DO.
[8–8] leueden togederes D. loued to-gidere O. [9] mychel O.
[10] to D. [11] do O.
[12–12] Edmunde Irensides D. Edmund' Irensides O.
[13–13] beth D. ben O. [14] sorwe with D. sorow with O. sorwe R.
[15] wel ferre D. [16] defoyle O. [17] lete O.
[18] hem & ordeyne O. [19–19] we her' D. [20] tydynge O.
[21] be O. [22] nome O. [23] the D. [24] *leaf* 66, *back.* [25] *om.* D.
[26–26] wel biknowen D. y-knowen O. [27–27] beloued wel O.
[28–28] ben come O. [29–29] and þai mow leuen D. if þey now lyve O.

3our' men þai shullen[1] becomen, and of 3ow þai[2] [3]shal holde[3] al hire land'. ¶ The Kyng of Hungrie ham[4] vnderfonge with michel[5] honour', and lete ham worthely to bene[6] kepte.

¶ And þus hit bifelle afterwarde, þat Edwyne, þe 3onger broþer, deide, and Edward þe elder[7] broþer leuede, a fair' man,[8] a stronge, & a[9] large of body, and gentil and curteise of condicions, so þat alle men him louede. ¶ And þis Edward, in þe cronicles is callede amonges[10] Englisshemen, 'Edward' þe outelaghe.' And when he was made knyght, þe Kyngus doughter of Hungary so miche him louede, for his godenesse and his fairenesse, þat she made & calle[d]e him her' derlyng'. ¶ The Kyng þat was her' fader', perceyuede wel þe loue þat was bituene ham too, And hade non heir' but þat doughter. And þe Kyng fouchede his dou3ter to no man so[11] wel as he dede vnto him þat her'[12] louede, & she him; & he 3af here to him wiþ gode wille; and Edward' her' spousede wiþ michel[13] honour. ¶ The Kyng of Hungrie sent after' al his baronage, & made a solempne [14]fest and[15] ryche weddyng', and made al men to[16] vnderstonde þat he shulde ben[17] Kyng when[18] he were dede; and [19]þerof þai maden al[19] gret ioye; and of þat tydyng[20] þai wer' ful glade. ¶ þis Edwarde bigate oppon þis lady a sone þat me callede Edgar Helyng', and afterward, a doughter þat me callede Margarete, þat afti[r]ward was Quene of Scotland'; and, by þe Kyng of Scotland þat me callede Maucolom, she hade a dou3ter þat was[21] callede Maude, [22]þat afterwarde was Quene[22] of Engeland' þrou3 Kyng Henry, þat was þe ferst sone of þe Conqueroure, þat her' wedede; & he bigate on her' a dou3ter' þat me callede Maude, þat afterward was Emperesse of Almaign̄; and of þis Maude come Henry[23] þe Kyng of Engeland, þat into þis day is callede 'Henry, þe Emperesse sone.' ¶ And 3it hade þis Edward anoþer' dou3ter[16] by his wif, þat me called' Cristian, and she was a none.

[1] shul D. [2] *MS.* þai sla, *with* sla *underlined for omission.*
[3–3] schullen holden O. [4] hem vndirtook' & O.
[5] mych O. [6] be O. [7] eldest D. [8] man & DO.
[9] *om.* O. [10] among' O. [11] as O. [12] he DO.
[13] mych O. [14] *leaf* 67. [15] and a DO.
[16] *om.* D. [17] be O.
[18] when þat D. whan þat O.
[19–19] þerfore alle þai maden D. þerfore alle þey made O.
[20] tydynges D. [21] me DO.
[22–22] þat was quene afterward' D. þat was qwen afterward' O.
[23] *om.* DO.

How Kyng Knoght, þat was a proude man, conquered [1]Norwaye; & how he bicome afterwarde[1] meke.[2] Capitulo Centesimo ¶ xx^mo.

NOw haue ȝe[3] herde of Edmundes [4]sones wiþ þe[4] Irenside, þat Kyng Knoght wende[5] þai hade ben dede, as he hade commandede Walger bifor'. ¶ And this Knoght[6] hade in his honde al Engeland and Denmarc. And after [7]þat, he went to[7] Norwaye, þat londe to conquere. ¶ But þe Kyng of þe lande þat me callede Elaf, come with his peple, & wende his lande wel[8] haue kepte & defendede; & so[3] þere he fauȝt with ham, til at þe laste he was slayn in þat bataile; & þo[3] þis Knoght toke[9] al þat lande [10]into his hande. ¶ And when he hade conquerede al[6] Norwaye, and taken[11] feautes & homages þere, he come after' aȝeyne into Engelond, and helde him-self' so grete[12] lorde, þat him þouȝt in al þe worlde [13]no man his pier'[13] was; & bicome so prout & hauten þat hit was grete wonder'. ¶ And so[3] hit bifelle, oppoñ a day as he hade herde masse at Westmynstre, and wolde haue gone[14] into his palice, þe [15]water of[15] Tamise so swiftely [16]aȝeynes him comen,[16] þat Almost hit[17] tochede his fete. þo saide þe Kyng with a prout hert, "y commande þe water[18] turne aȝeyn, or elles[19] y shal þe make." þe wawys for his commandement wolde nouȝt[20] spare, but [21]flowede euer' on[21] hye more & more. ¶ The Kyng was so prout of hert þat he wolde nouȝt flee þe water, but abode stille in þe water, and bete þe water wiþ a smal ȝerd þat he helde in his hande, & comandede þe water þat it shulde wende no ferþere; but for al his commandement þe water wolde nouȝt cesse, but euer' waxe more & more an hye, so þat þe Kyng was al wete, and stode depe in þe water. ¶ And when he saw þat he hade abide þere or[22] longe, & þe water wolde noþing done[23] his commandement, þo sone he wiþdrowe him, and þo stode[24] oppoñ a stone & helde his hondes[3] an hye, & saide þis worde[25] in heryng' of al þe peple: "¶ þis God þat makeþ þe see[26] þus arise an[27]

[1–1] Normandy & after become O.
[2] mek and milde D. meke & mylde O.
[3] *om.* D.
[4–4] sones with O. sone wiþ þe R.
[5] went þat O.
[6] *om.* O.
[7–7] he went into D.
[8] weel to O.
[9] nome DO.
[10] *leaf* 67, *back.*
[11] tok D.
[12] stronge a D. gret a O.
[13–13] nomas *sic* D. his pere no man O.
[14] go O.
[15–15] wawys of the D. wawys of O.
[16–16] aroos aȝens hym O.
[17] þai D. þei O.
[18] water to DO.
[19] ell O.
[20] wolde nouȝt D. wold not O. wolde R.
[21–21] folwede euer on D. flowed in O.
[22] ouere to D. to O.
[23] do D.
[24] stepe D.
[25] wordes DO.
[26] water D.
[27] a D.

hye, he is Kyng of alle Kynges, & of myghtes most; & y ame a caitif and a man dedly, & he[1] may neuer dye; & alle þing[2] doth his *com*mandement, & to *him* is obedient. ¶ To þat God Y praye [3]þat he be my waraunt, for y knowliche me caitif feble, & of none[4] power; and *per*fore y wil gone[5] to Rome wiþout eny lettyng, my Wickednesse[6] forto[7] punisshe, and me to amende; ¶ ffor of þat God y cleyme my landes[8] forto holde, and of none o*pere*"; and anone made his heir, and him-self [went][9] to Rome wiþouten[10] eny lettyng, & by þe way dede meny almes dedes, & when he come to Rome also. ¶ And when he hade bene[11] *pere*, and for his synnes done penaunce, he come aʒeyne into Engeland, and bicome a gode man and an holy, and lefte al man*er* pride & stoutenesse, & leuede an holy lif al his lif after, and made ij Abbayes[9] of seynt Benet, one in Engeland & [12]þat o*pere*[12] in Norway, for-asmiche as he louede specialy[13] seynt Benet bifore al o*pere* seyntes; and miche he louede also seynt Edmunde þe kyng; & ofte he ʒaf grete ʒiftes to þe hous, wherfore it[14] was made ryche. and when he had regnede xx ʒere, he deide, & liþ at Wynchestr.

Of Kyng Harolde, þat leuer hade gone in[15] foot þa*n* ryde on hors. Capit*ulo* Cen*tesi*mo xx[i]^mo^.

THis Knoght, of wham y[16] haue spoken[17] bifor,[18] hade ij sones by his wif; & þat on me callede Herdiknoght, & þat o*pere* Harolde; and he was so [19]liþ of[19] fote þat men callede him *per*fore[20] Harolde Harefote. & þis Harolde hade noþing þe [21]condicions ne maners[21] of Kyng Knoght þat was his fader, for he sette but litil pris of chyualry ne of curtesye, neyþer of worship, but onely by his owen wille; & he bicome so wickede þat he exilede his moder. & þo [22]she went[22] out of þe[23] land into Flaundres, & þere she[24] duellede[25] wiþ þe Erl; wherfor after *pere* was neu*er* gode loue bituene him & his broþ*er*, for his broþ*er* him hatede dedely; and when he hade regnede ij [yere] & a litil [26]more,[27] he deide, & liþ at Westmynstre.

[1] and he DO. and R. [2] þing DO. þis R. [3] *leaf* 68. [4] no DO.
[5] go DO. [6] wyknesse O. [7] to DO. [8] londe D. land O.
[9] *om.* D. [10] with-oute O. [11] be O. [12–12] another D.
[13] specialy R. specialy seynt Benet D. specially Seynt Benet O.
[14] is *sic* D. [15] on DO. [16] we DO. [17] spoke O.
[18] tofore D. [19–19] light on D.
[20] *per*fore com*m*uneliche D. *per*fore comunlich O.
[21–21] maners ne condicions D. Condicions in þe man*er* O.
[22–22] went she D. went O. [23] this D. [24] *om.* DO.
[25] dwelt O. [26] *leaf* 68, *back*. [27] *MS.* mory.

Of Kyng Hardiknoght, þat was Haroldes broþer. Capitulo Centesimo xx[i]j^mo.

After þis Harolde Harefoot, regnede his broþer Hardiknoght, a noble Knyght & a worþi, & miche louede chiualrye and al maner godenesse. ¶ And when þis Hardiknoght[1] hade regnede a litil while, he lete vncouere his broþer Harolde, and [2]smote of his Heuede[2] þat was his broþer, at Westmynstr, and lete caste þe heuede[3] into a gonge, and þe body [4]into þe[4] Tamyse. and after come fisshers, & toke[5] þe body wiþ her nettes by nyght, and bere him vnto[6] seynt Clement3 cherche, & þere him buryede; and in þis maner avengede him Hardeknoght of his broþer, for in none oþere maner þai[7] mygh nou3t [8]hym avenge.[8] ¶ This Kyng Hardiknoght was so large 3euer of mete and of[9] drynk, þat his tables were sette [10]euer þre tymes ful[10] wiþ real[11] metes for his owen mayne[12], & for al þat [13]comen to[13] his court to bene[14] rychely seruede of[15] real metes. ¶ And þis Kyng Hardeknoght sent after Emme his moder, & made hir come a3eyne into Engeland, ffor she was dryue[16] out of Engeland whiles þat Harolde Harefote regnede, poru3 conseil of þe Erl Godwyne, þat þo was þe grettest lorde of al Engeland next þe kyng, and moste myght done[17] what he wolde [18]prou3 al[18] Engeland [19]prou3 his commaundement,[19] for-asmiche as he hade spousede þe doughter of þe gode Kyng Knoght þat was a danoys, whiche doughter he hade by his ferst wif. ¶ And when þis quene was dryuen[20] out of Engeland, & come to þe Erl of Flaundres þat me callede Baldewynne, her[21] cosyn, [22]he fonde here þere al þing þat hir nedede,[23] Vnto the tyme þat she[24] went a3eyne into Engeland, þat þe Kyng Hardiknoght hade sent for[25] her, þat was her sone, & made here come a3eyn wiþ michel[26] honour. ¶ This Kyng Hardeknoght,[27] when he hade v 3ere regnede, he deide, & liþ at Wynchestre.

Of þe Vylonye þat þe Danoys[28] dede to þe[29] Englisshe-men; wherfore fro þat tyme afterward was none[30] Danoys[28] made Kyng[31] of Engeland.[31] ¶ Capitulo ¶ Centesimo Vicesimo iij°.

[1] *MS.* Harolde. [2–2] smyte of his heed O. [3] heed O. [4–4] in O. [5] to *sic* D. [6] to DO. [7] he DO. [8–8] bene avenged D. be auenged O. [9] *om.* DO. [10–10] euery tyme þrise ful D. euery day iij tymes O. [11] ful ryal O. [12] maymen R. meny D. meyne O. [13–13] come vnto D. [14] be D. [15] with D. [16] dryuen D. [17] do D. [18–18] prou3-oute D. [19–19] *om.* D. [20] dryve O. [21] his RO. her D. [22] *leaf* 69. [23] nedeth D. [24] he D. [25] after D. [26] miche D. mych O. [27] Harolde D. [28] Danes O. [29] *om.* O. [30] no DO. [31–31] *om.* O.

After þe deth of þis Kyng Hardeknoght, forasmiche as he nad [1]non heire[1] of his body bigeten,[2] þe Erles and barons assembled and maden[3] a counseil; and neuer-more after þat tyme no man þat was a Danois, þouȝ he [4]were ner[4] so grete a man amonges ham, he shulde neuer bene[5] Kyng of Engeland, for þe despite þat þe Danois[6] hade done to þe[7] Englisshemen. ¶ For euermore biforne-honde,[8] if it were so þat Englisshe-men & Danois[9] hapden to mete oppoñ a bruge, þe Englisshe[10]-men shulde nouȝt bene[11] so herdy to meve ne stere on[12] foot, but stande stiH, til [13]þat þe Danois[13] were passede forth. ¶ And more-ouer, if þe Englisshemen hade nouȝt bowede adouñ here heuedes,[14] to done reuerence vnto þe Danois,[9] þai shulde haue bene bete & defoulede; & soche maner despites and Vilonyes deden þe Danois[9] to oure Englisshemen; Wherfore þai were dryuen out of þe lande after þe[15] tyme þat Kyng Herdeknoght was dede, for þai [16]had non[16] lord þat ham myght mayntene. In þis maner voided þe Danois[9] Engeland, þat neuer þai comen[17] aȝeyne. ¶ þe Erles and barouns, by here commune assent & conseile, senten [18]into Normandy forto seche þo ij brepern Alurede & Edward, þat were duellyng wiþ þe duk Richard þat was here eme, [19]to þat[19] intent forto crone Alurede þe elder broþer, & him make Kyng of Engeland, and of þis þing to make an ende, þe erles & barons made[20] her oth; But þe Erl Godwyne of Westsex falsely[21] þouȝt to slee þo ij brepern anone as þai shulde come into Engelonde, [22]to þat[22] entente forto make his sone Harolde Kyng, þe whiche sone he hade bigete oppoñ his wif, þat was Kyng Knoghtes doughter, þat was a Danoys. ¶ And þis Godwyn pryueliche[23] went him to Southampton, forto mete þere þo ij brepern when þat þai shulde come to lande. ¶ And þus hit bifelle, þat þe messagers þat wenten[24] into Normandye, fonden[25] nouȝt but onely Alurede, þat was þe eldest[26] broþer; for Edward, his ȝonger[27] broþer, was gone[28] to Hungrie forto speke wiþ his cosyn Edward þe outelaw, þat was Edmondes sone wiþ þe Irenside.[29] ¶ þe messagers

[1–1] none childe D. no Child O. [2] bigete D. begete O.
[3] made D. [4–4] wer neuer D. neuere were O. [5] be DO.
[6] Danys O. [7] *om.* DO. [8] bifore-honde D. [9] Danes O.
[10] *MS. Trin. Coll. Dubl.* 490 (D) *has a page cut out here, and does not continue until leaf* 70, *back, of the Rawlinson MS.*
[11] be O. [12] o O. [13–13] þe Danes O. [14] hedes O. [15] *om.* O.
[16–16] nad non O. [17] come O. [18] *leaf* 69, *back.* [19–19] en O.
[20] maden O. [21] falsly & traytously O. [22–22] in O. [23] priuily O.
[24] wente O. [25] founde O. [26] Eldere O. [27] *om.* O.
[28] went O. [29] Irensides O.

tolde & saide to Alurede, how þat þe Erles & barons of Engeland senten[1] after him, and þat he boldeliche shulde come into Engel*and* and vnderfonge þe reaume; for Kyng Herdeknoght was dede, & alle þe [2]Danois were dryuen[2] out of þe lande.

How Godewyne, þe false tr*ai*toure, tok Alurede oppoñ Gildesdouñ, when he come fro Normandye to bene[3] Kyng of Engeland, & dede him bene[3] martrede in þe Ile of Ely. Capit*ulo* C*entesi*mo xxiiij^to^.

WHen Alurede herde þis tydynges,[4] he þankede God, & into shipp went, wiþ al þe hast þat he myght, and passede þe see, & arryuede at Southamptoñ, *per*e þat Godewyne þe tr*ai*tour was. And when[5] þis tr[a]itoure [6]saw þat he was comen,[7] he welcomede him & vnderfonge hi*m* wiþ michel[8] ioye, and saide þat he wolde lede him to Londoñ, *per*e þat al þe [9]lordes & barons[9] of Engeland him abode, forto maken[10] him kyng. and so þai wenten[11] in her way toward Londoñ. & when þai comen[7] oppon Gildesdoune, þo saide þe tr*ai*toure Godwyne to Alurede,[12] "take þ kepe,"[13] q*uod* he, "aboute 3ow, boþ on[14] þe lefte side & in þe ryght side; and of aH 3e shul bene[3] kyng, & of suche an hundrede more."

¶ "Now forsoþe," q*uod* Alurede, "I behote, & if y be kyng, I shal ordeyn & make soche lawes wherof God & aH folc shullen [15]holden ham wel paied."[15] ¶ Now hade þe tr*ai*toure comaunded alle his men þat were wiþ him, þat when þai were comen[7] oppon Gildesdouñ, þat þai shulde slee alle þo þat were in Aluredes company þat comen wiþ him fram[16] Normandye, and after þat, taken[17] Alurede, & lede him into þe Ile of Ely, & *per*e put out boþe his eyne of his heued,[18] and afterward bryng him vnto þe[19] deth. & so þai deden, ffor þai quellede al his co*m*pany þat xij [hundred] were in nombre,[20] of gentil-men þat were comen[7] wiþ Alurede fra*m*[16] Normandye; And afte*r* token[21] Alurede, & lade hi*m* into þe Ile of Ely, & put out his[22] eyen of his heuede,[23] & rent his wombe, & token[24] þe chief of his bowailes, & put a stake into þe gronde, & an ende of his[22] bowailes þe*r*to fastenede, & wiþ nedles of Iren [25]pricked þe body of[25] þe gode childe, and so made[26] him gone[27] aboute þe stake

[1] sent O. [2–2] Danes dryven were O. [3] be O. [4] tydynge O.
[5] þo O. [6] *leaf* 70. [7] come O. [8] mych O.
[9–9] baroñs & lordes O. [10] make O. [11] went O.
[12] Alured & seyd O. [13] heed O. [14] in O. [15–15] hem wel paye O.
[16] fro O. [17] take O. [18] heed O. [19] *om.* O. [20] Cumpanye O.
[21] nomen O. [22] þe O. [23] heed O. [24] nome*n* O.
[25–25] prikeden O. [26] maden O. [27] go O.

til þat his bowales were [1]alle drawen[1] out: & so deide *þer*e Alurede, þrouȝ *tres*oñ of þe Erl Godwyne. ¶ When þe lordes of Engelandᵉ [2]hade herde & wist how Alured, þat shulde have ben herᵉ kyngᵉ, was put to[3] deþ þrouȝ þe false *trai*toure, þe Erl Godwynne, þai weren[4] al wonderᵉ wroth, & swore bituene ha*m*, by[5] Godᵉ & [6]by his[6] names, þat he shulde die in mor worse deth þan dede Edrik of Strattoñ, þat hade bitraiede his Lordᵉ E[d]munde Irenside.[7] and þai wolde haue taken him, & put him vnto þe deþ, but þe þef *trai*toure fleyᵍ[8] þens into Denmarc, & *þer*e helde him iiij ȝere & more, & loste aH his londes[9] in Engelandᵉ.

Of Seynt Edwardᵉ þe Confessoure, *þat* was Aluredes bro*þer*; [10]How he was Kyng [11]of Engelande.[11] ¶ Capit*ulo* ¶ Cen*tesimo* ¶ xxv^to.[12]

ANd when þis [13]was done,[13] alle þe Barons of Enge[land] senten ano*þer* tyme into Normandye, for þat Edward shulde[14] come into Engelandᵉ with michel[15] hono*ur*. And þis Edward in his childehode louede al-myghty Godᵉ, & [16]him drade,[16] & in honeste and clennesse leued[17] his lif, and hatede synne as deþ. ¶ And when he was *cr*onede[18] and annoyntede wiþ[19] real powerᵉ, he forȝate nouȝt his gode maners & condicions [20]& custumes[20] þat he ferst vsede,[21] for no manerᵉ hono*ur*, ne for no[5] richesse, ne for no man*er* hyenesse, but eu*er* more &[22] moreᵉȝaf him to godenesse, and wel louede God & al mekenesse, & louede God & holy cherche passyng al man*er* þingᵉ, & pore me*n* also, & ham[23] helde as þai hade bene his owen bre*þer*ne, & to ham ofte ȝaf grete almesse wiþ gode wille.

Of þe ferst specialte þat Godᵉ shewede for seynt Edwardes[24] loue by his lifᵉ. ¶ Capitulo ¶ Centesimo ¶ xxv[j]^to.

[25]HIt bifelle oppoñ a day as he went fram[26] þe che[rch] ofᵉ Westmynstre, & hade herde masse of seynt Iohan Eua*n*gelistᵉ, for-asmiche as he louede seynt Iohan Eua*n*gelistᵉ

[1–1] drawen al O. [2] *leaf* 70, *back*. [3] vn-to O. [4] were O.
[5] *om.* O. [6–6] his holy O. [7] Irensides O. [8] fledde O. [9] londᵉ O.
[10] *MS. Trin. Coll. Dubl.* 490 (*D*) *continues here.* [11–11] *om.* O.
[12] *MS.* xxiiij^to; Secundo D. [13–13] Traytour had al þus ydone O.
[14] shul D. schuld O. [15] mych O. [16–16] drad hym O.
[17] lade D. lad O. [18] crouneᵈ kyngᵉ D. [19] wiþ a O.
[20–20] *om.* DO.
[21] vsede ne forȝate nouȝt alle gode custumes D. vsed & forgate not al good Custumes O.
[22] *om.* D. [23] ham louede & D. hem loued & O. [24] Edwardᵉ O.
[25] *leaf* 71. [26] fro O.

most[1] specialy after' God and oure lady, þan he dede eny o*þer* seynt. ¶ And so þ*er*e come to him a pilg*r*ime, & p*r*aede him, for þe loue of God' & of seynt Iohan Eua*n*gelist', some god him forto 4 ȝeue. And þe Kyng [2]p*r*iuely toke[2] þe ryng of his fenger', p*r*iuely[3] þat no man p*er*ceyuede hit, & ȝaf it þe pilg*r*ime; & he it vnderfonge, & went þens. þis goode Kyng Edward made alle þe gode lawes of Engeland' þat ȝitte be[4] most holden, &[5] was so m*er*cyable 8 &[6] ful of pite *þat* no m*an* myȝt bene[7] more.

How þe Erl Godwyn come aȝeyn̄ into Engeland', & hade aȝeyne al his land', & afterward'[8] Seynt Edward' wedede his dou*ȝter*. Ca*pitulo* ¶ C*entesimo* xxv[i]j^to^.

12 WHen þe Erl Godwyn, þat was [9]in Denmarc duellyng',[9] hade michel[10] herd of þe godenesse of Edward, & þat he was ful of m*er*cy & of[11] pitée, & þou*ȝ*t þat he wolde goñ[12] aȝeyn into Engeland' forto seche and [13]to haue[13] g*r*ace of him, & þat he myght 16 haue þe[14] lande aȝeyn in pees, & arraiede him as miche as he might, & put him toward þe see, & come into Engeland', to Londoñ, þ*er*e þat þe Kyng was þat tyme, & al þe[15] lordes of Engeland', & helde[16] p*ar*lement'. ¶ Godewyn sent to ha*m* þat were his frendes, & were 20 [17]þe moste[17] gretteste lordes of þe londe, & p*r*aiede ham to biseche þe Kynges g*r*ace for him, and[18] þat he wolde his [19]pees & his londes[19] g*r*aunt[20] him. his [21]frendes Lade[21] hi*m* bifore þe Kyng' forto biseche[22] grace. ¶ And anone as þe Kyng him saw, he appelede 24 him of t*r*esouñ, & of þe dep of Alurede his bro*þer*, and þise wordes vnto[23] him saide: ¶ "Traito*ur* Godwyn!" q*uod* [24]þe Kyng, "I þe appele, þat þow haste bit*r*aede & slayne my bro*þer* Alurede." ¶ "Certes, sire," q*uod* Godwyn, "saf ȝo*ur* grace,[25] ȝour' pees & 28 ȝoure[26] lorde-shippe, y neuer' hi*m* bit*r*aede ne sloughe; and þ*er*of[27] y put me [in] rewarde of ȝour' cou[r]t'." ¶ "Now, faire lordes,[28] ȝe þat be[29] my lieges, erles & barons of þe lande, þat here bene alle

[1] more þan D. more O. [2–2] priueliche nome D. p*r*iuyly nome O.
[3] *om.* DO. [4] ben O. [5] & he O. *om.* R. [6] and so DO. [7] be DO.
[8] afte*r*ward' seynt Edward' D. afte*r* seynt Edward O. afterward' R.
[9–9] duellyng in Denmarc D. dwellyng in Denmark' O.
[10] miche D. [11] *om.* O. [12] go DO. [13–13] haue m*er*cy and D.
[14] his DO. [15] the gret D. [16] helde a gret D. held a gret O.
[17–17] þe the *sic* D. [18] *om.* D.
[19–19] londe and his pees D. pees & his land' O. [20] graunten O.
[21–21] enemyes ladden O. [22] seche DO. [23] to D. [24] *leaf* 71, *back.*
[25] *g*race & D. grace & O. [26] ȝour' D. ȝoure O. þoure R.
[27] *þ*erfore O. [28] lordes q*uod* þe kyng' DO. [29] bene D. ben O.

assemblede,—[1]wel ȝe hauen[1] herde myn.appele, and þe ansure[2] of Godwyn; & *per*fore y wil þat ȝe award and do ryght." ¶ þe erles and[3] barons þo drowen ha*m* [4]al to-geder',[4] forto done[5] þis award by ham-self'. and so þai [6]spoken diu*er*seliche[6] amonges ha*m*; for 4 so*mm*e sayde þat[7] *per*e was neuer' allyaunce by homage, se*r*ment,[8] se*r*uise, ne by[7] lordeship, bituene Godwyn & Alurede, for which þing þai might hi*m* draw. ¶ And at þe laste þai demede þat he shulde put him into[9] þe Kynges me*r*cy altogeders. ¶ þo spake þe 8 Erl Leueryche of Couentre, a gode man to God & to alle þe worlde, & tolde his resouñ in þis mane*r*, & saide: "þe Erl Godwyne is þe best frendede mȧn of Engeland' after' þe kyng; and wel myȝt it nouȝt bene[10] gaynsaide þat, wiþout consel of Godwyn, Alurede was 12 neuer' put vnto[11] deþ; Wherefore y awarde, as tochyng my part', þat him-self[12] and his sone, and eue*r*yche[13] of vs xij Erles þat beþ[14] his frendes, wende bifore þe Kyng' chargede wiþ alse miche[15] golde and siluer' as we mowe bere bytuene oure hondes, & pr*a*yng þe 16 Kyng forȝeue his euel wille to þe Erle Godwyn, and resceyue his homage, & his landes[16] ȝelde aȝeyn." & alle þai accordede vnto þat awarde, and [17]comen in þis[17] mane*r* as[18] is aboue-saide, eue*r*yche[19] of ha*m* wiþ golde & siluer', [20]as miche as þai myght bere bituenes[21] 20 here hondes, bifore þe Kyng'; and þai saiden[22] þe fou[r]me and þe mane*r'* of her' accord' and of her awarde. ¶ The Kyng wolde nȏuȝt ham[23] gayne-saie; but alse miche[24] as þai [25]wolde ordeyne,[25] he[26] gr*a*untede & confermede; And so was þe Erl Godwyn accordede 24 wiþ þe Kyng', & hade aȝeyne al[27] his lande; and aftirward he bar' him so wel & so wiseliche[28] þat þe Kyng louede hi*m* wonder' myche, & with him was ful p*r*iue. And[29] wiþin a litel tyme[30] þe Kyng louede him so miche þat he spousede Godwyn*us* doughte*r*, and 28 made her' Quene; and neue*r*þeles,[31] for al þat, þouȝ þe Kyng' hade a wif', he leuede eue*r*more in chastite & in clennes of body, wiþ-outen[32] eny flesshely dede[7] doyng' with his wif'; & þe Quene also, [33]in her' Halfe,[33] lade holy lif'[34] ij ȝere, and deide; & afte*r*ward þe 32

[1—1] ful wel ȝe haue D. ful weel ȝe haue O.
[2] ansuere also D. answere also O. [3] & the D. [4—4] togederes D.
[5] do D. [6—6] speken diuersly O. [7] *om.* D. [8] se*r*iant D. *om.* O.
[9] in DO. [10] be O. [11] to D. to þe O.
[12] *MS.* him-self and him-self'. [13] eue*r*y DO. [14] ben O.
[15] as myċh O. [16] lande D. land' O. [17—17] come in the D.
[18] þat DO. [19] eche O. [20] *leaf* 72. [21] bituene D. betwene O.
[22] seid O. [23] hym O. [24] asmiche D. as myċh O.
[25—25] ordeynede D. [26] & O. [27] *om.* O. [28] wisely D. wysely O.
[29] and so D. [30] while D. [31] noþelesse D. netheles O.
[32] with-oute DO. [33—33] *om.* D. [34] lif on hir' half' D.

Kyng leuede al his lif wiþouten[1] eny wif. ¶ The Kyng ȝaf þe Erldome of Oxenford to Harolde, þat was Godwynes sone, & made him Erle; and so wel þai were[2] bilouede, boþe þe fader and [3]þe sone,[3] [4]& so pryue wiþ þe Kyng, þat þai myght[4] do[5] what þing[6] þai wolde by righte, for[7] aȝeynes ryght he wolde nouȝt[8] done[9] for no maner man, so gode and trew he was of consciens; and *per*fore our Lorde Ihesu Crist, grete special[10] loue to him shewed.

How seynt Edward saw Swyn, Kyng of Denmarc, drenche[11] in þe see at[12] þe sac*ra*ment, as he stode & herde[13] masse. Ca*pitulo* C*entesi*mo. ¶ xxviij^mo.[14]

HIt bifelle oppoñ[15] Whitsonday, as Kyng Edward herde his masse in þe grete cherch of Westmynstre, ryght at þe leuaciouñ of Ihesu Cristes body, and as al men were gaderede into þe cherche, & com*en* neyer[16] [17]þe aute*r*,[18] sacring forto see, ¶ The [19]Kyng his[19] hondes lifte vp an hye, and a[2] grete laught*er* toke op; wherfore all þat aboute him stode, gretly gon wonder[20]; & after masse þai axede whi þe kyng*us* laught*er* was.[21] ¶ "Faire lordes," q*uod* þe Kyng, "Swyn þe ȝonger,[22] þat was Kyng of Denmarc, come into þe see wiþ al his power forto haue comen[23] into Engeland, oppoñ vs forto haue werrede; and y saw him and al his folc drenche[24] in þe hye[25] see: & al þis saw y in þe[25] eleuacioun of Ihesu[26] Cristes body bytuene þe prestes hondes; & y hade þerof so miche ioye, þat y myght nought my laughter wiþholde." ¶ And þe Erl Leueriche bisides him stode at þe leuaciouñ, & openlich he saw þe fourme of brede *tur*ne into þe[27] lickenesse of a [28]knaf childe ȝong,[28] and toke[29] op his right hande, & ferst[2] blessede þe Kyng, and afterward þe Erle. And þe Erle[30] *tur*nede him anone[31] toward þe Kyng, to make him see þat holy sight. ¶ And þo[32] saide þe Kyng: "sir Erle," q*uod* he, "I see [33]wel þat ȝe seeþ,[33]

[1] *with*oute O. [2] *om.* D. [3–3] he O.
[4–4] þat þai wolde D. & so pryve *with* þe kyng boþe þe fadir & þe sone þat þei myght O.
[5] done O. [6] þing þat D. [7] and D. [8] no þing O.
[9] do D. [10] specialte & O. [11] drenched DO. [12] in O.
[13] herde his D. herd his O. [14] *MS. has* xxvij^mo. [15] oppon a D.
[16] neyȝ D. ny O. [17] *leaf* 72, *back*. [18] Auter þe D.
[19–19] kynges O. [20] wondryn O.
[21] lauȝter was D. laughter was O. laughter R. [22] wonger *sic* D.
[23] come O. [24] drenched O. [25] *om.* O. [26] *om.* D. Ihesus O.
[27] *om.* DO. [28–28] ȝonge childe D. Child ȝong O. [29] nome DO.
[30] Erle anone D. Erle anon O. [31] *om.* DO. [32] þus O.
[33–33] þet ȝe see ryȝt wel blessede be god D. wel þat sight O.

þankede be God þat y haue honourrede my God, my saueoure, Visibili [1]Ihesu Crist[1] in fourme of man, whos name bene[2] blessede in al worldes! Amen!"

How þe ryng þat Sent Edward hade 3euen[3] to a pore pilgrime, for þe loue of seynt Iohan Euaungelist, come a3eyn vnto[4] Kyng Edward. Capitulo Centesimo xxix^mo.

THis noble man Seynt Edwarde regnede xiij 3ere. & þus hit bifelle oppoñ a tyme biforne[5] er he deide, þat ij men of Engeland were went to þe Holy Lande, & haden done her pilgrimage, & wer goyng a3eyne toward her owen contre. ¶ And as þai went in þe way, þai[6] mette a pilgrime þat curtesly ham [7]Saluede, and axede of ham in wh[a]t lande & in What contre þai were born; & þai saide "in Engeland." ¶ þo axede he[8] who was Kyng of Engeland; and þai ansuerede & saide "þe goode Kyng Edward." "Faire frendes," þo saide þe pilgrime, "when þat 3e come into 3our contre a3eyne, y praye 3ow þat 3e wolde[9] gone[10] vnto[11] Kyng Edward, and ofte-tymes him grete in my name, & ofte-tymes þank him of his grete curtesye þat he to me haþ done, A[nd] nameliche[12] for þe ryng þat he 3af me when he hade herde masse at Westmynstre, for seynt Iohnes loue Euaungelist," and [13]toke þo[13] þe Ryng[14] to þe pilgrimes, and saide, "y pray 3ow forto [1]goñ &[1] bere þis ryng, & take hit to Kyng Edward, & telle him þat y sende hit[15] him; and a ful ryche[16] 3ift y wil him 3eue; for oppoñ þe tuelfeþ[17] day he shal come to me, & euermore duelle in blisse wipouten ende." ¶ "Sir," saide þe pilgrimes, "what man beþ[18] 3e, & in what place is 3our duellyng?" ¶ "Faire frendes," quod he, "I ame Iohan Euaungelist & am duellyng wiþ Almyghty[19] God; & 3our Kyng Edward is my frende, & y loue him specialy for enchesoñ þat he haþ euer Leuede in clennesse, and is clene maide; and y pray 3ow my message al forto done as y haue to[8] 3ow saide." ¶ When seynt Iohan Euaungelist hade þus ham chargede, sodeynly[20] he voidede out of her sight.

þe pilgrimes þo þankede Almyghty Gode, & went forþ in her way. ¶ & when þai hade gon ij or iij myle, þai bigon to waxen[21]

[1–1] *om.* D. [2] be DO. [3] 3eue DO [4] to O. [5] byfor O.
[6] *MS.* þat. [7] *leaf* 73. [8] *om.* O. [9] wol O. [10] go DO.
[11] to þe O. [12] namely D. [13–13] þo toke D. nome þo O.
[14] ryng & toke it O. [15] *om.* D. [16] rychere O. [17] xij O.
[18] be DO. [19] almy3t D. [20] sodenlich O. [21] wax D. wexe O.

wery, & sette adoune ham forto reste; & so þai felle [1]and slepte.[1] ¶ And when[2] þai hade slepte[3] wel, one of ham [4]awoke, & lifte vp his heuede[5] & lokede aboute & saide vnto[6] his felaw, "arise op, and wende we in oure way." "What," saide þat on[7] felaw to þat o*per*, "where be we nowe?" ¶ "Ce*r*tis," saide þat o*per*e [8]felawe, "it seme*þ*[8] me þat it[2] is nou*ȝ*t þe same contreye þat we laide vs in [9]forto reste &[9] slep, for we were þo fro Ieru*sal*em but iij mile."[10] ¶ þai tok[11] op her' hondes, and blessede ham, & went forþ in her' waye. & as þai went in here way þai saw shepe*r*des goyng wiþ her' shepe, þat spoken[12] none o*per*e langage but Englisshe. ¶ "Leue frendes," q*uod* on of þe pilg*r*imes, "what contre is þis, & who is lorde þe*r*of?" and one[2] of þe shepe*r*des ansurede: "þis is þe cuntre of Kent, in Engel*and*, of þe whiche þe gode Kyng Edward is lorde." ¶ þe pilgrimes [13]þankede þo[13] Almyghty God' & seynt Iohan[14] eu*aung*el*ist*, & went forþ in her way, & come to Kaunte*r*bery, & fro þens vnto[15] Londoñ; and þe*re* þai fonden[16] þe Kyng, & tolde him[17] fro þe bigynny[n]g vnto þe ende as miche as seynt Iohan hade ham chargede, & of al þing*us* how þai spedden[18] by þe way, & toke þe ryng to[19] Kyng Edward; & he vnderfonge hit, & þankede Almyghty God' & seynt Iohan Eu*aung*el*ist*, & þo made him aredy euery day, [20]fram day to day,[20] forto wende out of þis lif' when God wolde for hi*m* sende.

How seynt Edwarde [de]lide on the xij[21] day. Capitulo ¶ Centesimo ¶ Tricesimo.

AND after hit bifelle[22] þus in Cristenmasse[23] eve: as þe holy man Edward was at Godes se*r*uice, matynes forto[24] hure of þat holy[25] fest, he bicome ful [26]sik, and in þe morwe [27]endurede wiþ michel payn[27] masse forto here, & after' lete him bene[28] lade into his chaumbre, þe*re* forto resten[29] him; but [30]into his[30] halle amonges[31] his barons and his knyghtes myght he nou*ȝ*t

[1–1] aslepe DO. [2] *om.* D. [3] sleped' D. [4] *leaf* 73, *back.*
[5] hed' O. [6] to D. [7] o O. [8–8] it semes D. it semeth O.
[9–9] to O. [10] miles D. myles O. [11] nomen DO. [12] speke O.
[13–13] þo þankede D. [14] *om.* O. [15] to O. [16] fonde D. founde O.
[17] him al D. hym al O. [18] spedde DO. [19] to þe O.
[20–20] *om.* D. fro day to day O. from day R.
[21] twelfe O. [22] fel O. [23] cristemasse DO.
[24] *MS. has* forto done, *with* done *underlined for omission.*
[25] hye DO. [26] *leaf* 74.
[27–27] durede with miche payne the D. endured with mych peyne þe O.
[28] be DO. [29] rest DO.
[30–30] *MS.* into his into his. [31] among O.

come, ha*m* forto comfort and solace, as he was [1]wonte forto[1] done at þat worþi feste; Wherfore al his[2] merþ & comfort among*us* alle þat were in þe halle was turnede into[3] care and sorwe, for enchesouñ þat þai drade[4] forto lese[5] her' gode Lorde þe Kyng'. ¶ And oppoñ seynt Iohñes [6]day Eu*a*ungel*ist*[6] þat þo come next, þe Kyng' vnderfonge his rightes of holy cherche, as falliþ to eu*e*ry C*r*isten man, & abode þe m*er*cy &[7] wille of God. ¶ And þo ij pilg*r*imes he lete bifore hi*m* come, and ȝaf ha*m* riche ȝiftes, & bitoke ha*m* vnto God'. And also þe Abbot of Westmynstre he lete bifore hi*m* come, & toke him þat ryng in hono*ur* of Gode & [8]of Seynt Iohan[8] Eu*a*ungel*ist*. And þe Abbot [9]toke hit &[9] put hit amonge o*þe*r*e* reliqes, so þat it is at Westmynstre, & euer'[10] shal be. and so lay þe Kyng sike to[11] þe xij eve;[12] & þo deide þe gode Kyng Edward' at Westmynstre; & þere he liþ, for whos loue God haþ done meny miracles. And þis was in þe ȝere of[13] Incarnacioun̄ [14]of oure Lorde Ih*es*u Crist',[14] M' .lxv. ȝere; & after he was t*ra*nslatede, & put into þe shryne, þrouȝ þe noble Martir Seint ¶ Thomas of Kaunt*er*bery.

How Harolde, þat' was Godwyn*us* sone, was made Kyng'; & how he scapede[15] fro þe Duc of Britaign. Cap*itu*lo C*en*-*tesim*o xxxj'.

WHen Seynt Edward was gone oute of þis worlde, & was gone to God, & worþely ent*er*ede, as [16]p*er*teynede to[16] soche a lorde forto bene,[17] þe barons [18]of þe Land' Wolde haue hade Edward' Helyng*us*, sone[19] to Edward þe Outlaghe, þat was Edmund*us* sone[20] Irensyde, to bene[17] Kyng', for-asmiche as[21] he was moste kyndest kynges blode of þe reaume. ¶ But Harold,[22] sone þrouȝ þe Erle Godwyn,[23] & þe strengþ of his fader' Godwyn, & þrouȝ o*þe*r*e* grete lordes of þe reaume þat were of here[24] Kyn & vnto him sib, seisede al Engeland[25] into his Honde, & anone lete c*r*one hi*m* Kyng', after þe ent*er*ement of Seynt Edward. ¶ This Harolde,

[1–1] woned to O. [2] here O. [3] vnto D. [4] dradden O.
[5] lesen O. [6–6] Eu*a*ungelist day O. [7] & þ^e^ O.
[8–8] seynt Marie and of seynt Iohan the D. seynt Marye & of seynt Iohn þ^e^ O.
[9–9] *om.* D. nome & O. toke & hit & *sic* R. [10] eu*er*more DO.
[11] til DO. [12] euen O. [13] of the D. [14–14] *om.* D. [15] ascaped' O.
[16–16] app*er*teynede D. p*er*teyneþ to O. [17] be O. [18] *leaf* 74, *back.*
[19] Helyng*us* sone D. Helyngis sone O. Helyng*us* R.
[20] Edmu*n*d*us* sone D. Edmundes sone O. Edmund*us* R. [21] for D.
[22] *MS. has* Haroldes, *with* es *underlined for omission*; Haroldis O.
[23] Godwynne D. Godwyn O. Godwy R. [24] his DO. [25] þ^e^ lond' O.

þat was Godwyn*us* sone, þe secunde[1] ȝere aft*er* þat Seynt Edward was dede, Wolde haue gone into Flaundres, but he was dryuen[2] þrouȝ tempest into þe contre of Pountif', & þ*er*e he was take & brouȝt vnto[3] Duc Will*iam*. ¶ And þis Harolde wende þo þat þe Duc Will*iam* wolde haue bene avenged oppoñ hi*m*, for encheson þat þe Erl Godwyn, þat was Haroldes[4] fader', [5]hade done[5] quelle Alurede, þat was Seynt Edward*us* broþ*er*, and p*ri*ncipaly for Alurede,[6] Quene E*m*mes sone, þat was Richardes moder', Duk' of Normandye, þat was Aile to þe Duc Will*iam*. ¶ And noþeles, when þe[7] Duc William hade Harolde in prisouñ & vnder' his power',[7] for-alse[8]-miche as þis Harold' was a noble knyght, wise, & worþi of Body, & þat his fader & he were accordede wiþ þe gode Kyng Edward', & þ*er*fore[9] wolde nouȝt [10]mysdone[11] him,[10] but al man*er* þing*us* þat bituene ham were spoken & ordeynede, Harolde by his gode Wille suore oppon a boke & oppoñ Holy seyntȝ, þat he shulde[12] spouse and wedde Duc William*us* douȝt*er* after þe deþ of Seynt Edward, and þat he shulde besely [13]done His deuer' forto[14] Kepe & saue þe reaume of Engeland, to þe p*ro*fite & auauntage of Duc Will*iam*. ¶ And when Harolde hade þus made his oth vnto[15] Duc Will*iam*, he lete him gone,[16] & ȝaf him[17] riche ȝiftes; And [18]he þo[18] went þens, & come into Engel*and*, & anone dede in þis maner' when Seint Edward was dede; and as[19] man falsely forsuore, he lete c*ro*ne him Kyng of Engeland', & falsely brac þe[20] couenauntȝ þat he hade made bifore[21] wiþ Duc William; wherfore he was wiþ hi*m* wonder wroþe, & swore þat he wolde[22] oppoñ him bene[7] avengede, [23]whateu*er* so[23] him bifelle. ¶ And anone Will*iam*[24] lete assemble a grete hoste, and come into Engeland', to avenge him oppon Harolde, & to conquere þe lande if þat he myght. ¶ And in þe same ȝere þat Harold' was c*ro*nede, Harold' Harestrenge, Kyng of Denmarc, arryuede in Scotland', and þouȝ[t] haue be[25] kyng of Engel*and*. & he come into Engeland', & quellede & robbede, & destroiede al þat he might, til þat he come to ȝorke; & þ*er*e he quellede meny men of Armys M[l],[26] & an[27] C prestes.

[1] ij O. [2] dryue D. dryve O. [3] into the D. to þe O.
[4] Harold' O. [5—5] lete D. had lete O.
[6] enchesoñ þat Alured was D. enchesoñ þat Alured' was O.
[7] *om.* D. [8] as DO. [9] þ*er*fore he O. [10—10] hym mysdone O.
[11] mysdo D. [12] wold O. [13] *leaf* 75. [14] to O. [15] vn-to þe O.
[16] go DO. [17] him meny D. hym meny O. [18—18] tho he D.
[19] as a DO. [20] his O.
[21] *MS. has* bifore þis, *with* þis *underlined for omission.* [22] wolde be D.
[23—23] what-so-euere O. [24] William bastard' O. [25] bene D. ben O.
[26] a þousand D. a M[l] O. [27] *om.* O.

¶ When þis tyding come to þe Kyng', he assemblede a strong power', and went forto feiȝt wiþ Harold' of Denmarc, & wiþ his owen honde *him* quellede, and þe Danois[1] were descomfitede; & þo þat [2]lafte alyue,[2] wiþ myche sorwe went[3] to her' shippes; and þus Kyng Harolde of Engeland quellede Kyng Harold' of Denmarc.

How William Bastard, Duc of Norma*n*dy, come into Engeland', & quellede Kyng Harold'. Cap*itul*o [4]xx vj xij.[4]

ANd when þis bataile was done, Harolde bicome [5]so prout, and wolde [6]nouȝt dep*ar*te[6] with his peple of þing' þat he hade gete, but helde it al towardes[7] him-self'; Wherfore þe most part[8] of his men were wroþ, and fram[9] him dep*ar*tede, so þat oneliche wiþ him lefte no mo but his soudeo*ur*s. ¶ And oppon a day, as he sate at þe[10] mete, messag*er*s[11] co*m*me to hi*m*, & saide þat William Bastard', Duc of Normandye, was Arryuede in Engeland' wiþ a grete host', and hade taken[12] al þe lande aboute Hastynge, & hade also mynede þe caste#. ¶ When þe Kyng hade[13] herde þis tydynges,[14] he went þider wiþ a litil peple in[15] al þe hast þat he myght, for[16] a litel peple was wiþ him lefte. ¶ And when he was comen[17] þider', he ordeynede forto ȝeue bataile to þe Duc William; but þe Duc axede him of þise iij þing*us*: [18]if þat[18] he wolde haue his dough*ter* to wif', as he hade made [19]& swore[19] his othe [19]& bihight';[19] or þat he wolde halde þe lande of him in t*ru*age; or þat he wolde det*er*mine þis þing bi[20] bataile. ¶ þis Harold' was a prout m*an* & a stout, and truste wonder'[21] miche oppoñ his owen st*reng*þ, & fauȝt wiþ[22] the duc & wiþ his peple; but Harold' & his men were descomfitede, & himself' [23]was þ*er*e[23] slayn. & þis bataile was endede at Tonbrigge, in þe secu*n*de ȝere [19]of his regne,[19] oppoñ seynt Kalixtes day; and he liþ at Waltham.

Of Kyng' William Bastard', & how he gou*er*nede him [24]wel &[24] wisely; & of þe werr' bituene him &[25] þe Kyng' of Fraunce. Cap*itul*o C*entesi*mo xxxiij°.[26]

[1] Danes O. [2–2] were laft on lyf D. [3] fley D. fled O.
[4–4] centesimo tricesimo t*er*cio D. [5] *leaf 75, back.*
[6–6] noþing p*ar*te DO. [7] toward' DO. [8] p*ar*tye O. [9] fro O.
[10] *om.* O. [11] a messeng*er* D. a messager O. [12] y-take O.
[13] *om.* D. [14] Tydynge O. [15] *with* O. [16] and D. [17] come O.
[18–18] it *sic* D. [19–19] *om.* D. [20] þurgh O. [21] *om.* D.
[22] wiþ the D. *with* þ^e^ O. wiþ R. [23–23] þ*er*e was O. [24–24] *om.* O.
[25] or D. [26] xiij° *sic* O.

WHen William Bastard, Duc of Normandye, hade conquerede al þe land, oppoñ Cri[s]tenmasse[1] day þo next sewyng he lete crone him kyng at Westmynstre, & was a worþi kyng, & ȝaf[2] to Englisshemen largly landes, & to his knyghtes. ¶ And afterward he went[3] ouer þe see, [4]& come[4] [5]into Normandye, & þere duellede a while; & in þe secunde ȝere of his regne he come aȝeyne vnto[6] Engeland, and brouȝt [7]wiþ him[7] Maude his wif, and lete crone here [8]quene of Engeland, on[8] Whitsonday. ¶ And þo anone after, þe Kyng of Scotland þat me callede Mancolum, bigon to [9]werr and stryue[9] wiþ[10] Duc William; and he ordeynede him þo toward Scotland wiþ his men, boþe by lande and by see, forto destroy þe Kyng[11] Mancolum. but þai were accordede, & þe Kyng of Scotland, Mancolum, bicome his man, and helde al his lande of him; and Kyng William resceyuede of him his Homage, and come aȝeyne into Engeland. ¶ And when Kyng William hade bene[12] Kyng xvij ȝere, Maude þe Quene deide, on whom Kyng William hade geten meny faire cheldern, þat is forto seyne, Robert Curthose, William le Rous, Richar also þat deide, Henry Beauclerc, & Maude also, þat was þe Erles wif of Bleyns, and opere iiij doughtre.[13] ¶ And after his wifes deth, grete debate bigan bituene him & þe Kyng of Fraunce, Philippe; but atte þe laste þai were accordede; and þo duellede þe Kyng of Engeland in Normandye, and no man him werrede, ne[14] he no man, longe tyme. and þe Kyng of Fraunce saide oppoñ a day in scorne of Kyng William, & saide þat 'Kyng William hade longe[15] leyen a[16] childe bed, & longe tyme haþ[17] restede him.' ¶ And þis worde come to þe Kyng of Engeland þere þat he laye in Normandy, atte Roen; and for þis word[18] was þo euel[19] paiede [4]for þat worde,[4] & ek wonder[2] wrothe toward þe Kyng of Fraunce, and swore þo by God þat, when he were arise of his gisyne, he wolde liȝt a þousand candelles to þe Kyng of Fraunce. ¶ And anone lete assem[20]ble a grete hoste of Normandye and of Engelisshe-men; and in þe bigynnyng of Heruest he come into Fraunce, & brent[21] alle þe tounes þat he come by, prouȝ alle þe contre, & robbed, & dede al þe euel þat he might prouȝ-out al

[1] cristusmasse D. Cristesmasse O. [2] *om.* D. [3] sent D.
[4–4] *om.* D. [5] *leaf* 76. [6] into D. [7–7] hym *with* O.
[8–8] kyng [*sic*] at D. qwene of Engelond in O.
[9–9] stryue and were D. [10] with þe O. [11] *om.* O. [12] be O.
[13] douȝters D. doughters O. [14] & O.
[15] longe tyme D. long tyme O. [16] in DO. [17] had O.
[18] word he O. [19] ille O. [20] *leaf* 76, *back.* [21] brennede D.

Fraunce. & at þe laste he [1]brent þe touñ[1] of Mandes, & commandede his peple forto bere wode, & as miche as[2] myght brenne; & him-self halpe *per*to, al þat he myghte, wiþ[3] gode wille. ¶ And *pere* was *gr*ete hete, what of fyre þat was so grete, & of þe sone þat þo was wonder' hote, þat al stuffled[4] him-self was,[5] & felle into a[6] grete sikenesse. and when he saw þat he was so stronge sike, he ordeynede and assignede al Normandy vnto[7] Rob*er*t Curthese, his sone, and al Engeland to William þe Rous, & biquaþ to Henry[8] Beauclerc al his *tr*esoure. ¶ And when[9] he hade þus done,[10] he vnderfonge alle his sac*ra*ment*z* of holy cherche, & deide, þe xxij ȝere of his regne, & liþ at Caam in Normandye.[11]

Of[12] Kyng William Rous, þat was Willia*m* Bastardes sone, þ*a*t destroiede [13]tounes & hous of religiouñ[13] fort[o] make þe[14] new Foreste. Cap*itu*lo ¶ C*entesi*mo xxxiiij^to^.

And afte*r* þis William Bastard, regnede his sone William[15] Rous, &[16] was a wonder' cont*ra*rious man to God and to holy cherche, & lete amende & make þe toune of Cardeys þat þe paynemys hade destroied.[17] ¶ This Kyng William destroiede holy cherche[6] and alle here possessions, in what p*ar*tye[18] he miȝt ham fynde; and *per*fore *pere* was so miche debate bituene him & þe Erchebisshop*e* of Kaunt*er*bery, Ancelyn, for enchesouñ þat he [19]vnderfonge him of his Wickednesse,[19] þat he destroiede Holy cherche; & for enchesoñ *per*of, þe Kyng to him bare grete wraþ; & for þat cause he exiled*e* him out of þe lande; & þe erchebisshop þo [20]Went to þe courte of Rome, and *pere* du[e]llede wiþ þe Pope. ¶ & þis Kyng made þe new Forest', and caste douñ[21] & destroiede xxvj tounes & iiij house[22] of religioñ, al forto make his foreste long*er* & brod*er*',[23] & bicome wonder glade & prout of his wode & of his Forest', and of þe wilde bestes þat wer' þ*er*in, þat it was mervailous forto[24] wete, so þat me*n* callede him 'keper' of wodes & of pastures.' & þe leng*er* þat[6] he leuede, þe more Wikkede he bicome, boþe to

[1–1] brennede the citee D. brent þe Cytee O. [2] as he D.
[3] with a O. [4] stuffed O. [5] bicome D. bycome O. [6] *om.* D.
[7] to D. [8] Herry O. [9] þo DO. [10] do D. [11] Northfolc D.
[12] How D. [13–13] houses of Regilion) [*sic*] & tovnes O. [14] *om.* O.
[15] William þe O. [16] and this William D. & þis William O.
[17] destruede D. [18] p*ar*te D.
[19–19] vndertok' him for his wickednesse and D. vndirtoke hym for his wikkednesse O.
[20] *leaf* 77. [21] adoune D. adoun) O. [22] houses O.
[23] wider' D. [24] to D.

God & to holy cherche, & to alle his men. & þis kyng lete make þe grete halle of[1] Westmynstre; [2]and so[2] oppon a[3] Whitsonday [4]he helde *þer*in[4] his ferste feste, he lokede aboute him,[5] & saide þat[6] þe halle was to litel by haluendele. ¶ And at þe laste he bicome so *con*trarious, þat al þing þat plesede God, displesede *him*; and al þing þat gode men louede, [7]he hatede dedly.[7] ¶ And so hit befel þat he dremede [8]& mette[8] oppon a nyȝt, bifore a litil or þat[6] he deide, þat he was[9] bloode, & bledde a grete *quan*tite of bloode, and a streme of blode lepte[10] an hye toward Heuen more[11] þan an hundred Venithe[12]; and þe clerenesse of þe[6] day was *tur*nede al to[13] derkenesse, and þe firmament also. ¶ And when he awoke, he hade grete drede, so þat he nyste what to done; & tolde his dreme to meny of his conseile, & saide þat he hade grete drede, & supposede þat him was some meschaunce to come. ¶ And þe secunde nyght bifore,[14] a monke dremed of þe household, þat þe kyng went into a cherche wiþ miche peple; and he was so prout þat he despisede al þe peple þat was wiþ him; & so[15] he toke[16] þe ymage of þe *cr*ucifixe, &[17] shamefully bote hit with his teiþ; and þe *cr*ucifix mekely soffrede al þat he dede; but þe kyng, as a wode man, rent of þe Armys [18]of þe[18] [19]*cr*ucifixe and caste it vnder his feete, & defoulede it and þrewe it al[20] brode[21]; and a grete flame of fire come out of þe [22]*cr*ucifixe3 mouthe[22]; of þe whiche dreem, meny a man[23] hade grete wonder. ¶ The gode man þat dremede þis dreem[24] tolde it to a knyght þat þo was moste p*riue* wiþ þe Kyng of al men; & þe knyght me callede Hamund*us* sone; & þe monke and he tolde þe dreem to[25] [the] Kyng, & saide þat it shulde bitoken o*þere* þing þan gode; and noþelesse þe Kyng lau3hede *þer*at ij[26] or iij,[27] & litil sette *þer*of; ¶ And þou3t þat he wolde gone[28] Hunte & pleye in þe forest. and his men [29]conseiled him[29] þat he shulde nou3t þat day, for no maner þing, come in þe wode,

[1] at O. [2–2] so þat DO. [3] a day of O.
[4–4] *þer*in he helde D. & held *þer*in O. [5] *om.* DO. [6] *om.* D.
[7–7] hated he dedlich O. [8–8] *om.* D. [9] was lete DO.
[10] lappe D. [11] mo D. [12] Vedine O. [13] in-to O. [14] to-fore D.
[15] that D. *þat* O. [16] nome O.
[17] & cast it vndir his feet & defouled it & threw it al abrode & O.
[18–18] *MS.* of þe of þe. [19] *leaf* 77, *back.*
[20] *MS. has* al adoun, *with* adoun *underlined for omission; om.* O.
[21] abrode DO.
[22–22] *cr*ucifix mouth of the *cr*ucifix *sic* D. Crucifix mouthe O.
[23] men DO. [24] dreme hade D. dreme had O. [25] vnto D.
[26] twyes O. [27] iij*es* D. thryes O. [28] go D.
[29–29] hy*m* Counceyled O.

so þat he abode at home bifore mete. ¶ But anone as he hade eten,[1] noþing[2] might him lette [3]but he wolde go[3] to þe wode forto haue his disporte. ¶ And so hit bifelle þat one of his knyghtes þat hight Walter Tyrel, wolde haue shotte to[4] an[5] herte; & his Arwe glasede oppoñ a braunche, & þrouȝ misauenture smote þe Kyng' to þe hert'; & so he felle doune dede to[6] þe grounde, wiþ-outen[7] eny worde spekyng', & so he endede his lif'. ¶ And it was [8]non grete[8] wonder, for þat[9] day þat he dede, he hade late to ferme þe Erchebisshoppriche[10] of Kaunterbery, and xij Abbays also, & euermore dede grete destruccioun to holy cherche þrouȝ wrongeful takynges and askyngus; for no man derst wiþsayen[11] þat he wolde haue done; & of his luþernesse he wolde neuer wiþdrawe [12]neyþer, to[12] amende his lif'; and þerfore God' wolde suffre him no longer regne in his wickednesse. & he hade bene[13] kyng' xiij ȝere and vj wokes, & liþ[14] at Wynchestre.[15]

Of Kyng' Henry Beauclerc, þat was William [16 17]le Rousus[17] broþer; & of þe debate bituene him & Robert Curthose, [18]his broþer.[18] Capitulo Centesimo ¶ xxxv.

ANd when[19] þis William Rous[20] was dede, Henry Beauclerc his broþer' was made kyng', for enchesoun þat William Rous hade non[21] childe [22]bigeten of his body.[22] & þis Henry Beauclerc[23] was cronede kyng'[24] at London, þe ferþe day after' þat his broþer was dede, þat is to seyne, þe v day[24] of August'. ¶ And anone as[25] Ancellyn, þat was Erchebisshop of Kaunterbery, þat was at þe court of Rome, herde þat William Rous was dede, he come aȝeyne into Engeland'; &[26] Kyng Henry Beauclerc welcomede him wiþ michel[27] honoure. ¶ & þe ferst ȝer' þat Kyng' Henry was cronede, he spused Maude, þat was Margaretes douȝter, þe Quene of Scot-land'; & þe Erchebisshop[28] Ancellyn[29] wedede ham. ¶ And þis Kyng' bigate oppoñ his wif ij sones & a douȝter, þat is to seyne, William, Richard, and Maude; & þis Maude was afterward

[1] ete O. [2] noman DO.
[3–3] þat he ne wolde goñ D. þat he nolde goñ O. [4] vn-to O.
[5] on D. [6] vnto DO. [7] with-oute O. [8–8] no D. no gret O.
[9] the D. [10] bisshopriche D. [11] withsay D. with-sey O.
[12–12] ne D. neither O. [13] be O. [14] *om.* DO.
[15] Wynchestre he lith O. [16] *leaf* 78. [17–17] Rous DO.
[18–18] *om.* D. [19] *om.* O. [20] Rous whan he O. [21] no DO.
[22–22] of his body bigete D. begete of his body O.
[23] *Altered from* Beaucherc *in MS.* [24] *om.* D. [25] þis O.
[26] and the D. & þe O. [27] miche D.
[28] Erchebisshop of Kaunterbery D. [29] Ancelyn of Caunterbury O

Empe*re*sse of Almayne. ¶ And in þe secunde[1] 3ere of his regne, his bro*þer*e Robert Curthose, þat was duc of Norm*a*ndye, come wiþ an huge nauy[2] into Engelan*d*, forto chalange þe lan*d*; but þrou3 conseile of þe[3] wise men of þe lan*d*, þai were accordede in þis man*er*: þat þe Kyng shulde 3eue þe Duc his bro*þer* a þousan*d* li[4] eu*er*y 3ere; and whiche of ham longeste leuede, shulde bene o*þer*es heire; & so bituene ham shulde [5]bene none debate ne stryf.

¶ And when þai were þus accordede, þe Duc went home a3eyne into Normandy. And when þe Kyng hade regnede iiij 3ere,[6] aros a grete debate bituene him & þe Erchebisshop of Kaunt*er*bery, Ancellyn, for cause þat þe Erchebisshop wolde [7]nou3t graunt þe Kyng forto take taliages of [8]Holy cherche[8] at his wille; and þ*er*fore[9] þe Erchebisshop eftesones[10] went ouer þe see vnto[11] þe court of Rome, & þ*er*e duellede[12] wiþ þe Pope. ¶ And in þe[3] same 3ere þe Duc of Normandye come into Engelan*d* forto speke wiþ his bro*þer*. And amonges[13] o*þer*e þinges, þe duc of Normandy for3af to þe Kyng, his bro*þer*, þe forsaide[14] M li[15] by 3ere þat he shulde [16]paie him[16]; & wiþ gode loue þe Duc went þo[17] into Normandye a3eyn.[10]

¶ And when þo ij 3ere were gone, þrou3 enticement of þe deuel & of [18]a lu*þer* man,[18] a g*r*ete debate aros bituene ham, þe Kyng & þe duc, so þat þe Kyng, þrou3 conseile, went ouer[19] into Norm*a*ndye. And when þe Kyng of Engel*and* was comen[20] into Normandye, alle þe grete lordes of Normandye t*ur*nede þo[3] to þe Kyng of Engelan*d*, & helde a3eyns[21] þe Duc, here owen lorde, & him forsoke, & to þe Kyng ham 3olden,[22] and alle þe castelles &[23] gode tounes of Norm*a*ndye. And sone after was þe Duc taken, & lad wiþ þe Kyng into Engelan*d*, and þe Kyng lete put þe Duc into prisoun. & þis was[14] þe vengaunce of God; for when þe Duc was in þe Holy Lan*d* God 3af him suche might & hono*ur* þ*er*e, wherfore he was chose[24] to ben Kyng[25] of Ier*usalem*; and he[3] wolde nou3t [26]bene hit, but[26] forsoke it; & þ*er*fore God sende[27]

[1] ij O. [2] meynye O. [3] *om.* O. [4] pound D. O.
[5–5] be no D. be non O. [6] 3er þ*er*e D. 3eer þ*er* O.
[7] *leaf* 78, *back*. [8–8] cherches D. Chirches O.
[9] þ*er*fore eftesones D. þ*er*fore eftsone O. [10] *om.* DO. [11] to DO.
[12] he dwelt O. dullede R. [13] amonge al D. among O.
[14] *om.* D. [15] pound O. [16–16] him pay D.
[17] þo a3eyn D. þo a3en O. [18–18] lu*þer* men D. lither men O.
[19] ouere the see D. ou*er* þe see O. [20] comen ou*er*e the see D. Come O.
[21] a3eyne D. [22] 3elden O. [23] and the D. & þe O.
[24] chosen DO. [25] lord D. [26–26] and D. [27] sent O.

him þat shame & despite, forto bene[1] put into his bro*per*es prisouñ. ¶ Þo seisede Kyng Henry[2] al Norm*and*ye into his hand', & helde hit al his lifes[3] tyme. &[4] þe same 3ere come þe bisshoþ Ancellyn fra*m*[5] þe co*ur*t of Rome into Engeland' a3eyne, & þe Kyng' & he were accorded'. ¶ And in þe 3ere nexte comyng' after,[6] *per*e biga*n* a g*r*ete debate bytuene Kyng'[7] Philippe of Fraunce & Kyng Henry[8] of Engeland'. Wherfore Kyng Henry[8] went into Normandye; and þe werr' was [9]stronge bituenes[9] ham ij; and þo deide þe Kyng of Fr*a*unce; & Lowys his sone was made Kyng' anone after his deþ; and þo went Kyng Henry[8] a3eyne into Engel*and*, & mariede Maude his doughte*r* to Henry,[10] þe Emp*er*o*ur* of Almayn.

Of þe debate þat was bituene [11]Kyng Lowys[11] of Fr*a*nce & Kyng' Henry[12] of Engel*and*; & how Kyng Henrie3 ij sones were loste in þe hye see. ¶ Capitulo ¶ Centesimo ¶ Tricesimo ¶ Sexto.

WHen Kyng' Henry had' bene[1] Kyng xvij 3ere, a g*r*ete debate aroos bitue[*n*] [13]him &[13] Kyng Lowys of Fr*a*unce,[14] for enchesouñ þat þe Kyng hade sent into Normandy to his men, for[15] þai shulde bene[1] helpyng to þe Erle of Bleynes as miche as þai myght, in werre a3eynes[16] þe Kyng' of Fr*a*unce, and þat þai were as redy vnto him as þai wolde bene[1] vnto[17] here owen lord, for enchesouñ þat þe Erle hade spousede his sustre, Dame Maude; for whiche enchesouñ þe Kyng of Fraunce dede miche harme[18] &[19] sorwe[6] to Normandye. wherfore þe Kyng of Engel*and* was wonder wroþ, & in hast went ouer þe see [20]into Normandye wiþ a grete power',[20] forto defende þat londe; & þe werre bituene ha*m* laste ij 3ere, til at þe laste þai ij fou3ten to-geder',[21] & þe Kyng of Fr*a*nce was descomfitede, & vnneþe[22] scapede away wiþ miche peyn; and þe moste part[23] of his men were taken, &[24] dede wiþ ham what him liked; and some of ham he lete goñ[25] freliche,[26] &

[1] be D. [2] Harry O. [3] lif' D. [4] and in DO. [5] fro D.
[6] *om.* D. [7] *leaf* 79. [8] Herry O.
[9–9] so strong' bituene D. strong betwen O.
[10] *om.* D. Herry O. [11–11] Lowys the kyng' D.
[12] Herry *here, and elsewhere in* O. [13–13] *om.* DO.
[14] France and Kyng Henry of Engeland' D. Fraunce & Kyng Herry of Engelond' O.
[15] that D. [16] a3en O. [17] to O. [18] *om.* O. [19] *om.* DO.
[20–20] with gret' power' and come into Normandye D. *with* a gret power & come in-to Normandye O.
[21] togederes D. [22] vnneþes D. [23] *par*tye O.
[24] and þe kyng' DO. [25] go DO. [26] frely O.

some he lete put to deþ; but afterward þo ij kyng*us* were accordede. ¶ And when Kyng Henry hade holiche[1] al þe land' [2]of No[r]mandye, and scomfitede his enemys of Fraunce, he turned
4 aȝeyne into Engeland' wiþ michel[3] hono*ur*. and his ij sones, William and Richard, wolde come after' her' fader', and went to þe se wiþ a grete company of peple; but er þat[4] þai might come to lond', þe shipp come [5]aȝeyn a grete[5] roche, and brake [6]al into[6]
8 pices; and alle were drenched þat were [7]*þer*in, saf one[7] man, þat was in þe same shipp þat ascaped; and þis was on seynt Kat*er*ynes[8] day. ¶ And þise were þe names of ham þat were drenchede, þat is to seyn: William, þe Kynges sone, Richarde his bro*þer*, þe Erl
12 of Chestre, Octouyle his bro*þer*, Geffray Ridel, Walt*er* Emurcy, Gedfreye Erchedeken, þe Kynges doughte*r*, þe Countesse of Perches, þe Kyng*us* nece, þe Countesse of Chestre, and meny o*þer*. ¶ When Kyng Henry and o*þer*e lordes arryued were in Engeland', 16 and harde þise tidyng*us*, þai made sorwe ynowȝ; & al her' merþe & ioye was *tur*nede þo [9]into sorwe[9] & care.

How Maude þe Emp*er*esse come aȝey[ne] into Engel*and*; and how she was afterward wedded to Gaufrey,[10] þe Erl of
20 **Angoy. Capit*ulo* C*entesi*mo xxxvij.**

AND when þat[11] ij ȝere were gone, þat þe Erl hade duellede wiþ þe Kyng', þe Erl went þo fro þe Kyng', and biganne to werre oppoñ him, & dede miche harme in þe lande of Normandye.
24 Wherfore Kyng Henry was sore annoiede when he herde þe tydynges.[12] wiþ al þe haste þat he myght', he passede þe see, and come into Normandye, and toke þ*er*e a stronge castel, & þ*er*e [13]helde him[13] al þat ȝere. And þo come to him tydynges[14] þat
28 Henry, [15]þe Emp*er*o*ur* of Almaigne, þat hade spousede Maud[16] his dou*ȝter*, was dede, and þat she duellede no longer' in Almaigne, and þat she wolde come aȝeyne into Normandy to her' fader'. ¶ And when she was comen[17] to him, he toke[18] her' þo wiþ[19] him,
32 and come aȝeyne into Engeland', & made þe[10] Englisshemen to[16] done[20] oth & feaute[21] vnto þe Emp*er*esse. ¶ And þe forst man þat

[1] holly D. holy O. [2] *leaf* 79, *back*. [3] mych O.
[4] *MS.* þat þat; *om.* D. [5–5] aȝeynes a D. aȝens a O. [6–6] alto D.
[7–7] within saf o D. *þer*in saf o O. [8] Kat*er*yne O.
[9–9] in mornyng D. into Mornynge O. [10] *om.* O. [11] þo Θ.
[12] tydyng O. [13–13] he duellede D. he dwelled O. [14] tydyng O.
[15] *leaf* 80. [16] *om.* D. [17] come O. [18] nome O. [19] to O.
[20] do O. [21] feautes D.

made þe oth was William þe Erchebisshop of Kaunterbury, and þat opere Kyng Dauid of Scotland, & after him, al þe [1]Erles & barons[1] of Engeland. ¶ And[2] after þat,[3] þe noble man, þe Erl of Angoy, a worþi knyȝt, sent to þe Kyng of Engeland þat he wolde grant him forto haue his doughter to spouse, Maude þe Emperesse. ¶ And for enchesoun þat her fader wist þat he was[4] a noble man, þe Kyng grauntede him, & consentede þerto, and þo tok[5] his doughter, and ladde her into Normandye, & come to þe noble knyȝt [6]þe Erl[6] Gaufrid; & he spousede þe forsaide Maude wiþ michel honoure; & þe Erl bigate [7]oppon her[7] a sone þat men[8] callede 'Henry, þe Emperesse sone.' ¶ And after, when al þis was done, Kyng Henry duellede al þat ȝere in Normandy. and after þat, longe[9] tyme, a grevous sikenesse toke him, wherfore he deide. & þis Kyng Henry regnede xxxv ȝere & iiij mounþes; & after he[3] deide, [10]as bifore is[10] saide, in Normandy; & his hert was enterede in þe grete cherche of oure Lady of Roen, & his body was brouȝt wiþ michel[11] honour into Engeland, & enterede [12]at Redyng in þe Abbay; &[12] of þe which Abbay he was [13]bigynner &[13] Foundoure.

[14]How Stephene, Kyng Henryes sustere[3] sone, Was made Kyng of Engeland. Capitulo ¶ Centesimo ¶ Tricesimo ¶ Octauo.

After þis Kyng Henry þat was þe ferst, was made Kyng his Nevew, his sustres[15] sone, Stephen,[16] Erl of Boloigne; For anone as he harde þe tidynges[17] of his Vncles[18] deth, he passede þe see, and come into Engeland, þrouȝ conseil & [19]strengþ & helpe[19] of meny grete Lordes[20] of Engeland (aȝeynȝ heir oth þat þai hade made to Maude þe Emperesse), tok[21] þe reaume, & lete crone Stephen Kyng of [22]þe land.[22] ¶ And þe erchebisshop[23] William of Kaunterbery,[23] þat ferst made þe[24] oth to[25] Maude þe Emperesse, sette þe crone ferst opon Kyng Stephenus heuede, & him annoyntede; and Bisshop Roger of Salesbery mayntenede þe Kyngus

[1–1] barouns & Erles O. [2] And also O. [3] *om.* D.
[4] wist þat he was DO. wist R. [5] nome O.
[6–6] erle of D. Erle O. [7–7] on his wif D. [8] me DO.
[9] a longe D. [10–10] as is before O. [11] mych O.
[12–12] in the Abbay of Redyng D. at Redyng in þe Abbey O.
[13–13] *om.* D. [14] *leaf* 80, *back.* [15] suster O. [16] Stephenene *sic* O.
[17] tydyng O. [18] broþeres D. [19–19] helpe & strengþ D.
[20] londes *sic* D. [21] nome O. [22–22] Engeland D.
[23–23] of Kanterbery William D. [24] *om.* O.
[25] of feaute vnto D. & feaute vn-to O.

partye in-as-miche as he[1] might. ¶ The ferst ȝere þat Kyng Stephen biganne forto regne, he assembled a grete host, & went him[2] toward Scotland, forto haue þo[3] werrede oppon̄ þe Kyng of Scotland; but he come aȝeynes him in pees & in gode maner, & to him trust; but he made [4]to him none homage, for-asmiche as[4] he hade made [5]homage to[5] þe Emperesse Maude. ¶ And þe iiij ȝere of his regne, Maude þe Emperesse come into Engeland; & þo bigan debate bituene[6] Kyng Stephen and Maude þe Emperesse. þis Maude went vnto þe citee of Nichole; and þe Kyng her[7] bisegede longe tyme, & might nouȝt spede, so wel þe cite was kepte and defendede. and þo þat were wiþin þe citee queyntly scapede[8] away wiþouten[9] eny maner harme; and þo tok þe Kyng þe citee, & duellede þerin to[10] Candelmasse. ¶ And þo come þe barons þat helde[11] wiþ þe Emperesse, þat is forto seyn, [12]þe Erl Randulf of Chestre, þe Erl Robert of Gloucestre, Hughe Bigot, Robert of Molleye,[13] & brouȝt wiþ ham a stronge[14] power.

How Maude þe Emperesse Went fram[15] Wynchestr vnto[16] Oxenford; and after she ascapede[17] to[18] Wallyngford; & what sorwe & disese ¶ she hade. Capitulo Centesimo xxxix°.

When þe Kyng was taken[19] & brouȝt [20]into warde in[20] þe Castel [21]of Bristow,[21] þis Maude þe Emperesse anone was [22]lady of Engeland, & alle men helde her for[22] lady of þe lande. ¶ But þo of Kent helde wiþ Kyng[23] Stephenes wif; and also William of Pree & his retenue halpe ham, and helde werre aȝeynes Maude þe Emperesse. & anone after, þe Kyng of Scotland come to ham wiþ [24]a grete[24] nombre of peple; and þo went þai in fere vnto Wynchestre, þere þat þe Emperesse was, & wolde haue take[25] here; but þe Erl of Gloucestre come wiþ his power, & fouȝt wiþ ham; & þe Emperesse, in þe menewhile þat þe bataile durede, scapede fro þens, & went vnto Oxenford, & þere her[26] helde. & in þat batail was þe Erl of Gloucestre descomfitede & taken,[19] & wiþ him meny opere lordes. ¶ And for his delyueraunce was Kyng Stephen

[1] þey O. [2] *om.* DO. [3] *om.* D.
[4–4] vnto [him] homage bicause þat D. [5–5] vnto *sic* D. homage vnto O.
[6] bituene the D. betwen þe O. [7] hem O.
[8] ascapede D. ascaped O. [9] with-oute DO. [10] tul O.
[11] helden O. [12] *leaf* 81. [13] Morley O. [14] stronge D.
[15] fro DO. [16] to O. [17] schaped O. [18] vnto D. [19] take O.
[20–20] in warde into D. [21–21] *om.* O. [22–22] made D.
[23] kynges O. [24–24] an huge O. [25] taken DO. [26] he O.

delyue*re*de out of[1] p*ri*souñ. ¶ And when he was delyue*re*de out of[1] p*ri*soun, he went þens to Oxenford, & [2]bisegede þe Emp*e*resse þat was þo at Oxenford; &[2] þe sege endurede fro Michelmasse vnto Seynt Andrew*us* tyde. ¶ And þe Emp*e*resse [3]lete þo[3] clo þe[4] her[5] al in white lynen clo þ, for enchesouñ þat she wolde nou3t bene[6] knowe, for in þe same tyme þ*er*e was michel of snowe; and so she scapede[7] by þe[8] Tamyse [9]fr*am* ham awaye[9] þat were her enemys; & fro þens she went to Wallyngford, & [10]þ*er*e here helde.[10] ¶ And þe Kyng wolde haue bisegede her; [11]but he hade so miche to done wi þ þe Erl Randulf of Chestre, & wi þ Hugh Bigot, þat strongelich[12] werrede oppoñ him in eu*er*y place, þat he ne wist whider to[13] turne; and þe Erl of Gloucestre halpe[14] ham wi þ his power.

How Gaufride, Erl of Angoy,[15] 3af vp vnto[16] Henry, þe Emp*e*resse sone, al Normandye. Ca*pitulo* C*entesimo* xl.

And after þis, þe[17] Kyng went vnto Wiltoñ,[18] & wolde haue made a castel þ*er*e; but þo come to him þe Erl of Gloucestre wi þ a stronge power, & almost hade take þe Kyng; but 3it þe[19] Kyng ascapede wi þ miche payn; & William Marcil[20] þ*er*e was take, & for whos delyue*r*ance þe Kyng 3af to[21] þe Erl of Gloucestre þe gode castel of Shirburn þat he hade tak. ¶ And when þis was done, þe Erl Rob*ert*, & alle þe Kynges enemys, went to Faryndoñ, & bigonne [22]forto make þ*er*e a st*r*onge[22] castel; but þe Kyng, wi þ a stronge powe, drof ham þens.

In þat same 3ere ¶ The Erl Randulf of Chestre was[23] accorded wi þ þe Kyng, and come to his[24] co*ur*t at his co*m*mandeme*n*t; and þe Erl went[25] haue safliche[26] come*n*[27]; & þe Kyng anone lete[28] take him, and put hi*m* into p*ri*soun, & most neue*r* for no þing come out þ*er*of til þat he hade 3elde op to[29] þe Kyng þe castel of Nichole, þe whiche he hade tak fro þe Kyng wi þ strengþ in þe xv 3ere of þe[30] regne of Kyng Stephene. ¶ & Gaufride, þe Erl of Angoy,[31] 3af vp to Henry[32] al Normandy. In þe 3ere þat next sewede,

[1] *MS.* of of. [2–2] *om.* D. [3–3] þo lete D. [4] clo þen O.
[5] *MS.* her her. [6] þe D. [7] ascaped DO. [8] *om.* O.
[9–9] away fram ham D. [10–10] helde her þ*er*e D. [11] *leaf* 81, *back.*
[12] strongly O. [13] for-to O. [14] holpe D. [15] Angon O.
[16] to O. [17] þis the D. þis þe O. þis R. [18] Waltoñ D. [19] þo O.
[20] Macy H D. [21] vnto DO.
[22–22] þ*er*e to make a fair D. þ*er*e for-to make a strong O.
[23] was made O. [24] the Kynges D. [25] wende D.
[26] safly D. sauely O. [27] come O. [28] le *sic* D. [29] vnto O.
[30] his O. [31] Angoñ DO. [32] Henry his sone D. Herry his sone O.

[1]deide þe Erl[1] Gaufrid; and Henry[2] þo anon *tur*nede aȝeyn to Angoy,[3] & *per*e was made Erl wiþ [4]michel ioye &[4] honour of his me*n* of þe lande; & to him deden feaute & homage þe most p*ar*te[5] of his land. ¶ And þo was þis Henry, þe Emp*er*esse sone, Erl of Angoy[6] & Duc of Nor[7]mandye.

¶ And[8] in þe same ȝere Was made deuorse bituene þe Kyng of Fr*a*unce & þe quene his wif, þat was ryght heir of Gascoigne, for enchesoñ þat it[9] was knowe[10] & pr*o*uede þat þai wer sib & ney of blode; & þo spousede her, Henry þe Emp*er*esse sone; & þo was he[8] Erl of Angoy,[6] Duc of Normandy, & Duc of Gascoigne. ¶ þe xviij ȝere of þe[11] regne of Kyng Stephen, þis Henry come into Engeland wiþ a[12] stronge power, and bigan[13] fórto werre oppoñ Kyng Stephen, & toke þe castel of Malmesbery, & dede miche harme. And þe[12] Kyng Stephen hade so miche werre þat he [14]wist nouȝt[14] whider to[15] wende; but at þe laste þai wer accorded, þrouȝ þe Erchebisshope Theobalde and þrouȝ o*per* worþi lordes of Engeland, oppoñ þis condicioun, *þat* þai shulde dep*ar*te þe reaume of Engeland bituene ham, so þat[12] Henry, þe Emp*er*esse sone, shulde haue holliche halfe þe reaume, and when Kyng Stephen were[16] dede, he shulde haue al þe lande of Engeland; & *þus* þai were accordede, & pees *c*riede[17] þrouȝ-out al Engeland. ¶ And when þe accord was made bituene þo ij lordes, Kyng Stephen bicome so sori, for cause þat he hade loste half Engel*and*, & felle into soche a malaldy, & deide in þe xix ȝer, viij wokes & v dayes of his regne, al in wer & in contak; & he liþ in þe Abbay of Feu*er*sham, þe whiche he lete make,[18] þe vj[19] ȝere of his regne.

Of Kyng Henry *þat* was þe Emp*er*esse[20] sone, in whos tyme [21]Seynt Thomas of K*a*unt*er*bery[21] was Chaunceller.[22] ¶ Capitulo ¶ Cent*esimo* xl p*r*imo.

And after þis Kyng Stephen, regnede Henry[23] þe Emp*er*esse sone, þat[24] Was cronede[25] of þe Erchebisshop Theobalde þe xvij day bifore Cri[s]tesmas.[26] And in þe same ȝere Thomas

[1–1] *om.* D. [2] Henry his sone D. Herry his sone O. [3] Angoñ DO. [4–4] miche D. myċh O. [5] *p*arty D. p*ar*tye O. [6] Angoñ O. [7] *leaf* 82. [8] *om.* DO. [9] is *sic* D. [10] knowen O. [11] his O. [12] *om.* D. [13] bigonne D. [14–14] nyst D. nyste O. [15] for-to O. [16] was D. [17] ycryed O. [18] mak in D. make in O. [19] sixte O. [20] Emp*er*esses D. [21–21] *the words* seynt & of Caun*t*irbury *are struck out, &* Beket *is inserted after* Caun*t*irbury, *in* O. [22] Ch[a]unceller of Englond O. [23] *leaf* 82, *back.* [24] and DO. [25] Crouned kyng O. [26] *C*ristemasse O.

Beket of Londoñ, Erchebisshop of Kaunterbery, was made þe Kyngus Chancellerꝰ of Engelandꝫ. ¶ þe secunde ȝere þat he was cronede, he lete caste douñ alle þe newe castelles[1] þat were longyng vnto þe crone, þe whiche Kyngꝰ Stephen hade ȝeue[2] vnto diuerse[3] meñ, & ham hade made erles & barons forto holde wiþ him, & [4]him helpe[4] aȝeyns Henry,[5] þe Emperesse sone. ¶ And þe iiij ȝere of his regne he put vnder his[6] lordeship þe Kyngꝰ of Walys. And in þe same ȝerꝰ, when þe Kyng of Scotlandꝫ had in his owen hande, þat is to seyne, þe citee of Kerlil, þe castel of Bamburghe, þe newe castel op[7] Tyne, and þe Erldome ofꝰ Lancastre, þe same ȝere þe Kyngꝰ, wiþ[8] gretꝫ powerꝰ, went into Walys, & lete caste adouñ[9] wodes, & make[10] waies, and made stronge þe castel[11] of Rutland & Basyngewerc; and amonge þe castelles[12] he made an house of þe temple. ¶ And in þe same ȝere was Richard his sone born, þat afterward was Erl of Oxenford.

¶ And þe iiij ȝere of hes regne, he made Gaufride, Erl of Britaigne; & in þat ȝere he chaungede his mone.[13] And þe vj ȝere of his regne he lade [14]an huge[14] host vnto Tolouse, & conquerede hit. And þe vij ȝerꝰ of his regne, deide Theobalde, þe[5] Erchebissho[p] of Kanterbery; and þo al þe citee of Kaunterbery, [15]þrouȝ meschief, almost[15] was brent.

[*Thomas a Becket is made Archbishop of Canterbury, and quarrels with the King.*]

Þe ix ȝerꝰ of his regne, Thomas Beket, his Chaunchellerꝰ, was chosen to [16]ben Erchebisshop of Kaunterbery; and oppoñ seynt Bernardes day he was sacrede. ¶ And in þat ȝere, born was Alienore, þe Kynges douȝter. ¶ And þe x ȝere of his regne, seynt Edmundꝫ þe Kyng was translatede wiþ miche[17] honour. ¶ And þe xj ȝere of his regne he helde his parlement at Northamptoñ; & fro þens fledꝫ Seynt[18] Thomas, Erchebisshop[19] of Kaunterbery,[20] for þe[5] grete debate þat was bituen[21] þe Kyng and him; for if he hade bene[22] fonde on[23] þe morwe, he hade bene[22] slayn; & þerfore he

[1] castel D. [2] ȝeuen D. [3] diuers O.
[4–4] help him D. helpe hym O. [5] *om.* O.
[6] his owen D. his ovne O. [7] vpon O. [8] with a DO.
[9] doune D. [10] made O. [11] cast *sic* D. [12] castel D.
[13] mony D. [14–14] *MS. has* an huge an huge.
[15–15] almostꝰ þouȝ meschif D. almost þurgh myschef O. [16] *leaf* 83.
[17] michel D. [18] seynt *struck out in* O. [19] *om.* D.
[20] Cauntꝰbury fro þe kyng O.
[21] bituene D. betwen O. bitue R. [22] be O. [23] in DO.

fledde þens wiþ iij felawes, in[1] fote oneliche,[2] þat no man wist whe' he was, and went ouer þe see to þe Pope[3] of Rome. ¶ And þis was þe principal enchesouñ, forasmiche as þe Kyng wolde haue put clerkes to[4] deth þat were atteint of felonye, wiþouten[5] eny pryuelege of holy cherche. ¶ And þe xij 3ere of his regne, was Iohñ, his sone, bore.[6] And þe xiij 3ere of his regne deide Maude þe Emperesse, þat was his moder'; And in þat same 3ere was Iohane his doughter born.[7] ¶ þe xiiij 3ere of his regne, þe Duc Henry of Saxoyne spousede Maude, his doughter; & he bigate on here iij sones, Henry,[8] Othus, & William. ¶ And in þe xv 3ere of his regne, deide þe gode Erle Robert of Gloucestre, þat foundede þe Abbay of Nonnes of Etoñ. ¶ And in[9] þe same 3ere, Marik', Kyng of Ierusalem, conquerede Babiloñ. ¶ þe xvj 3ere of his regne, he lete crone his sone Henry at Westmynstre; & him cronede, Roger, þe Erchebissho[p] of 3ork', in harmyng of Thomas þe Erchebisshop of Kaunterbery; wherfore þe same Roger was acursede of þe Pope.[3]

[10]**Of Kyng' Henry, þat was þe Emperesse sone; & of þe debate þat was bituene him & his fader' whiles[11] þat he was in Normandye. Capitulo Centesimo xlij[do].**

After' þe coronaciouñ of Kyng' Henry, þe sone of Kyng Henry, the[12] Emperesse sone, þat same Henry þe Emperesse[13] sone went ouer into Normandye; and þere he lete marie Elianore, his dou3ter, vnto Dolfynes,[14] þat was Kyng of[15] Almaigne. And in þe vij 3ere þat þe Erchebisshop Seynt[16] Thomas hade bene outlagheď, þe Kyng of Fraunce made þe Kyng & [17]þe Erchebisshop[17] accordeď; and þo come Thomas þe Erchebisshop, to Kaunterbery a3eyne to his owen cherche. And þis accord' was made in þe bigynnyng' of Aduent', and afterward he was quellede &[3] martirede,[3] þe v day of Cristusmasse[18] þat[9] þo next comme. For Kyng' Henry þou3t oppoñ [19]a day of[19] Thomas, Erchebisshop of Kaunterbery, oppoñ Cristesmasse[20] day as he sate[21] at þe[22] mete, and þise wordes saide: þat if he hade eny gode kny3t with him, he hade bene,[23] meny day go,[9]

[1] on O. [2] onely D. only O. [3] *struck out in* O. [4] to the D.
[5] *with*oute O. [6] borne D. [7] bore O. [8] Hen *sic* D.
[9] *om.* O. [10] *leaf* 83, *back.* [11] while DO. [12] *MS.* the þe.
[13] emperesse3 D. [14] Delfines D. [15] *MS.* of of.
[16] *om.* D. *struck out in* O.
[17–17] seynt Thomas D. O. *has* seynt Thomas, *with* seynt *struck out.*
[18] cristesmasse D. Cristemasse O.
[19–19] seynt D. seynt *struck out in* O. [20] Cristemasse O.
[21] set D. [22] his D. *om.* O. [23] be O.

avengede of[1] the Erchebisshop Thomas. ¶ And anone Sir' William [Breton], Sir*e* Hughe Morvile, Sir' William Tracy, & Sir' Reynold' Fitz-Vrse, Beressone in Engelisshe,[2] went into[3] þe see, and come into Engel*and*, to þe cherche of Kaunt*er*bery, & him *pere* þai matrede, at seynt Benetes aut*er* in þe moder' cherche; And þat was in þe 3ere of þe[4] Incarnaciouñ of[5] Ihesu[6] crist, M'. C. lxxij[7] 3ere.[8] ¶ And anone after', Henry, þe new Kyng', biganne forto make werr' oppon [9]Henry, Kyng,[9] his fader', & eke oppoñ [10]his bre*þern*.[11] ¶ And so oppon a tyme þe Kyng' of Fr*a*unce and al þe Kynges sones, & ek[14] þe Kyng of Scotland' & þe gretest' lordes of Engel*and*, were arisen a3eynes Henry þe fader'; & at[12] last, as God wolde, he conquerede[13] his enemys; and þe Kyng' of Fraunce & he were accorded'. and þo sent Kyng Henr', þe fader' specialy vnto þe Kyng' of Fr*a*unce, and pr*a*ede him hertly, for his loue, þat he wolde sende to him by lettre þe names of ham þat bigonne þe werr' oppoñ him. ¶ And þe Kyng of France [14]sent a3eyn to him[14] by lettre þe names of ham þat bigon þe werr': ferst' was Iohñ his sone, and Richard his bro*þer*, [15]& Henry his sone,[15] þe newe Kyng'. ¶ þo was Henry þe Kyng wonder wrop, & cursede þe tyme þat [16]euer' he ham[16] bigate. And[17] while þe werre durede, Henry his sone,[18] þe newe kyng', ¶ deide, sore repentyng his mysdede; and moste sorw made of eny man for cause of Seynt[19] Thomas dep of Kaunt*er*bery; & prayede his fader, wip miche sorwe of hert, mercy of[20] his tr*es*passe; and his fader' forzaf it him, & hade of him grete pite; & aft[er], he deide, þe xxxvj 3ere of his regne, and lip at Redynge.

How þe Cristen men loste þe Holy Land' in þe forsaid Kyng*us* tyme, þrou3 a[21] false Cristen man þat bicome a[17] Sarasyne. Cap*itul*o Centesimo xliij^to.[22]

AND[*] while þat Kyng Henry, þe Emp*er*esse sone, leuede & regnede, þe grete batail was in þe Holy Land' bituene þe Cristen men & þe Sarasyn*us*; but þe Cristen m*en* were *pere* quellede þoru3 grete tr*es*ouñ of þe Erl of Trype, þat wolde haue hade to wyf

[1] oppoñ D. vpon O. [2] Englisshe p*ri*uely D. Englissh pryuyly O. [3] vnto DO. [4] *om.* DO. [5] of oure lorde D. [6] Ih*es*us O. [7] lx and xij DO. [8] *om.* O. [9–9] kyng' Henry D. kyng Herry O. [10] *leaf* 84. [11] bre*þer*n also D. bre*þer*in also O. [12] at the D. at þe O. [13] conquerede alle D. con*quer*ed all O. [14–14] sent to him a3eyne D. [15–15] *om.* D. [16–16] he hym eu*er*e O. [17] *om.* D. [18] *om. sic* D. [19] *struck out in* O. [20] for DO. [21] o DO. [22] *MS. has* xliiij^o.

þe Quene [1]of Ier*usalem*, þat so*mme* tyme was Baldewyn*us* wif; but she forsoke him, & toke to her[2] lorde a Kny3t, a worþi man þat me called Sire Gy Perche3. [3]Wherfore þe Erle of Trip[3] was wroþ, and went anone ryght to Saladyn, *þat* was Soudan of Babiloñ, & bicome Saresyn,[4] & his man, & forsoke[5] Cristendome and aH Cristen law; and þe Cristen men wiste[6] nou3t [7]of þis dede,[7] but wende[8] forto haue[9] hade grete helpe of him, as þai were wont to[9] haue bifore. And when þai comen[10] to þe batail, þis false Cristen man *turn*ede vnto þe Sarasynes, and forsoke his owen naciounes[11]; & so were þe Cristen men þere quellede wiþ þe Sarasyn*us*; and þus wer' þe Cristen men slayne & put to horrible deþ, and þe citee of' Ier*usalem* destroiede, & þe holy croice born away. ¶ þe Kyng of Fraunce [12]& al þe grete[12] Lordes of þe land' lete ham croice [13]forto go into the Holy Lande; and amo*n*g ham went Richard, Kyng Henries sone; ferst aft*er* the Kyng' of' Fr*a*nce þat tok the crois[13] of þe Erchebisshop of Toures; but he toke[14] nou3[t] þe viage at þat tyme, for enchesoun þat he was lette by o*per*e maner' waies [15]þat nede[15] moste[16] bene[17] done. ¶ And when Kyng Henry þe[18] fader' hade regnede xxxv^ti^ 3ere &[19] v mounþes and iiij dayes, he deide, & liþ [at] Founteu*er*ard'.

Of Kyng' Richard, þat conquerede aH[19] þe Holy Land' þat Cristen men hade loste. Capitulo Centesimo Quadragesimo quarto.[20]

AND after' [21]þis Kyng[21] Henry,[22] regned Richard his sone, a stronge man & a worþi, & also bolde; & he was cronede at Wynchestre[23] of þe Erchebisshop Baldewynne, Erchebisshop[24] of Kaunterbery, [25]the þrid day of Septembre; and the secunde 3ar' of his regne Kyng Richard him-self' and Baldewyne the Erchebisshop of Caunterbury,[25] & Huber[t], Bisshop of Salesbery, & Randulf, Erl

[1] *leaf* 84, *back.* [2] here a O.
[3–3] *MS. has* Wherfore þe Erle of Trip Wherfore þe erl of Trip.
[4] a sarasyne D. [5] forsok his D. [6] wist it D. [7–7] *om.* D.
[8] went O. [9] *om.* O. [10] come O. [11] nacion O.
[12–12] *MS. has* & al þe grete & al þe grete.
[13–13] forto . . crois D. for-to gon in-to þe holy land'; & among hem went Richard', kyng Herrys sone, ferst aftir þe kyng of fraunce þat toke þe Cros O. *om.* R.
[14] nome O. [15–15] and nedes DO. [16] to O. [17] be DO.
[18] his DO. [19] *om.* D. [20] *MS. has* quinto.
[21–21] *om.* D. þis O. [22] Herry kyng O. [23] Westmynstre DO.
[24] *MS. has* erchebisbisshop; *om.* DO.
[25–25] the . . Caunterbury D. þe iij day of Septembre & þe ij 3eer of his regne Kyng Richard hym-self & Baldewyn Erchebisshop of Caunterbury O. *om.* R.

of Gloucestre, & opere meny lordes of Engeland, went into þe Holy Land. And [1]in þat viage deide þe Erchebisshop [2]of Kaunterbery; and Kyng Richard went bifore into þe Holy Lond, &[1] reste[3] nouȝt til þat[4] he come forþe in his way vnto[5] Cypres, and toke Cipres wiþ grete force. & siþen[6] he went fourþ toward þe Holy Land, & gete aȝeyn as miche as þe Cristen men[7] haden[8] loste bifore, Kyng Richard [9]conquerede & gete hit aȝeyn,[9] saf onely þe Holy Croice. ¶ And when Kyng Richard come to þe toune[10] of Acres, forto gete [11]þe citee,[11] a grete debate aroos bituene him and þe Kyng of Fraunce, so þat Kyng Richard went aȝeyne into France, & was wroþ toward[12] þe Kyng of Fraunce; but [13]er þat[13] Kyng Richard went aȝeyne, he toke þe Citee[14] of Acres. ¶ And when he hade taken [15]þe citee, he duellede þerin[15] awhile; but to him come tydynges[16] þat þe Erl Iohñ of Oxenford, his broþer, wolde haue seisede al Engeland into his honde, & Normandy also, and wolde crone him Kyng of þe lande. ¶ And when Kyng Richard herde þis tydynges,[17] he went aȝeyn toward Engeland wiþ[18] al þe spede þat he myghte; but þe Duc of Estriche mette wiþ[19] him & tok him, & brouȝt him to[20] þe Emperoure of Almaigñ; & þe Emperour brouȝt him into[21] his prisouñ. And afterward he was delyuerede for an huge Raunsouñ, [22]þat is, for to paien[22] an .C^M. li.[23] ¶ And for whiche ransouñ to bene[24] payede, eche opere chalice of Engeland was molten[25] & made into monye. And alle þe monkes of þe ordre of Cisteaux[26] ȝeuen alle her [27]bokes þrouȝ[27] Engeland, to done ham forto selle, and to[28] þat ransoñ forto paye.

How Kyng Richard come aȝeyn fro þe Holy Lande, & avenged him of his enemys. Capitulo Centesimo Quadragesimo quinto.[29]

28

[30]WHiles þis[19] Kyng Richard was in prisouñ, þe Kyng of Fraunce werrede oppoñ him strongeliche[31] in Normandye, and Iohñ his broþer werrede oppoñ him[32] in Engeland; but þe

[1–1] *om.* D. [2] *leaf* 85. [3] rested O. [4] *om.* D.
[5] to [*sic*] he come to D. [6] siþ D. [7] peple O. [8] hade D.
[9–9] get it & conquered it þrouȝ grete strengþ D. gete it and conquered it aȝen þurgh gret myghte O.
[10] Citee O. [11–11] it O. [12] wiþ D. [13–13] or DO. [14] toune D.
[15–15] it he duellede in the Citee D. it he duellid in þe Cite O.
[16] tydyng DO. [17] tydynge O. [18] in D. [19] *om.* O.
[20] vnto DO. [21] to D. [22–22] forto paye D. þat is for-to paye O.
[23] pound O. [24] be DO. [25] meldede D. molte O.
[26] Cistenaux D. [27–27] boker [*sic*] þrouȝoute D. bokes þurgh O.
[28] *om.* DO. [29] *MS. has* Sexto. [30] *leaf* 85, *back.*
[31] strongly O. [32] hym strongly O.

bisshoppis & þe barons of Engel*and* wiþstode[1] ham[2] wiþ al þe[3] power þat þai hade & myght geten,[4] & helde[5] þe castel of Wyndesore and alle o*þer*e castelle*s*. ¶ And þe forsaide Iohñ saw þat he hade no might ne power ayeynes þe barons of Engel*and* forto feiȝt; but anone him went ouer þe see to[6] þe Kyng of Fraunce. ¶ And when Kyng Richard come out of prisouñ, and was delyu*er*ede, and come into Engel*and*, anone after Candelmasse, in grete haste he went vnto[7] Notyngham, and[8] þe castel of Notyngham to him was ȝolden; and þo disheritede[9] he Iohñ, his .bro*þer*, and alle þat wiþ him helde; and aft*er*, he went vnto þe citee of Wynchestre, and þ*er*e he lete him c*r*one Kyng eftesones; and aft*er*, he went into Normandy forto werr oppon þe Kyng of Fraunce. ¶ And þe Kyng of Fr*a*nce come wiþ vj C. knyȝtes toward Gisers; and[10] Kyng Richard mette him, & þo wolde haue ȝeue him bataile, but þe Kyng of Fraunce fledde; & an C. knyȝtes of his were take, & ij C. stedes were trappede wiþ yren. ¶ And anone aft*er*, went Kyng[11] Richard forto bisege þe castel of Gaillard. ¶ And as he rode oppoñ a day by þe castel, forto take avisement of þe .castel, an[12] Arweblaster smote him wiþ a quarel þat was e[n]venymede; and þe Kyng drow out þe shafte of þe quarel, but þe quarelle hede abode stille in his heuede,[13] & hit bigan forto[14] rancle, þat he might nouȝt helpe him-self ne [15]meve his Armes. ¶ And þo he wist þat he hade dethe[16] Wounde, þat he might nouȝt bene[17] hole for no maner þing. He commandede anone [18]alle his men[18] sharply forto[19] assaile þe castel, so þat þe castel was taken[20] or þat[21] he deide. And so manliche[22] his men deden,[23] þat þe peple þat were in þe castel were al taken; and þe Kyng dede wiþ ham what þat[21] he wolde, & commandede his men þat þai shulde bryng tofore[24] him þe man þat him so hade[25] hurte & so hade[25] wondede. ¶ And when he come bifore þe Kyng, þe Kyng axed what was his name; & he saide "Sire, [26]my name is[26] Bertram Gurdoñ." "Wherfore," saide þe Kyng, "hast þow me slayn, siþ þat y dede þe neuer none harme?" ¶ "Sire," said he, "þouȝ ȝe dede me neu*er*[27] harme, ȝe haue done[28] to my frendes miche harme; For ȝour-self, wiþ ȝ*our* owen honde,

[1] withstonden O. [2] him D. [3] here D. [4] gete DO.
[5] geten DO. [6] vnto O. [7] into O. [8] ad *sic* D.
[9] disherite O. [10] & þe O. [11] *om.* O. [12] hike O.
[13] heede D. heed O. [14] to O. [15] *leaf* 86. [16] dethes D. dethis O.
[17] be DO. [18–18] *om.* DO. [19] *om.* D. al his men for-to O.
[20] take O. [21] *om.* D. [22] manly O. [23] dede O.
[24] bifore D. byfor O. [25] *om.* DO. [26–26] *om.* O.
[27] neu*er*e non O. [28] do D.

quellede my fader & my brop*er*; and p*er*for now y han[1] 3ow quytte 3oure tr*a*uaile." ¶ þo saide Kyng Richard: "He þat deide oppon þe croice to bryng mann*us* soule [2]fram þe[2] pyne of helle, for3eue 3ow my dep! and y also for3eue hit þe." þo co*m*mandede þe Kyng þat no man shulde him misdone[3]; but for al þe kyng*us* defendyng, ¶ So*m*me of his me*n* [4]him folwed,[4] & p*r*iuely him quellede. And þe vj day after, þe Kyng deide shryuen, and sore [5]repentance hauyng[5] of his misdedes,[6] & was houselede & annoyntede. And þis kyng ne[7] regned but ix 3ere & xxxix wokes, & [8]deide, & lip bisides[8] his fader at Founteuerard.

Of Kyng Iohn, þat in þe[9] ferst 3ere of his regne loste al Normandye. C*apitul*o C*entesim*o xlvj^mo.[10]

WHen Kyng Richard was dede, for enchesoun þat [11]he hade none heir, no*per*e[12] sone ne doughter, his brop*er* Iohan was made Kyng, an[d] cronede at Westmynstre of Hubert, þat was þo Erchebisshop of K*a*unterbery. ¶ And when he biganne forto regne, he bicome so mervaillous a[7] man, and went ouer into Normandye, & werrede oppon þe Kyng of France. And so longe þai werrede to-gedre, til att þe laste Kyng Iohn loste Normandye & Angoy[13]; wherfor he was sore annoiede, & was none[14] mervaile. ¶ þo dete he assemble byfore him at Londoñ, Erchebisshoppis, bisshopp*us*, Abbotes & Pryo*ur*s, Erles & barons, and helde p*er*e a grete Parlement, & axede p*er*e of þe clergye[15] þe tenþe of euery cherche of Engeland, forto[16] co*n*quere & gete a3eyne Normandy & Angoy[17] þat he hade loste. and þai wolde nou3t graunt þat þing; wherfore he was wonder wrop. ¶ And in þe same tyme deide þe Erchebisshop[18] Hubert. And þe Prio*ur* & þe Couent of K*a*unterbery chosen, a3eynes þe Kyng*us* wille, to bene Erchebisshop, Maistre Stephen of Langetoñ, a goode clerc þat wonede at þe court of Rome, & sende[19] to þe Pope[20] here elleccioun; & þe Pope[20] confermede hit, and sacred hit[21] at Viterbe. ¶ When þe Kyng wiste þis tydyng*us*,[22] he was wonder wrop, & drof þe Priour & þe couent fro Kanterbery, & exilede ham[23] out of Engel*and*, &

[1] haue D. [2–2] oute of D. [3] mysdo D. [4–4] folewede him D. [5–5] repentyng D. repentaunt hauyng O. [6] mysdede D. [7] *om.* DO. [8–8] lith beside O. [9] the D. þe O. *om.* R. [10] *MS. has* xlvij^mo. [11] *leaf* 86, *back.* [12] neyþer D. neþer O. [13] Angon DO. [14] no DO. [15] *MS.* chergye; Clergie of Engelond O. [16] forto DO. for R. [17] Angoñ DO. [18] bisshop D. bysshoþ O. [19] sent DO. [20] *struck out in* O. [21] hym O. [22] tydyng O. [23] hym O.

commandede[1] þat no maner lettre þat come fro þe court of Rome, ne no[2] comandement,[3] shulde be[4] vnderfongⁱ ne pledede[5] in Engelondⁱ. ¶ When þise tydyngus[6] come to þe Pope,[7] he sent vnto Kyng Iohñ by his lettre, & prayede him wiþ gode wille & gode hert þat he wolde vnderfonge Stephen, [8] Erchebisshop of Kaunterbery, vnto His cherche, & soffre þe Priour & his monkes to[9] come aʒeyn to[10] herʳ owen duellyngⁱ; but þe Kyngⁱ wolde nouʒt grant hit for noþing.[11]

How Kyng Iohan wolde [12]nouʒt do[12] for[9] þe Popes[13] commandement; wherfore al Engeland was enterdite[14] [15] & suspendeꝺ.[15] Capitulo Centesimo xlvijº.[16]

AND at þe[17] laste, þe Pope[7] sent by his autorite, and ennioynede to[18] bisshoppis of Engelandⁱ þat, if þe Kyngⁱ wolde nouʒt vnderfonge þe Prioure of Kaunterbery and his monkes, þat þai shulde do[19] general enterdityngⁱ prouʒ-oute al Engelandⁱ; & grantede ful powerʳ to iiij bisshopis to pronounce þe enterdityng, if[20] it were nede: ¶ þe ferst was Bisshop William of Londoñ, & þat oþer Eustace, Bisshoþ of Ely; þe þridde[21] was Walter, þe Bisshop of Wynchestre; And þe ferþ[22] was Giles, þe Bisshop of Herford.[23] ¶ And þise iiij bisshoppis praiede þe Kyngⁱ, knelyng on here knees & sore wepyngⁱ, þat he wolde do[24] þe Popis[25] commandementⁱ, and shewede him þe bullis of the[9] enterdityngⁱ; but, for no prayerʳ þat þai myght praye, he wolde nouʒt consent þerto. And when þe bisshopes saw þis, þai went fro[26] þe Kyngⁱ; ¶ And in[17] þe morwe[27] afterʳ þe Annunsiacioñ of oure Lady, þai pronouncede þe generalⁱ enterdytyngⁱ prouʒ-oute al Engelandⁱ, so þat þe cherchedores were shitte[28] wiþ Keyes & wiþ [29]oþer fastnyngⁱ, and wiþ[29] wallys. ¶ And when þe enterdyting was pronuncede, þan þe Kyng bigan forto[30] wax al out of mesure, and toke[31] into his honde[32] alle þe possessions of þo[33] iiij bisshopis, and of al þe clergye prouʒ-out[34] al þe lande,

[1] commandede D. Comaundeⁱ O. commande R. [2] none D.
[3] mandement D. maundement O. [4] þai D. [5] plede D.
[6] tydyngⁱ D. [7] *struck out in* O. [8] *leaf* 87. [9] *om.* D.
[10] vnto D. [11] nomaner þingⁱ D. [12–12] no-þing done O.
[13] *MS. has* Pope *struck out; it is also struck out in* O.
[14] enterditede D. entirdited O. [15–15] *om.* O.
[16] *MS. has* xlviijº; D *has* xxxvijº. [17] *om.* O.
[18] to þe O. [19] don O. [20] if þat D. [21] þirde O. [22] iiij O.
[23] Hereforⁱ O. [24] don O.
[25] Popes *struck out, and* bysshoppes *inserted by another hand in* O.
[26] from O. [27] morne DO. [28] shitte in D. [29–29] *om.* D.
[30] to O. [31] nome O. [32] hondes D. [33] the D. þe O.
[34] prouʒ D. þurgh O.

and ordeynede men forto kepe [1]ham, þat[1] þe clerkes might nouȝt haue here leuyng'. Wherfore þe biss[hopis curs]ede [2]*ham* aH þat put, or shulde medle[2] wiþ, holy cherche[3] godes, aȝeins [4]the Wille of ham þat ham[5] owede. 4

¶ And Whe[n] þe Kyng Wolde nouȝt cesse of his malice for no man*er* þing', þe[6] iiij bisshoppis aboue-saide[7] went ouer þe see, and went to þe Erchebisshop̄[8] of Kaunt*er*bery, and tolde him al þe tidyng*us*.[9] ¶ And þe Erchebisshop to ham saide, þat þai shulde 8 go[10] aȝeyn to Kant*er*bery, and he wolde come þider' to ham, or elles he wolde sende þider' certeyn p*er*sones in his stede, þat shulde done[11] as miche as him-self were *pere*. ¶ And when þe bisshopis herde þis, þai t*ur*nede aȝeyne vnto[12] Engeland', & come[13] vnto K[a]un- 12 t*er*bery. [14] ¶ the tydynges comen to the kyng' þat þe bisshoppes wer' come aȝeyne to Kant*er*bery,[14] and [as] him-self might nouȝt come þider' þat tyme, he sent þider[15] bisshopes, Erles, Abbotes, forto trete wiþ ham, þat þe Kyng shulde vnderfonge þe Erchebisshop 16 Stephen, & þe priour' and alle[16] þe monkes of Kaunt*er*bery, and þat he shulde neuer' after' þat tyme noþing take of Holy Cherche aȝeynes þe wille of ham þat owede[17] þe godes; and þat þe Kyng shulde make ful amendes to ham of whame he hade eny godes 20 taken, & þat holy cherche shulde haue alle here Fr*a*unchises as ferforþ[18] as she hade in Seynt Edward*us* tyme þe Confessoure.

How Stephen of Langetone co*m*me into Engel*and* þrouȝ þe Popis[19] co*m*mandement, & the[n][20] went aȝeyn. Ca*pitul*o Ce*ntesim*o xlviij°.[21]

WHen þe fourme of accorde þus was ordeynede,[22] hit was in a peire of endentures; & þai put her' selx[23] to þat [24]o p*ar*ty,[24] and þai þat comen[25] in þe Kyng*us* name put her' selx[26] to þat o*pere* 28 p*ar*te[16] of þe endent*ur*es. And þe iiij bisshopp*us* aboue-saide toke

[1–1] it for D. it þat O.
[2–2] al men þat ham medlede D. al hem þ*at* put or schuld medle O.
[3] Cherche O. [4] *leaf* 87, *back*. [5] it D. [6] þo D.
[7] aforesaide D. [8] Bisshope O. [9] doyng' D. doynge O.
[10] goñ D. [11] do D. [12] to O. [13] comen O.
[14–14] the . . Kant*er*bery D. The tydynge come to þ^e^ kyng þat þ^e^ Bisshopes were come aȝen to Cau*n*tirbury O. *om.* R.
[15] þide *sic* D. [16] *om.* O. [17] owen D. owe O.
[18] alseferforth D. as ferforþ O. afferforþ R.
[19] *MS. has* Popis *struck out*; *struck out also in* O. [20] he D. *om.* O.
[21] *MS. has* xlix°; D *has* xxxviij°; O *has* lxviij°.
[22] ordenede D. ordeyned' O. ordeyne R. [23] sealles D. seeles O.
[24–24] one p*ar*te D. [25] come D. [26] seeles O.

þat o[1] *par*te[2] of þe enden*tur*es[3] wiþ ham; And þe o*þer* *par*te of þe endenture þai[3] bare wiþ ham forto shew þe Kyng'. ¶ When þe Kyng saw[4] þe fourme, and hit[4] [5] vnderstode, he helde him ful wel paiede[6] of al mane*r* þing þat[7] þai hade ordeynede, saf as tochyng þe restitucioñ of þe godes[8] forto make[8] aȝeyne; to þat þing' he wolde[9] nouȝt accorde; and so he sent worde aȝeyne to þe[10] forsaide iiij bisshoppis,[10] þat þai shulde done[11] out and put awey þat o pynt of restitucioñ; and þai ansuerede þat þai nolde[12] nouȝt done[4] [13] out a word'.[13] ¶ þo sent þe Kyng' to þe Erchebisshop by þo iiij bisshopes, þat he shulde come to Kaunt*er*bery forto speke wiþ him þere, and sent vnto him saf condit, vnder' plegges, þat is to seyn, his Iustice3, Gilbert Peytevyn, William de la Breuer', & Iohñ le fi[t]z Hugh, þat in here condit safly he shulde come, & goñ aȝeyn at his wille; & in þis maner' þe Erchebisshop Stephen come vnto Kaunt*er*bery. ¶ And when the Erchebisshop was [come],[14] þe Kyng' come to Chilham, for he wolde come no nyer'[15] Kaunt*er*bery at þat tyme; but he sent by his *tre*sorer', þe[16] bisshope of Wynchestre, þat he shulde done[17] out of þe enden*tur*es þe clause of restitucioun forto make of þe godes. ¶ And þe Erchebisshop made his oth *per*, þat[18] he wolde neuer' do[19] oute a[20] worde *per*of, ne chaunge of þat þe bisshopes[21] hade spoken[22] & ordeynede. & so þe Erchebisshope went aȝeyn to Rome, wiþ-outen[23] eny more doyng'. ¶ Kyng' [Iohn] was þo[24] miche wro*per*[25] þan euer he was bifore, and lete make a comen[26] *cri*e prouȝ-out al Engel*and*, þat al þo þat haden[27] holy cherche rentes, and wenten[28] ouer þe see, þat þai shulde come aȝeyn into Engel*and* at a cer*te*yn day, and elleȝ þai shulde lese her' rentes[29] for eue*r*more; and þat he co*m*mandede to[4] eue*r*y shirryf prouȝout Engel*and*, þat þai shulde enquer' if eny bisshop, Abbot,[30] Pryoure, or eny o*þer* *pr*elate of Holy cherche, [31] fro þat day afte*r*ward' resceyuede eny mandeme*n*t þat come fro þe Pope,[32] þat þai shulde tak þe body, & brynge hit bifore him; & þat þai shulde take into þe Kynges hande al her' londes[33] of holy cherche[34] þat were ȝeuen

[1] one D. [2] *par*tye O.
[3–3] and D. *with* hem & *þat* o*þere* *par*tye of þe enden*tur*es þey O.
[4] *om.* O. [5] *leaf* 88. [6] apayed D. [7] as DO. [8–8] *om.* D.
[9] nolde O. [10–10] iiij bysshopes aforseid' O. [11] do D. [12] wolde D.
[13–13] out o word' D. o word' O. a word R. [14] comen D.
[15] neire D. ner O. [16] *om.* D. [17] do D. [18] that D. þat O. at R.
[19] don O. [20] o O. [21] Archebisshop D. [22] spoke O.
[23] withoute DO. [24] *om.* D. so O. [25] wro*þer* þo D.
[26] comune O. [27] hade D. had O. [28] went DO. [29] Rente O.
[30] Abbot or D. [31] *leaf* 88, *back.* [32] *struck out in* O.
[33] godeȝ D. [34] che *sic* D.

to[1] eny man þrouȝ þe Erchebisshop Stephen or by þe Pryour of Kaunterbery, fram þe tyme of þe eleccioun of þe erchebisshope; ¶ And commandede þat alle þe wodes þat were þe erchebisshopes shulde[2] bene[3] cast adoun to[1] þe grounde, and all solde.

How Kyng Iohn destroyed þe ordre of Cisteaux. Capitulo Centesimo xlix°.[4]

And in þe same tyme þe Irisshe-men bigoun to[5] wer' oppon Kyng Iohn; and Kyng Iohn ordeynede him forto[6] wende into Yrland, and lete arere an huge tax [7]prouȝ-out al Engeland,[7] þat is to seyn, xxxv M[l] marȝ[8]; & sent prouȝ-out[9] al Engeland to þe monkes of þe ordre of Cisteaux, þat þai shulde helpe him of vj M[l] marc of Siluer'; and þai ansuerede[10] & saide[10] þat þai derst noþing done wiþouten[11] her' chief Abbot of Cisteaux. Wherfore Kyng Iohn, when he come[12] aȝeyne [13]fram Irland,[13] he dede ham so miche sorwe & care, þat þai nist wher' forto abide; for he toke so miche ransoun of euery hous of ham,[14] þe somme amountede ix M[l] & iij C marȝ,[15] so þat þai were clene loste[16] and destroyede, & voidede her' hous & her' landes þrouȝ-out al Engeland. ¶ And the Abbot of Wauersey[17] drade so miche his manace, þat he forsoke al his[18] Abbay, & went þens, and pryuely[19] ordeynede him ouer' þe see[20] to þe hous of Cisteaux. ¶ When þe tydynges[21] come to þe Pope,[22] þat þe Kyng[l] had done so miche malice, þo was he toward þe Kyng[l] ful wroþ, and sent ij legates to[1] þe Kyng[l],—þat on me callede Pandolf, & þat opere Duraunt,—þat þai [23]shulde warne þe Kyng[l], in þe Popis[22] name, þat he shulde cesse of[l] his persecucioun þat he dede vnto holy cherche, & amende þe [24]wrong[l] and trespasse[24] þat he hade done to þe Erchebisshope of Kanterbery, & [25]vnto þe[25] monkes of Kaunterbery, & to al þe clergye of Engeland, and þat he shulde restore þe godes aȝeyn þat he hade taken[26] of ham aȝeyns her' wille, & elles[27] þai shulde curse the[28] Kyng[l] by name; and to done[29] þis ping[l], [30]& to conferme,[30] þe Pope[22] toke ham his lettres in

[1] vnto O. [2] shul O. [3] be DO. [4] *MS. has* lmo. [5] forto DO. [6] foro *sic* D. [7–7] *om.* O. [8] Mark[l] O. [9] þrouȝ D. þurgh O. [10–10] *om.* D. [11] with-oute DO. [12] come home O. [13–13] into Engeland D. fro Irlond O. [14] ham þat D. hem þat O. [15] Mark O. [16] ylost O. [17] Waruersey O. [18] þe O. [19] *om.* D. [20] see pryuely D. [21] tydyng D. tydynge O. [22] *struck out in* O. [23] *leaf* 89. [24–24] *trespas* and wrong D. wrong and þe trespace O. [25–25] to the Priour and D. to þe Priour & to þe O. [26] take O. [27] ell O. [28] the D. þe O. *om.* R. [29] do D. [30–30] *om.* D.

bulles patent. ¶ þise ij legates comen[1] into Engel*and*, and comen to þe Kyng[e] to Northamptoñ, *per*e þat he helde his *par*lement; & ful curteisely þai[2] him salued[e],[3] and saide: "Sire, we bep[4] comen fro[5] þe Pope[6] of Rome, þe pees of holy cherche & þ[7] e lande forto amend[e]; and we monest 3ow ferste in þe Popis half[e], þat 3e make ful restitucioun of þe godes þat 3e haue rauisshede of holy cherche & of þe land[e], & þat 3e vnderfonge Stephen,[8] Erchebisshop of Kant*er*bery, into his dignite, and þe Priour of Kaunt*er*bery & his monkes, & þat 3e 3elde a3eyn to[9] þe Erchebisshope alle his landes & rentes, wiþout eny wiþholdyng. ¶ And Sire,[10] more-ouer, þat 3e[11] soche restitucioun ham[12] make, as holy cherche shal holde her paiede."

¶ þo ansuerede þe Kyng[e]; "as tochyng[e] þe Prio*ur* & his monkes of Kaunt*er*bery, al þat 3e haue saide, y[13]wille gladelyche[13] do, & al þing[e] þat 3e wille ordeyne. ¶ But as tochyng[e] þe Erchebisshop, y shal telle 3ow in[12] myn hert as it liþ, þat þe Erchebisshop lete his bisshopriche, & þat þe Pope[6] [14]þan for him[14] wolde praye, & þan oppoñ aventure me shulde like some op*er*e bisshopriche [15]forto 3eue him[15] in Engeland[e]; and oppoñ[16] þis condicioun y wil[17] him resceyue and vnderfonge. ¶ And nopeles in Engel*and*, as Erchebisshop yf[e] [18]he abide, he shal neuer haue so gode saf condit þat[19] he ne shal ben[4] tak." ¶ þo saide Pandolf vnto þe Kyng[e]: "holy cherche was neuer wont to disg*rade*[20] Erchebisshop wiþouten[21] cause resonable; but eu*er* she was wont to chastice Pry[n]ces þat to God[e] & holy cherche were in-obedient." ¶ "What! how now?" *quod* þe Kyng, "manace 3e me?" ¶ "Nay," saide Pandolf[e], "but 3e [22]now openly haue tolde as it stondeþ[22] in 3o*ur* hert; & to 3ow we wil tel what is þe Popis[6] wille; & þus it stant: þat he haþ 3ow holiche[23] ent*er*ditede & accursede for þe wronges þat 3e haue done to holy cherche & to þe clergye. & for-as-miche as 3e duelliþ & beþ in wil to abide in 3our malice, and wil nou3t come to none emendement,[24] 3e shal vnderstond[e] þat fro þis tyme aft*er*ward þe centence is oppoñ 3ow 3euen, & halde[25] stede

[1] come DO. [2] *om.* D. [3] salewed hym O. [4] be O.
[5] fra*m* D. [6] *struck out in* O. [7] & of DO. [8] Stephen the D.
[9] vnto DO. [10] Sir 3itte D. sir 3it O. [11] 3e hem O. [12] *om.* O.
[13–13] wolde gladely D. wold gladly O. [14–14] for him þan D.
[15–15] him forto 3eue D. [16] *MS.* oppoñ oppoñ. [17] wolde DO.
[18] *leaf* 89, *back.* [19] *MS.* þak. [20] descharg D. [21] *with*oute O.
[22–22] haue tolde openly how it stondes D. haue now openlich haue told as it standith O.
[23] holy DO. [24] amendeme*nt* O. [25] holdeþ D. halt O.

& strengþ; and all[1] þo þat wiþ 3ow haþ[2] communede or[3] þis tyme, Wheþer þat þai beþ[4] Erles or[5] barons,[6] knyghtes or eny oþer, what-so-[7]euer þat[7] þai bene, we ham assoile safly vnto þis day. And fro þis tyme afterward, of what condicioñ so-euer[8] he[9] be, we ham acurse þat wiþ 3ow communen, and[10] do we sentence oppoñ haṁ openly & specialy. ¶ And we assoile quyte[11] Erles &[12] baroñs, kny3t3, & al oþer maner men, of her homages, seruices & feautez, þat þai shulde vnto 3ow done. ¶ And þis þing to conferme, We 3eue[13] pleyn power to þe Bisshop of Wynchestre & to þe Bisshop of Norwich; ¶ And þe same power we [14]3eue into[14] Scotland to þe Bisshop[15] of Rouchestre & of Salesbery; & in Walys we 3eue[16] þe same power to þe Bisshop[17] of seynt Dauid,[18] of Landa & of[19] Assa. ¶ And more-ouer we sende[20] prou3 al Cristendome, þat al þe bisshopis bi3end þe see, þat þai[21] [22]acurse alle þo þat helpeþ 3ow, or in[12] eny conseile 3eue[23] in eny maner nede þat 3e haue forto done in eny party of the world; and [24]we assaile[24] al ham þat a3eynes 3ow meueþ[25] eny maner werre. ¶ And we assoile ham al also, by þe autorite of þe Pope,[26] & commanden[27] ham[28] also wiþ 3ow forto werr, as wiþ him þat is enemy to[29] al holy cherche." ¶ þo ansuered þe Kyng, "what mow 3e done[30] more?" ¶ þo saide[31] Pandolf: "we seyn[32] to 3ow 'in verbo Dei,' þat 3e, ne none heir þat 3e haue, neuer after þis day may be cronede." ¶ Tho saide þe Kyng: "by Him þat is Almyghty God, & y hade wist of þis þing er þat 3e come into my land, þat 3e me[12] hade brou3t[33] soche tidynges,[34] y shulde haue made 3ow ride[35] al an hool 3ere." ¶ þo ansuerede Pandolf: "ful wel wende we, at oure ferst comyng, þat 3e wolde haue ben obedient to God and to[5] holy cherche, & haue fulfillede þe Popys[26] commandement; and nowe we haue shewede & pronuncede vnto[36] 3ow þe Popis[26] wille, as we were chargede þerwiþ. ¶ And as now 3e haue saide þat, if 3e hade wist þe cause of oure commyng, þat 3e wolde haue made vs ryde al an hool 3ere,

[1] oppoñ alle D. vpon aⁿ O. allo R. [2] hauen D. haue O.
[3] bifore D. before O. [4] be D. ben O. [5] *om.* D. [6] Baroñs or O.
[7–7] *om.* D. [8] þat euere D. euer þat O. [9] þei O.
[10] and so DO. [11] quytely D. quytly O. [12] *om.* DO. [13] 3euen O.
[14–14] 3eueth in O. [15] bysshoþs O. [16] 3euen D. yeueñ O.
[17] bisshoppis D. bysshopes O. [18] Dauid and DO.
[19] of seynt DO. [20] sendeþ D. sendith O.
[21] þai do D. þey don O. [22] *leaf* 90. [23] 3eueth D.
[24–24] assoile D. þat assoylle O. assoile R. [25] meue O.
[26] *struck out in* O. [27] commande D. [28] *om.* O. [29] vnto O.
[30] do me D. don me O. [31] answered O. [32] saie D.
[33] broght me O. [34] Tydynge O. [35] riden O. [36] to D.

and as wel ȝe myght haue saide þat ȝe wolde haue take[1] an hool ȝere of respite by þe Popys[2] leue. ¶ But forto suffre what deþ þat[3] ȝe couþe ordeyne, we shulle nouȝt spare forto tel ȝow holliche al þe Popis[2] message, & his wille *þat* we[4] wer' chargede with."

How Pandolf' delyuerede a clerc þat hade falsede[5] & contrefetede þe Kyng*us* monye[5] [6]bifore þe[6] Kyng'.[7] Ca*pitulo* Cente*simo* 1°.[8]

A Non þo co*m*mandede þe Kyng to[3] the Shirrif'[9] & bailifs[10] of Northamptoñ þat [11]were in þe Kynges p*re*sence, þat[11] þai shulde bryng' forth alle [12]þe prisoners, þat[13] þai myȝt bene[14] done to deþe bifore Pandulf', for encheson þe Kyng wende þat þai wolde haue gaynesaide here dedes for cause of deþ, al þing þat þai[15] hade spoken bifore.[16] ¶ When þe prysoners were comen[17] bifore þe Kyng', þe Kyng' co*m*manded'[18] so*m*me to bene honget, & some to bene[19] drawe, & so*m*me to draw out her' eyen of her' heued.[20] and amonge alle o*per*, *per*e was a clerc þat hade falsede þe Kynges monye; & þe Kyng co*m*maundede þat he shuld' bene[21] honged & drawe. ¶ And when Pandolf herd þis co*m*ma*n*dement of þe Kyng', he stert[22] op smertly, and anone axed a book' & candel, [23]and wolde haue[23] cursed alle ham þat sette oppoñ þe clerc eny honde. ¶ And Pandolf him-self went forto seche a croice; and þe Kyng folwede him, and delyue*re*de him þe clerc by þe honde, þat he shulde do[24] wiþ him what-euer' þat he wolde. And þus was the clerc delyue*re*de, and went þens; and Pandolf & Duraunt'[25] went þo fro[26] Kyng Iohñ, & come aȝeyne to þe Pope[27] of Rome, and tolde him þat Kyng Iohñ wolde nouȝt amendede ben, but euer' abide so acursede. ¶ And noþeles þe Pope gr*a*unted' þat ȝer' prouȝ-out Engeland', þat men might synge masseȝ[28] in couenable cherches, & make Godes body, and ȝif it to sik' men þat [29]shulde passe[29] out of þe[30] worlde, & also þat men might cristen

[1] tok D. [2] *struck out in* O. [3] *om.* DO. [4] he D.
[5–5] the kynges mony and counterfetede it D. & counterfete þe kynges money O.
[6–6] *om.* O. [7] Kyng' himself D. *om.* O. [8] *MS. has* lj°.
[9] Shereves O. [10] baliȝ D. [11–11] *om.* D. [12] *leaf* 90, *back.*
[13] þat wer' in the kynges prisouñ þat D. [14] be DO.
[15] he O. [16] afore DO. [17] Come O.
[18] *MS. has* to bene commamanded', *with* to bene *underlined for omission.*
[19] be O. [20] heed O. [21] be DO. [22] sterte him D.
[23–23] *MS. has* and wolde haue & wolde haue. [24] done O.
[25] Durant his felaw D. Duraunt his felawe O. [26] fro þe O.
[27] *struck out here and everywhere in* O. [28] masse D.
[29–29] passe shulde D. passe schuld' O. [30] þis O.

childern oueral. ¶ And when þe Pope wist' & sawe þat þe Kyng wolde nouȝt bene[1] vnder' þe rewele of holy cherche for no maner þing', þe Pope [2]þo sent[2] to þe Kyng of France, in remissiouñ of his synnes, þat he shulde take wiþ him al þe power' þat he myght, & wende into Engeland' forto destroye Kyng Iohan.

[*King John gives in to the Pope.*]

When þis tydyngus[3] come to Kyng' [4]Iohñ, þo Was he sore annoyede, & sore drade Laste þat he shulde lese his reaume, and him-self [5]be done vnto þe[5] deþ. ¶ þo sent he to þe Pope messagers,[6] & saide þat he wolde bene[7] iustifiede, & come to amendement' in al maner þinges, atte his owen wille. þe messagers comen[8] to þe Pope, & tolde him[9] þe Kyngus wille, & saide þat he wolde come to emendement in al maner[10] þinges, & wolde make satisfaccioñ to al maner' men after' þe Popys ordenaunce. ¶ þo sent þe Pope aȝeyne into Engeland, Pandolf' and opere messagers, & comen to Kaunterbery þere þe Kyng abode. and þe xiij day of May, þe Kyng made[11] an hoth forto stande to þe Popes ordenaunce, bifore Pandolf þe legat, in al maner þingus for þe whiche he was accursede; & þat he shulde make ful restitucioñ to alle þe[10] men of holy cherche and of religiouñ, of þe gode[12] þat he hade take of ham aȝeynȝ heir' wille. And alle þe grete lordes of Engeland' suore oppoñ a[13] book' & by þe holy dome, þat if þe Kyng wolde nouȝt holde his oth, þai saide þat[14] þai wolde make him[15] holde hit bi strengþ. ¶ And[10] þo put þe Kyng' him to þe courte of Rome & to þe Pope, and þo ȝaf' vp þe reaume of Engeland & of Irland', for him & for his heires for euermore þat shuld' come after him, so þat Kyng Iohan & his heires shulde tak þo ij reaumes of þe [16]Popis Hand', & shulde holde þo ij reaumes of the Pope[16] as to ferme, paying euery ȝer' to þe court of Rome a þousand' marc of siluer'. And þo toke[17] þe Kyng þe croune of his Heued', and sette him[18] on his knees, and þise wordes[19] saide in heryng[20] of alle þe[21] grete[22] lordes of Engeland': "Here y resyngn' op þe crone of[23] þe reaume of Engeland' into þe Popis Hande, Innocent þe pridde, and put [24]me Holliche[25] in his mercy & [26]ordenance." ¶ þo vnderfonge

[1] be D. [2–2] sent þo O. [3] Tydyng O. [4] *leaf* 91.
[5–5] ben done to D. to be don to O. [6] messagers DO. messager R.
[7] be DO. [8] come DO. [9] him D. hym O. ham R. [10] *om.* DO.
[11] made & swore O. [12] godes D. goodes O. [13] þe O. [14] *om.* D
[15] hem O. [16–16] Pope D. [17] nome O. [18] it O. [19] worde D
[20] audience D. [21] peple O. [22] gre *sic* D. & O. [23] and DO
[24] *leaf* 91, *back.* [25] holy O. [26] and in his DO.

Pandolf[1] þe crone of Kyng Iohñ, and kepte hit v dayes, as for seising-takyng[1] of þo ij reaumes of Engel*and* and of Yrl*and*, and conferṁede al maner[1] þinges by his chartre þat folewęþ after[1].

4 Of þe lettre obliga[to]rie þat Kyng Iohñ made to þe court of Rome; wherfore þe Petrus pens beþ[1] gadrad þrouȝ al Engeland[1]. Cap*itul*o Centesi*m*o Quinqu*a*gesi*m*o primo.[2]

"TO[3] alle[4] Cristen peple þrouȝ-out[5] the worlde duellyng[1], Iohñ, by þe g*r*ace of God, Kyng[1] of Engeland[1], gretyng to ȝour[1] vniu*er*site! and knowen[6] þing[1] it be þat, for-asmiche as[7] we haue greuede & offendede[8] God & our[1] moder[1] cherche[9] of Rome, and forasmiche as we haue nede to þe mercy of oure lord Ihesu Crist, and we may noþing so worþi offre com*pe*tent satisfaccioun to make to God[1] & to holy cherche, but if it were our[1] owen body, as wiþ oure[10] reaumes of Engeland[1] and of Irland[1], Thanne, by þe g*r*ace of God[1],[11] we desireñ forto meken[12] vs for þe loue of Him þat meked Him to þe deþ of þe Croice, þrouȝ conseil of þe noble erles & barons, we soffren[13] and frely g*r*anten to God, and to þe Apostoilȝ seynt Petre & seynt Paule, & to oure moder[1] cherche of Rome, & to our[1] Holy fader þe Pope, Innocent þe þridde, & to alle þe Popis þat comeþ[14] after him, al þe reaume &[15] pat*r*onages of cherches[16] of Engeland[16] and of Irland[1], wiþ alle þe appurtenances, for remissioun of oure synnes, and helpe & helþ of oure Kyn[17] soules, and of aH Cristen soules, so þat fro[18] þis tyme afterward, we wille resceyue & holde of oure moder che[r]che of Rome, as fee ferme, doyng[1] feaute to our[1][19] holy fader[1][20] [21]þe Pope, Innocent þe þridde, and to alle þe Popes þat comeþ[22] after[1] him, in[23] maner[1] abouesaide. ¶ And in p*r*esence of þe wise man Pandolf, þe Popis Suthdekne,[24] we makeþ[25] liege homage, as it were in þe Popes p*r*esence, & bifore him were; and we shul[26] do al maner[1] þinges[27] aboue-saide; and[1] [28]þ*er*fore we byndeþ[28] vs, and al þat comen after[1] vs, & oure heirs for-euer-more, wiþouten[29] eny gaynsaying, to þe Pope, & eke þe ward[30] of

[1] ben D. [2] *MS. has secun*do. [3] So *sic* D.
[4] *MS.* alle al; alle the D. [5] þrouȝ-out al D. [6] knowe D.
[7] þat DO. [8] offende D. [9] *MS. has* cherche of cherche.
[10] *MS. has* oures. [11] the holy gost D. þe holy gooste O.
[12] meke D. [13] offren DO. [14] comen DO. [15] of Engelond of O.
[16–16] *om* O. [17] Kynes D. [18] from O. [19] *om.* D.
[20] fade *sic* D. [21] *leaf* 92. [22] comen O. [23] in the D. in þe O.
[24] Sudekenc O. [25] make DO.
[26] *MS. has* shulde, *with* de *underlined for omission.* [27] þing[1] O.
[28–28] þ*er*to we bynde D. þ*er*to we byndeþ O. [29] wi*th*oute O
[30] wardes D.

cherche3[1] vacaunt3. and in token[2] of þis þing eu*er* forto last, we wille, conferme &[3] ordeyn, þat our' special rent3 of þe forsaide Reaumes, sauyng seynt Pet*r*us pens, in al[4] þing to þe moder cherche of Rome, paying by 3er'[5] M[li] mar3[6] of siluer' at ij te*r*mes of þe 3ere, for al maner custumes þat we [7]shulde do to[7] þe forsaide Reaumes, þat is to seyn, at Mighelmesse & at [8]Ester', þat is to[8] seyn,[9] vij C mar3[10] [11]for Engeland',[11] & iij C mar3[12] for Irland', sauyng to vs and to oure heires, oure[3] Iustice3 and oure oþer ffr*a*unchisis, and oþ*er* realtes þat appe*r*teyneþ[13] to[14] þe cr*o*ne. And alle þise þinges þat [15]bifore ben[15] saide, we wille þat hit be ferme & stable wiþouten ende; and to þat obligacioñ we, and alle our' [16]successoures & oure heires,[16] in þis man*er* beþ[17] bonde, þat if we, or eny of our heires, þrou3[18] pr*e*sumpcioun falle[19] in eny poynt a3eyne þise þing*us* abouesaide, & he bene[20] warnede, & wille nou3t[21] ri3t amende him, he shal þan lese þe forsaide[3] reaumes for eu*er*more. and þat[3] þis chartre of [22]obligacioun, & oure warant,[22] for eu*er*more be ferme and Stable wiþouten[23] gaynsaying', we shul fro þis day afterward be trewe to God & to þe[24] moder' cherche of Rome, and to þe Pope Innocent þe þrid',[25] and to al þat' [26]come þ[27] aft*er* him; and þe reaumes of Engeland & of Irland' we shul mayntene trewely[28] in al man*er* poynt3 a3eyn3 al maner men by oure power', þrou3[29] þe grace of God'." [29]

How þe clerkes þat werne[30] outlawed' of Engeland', come a3eyn, & how Kyng Iohñ was assoiled'. Ca*pitul*o Cent*esimo* lij°.[31]

When þis chartre[32] was made and enselede, þe Kyng Vnderfonge a3eyn his cr*o*ne of' Pandolfes hondes, and sent anone vnto[33] þe Erchebisshop Stephen, and to al his oþ*er* clerkes and lewed men þat he hade exilede out of his[34] lande, þat þai shulde come a3eyne into Engeland', & haue a3eyn her' londes & heir' rentes, & þat he wolde make restitucioun of þe godes þat he

[1] Cherche O. [2] tokenyng' D. [3] *om.* D. [4] al maner D.
[5] 3ere a O. [6] marc D. Mark' O.
[7–7] shal do for D. schul don for O. [8–8] Estren for Engelond' O.
[9] say D. *om.* O. [10] marc þat is to sayn D. [11–11] *om.* O.
[12] marc D. Mark' O. [13] p*er*teyne D. p*er*tyneþ O.
[14] vnto O. [15–15] biforne be D. [16–16] heires and successoures D.
[17] ben O. [18] þrou3 eny D. þurgh ony O. [19] faile D.
[20] be O. [21] no O.
[22–22] waraunt and our obligacioun D. [23] withoute O. [24] our' D.
[25] þirde O. [26] *leaf* 92, *back.* [27] comen O. [28] trewlich O.
[29–29] godes helpe D. goddes helpe O. [30] were DO.
[31] *MS. has* lijj°. [32] lettre D. [33] to D. [34] him *sic* D.

hade [1]take of heres,[1] a3eyns her' wille. ¶ þe Kyng him-self þo, and Pandolf, & Erles & barons, went þo[2] vnto Wynchestre a3ein3 þe Erchebisshop Stephen. & when he was comen,[3] þe Kyng went a3eynes him, & felle adouñ vnto[4] his feet', & saide vnto[4] *him*: "faire sir', 3e beþ welcomen[5]; and y *cr*ie 3ow *mer*cy, for enchesoñ þat y haue *tres*passede a3eyn3 3ow." ¶ þe Erchebisshop̄ toke him vp þo in his Armes, & cussede him curteisely ofte-tymes, and af*ter* lad hi*m* to þe dore of Seynt Swythynus cherche by þe honde, & assoilede hi*m* of þe centence, and him reconselede to God and to holy cherche; and þat was on seyn[t] Margarites day; and þe Erchebisshop anone went forto synge þe masse, and þe Kyng offred at þe masse a mark of golde. ¶ And whe*n* þe masse was done, alle þai went forto vnderfonge[6] her' londes, wiþouten[7] eny maner' gaynesaying; and þat day þai made aH merþe and ioye ynow; but 3itte was nou3t þe ente*r*dit[8] relessede, for enchesouñ [9]þai hade sent þat þe ente*r*dityng' shulde nou3t bene vndone[9] til þe Kyng' hade made ful restitucioun̄ of þe godes that he [10]hade take of Holy cherche, and also þat him-self shulde done[11] homage to þe Pope by a certeyne ligat þat he shulde sende into[12] Engeland.

¶ þo toke[13] Pandolf his leue of[14] þe Kyng' and of þe Erchebisshop, and went a3eyne vnto[15] Rome. And þe Erchebisshop anone lete come bifore him p*re*lates of holy cherche at Redyng', forto trete and conseil how miche and what þai shulde[16] axe of þe Kyng' forto make restitucioun̄ of þe godes þat he hade take[17] of ham. ¶ And þai ordeynede and saide, þat þe Kyng shulde 3eue to þe Erchebisshope iij M[li] mar3[18] for þe wronge þat þe Kyng hade done to[19] him, and also to o*per* clerkes [20]xv M[li] marc, by porcyons.[20] and in þe same tyme Nicholas, [21]bishop of[21] Tuscan, Cardynal Penitauncer' of Rome, come into Engeland' prou3 þe Popis co*m*mandement, þe v k*alend* of Ottobre, and come to Londoñ þe v None of Octobre, for enchesouñ þat Kyng Iohñ, and alle þe[22] kynges þat comen af*ter* hi*m*, shulde eu*er*more halde þe reaumes of Engel*and* and of Irland of God & of þe Pope, p*aing'* to þe Pope by 3er' as[23] is aboue saide.

[1–1] taken of ham D. take of hem O. [2] *om.* D. [3] come O.
[4] to D. [5] welcome O. [6] vndirfonge al O.
[7] with-out D. wi*th*oute O. [8] Entirdytinge O.
[9–9] *om.* D. þat he had sent þat þe entirdityng schuld not ben vndon O.
[10] *leaf* 93. [11] do D. [12] vnto O. [13] nome DO. [14] fro O.
[15] to O. [16] mi3t D. [17] taken D. [18] marc D. Mark' O. [19] vnto DO.
[20–20] by porcions xv^M^ marc D. by porcions xv M[li] Mark' O.
[21–21] *om.* D. [22] *om.* O. [23] as it O.

How þe enterditing was vndone in Engeland; and of þe debate þat was bituene Kyng Iohñ & þe barons of þe reaume. ¶ Capitulo Centesimo liij°.[1]

WHen Kyng Iohñ [2]hade done his[2] homage to þe legat þat shewede him þe Popes[3] lettre, þat he shulde paye to Iulyan and ȝelde aȝeyn, þat was Kyng Richardes [4]wif', þe þridde part[4] of þe londe of' Engeland & of Irland' þat he hade wiþholde siþ þat Kyng deide,—¶ when Kyng Iohñ herde þis, he was wonder' wroþ, for vtterliche[5] þe enterdityng might nouȝt bene[6] vndone til þat he hade made gree & restitucioñ to[7] þe forsaide Iulian of þat she[8] axed'. ¶ The legate went þo aȝeyn to þe Pope[9] after' [10]Cristesmasse, and þe Kyng sent þo messagers[11] ouere[12] see to Iulian, þat was Kyng Richardes wif', forto haue a relesse of þat she axede[13] him. ¶ And so hit bifelle[14] þat Iulian deide anone after' Ester', and insomiche þe Kyng was quyt of[15] þat she axede; but þo, at þe feast[16] of Seynt Iohñ þat [17]come next[17] after', prouȝ þe Popis[18] commandement þe enterdytyng was ferst' relessede prouȝ[19] al Engeland þe vij day of Iuñ;—and seuen ȝere almost[20] was þe londe enterditede,—and on[21] þe morwe men ronge,[22] & songe masses prouȝ-out Londoñ, and so after prouȝ-out[23] añ Engeland'.

¶ And þe next ȝere after, þere bigan a grete debate bituen[24] Kyng Iohñ & þe lordes of Engeland, for encheson þat he wolde nouȝ[t] graunt þe lawes, & halde, þe[25] which Seint Edward' hade [26]ordeyned, and hade ben[26] vsede & holde vnto þat tyme þat[27] he hade ham broken; for he wolde none[28] lawe holde, but dede al þing þat him likede, & disheritede[29] meny men wiþ-outen[30] consent of lordes & pireȝ of þe land; And he wolde haue disheritede[31] þe gode erle Randolf of' Chestre, for encheson þat he vndername him of his wickednesse. & for cause þat he dede so miche shame &

[1] *MS. has* liiij°. [2–2] *om.* D.
[3] popes *struck out and* Bisshopes *written over in a different hand in* O.
[4–4] wyves þe iij partye O. [5] onliche D. [6] be D.
[7] of O. [8] he O.
[9] Pope atte *sic* D; *struck out, and* Bisshope *written over in a different hand in* O.
[10] *leaf* 93, *back.* [11] *MS. has* messagers messagers.
[12] ouere the D. ouer þe O. [13] axede of D. axed' of O.
[14] felle D. [15] of thyng' D. of þing O. [16] *MS. has* ferst.
[17–17] next come D.
[18] popes *struck out, and* Bisshoppis *written over in a different hand in* O.
[19] þouȝ D. [20] *om.* DO. [21] in O. [22] rong belles O.
[23] þrouȝ D. þurgh O. [24] bituene D. betwen O. bitwe R.
[25] *om.* D. [26–26] made and ordeynede and D. [27] and D.
[28] no DO. [29] disherite O. [30] withoute O. [31] disherite O.

vilony to God[1] & holy cherche, & also for he helde & hauntede his owen bro*per*es wif', & lay also by meny o*per*e wy*mm*en, g*r*ete lordes dou3t*er*s,—for he sparede no wo*m*man þat him likede forto[2] haue,—wherfore alle þe lordes of þe lande wer' toward[3] him wonder' wroþ, and went [4]wiþ him[4] to Londoñ, & toke þe citee.

[*King John grants the Great Charter.*]

¶ And forto cesse þis debate and sorwe, þe Kyng' and þe Erchebisshop, and o*per*e g*r*ete lordes of[5] Engeland, assemblede ham bifore þe fest' of Seynt Iohñ þe Baptiste, in a medowe bisides[6] þe toune of Stanes þat is callede[7] Rome-[8]mede. And þe Kyng made ham *þer*e a chartre of ffr*a*unchise3,[9] soche as þai wolde axen; & in soche maner'[10] þai were acordede; and þat accordement laste nou3t ful longe, for þe Kyng him-self' [11]sone aft*er*[11] dede a3eynes þe poyntes of þe same chartre þat he hade made. Wherfore þe moste [12]party of þe[12] lordes[13] of Engel*and*[14] assemblede ha*m*, & bigoñ to were oppoñ Kyng Iohñ, and brent his tounes & robbede his folc, & dede al þe sorwe þat þai myght',[15] and made ha*m* alse[16] stronge as þai might', [17]wiþ all her' power',[17] & þou3t [18]to dryuen[18] him out of Engel*and*, and make Lewys, þe Kynges sone of Fr*a*nce, Kyng' of Engel*and*. ¶ And Kyng Iohan sent þo ouer' þe[19] see, and ordeynede so miche peple of Normannes & of Picard3, and of Flemynges, so þat þe lande mi3t nout ham sustene, but wiþ miche[20] sorw. ¶ And among Alle þis[21] peple *þer*e was a Norman[22] þat me callede [23]Frankes of Brent[23]; and þis Norman & his co*m*pany sparede ney*þer* cherche ne house of Religioñ, þat þai ne brent & robbed hit, & bare away alle þat[24] þai might tak', so þat þe land' was al destroiede, what [25]in o[25] side & in[26] þat o*per*e. ¶ þe barons & þe[27] lordes þo of Engel*and* ordeynede amonges[28] ham þe best spekers & wisest men, & sent ham ou*er* þe[19] see to Kyng Philip of Fr*a*unce, & prayed him þat he wolde sende Lowys his sone into Engel*and*, to ben[29] Kyng of Engeland, and vnderfonge[30] þe crone.

[1] and to D. [2] to D. [3] wiþ D. with O. [4—4] *om.* DO.
[5] of the lande of D. of þe land' of O. [6] biside D.
[7] y-Called' O. [8] *leaf* 94. [9] ffr*a*unchise D. [10] a maner D.
[11—11] *om.* D. [12—12] *parte* of D. [13] land' O.
[14] the lande D. lordes O. [15] myght *with* al her power O.
[16] as DO. [17—17] *om.* O. [18—18] dryue DO. [19] *om.* D.
[20] michel DO. [21] thi *sic* D.
[22] man of Normandy D. man of Normandye O.
[23—23] faukes of Brute O. [24] *MS.* þat þat.
[25—25] in that on D. on þe on O. [26] on O. [27] *om.* DO.
[28] among O. [29] be DO [30] haue D.

How Lowys, þe Kynges sone of Fraunce, come into Engeland wiþ stronge[1] powr' of peple, to ben[2] Kyng of Engeland. Capitulo Centesimo liiij^to.[3]

WHen Kyng Philip of Fraunce herde þis tydynges,[4] he made certeyn aliance bituene ham by her' commune eleccioñ, þat Lowys, Kyng' Philippis sone of Fraunce, shuld' [5]gone[6] wiþ ham into Engeland, & dryue out Kyng' Iohñ of þe land. And alle þo[7] þat were in presence of Lowis made to[8] him homage, and bicome his men.[9] And þe barons of Engeland' [10]helde ham[10] stille at Londoñ, & abode[11] þere Lowys, þe Kyngus sone of Fraunce. And þis was þe nexte Saturesday[12] bifore þe Ascencioun of our' Lord' þat Lowis come into Engeland wiþ a[13] stronge power'; & þat tyme Kyng Iohñ hade take alle þe castelles[14] of Engeland into Aliens hondes. ¶ And Lowys come þo to Rochestre, and bisegede þe castel, & tok' hit wiþ strengþ, & þe þoresday in Whitson weke,[15] lete honge alle þe Aliens þat were þerin. And þe þoresday þo next sewyng', he come to Londoñ; & þere he was vnderfong wiþ michel[16] honour' of þe lordes þat aboden[17] him þere; & alle to him þai maden[18] homage. ¶ And [19]afterward, in þe Tywesday þo next sewyng' þe[19] Trinitee Sonday,[20] he toke þe castel of Ryegate, and in þe morwe after, þe castel of Gildeford', & þe Friday [21]þo next sewyng',[21] þe castell of Farnham; and þe Moneday next after, þe cite of Wynchestre to him[22] was ȝolden[23]; and in þe morwe nexte[13] after' seynt Iohñs day, þe maner' of Wolneseye; And þe Tiwesday next after þe viij^tas[24] of Seynt Petre & seynt Poule, þai token[25] þe castel of Odyham. ¶ And þe Moneday next after seynt Margaretes day, he ordeynede him toward Beaumer',[26] forto bisege þe[27] castel; & þere he duellede xv dayes, & might nouȝt gete þe castel; & þo[28] went he[29] þens, and come to Londoñ, & þe Toure to him was ȝolde.

[1] strengþ & D. a strong O. [2] be O.
[3] *MS. has* lv^to; D *has* liij^o. [4] tydynge O. [5] *leaf* 94, *back.*
[6] go D. [7] *om.* DO. [8] vnto D. [9] men DO. man R.
[10–10] hem held' O. [11] abiden D. [12] Satirday O.
[13] *om.* D. [14] castel D. [15] *MS.* weke &. [16] mych O.
[17] abiden O. [18] made D.
[19–19] on þe Tywesday next after þe D. after in þe tewsday next aftir O.
[20] day D. [21–21] nexte after D. next aftir O.
[22] *MS.* him him. [23] ȝolde D. yolde O.
[24] viij O. [25] toke DO. [26] Bremer O. [27] *MS.* þe þe.
[28] þai D. [29] *om.* D. þey O.

[1]**And in þe same tyme[1] þe Pope[2] sent into Engel*and* a legate þat me callede Swalo; & of Kyng Iohnes deþ. Ca*pitulo* C*entesimo* lv^to.[3]**

AND in þe same tyme þe Pope[4] sent into Englond a legate þat me callede Swalo, and he w*as* [5]p*rest* Cardinal of Rome, forto mayntene Kyng Iohnes cause aȝeynȝ þe barons of Engel*and*; but þe barons hade so huge p*ar*tye and help þrouȝ Lowys, þe Kyng*us* sone of Fr*a*unce, þat Kyng Iohn wist nouȝt whider forto turne ne go.[6] ¶ And so it bifel,[7] þat he wold haue goñ to Nichole; and as he went þiderward, he come by[8] þe Abbay of Swyneshede,[9] and þ*er*e he abode ij dayes. ¶ & as he satte at þe[10] mete, he axede a monk of þe hous, 'how miche a lofe was worþ, þat was sette bifore him oppoñ[11] þe table.' & þe monk saide þat[12] 'þe lof was worþ but an halpeny.' "O," q*uod* he, "þo here is grete chepe of brede. ¶ Now," q*uod* þe Kyng, "and y may leue, soche a lof shal bene[13] worþ xx s., or halfe ȝere be gone."[14] and when he hade saide þis word, michel[15] he þouȝt, and ofte-tyme sichede, and toke[16] & ete of þe brede, & saide: "by God, þe worde þat y haue saide,[17] hit shal ben[18] soth." ¶ þe monk þat stode bifore þe Kyng,[18] for þis word was[19] ful sory in hert, and þouȝ[t], raþ*er* he wolde him-self soffre pitouse deþ, & þouȝt to[20] ordeyn þ*er*for so*m*me maner remedy. ¶ And anone þe monk went to his Abbot, and was shryuen of him, and tolde þe Abbot al þat þe Kyng saide, and praiede his Abbot forto assoile him, for he wolde ȝeue þe Kyng soche a wassaile þat al Engeland [21]shal be þ*er*of glade[21] and ioyful. ¶ Tho went þe monk into a gardeyn, & founde a grete tode þ*er*in, & tok[22] her vp, & put here in a coppe, &[23] prickede þe tode þrouȝ[12] wiþ a broche meny tymes, til þat þe venyme come out on[24] eu*er*yche[25] side[12] into þe coppe. and þo tok[22] he[12] þe coppe, and [26]fellede hit wiþ god ale, &[26] brouȝ[t] hit bifore þe Kyng, & knelyng[27] saide:

[1—1] How O.
[2] *struck out in MS.; also struck out in* O. *and* Bisshop of Rome *written over in a different hand.*
[3] *MS. has* lvj^to.
[4] *struck out, and* Bisshope of Rome *written over in a different hand in* O.
[5] *leaf* 95. [6] gon D. gone O. [7] felle O. [8] to O.
[9] Swynesheuede D. Swynesheued O. [10] *om.* O.
[11] on D. at O. [12] *om.* D. [13] be DO. [14] agon O.
[15] miche D. myche O. [16] nome O. [17] spoke D.
[18] kyng was DO. [19] *om.* DO.
[20] is he myȝt *sic* D. if he myghte O.
[21—21] shulde be glade þ*er*of D. shuld be glad þ*er*of O. [22] nome O.
[23] & felled it *with* good ale & O. [24] of D. in O. [25] eche O.
[26—26] *om.* O. [27] knelyng & O.

" Sir," q*uod* he, " Wassaile ! for neuer, dayes of 3our lyue,[1] dranke[2] 3e of soche [3]a[4] coppe." " Bygynne, monk," q*uod* þe Kyng, and þe monk dranke a g*r*ete drau3t, and toke þe Kyng þe coppe; &[5] þe Kyng [6]drank also[6] a g*r*ete drau3te, and sette doune þe coppe. ¶ þe monk anone right went[7] into þe fermory, & þ*er*e deide anon, oñ whos soule God haue mercy, Amen! & v monkes si*n*geþ[8] for his soule,[9] & shal whiles[10] þat[11] Abbay stant. ¶ The Kyng aros vp anone ful euel at ese, & co*m*manded anon[12] to remeve þe table, & axede after þe monk; and men tolde him þat he was dede, for his wombe was broken[13] in sondre. ¶ When þe Kyng herde þis tidynges,[14] he comandede forto trusse; but al it was for nou3t, for his bely biganne[15] to swelle, for þe drynk þat he drank, þat he deide wiþin ij daies,[16] þe morwe after Seynt Lukes day. ¶ And þis Kyng Iohñ hade fair childerne of his body bigeten,[17] þat is to seyn, Henry his sone, þat was Kyng after his fader, & Richarde, þat[18] was Erl of Cornewail, and IsabeH, þat was Emp*er*esse of Rome, and Alienore, þat was Quene of Scotland. ¶ And þis Kyng Iohñ, when he had regnede xvij 3ere v mounþes & v dayes, he deide in þe castel of Newerc, & his body was buriede[19] at Wynchestre.

Of Kyng Henry[20] þe þridde, þat was c*r*onede at Gloucestre. Cap*itul*o C*entesim*o lvj^to^.[21]

AND after þis Kyng Iohñ, regnede Henry his sone, & was c*r*onede at Gloucestre when he was ix 3ere olde, on seynt Symond*us* day & Iude, of Swalo þe legat, prou3 conseile of alle þe grete lordes [22]of Engel*and*[22] þat helde wiþ Kyng Iohñ, his fader, þat is to saien, þe[18] Erl Randolf of Chestre, William, Erl Marchal, William Erl of Penbrok, [23]& William[23] Breuere, [24]Erl of Ferers, Serl de Maule, baron; & alle oþ*er*e g*r*ete[25] lordes of Engel*and* helde with Lowys, þe Kynges sone of Fr*a*unce. & anone after, when Kyng Henry was c*r*onede, Swalo the legat helde his conseil at

[1] lif ne D. lyf ne O. [2] dronk O. [3] *leaf* 95, *back*.
[4] *At the top of this page is written in faint ink, by a different* [?] *hand*:—A lambe.
[5] a *sic* D. [6—6] also drank D. also dranke O. [7] *MS.* went went.
[8] syngen O. [9] soule specialich D. soule speciallich O.
[10] while O. [11] the D. þe O. [12] *om.* DO. [13] broke O.
[14] tydynge O. [15] began so O. [16] dayes after O. [17] geten O.
[18] *om.* O. [19] y-buryed O. [20] Herry *here, and elsewhere in* O.
[21] *MS. has* lvij^o^. [22—22] *om.* DO.
[23—23] William þe D. William þe O. [24] *leaf* 96. [25] gete *sic* D.

Bristow, at Seynt Martynes fest'; & þer̃e wer' xj bisshopis of Engel*and* & of Walys, & of o*þer* pr*e*lates of holy cherche a[1] grete nombre, & Erles & barons, & meny kny3tes of Engel*and*; and alle þo þat were at þat conseil swore feaute vnto[2] Henry þe Kyng, þat was Kyng Iohnes sone.

¶ And anone aft*er*,[3] þe ligate ent*er*ditede Walis, for enchesouñ þat þai helde with þe barons of Engel*and*; and also alle þo þat [4]holpen or 3af conseil[4] to meve werr' a3eyn3 þe new Kyng Henry, he acursede ham; And in the bigynnyng he put in þe [5]sentence þe[5] Kyng*us* sone of Fr*a*unce Lowys. ¶ And noþeles þe same Lowys[6] wolde nou3t spare forto werr' for al þat, but went anone, & tok þe castel of Berkhamstede, & eke[7] þe castel of Hertford. ¶ And fram[8] þat day aftirward, þe barons [9]dede miche[9] harme þrou3 al Engel*and*, and principaly þe Frenche-men þat wer' comen[10] wiþ Lowys; wherfore þe grete lordes [11]of Engel*and*,[11] & alle þe co*m*mune peple,[12] lete ham croice forto dryue out[13] Lowys & his co*m*pany out of Engel*and*. ¶ But so*m*me of þe barons, & ek of þe Frenchemen, were gone[14] to þe cite of Nichole, & tok[15] [16]þe Cite,[16] & helde hit to Kyng' Lowys pr*o*fite. But þider' come[17] Kyng Henryes[18] men wiþ [19]a gr*e*te[19] power', þat is to seyne, þe Erl Randolf of Chestr*e*, and William Erl Marchal, & Willi*am* de la Bruer', Erl of Fercrs, & meny o*þer* lordes wiþ ham, & 3af[20] Bataile [21]vnto Lowyse men. ¶ And þ*er*e was slayn þe Erl of Perches; and Lowys men [22]were þere[22] foule descomfitede[23]; and þ*er*e was taken[24] Serl, Erl of Wynchestre, & Humfray de Bouñ, Erl of[25] Herford, & Robert, þe sone of Walt*er*; & meny o*þer* þat hade bigonne werr' a3eyn3 þe Kyng' þ*er*e were taken,[26] and lad to[27] Kyng Henry [28]þat was[28] Kyng Iohnes [son]. ¶ When þe tydyng of þis scomfiture come vnto[2] Lowys, he remevede þens, & went[29] vnto Londoñ, and lete shette þe 3ates fast' of þe citee. ¶ And anone after', þe Kyng sent to[30] þe[31] burgeys of Londoñ, þat þai shulde 3elde ham vnto him, & þe citee also, and he wolde ham gr*a*unt alle þe

[1] *om.* D. [2] to D. [3] afte D. [4—4] 3af conseil and halpen D.
[5—5] *om.* D. [6] *MS. has* Lowys Lowys. [7] also D. [8] fro D.
[9—9] de somiche *sic* D. dede so myche O. [10] Come O. [11—11] *om.* DO.
[12] peple of Engeland' D. peple of Engelond' O. [13] *om.* O.
[14] go O. [15] token O. [16—16] it D. [17] Comen O.
[18] Henryes men D. Herryes men O. Henryes R.
[19—19] *MS. has* a grete a grete. [20] 3euen O. [21] *leaf* 96, *back.*
[22—22] þere were O. [23] scomfited' O. [24] tak D. take O.
[25] *MS. has* of of. [26] tak D. [27] vnto DO. [28—28] *om.* DO
[29] come D. [30] vn-to O.
[31] *MS. has* þe bisshop, *with* bisshop *underlined for omission.*

Fraunchises[1] þat[2] þai were wont forto haue, & wolde conferme ham by his[3] new chartr'[4] vnder' his grete sele. ¶ And in the same tyme a gret Lorde, þat me callede Eustace þe monk', come out of Fraunce wiþ a grete company of Lordes, & wolde haue come into Engeland forto haue holp Lowys, þe Kyngus sone of Fraunce. ¶ But Hubert of Burgh[5] and[6] þe v portes, wiþ viij shippis, & no mo, mette wiþ ham in þe hye see, and assailede ham egrely, & ouercome ham þrouȝ strengþ, and smyten of Eustace-þe-monkes heuede,[7] & token also x grete Lordes of Fraunce, and put ham into prisouñ, & quellede almost alle þe men þat comen[8] wiþ[9] ham; and anone drenchede[10] þe shippis in þe see.

How Lowys turned aȝeyn into Fraunce; and of þe confirmacioun of Kyng Iohñes chartre. ¶ Capitulo Centesimo Septimo.[11]

WHen Lowys herd þis tydynges,[12] he drade sore to ben[13] dede and loste, and lete ordeyne, & spok[14] bituene þe Kyng and Lowys[15] by þe legat Swalo, and poruȝ þe Erche[16]bisshop of Kaunterbery, and þrouȝ[17] opere grete lordes, þat alle the prisoners of[18] þat one halfe and of[18] þat oþer shulde bene[19] delyuerede, & gone[20] quit', and Lowys him-self shulde haue for his costages [21]a M[t] li[21] of siluer', & shulde gone out of Engeland, and come neuer þerin aȝeyne. and in þis maner' was þe accord made bituene[22] Kyng Henry & Lewys. And þo was Lowys assoilede of þe Popis[23] legat þat me[24] callede Swalo, of þe sentence þat he was in, and þe barouns of Engeland also. ¶ And after þis, Kyng Henry & Swalo þe legat, & Lowys, went vnto Mertoñ; and þere was þe pees confermede, & bituen[25] ham ordeynede. and afterward Lowys went fro þens vnto Londoñ, & tok[26] his leue, & was brouȝt wiþ miche[27] honoure at þe[28] see wiþ þe Erchebisshop of Kaunterbery & wiþ oþer bisshoppis, and also wiþ erles and[29] barons; and so went Lowys into Fraunce.

[1] ffraunchise D. [2] þat euere O. [3] his gret DO.
[4] Chartre and D. [5] Brugh DO. [6] in O. [7] heed' O. [8] come O.
[9] *MS. has* wiþ wiþ, *and the second* wiþ *is underlined for omission.*
[10] drenched aⁿ O. [11] *MS. has* Octauo. [12] tidynge O. [13] be O.
[14] speke O. [15] him D. [16] *leaf* 97. [17] *om.* D. [18] on D.
[19] be DO. [20] go O.
[21–21] an þousande pounde D. a þousand' pound' O.
[22] bituene D. betwene O. bitwe R.
[23] Popes *struck out, and* bisshope of Rome *written over in a different hand in* O.
[24] men D. [25] betwen O. bitue R. [26] nome O. [27] michel D.
[28] *om.* O. [29] and with D.

¶ And aftirward þe kyng & þe Erchebisshope, & Erles & barons, assembled ham at Londoñ, at Michelmasse [1]þat next þo sewede,[1] & helde *þer*e pa*r*lement.[2] & *þer*e were þo renewede alle þe Fraun-
4 chises þat Kyng Iohñ hade[3] *gra*untede at Romemede; and Kyng Henry þo confermede ha*m* by his chartre, þe which ȝitte beþ holden þrouȝ-out[4] Engel*and*. ¶ And in þat tyme þe Kyng toke of eu*er*y ploughe of[5] londe ij s̄; and Hubert of Burgh[6] was made þo chief
8 Iustice of[7] Engeland. ¶ And þis was in[8] þe iiij ȝere of Kyng Henryes regne; & in þe same ȝere was [9]seynt Thomas[9] of Kant*er*bery t*ra*nslatede þe l[10] ȝere aft*er* his martredome.[11] ¶ And after, it was ordeynede by alle þe Lordes of Engeland, þat alle Aliens shulde
12 gone out of Engel*and*, & come nomore *þer*in.

And þe Kyng[1] [12]þo toke[12] alle þe castelles into his honde, þat [13]Kyng Iohn his fader hade ȝeue & taken[14] vnto Aliens forto kepe, þat helde wiþ him. ¶ But þe prout [15]Frankes of[1] Brent,[15] Richely
16 lete arraie his[16] castel of Bedford, whiche he had of þe Kyng*us*[17] ȝifte Iohñ[18]; & he[19] helde þat castel aȝeyns Kyng Henries wille wiþ might and strengþ. ¶ And the Kyng come þider wiþ a streng power, & biseged þe castel. And þe Erchebisshop [20]Stephen of
20 Langetoñ come to þe Kyng[20] wiþ a faire co*m*pany of knyȝtȝ,[21] him forto helpe; and fra þe Ascencioun̄ vnto þe Assumpcioñ of our Lady, laste þe sege: & þo was þe castel wonne & tak, and þe Kyng lete honge aH þo þat were wiþin[22] þe castel, þat[23] wiþ her gode wille
24 [24]helde þe castel aȝeynȝ þe Kyng,[24] þat is [25]forto seyn, foure score[25] men. ¶ And þo aft*er*ward Fr*a*[n]kes[26] himself[1] was fonde in a cherche of Couentre; and *þer*e he forsuore al Engel*and* wiþ miche shame, and went[27] þo aȝeyn into his owen contre.
28 ¶ And whiles þat Kyng Henry regned, Edmund of Abyndoñ, þat was t*re*sorer of Salesbury, was consacrede[28] Erchebisshop of

[1—1] þo next sewyng[1] D. *þat* next þ° Come sewynge O.
[2] a p*ar*lement DO. [3] *om.* O. [4] þrouȝ-out[1] al D. þurgh-out al O.
[5] *om.* DO. [6] Brugh O. [7] of al DO. [8] *om.* DO.
[9—9] O. *has* seynt *struck out, and* Beket *written after* Thomas *in a different hand.*
[10] fiftiþe O. [11] *MS. has* martredomo. [12—12] nome þ° O.
[13] *leaf* 97, *back.* [14] tak D. [15—15] Faukes of Brut O. [16] the D.
[17] kynge D. [18] Iohn his fadir O. [19] *om.* D.
[20—20] of Kaunt*er*bury D. of Caunt*er*bury Maister Stephene of Langeton O.
[21] knyȝtȝ come to the kyng D. knyghtes come to þe kyng O.
[22] went into O. [23] and D. *om.* O.
[24—24] aȝeynes him hit held D. for-to hold[1] þe Castel O.
[25—25] for seyn $\overset{xx}{\text{iij}}$ *sic* O. [26] faukes O. [27] *MS.* went went.
[28] Sacrede D. Sacred[1] O.

Kant*er*bery. And þis Kyng Henry sent ouer[1] see vnto þe Erle of P*r*ouince, þat he shulde sende him his dou3t*er* into Engel*and*, þat me called Alienore, & he wolde wedde her. And so she come into Engeland[2] aft*er* C*r*istes-masse,[2] and in þe morwe[3] after seynt Hillary, þe Erchebisshop Edmunde[4] spousede ham to-gedre[5] att Kaunt*er*bery; and at þe viij[6] of seynt Hillary she was crounede at Westmynstre wiþ miche solempnite; & þ*er*e was a swete sight bituene ham, þat is to seyn, Edmund, þat was next Kyng[t] after him, his broþe*r*, [7]folour[8] of curtessi and of Larges, and Margaret, þat w*a*s afterward[e] Quene of Scotland, & Beatrice, þat was aft*er*ward Countesse of Britaign, & Kat*er*ine, þat deide maide in religiouñ.

Of þe quin3ime of godes þat were gr*a*nted for þe new chart*er*s; & of þe puruyance of[9] Oxenford. Capit*ulo* ¶ C° lviij.[10]

AND þus hit bifelle[11] þat þe lordes of[t] Engeland wolde haue so*m*me addicions mo in the Chartre of Fr*a*unchises þat þai hade of þe Kyng[t], & spoken þus bituene[12] ham; & þe Kyng gr*a*untede[13] ham alle her[r] axing[s], and made to ham ij Chartres: þat on is callede 'þe grete[14] Chartre of Fr*a*unchises' & þat op*er* is callede 'þe Chartre of þe[15] Forest[t]'; and for þe gr*a*nte of þise[16] chartres, pr*e*lates, Erles and barons, & alle þe co*m*munes of Engel*and*, 3af to þe Kyng[17] M[l] mar3[18] of siluer.

¶ When Kyng Henry hade bene[19] Kyng xliij 3ere, þat same 3ere he and[20] his lordes, Erles, and barouns of þe reaume, went to Oxenford, & ordeynede a lawe in emendement[21] of þe reaume, and[22] suore þe Kyng him-self[f], & aft*er*, alle þe lordes of þe reaume, þat þai wolde holde þat statute[23] eu*er*more; and who þat it[24] brak shulde bene[19] dede. ¶ But þe secunde 3er[e] aft*er* þat ordenance, þe Kyng, prou3 conseile of Sire Edward his sone, & of Richard his bro*þer*, þat was Erl of Cornwail, & also of op*er*e, repentede him of þat oþe þat he hade made forto holde þat lawe & ordynance, and sent to þe co*u*rt of Rome to bene assoilede of þat oth þat he hade made. ¶ And in þat 3ere next comen[25] after, was[26] grete derþ of corne in Engel*and*,

[1] ouer þ^e^ O. [2] Cristemesse O. [3] morne D. [4] *om.* D.
[5] togederes D. [6] viij^tas^ D. [7] *leaf* 98. [8] floure DO. [9] *om.* O.
[10] C lvij^o^ O. [11] felle O. [12] bitue D. [13] gr*a*ntede to D.
[14] *MS. has* grete þe, *with* þe *underlined for omission.* [15] of þ^e^ O. of R.
[16] þise ij D. þese ij O. [17] kyng a O. [18] Mark[t] O. [19] be O.
[20] & all O. [21] am*e*ndement O. [22] and ferst DO.
[23] statute for D. statut for O. [24] ham D. hem O.
[25] comyng[e] D. co*m*mynge O. [26] was the D. was þ^e^ O.

for a q*uarter* of[1] whete was worþ xxiiij s̄,[2] & þe pore peple ete netles for hung*er*, and o*þer*e wedes; & [3]deide meny M[t][4] for defaute[5] of mete.

¶ And in þe xlviij ȝere of Kyng Henries regne, biganne werr' and debate bituene him and his lordes, fo[r] enchesouñ þat he [6]hade broken þe couenauntez[6] þat were made bituene ham at Oxenford. ¶ And in þat[7] same ȝer', in Lent, was þe [8]castel of Notyngh*a*m[8] tak, and þe folc slayne þat were þ*er*in, for enchesouñ þat þai hade ordeyned wilde fire forto haue brent þe citee of Londoñ.

¶ And in the morwe[9] of May þat come next aft*er*, oppoñ seynt Panc*ra*s day, was the batail at Lewes, þat is to seyne,[10] þe Wednesday bifore seynt [11]Dunstan*us* day[11]; and[12] þ*er*e was tak, Kyng Henry [13]him-self', &[13] Sire Edward [14]his sone, & S*ir*e[14] Richard, Erl of Cornwail, & meny[15] o*þer*e lordes. ¶ And in þat same ȝere next sewyng', S*ir*e Edward, þe Kynges sone, brak out of þe[1] ward of Sire Symond' of Mountford', Erl of Leicestre, at Hereford,[16] and went to þe barons of þe Marche; and þai vnderfong' him wiþ michel[17] honour'. ¶ And in þe same tyme Gilbert of Clare,[18] Erl of Gloucestre, þat was in þe ward also of þe forsaide Symond', þrouȝ þe co*m*mandement of Kyng Henry, þat went fram him in[19] gr*e*te wraþ,[20] for enchesouñ þat he saide þat þe forsaide Gilbert was a fool in his conseile, wherfore he ordeyned him[21] so, & helde wiþ Kyng Henry. ¶ And þe [22]Sat*ur*esday next[22] after þe middes of August',[23] S*ir* Edward, þe Kyng*us* sone, descomfitede S*ir*e Symond' de[24] Mountford' at Kemworþ; but þe grete lordes þat were þ*er*e wiþ him wer' taken, þat is to seyn, Baldewyne Wake, Willi*a*m of Mounchesye,[25] and meny o*þer* gr*e*te lordes: and þe Tywesday next aft*er*, was þe bataile [26]done at[26] Euesham; & þ*er*e was quellede Sire Symond de[24] Mountford, Hughe þe Spenser', and Mountford, þat was Rauf Bassetȝ [27]fader of Drattoñ, & o*þer* meny gr*e*te Lordes. ¶ And when þis batail was doñ, alle þe[1] gentiles þat had be[28] wiþ þe

[1] *om.* D. [2] shilynges O. [3] *leaf* 98, *back.* [4] þousand O.
[5] faute D.
[6—6] wolde haue broke the couaunt D. had' broke þe Couen*a*untes O.
[7] þe O. [8—8] toune of Northamptoñ D. Toun) of Northampton) O.
[9] monþe D. monþe O. [10] say D. [11—11] Dunstaand *sic* D.
[12] *MS. has* bifore seynt and, *with* bifore seynt *underlined for omission.*
[13—13] and his sone D. [14—14] and D. his sone & O. [15] mey *sic* D]
[16] Herford' DO. [17] mych O. [18] Clarence DO.
[19] wiþ D. with O. [20] hert' D. herte O.
[21] him afterward' D. hym aft*er*ward' O. [22—22] Satirday O.
[23] Aust *sic* O. [24] of D. [25] Monchensey O. [26—26] of D.
[27] *leaf* 99. [28] bene D. ben O.

Erl Symond, were disheritede; & [1]þai ordeyned[1] ha*m* togedres,[2] and dede miche harme to[3] al þe land, for þai destroiede her enemys in al þat þai might.

¶ Of þe sege of Kemworþ; & how þe gentilmen wern dis- 4 heritede, þrouȝ conseil [4]of lordes of þe reaume of Engeland[4]; & how þai come*n*[5] aȝeyn, [4]& had her landes.[4] Ca*pitul*o C*entesim*o lix^no^.

And in þe ȝer next [6]sewyng, in May, ferst[6] day bifore þe fest 8 of Seynt Dunsta*n*, was bataile and scomfiture at Chesterfeld, of ham þat were disheritede; & *þer*e meny of ha*m* were quellede; and Robert, Erl of[7] Ferers, *þer*e was take, and also Baldewyne Wake; & Iohn de la Haye, wiþ miche[8] sorwe scaped þens. and 12 in[9] Seynt Iohnes Eve[10] þo next sewyng, bigan þe sege of þe castel of Kemworth[11]; and þe sege [12]laste to[12] Seint Thomas Eve[13] þe Postoil, in whiche day Sir Hughe Hastyng*us*[14] had þe castel forto kep, þat ȝelde vp þe castel vnto[15] þe Kyng in þis maner, þat him- 16 self and alle o*þer*e þat were wiþin þe castel shulde haue her lif and lyme, and as[16] miche þing as þai hade *þer*in, boþe hors & herneys, and foure dayes of[17] respite forto delyuer clene[18] þe castel of ham- self, & of al mane*r*[19] þing þat þai hade wiþin þe castel; & so þai 20 went fram þe castel, and þe kyng & his men went þo into þe castel. ¶ and Sir Symond þe Mounford þe ȝonge,[20] and þe Countesse his moder, were fledde ouer þe[21] see into Fr*a*unce, and *þer*e helde ham as peple þat were exilede out of Engel*and* [22]for[23] eu*er*more. ¶ And 24 sone after hit was ordeyned by the Legat Octoboñ, & by[24] o*þer*e grete lordes [25]of Engel*and*,[25] þe wisest of [26]þe land,[26] þat alle þo þat hade bene[27] aȝeyns þe Kyng, & wer disheritede, shulde haue aȝeyn her londes, and by greuous ransouñ,[28] after þat it was ordeyned; 28 and þus þai were accorded wiþ þe Kyng, þo was pees c*r*iede þrouȝ al Engel*and*; and þus þe werr was endede.

And when þis was done, þe legat toke[29] his leue at[30] þe Kyng,

[1—1] gadered D. [2] to-geder D. to-gidere O. [3] til D.
[4—4] *om.* O. [5] come DO.
[6—6] comyng þe iiij D. Comynge in Maij þe ferþe D.
[7] o D. [8] michel D. [9] on D.
[10] eve the Baptist D. Eue þe baptist O. [11] Kenilworthe O.
[12—12] lasted til O. [13] day O. [14] Hastyng DO. [15] to D.
[16] *om.* D. [17] or D. [18] clenliche D. clenlich O. [19] o*þer*e D.
[20] ȝong*er* D. yonger O. [21] *om.* DO. [22] *leaf* 99, *back.*
[23] A lambe *written in the margin at the head of this page, in faint ink.*
[24] *om.* O. [25—25] *om.* DO. [26—26] Engeland D. Engelond O.
[27] be O. [28] ransons D. [29] nome DO. [30] of D.

& of[1] the Quene, & of alle þe grete lordes of Engeland, & went þo to Rome, þe lv[2] 3ere of Kyng Henryes regne. ¶ And[3] Edward, Kyng Iohnes sone of Britaigne, Iohñ Vessy, Thomas of Clare, Roger of Clifford, Othus Grauntsoñ,[4] Robert le Brus, Iohñ of Verdoñ, & meny oþer lordes of Engel*and* & of by3ende þe see, token her way toward þe Holy Lond'; and þe[3] Kyng Henry deide in þe mene-tyme at Westm*inster*, [5]when he hade ben Kyng' lv 3er' & ix[6] wokes,[5] on[7] seynt Edmund*us* day, þe Erchebisshop of K*aunter*bery; and he[1] was ent*er*ede [5]at Westm*inster*[5] on seynt Edmundes day, þe Kyng,[8] ¶ In the 3er' of[9] Incarnaciouñ of oure Lord Ihesu Crist' M[l] CC lxxij.

[10]Prophecie of Merlyn[10] of Kyng Henry, expounede, þat was Kyng Iohnes sone. ¶ Cap*itulo* ¶ Centesi*mo* lx[mo].

ANd of þis Kyng Henry, *pro*pheciede Merlyn, & said þat 'a lombe shulde come out of Wynchestre in þe 3ere of Incarnacioñ of our Lord[11] M[t] CC &[3] xvj, wiþ trew lippis, and holynesse wryte*n* in his he*r*t.' And he saide soþ, for þe gode [12]Henry þe Kyng[12] was born[13] [14]in Wynchestre in þe 3ere abouesaide, and he spake[15] gode wordes & swet, and was an holy man, and of god conscience. ¶ And Merlin said þat 'þis Henry shulde make þe fairest place of[16] [the] world, [17]þe whiche[17] in his tyme shulde nou3t [18]fulliche bene[18] endede'; and he saide soþ, for he made þe newe cherche[19] of þe Abbay of seynt [20]Petre of[20] Westm*inster*, þat is fairer' of sight þan eny[21] cherch þat men knowe þ[22] prou3 al Cristendome; but Kyng Henry deide er þat werc were ful[23] made, & þat was grete harme. ¶ And 3itte saide Merlyn, þat 'þis Lambe shulde haue pees þe most tyme of his regne'; and he saide ful soþ, for he was ne[uer] annoiede prou3[24] werr', ne disesede in no maner' wise, til a litel bifore his deþ. ¶ And 3itte saide Merlin more in his *pro*phecie, þat 'in þe regne & ende of þe forsaide lambe, a wolf of a str*a*unge[25] land' shulde do[26] him grete[27] harme prou3 his werr'; and þat he

[1] *om.* O. [2] fyve & fyfty O. [3] *om.* D. [4] of Graunstoñ O.
[5—5] *om.* O. [6] xix D. [7] in D.
[8] kyng and had' regned' lv 3eer & xix wokes O. [9] of the D.
[10—10] And of Merlyn*us pro*phecie D. [11] lorde Ihesu crist' D.
[12—12] kyng Henry D. [13] *om.* D. bore O. [14] *leaf* 100.
[15] *MS. has* spakek. [16] of al D. [17—17] þat DO.
[18—18] bene ful D. be ful O. [19] werk' D. werke O.
[20—20] Petrus cherche at D. Petris Chirche at O.
[21] eny o*þer*e D. eny other O. [22] knowen O. [23] fully DO.
[24] with D. [25] stronge O. [26] done O. [27] miche D.

shulde at þe last be[1] maistre þrouȝ helpe of a reede ffox, þat shulde come oute of þe Northwest, and shulde him ou*er*come; & [2]þat he[2] shulde dryue him vnto þe wat*er*': and þat *pro*phecie ful wel was knowe, for wiþin a litel tyme or þe Kyng deide, Symond[3] of Mountford, Erl of Leicestre, þat was bore in Fr*a*unce, [3]bigonne aȝeynȝ[3] him stronge werre; þrouȝ whiche doyng, meny a gode bachiler was shent and dede and disheritede. ¶ And when Kyng Henry hade þe vittori at Euesh*a*m, & Symond þe Erl was slayn þrouȝ helpe & myght of Gilbert of Clare, Erl of Glou[4]cestre, þat Was in Kepyng [2]and ward[2] of þe forsaide Symund, þrouȝ ordenance of Kyng Henry, þat went aȝeyn to þe Kyng wiþ miche power, wherfore þe forsaide Symund was shent; and þat was grete harme to þe co*m*munes of Engel*a*nd, þat so gode a man was shent for truþ, & deide in charite, and for þe co*m*mune *pro*fite of þe same folc; and þ*er*for Almighty God, [5]for him haþ siþenn*us*[5] shewede meny faire[6] miracle to diu*er*se men and wy*m*men, of þe sikenesse and disesse þat þai haue had, for þe loue of him.

¶ And Merlyn also tolde [2]& saide[2] in his pr*o*phesie, þat 'after þat tyme þe lambe shulde leue no[7] while; and þan his sede shulde be[8] in str*a*unge land wiþ-out[9] pasture'; and he said soþ, for Kyng Henry leuede no while aft*er* þat[10] Symund Mountford was ded, [11]þat Kyng Henry ne[11] deide anone after him. ¶ And in þe menetyme, Sir Edward his sone, þat was þe best knyȝt of þe world of hono*ur*,[12] was þo in the Holy Land, and gete þ*er*e[13] Acres. ¶ And in [that] contre he bigate in[14] Dame Alianore his wif, Iohne of Acres his doughte*r*, þat aftirward was countesse of Gloucestre. And he made in þe Holy Land soche a viage, þat alle þe world spok[15] of his[16] knyghthode, & eu*er*y man drade hi*m*, hye and lowe, þrouȝ-out[17] al Cristendome, as þe s[t]ory [18]of him[18] [19]telleþ, as[19] afterward ȝe shul here more openly. ¶ And [20]fram the tyme þat[20] Kyng Henry deide, til þat Sire Edward was croned Kyng, alle þe gret Lordes of Engeland were as faderles children, wiþout[21] eny socou*r* þat ham might mayntene and [22]gouerne, and[22] defende aȝeynȝ her dedeliche[23] enemys.

[1] *MS.* be be. [2–2] *om.* D. [3–3] began aȝen O. [4] *leaf* 100, *back.* [5–5] haþ siþens for him D. had for hym sethenes O. [6] a faire D. a fayre O. [7] non D. [8] ben O. [9] withouten *D.* [10] when O. [11–11] for he D. [12] honour and D. [13] *om. D.* [14] on D. [15] spak D. [16] his worþinesse and D. his vyage & O [17] þrouȝ D. [18–18] *om.* O. [19–19] telles and D. [20–20] fro the tyme þat D. from þe tyme þat O. fram R. [21] wiþouten D. [22–22] *om.* D. [23] dedly O.

¶ Of Kyng Edward, þat was Kyng Henries sone. Capitulo [Centesimo] lx[1] primo.

AND after þis Kyng Henry, regned his sone Edward, þe worthiest knyght[3] of [4]þe worlde,[4] of honour, for Godes grace was in him, for he hade þe vittorie of his enemys. And as sone as Kyng Henry deide, he come to Londoñ wiþ a faire company of prelates, &[5] of Erles & barons; & al maner men dede him michelle[6] honour; for in euery place þere[7] Sir Edward rode in Londoñ, þe stretes wer' couered ouer his heued[8] wiþ riche clopes of silk, [9]wit[h] tapitȝ of[9] riche couerynge. ¶ And for ioie of his comyng, þe noble burgeys of þe cite [10]of Londoñ[10] cast out at[11] her' wyndowes, golde and siluer handes-ful,[12] in[13] tokenyng of loue and of[5] worship, seruices & reuerencez. ¶ And out of þe condit in[14] Chepe ran reed[15] wyne & white,[16] as stremes doþ[17] of water; and euery man[18] might[19] drynk þerof[20] at her' owen wille. ¶ And þis Kyng Edward was cronede and annointede as right heire of Engeland with michel[6] honoure; and after masse þe Kyng went into his palice, forto halde a real[21] fest amonges[22] ham þat him had done honour'. ¶ And when he was sette vnto his mete, the Kyng' Alisander' of Scotland come forto done him honour'[23] and reuerence wiþ a queyntise[24]: an hundred Knyghtez[25] wiþ him wel horsede and arraiede; & when þai were light done[26] of her' stedes, þai lete ham goo whider[27] þai wolde; & þai[28] þat might tak ham, tok ham[29] at her' owen wille, wiþout eny chalange. ¶ And afterward co[me] Sir' Symond', Kyng Edwardus broþer, a curteise Knyght, and a[30] gentil of renouñ, and þe Erl of Cornewaile & þe Erl of Gloucestre; and after ham come þe Erl of' [31]Penbrok and þe Erl of' Garrein; and eche of [32]ham by him-self[32] lade in [33]his hond'[33] an[34] hundred knyghtez gayliche[35] disgisede in her' Armes. ¶ And wen þai were light of her' horse,[36] þai[37] lete ham go[38] whider þat ham liked; and

[1] lxxx *sic* O. [2] *leaf* 101. [3] *MS. has* kyȝght'.
[4–4] al the worlde D. al þe world O. þe worde R. [5] *om.* D.
[6] mych O. [7] *per* þat O. [8] heed' O.
[9–9] of tapytȝ and with D. of tapites & with O. [10–10] *om.* DO.
[11] of O. [12] handfuH O. [13] in DO. & R. [14] of O.
[15] white D. whit O. [16] rede D. reed' O. [17] done D.
[18] man therof D. [19] myght þerof O. [20] *om.* DO. [21] riaH O.
[22] among D. [23] seruice O. [24] queyntise and O. [25] Knyȝt D.
[26] adoun D. adon) O. [27] whider' þat DO. [28] who D. ho O.
[29] tok' ham D. toke hem O. tok R. [30] *om.* O. [31] *leaf* 101, *back.*
[32–32] hemself O. [33–33] her' hondes D. here hand' O.
[34] a O. [35] gaylist O. [36] horses O. [37] and DO.
[38] gon O.

who þat might ham take, holde[1] ham stille, with-outen[2] eny lette. ¶ And when al þis was done, Kyng Edward dede his diligence and his might forto emende[3] and redresse þe wrongus [4]of þe reame[4] in þe beste maner þat he might, to the honour of God & holy cherche, and to mayntene his honour, and to amende þe noyaunce of þe commune peple.

How Ydoyne, þat was Lewelynus douȝter, Prince of Walis, & Aymer' þat was þe Erles broþer[5] Mounford, wer' taken[6] in þe see. Capitulo Centesimo lxij.[7]

THe ferst ȝere after[8] þat Kyng Edward was cronede, Lewelyn, Prince of Walys, sent into Fraunce to þe Erl Mountford þat,[9] þrouȝ conseile of his frendes, þe Erl shulde wedde his douȝter. And þe Erl þo avisede him of[10] þis þing', and sent aȝein to Lewelyn, & saide þat he wolde send after' his douȝter. And so he sent Aymer', his broþer, after þe damisel. And Lewelyn arraiede shippis for his doughter and for Sir' Aymer', & for her' faire company þat shulde wende wiþ her'. And þis Lewelyn dede grete wronge, for hit was couenant þat he shulde ȝeue his doughter to no maner man wiþouten[11] consel and consent of Kyng Edward. ¶ And so hit bifelle,[12] þat a burgeys of[13] Bristow come in þe see wiþ wyn lade,[14] and mette ham, & [15]ham toke[15] wiþ might & power'[16]; and anone þe bu[r]geys sent ham to þe Kyng'. ¶ And when Lewelyn herde this [17]tydynges,[18] he Was Wonder' Wroþ & eke sorweful, and [19]bigon þo[19] forto werre oppoñ Kyng Edward, & dede miche harme vnto[20] Englisshe-men, and bete adoune þe Kyngus castelles,[21] & biganne fast to destroi Kyng Edwardes lande.[22] ¶ And when tydyngus[23] come to Kyng Edward of þis þing', he went into Walys; and so miche he dede, by[24] Godes grace & his grete power', þat he drof Lewelyn vnto miche meschif, þat he fleye al maner strengþ, and come & ȝelde him to Kyng Edward, and ȝaf him 1 M[l] marȝ[25] of siluer forto haue pees, and toke þe damisel & al his[9] heritage, and made an obligacion vnto[26] Kyng Edward, and[26] come to his pa[r]lament ij tymes of þe ȝere.

[1] haue O. [2] wiþout D. withoute O. [3] amende the realme D. amende þe reaume O. [4—4] *om.* DO. [5] broþer of DO. [6] take O. [7] lxj^mo D. lxix R. [8] afterward O. [9] *om.* D. [10] oñ D. vpon O. [11] wiþout D. withoute O. [12] felle DO. [13] in D. [14] late O. [15—15] toke hem O. [16] strengthe O. [17] *leaf* 102. [18] tidyng O. [19—19] gan D. gan þ^o O. [20] vnto the D. vnto þ^e O. [21] Castell O. [22] landes O. [23] tiding' D. tydyng' O. [24] þurgh O. [25] Mark' O. [26] to DO.

¶ And þe[1] secunde ȝere after þat Kyng Edward was cronede, he helde a general parlament at Westminster, and þere he made þe statutes for[2] defaut of lawe, by commune assent of al his baronage. And at Ester nexte sewyng', þe Kyng sent by his lettre to Lewelyn, Prince of Walis, þat he shulde come to[3] parlement for his londes[4] and for his holdyng in Walys, as þe strengþ of þe lettre obligatorie witnessede. ¶ þo Lewelyn hade scorn and despite of þe Kynges commandement; & for pur wraþ biganne aȝeyn forto[5] werr' opoñ Kyng Edward, & destroied[6] [his lands]. ¶ And [7]when Kyng Edward[7] herd þis tydynges,[8] he was[9] wonder[10] wroþ toward[11] Lewelyn, & in haste assembled' his peple, and went him toward Walys, and werred so oppoñ Lewelyn þe prince, til þat he hade[12] brouȝt him in miche sorw and disese; ¶ And Lewelyn saw that his defence myght nouȝt[13] availe, and come aȝeyne, & [14]ȝelde him to þe Kyngus[15] grace, and criede him mercy, and Longe tyme knelede bifore þe Kynges feete. ¶ The Kyng had' of him pite, and commaundede him forto arise; and for his mekenesse forȝaf him his wraþ, and to him saide, [16]that 'if[16] he toke on amys aȝeyns[17] him anoþer tyme, þat he wolde destroie him for euer'-more.' ¶ Dauid, þat was Lewelynus broþer, [18]duellede þat[19] same tyme[18] wiþ[20] Kyng Edward', & was a felle man & a sotil, & enuyous, & ferre castyng', and miche tresoun þouȝt', and euermore helde him stille for[to] wete & aspie þe Kynges wille, and euermore made god semblaunt', and semede so trew þat no man myght perceyue his falsenesse.

How Lewelyn, þrouȝ enginge[21] of Dauid his broþer, Werrede aȝeyne vpoñ Kyng'[10] Edward'. Capitulo Centesimo lxiij°.

HIt was nought longe after' þat tyme, þat Kyng' Edward ne ȝaf vnto[22] Dauid, þat was Lewelynus broþer, þe lordeship of Frodesham, and made him a knyght; and so miche honour dede he neuer[23] to no man of Walys after,[12] for enchesoñ of him.

¶ Kyng Edward helde his parlament at Londoñ, when he hade done in Walys aH þat he wolde, and chaungede his mony, þat þo was[24] foule cotte & rounded'; wherfore þe commune peple pleynede

[1] in the D. in þe O. [2] in D. [3] to his D. [4] land' O.
[5] to DO. [6] destroy D. [7–7] þo kyng *sic* O. [8] tydyng O.
[9] wox D. [10] *om.* O. [11] vnto DO. [12] *om.* DO.
[13] nouȝt him D. hym not O. [14] *leaf* 102, *back.* [15] Kynge D.
[16–16] þf *sic* D. [17] aȝeyne D. aȝen O.
[18–18] þat same tyme dwelled' O. [19] the D. [20] with the D.
[21] eggyng O. [22] to DO. [23] neuer' after' D. neuere aftir O.
[24] was ful O.

ha*m* wonder' sore, so þat þe Kyng lete enquere of ham þat soche t*res*passe deden; and iij C were atteynt of soche maner' falsenes; wherfore so*m*me were honged, and some[1] draw, and afterward[2] hongede. ¶ And afte*r*ward, the Kyng' ordeynede þat þe sterlinge halfpeny and ferthinge shulde go[3] þrou3-out his lande, and co*m*mandede þat no man, fro þat day afterward', [4]3af ne feffede hous of Religiouñ with lande [5]and tenement3 wiþouten[5] special leue of þe Kyng'; and he þat dede hit,[6] shulde ben[7] punisshede att þe[2] Kynges wille, and the 3ifte shulde be for nou3t.

¶ And hit was nou3t longe after, þat Lewelyn, P*r*ince of Walys, þrou3 ticement' of Dauid his bro*þer*, and by bo*þ* here consent, þai þou3t disherite Kyng Edward in-asmiche as þai might, so þat þrou3 ham bo*þ* þe Kynges pees was broken.[8] ¶ And when Kyng Edward herde þis, anone he sent[9] his barons into Northumberland, and þe Shirreyues[10] also, þat þai shulde gone[11] & take her Viage oppoñ þe t*rai*toures[12] Lewelyn and Dauid. ¶ And wonder herde wa*s* forto wer' þo, for it [is][13] wynt*er* in Walis when in o*þer* cuntres it is somer'. And Lewelyn [14]lete ordeyn[14] and wel arraie[15] his gode castel of Swandoñ, and was þ*er*in an huge nombre of peple & plentee of vitailes, so þat Kyng Edward wist nou3t wher forto[16] entre. ¶ And wen þe Kynges men hit p*er*ceyuede, and also þe strengþ of Walys, þai lete come in þe see,[13] barges[17] and botes, and grete plankes, as meny as þai might ordeyn and haue, forto gone to the forsaide castell of Swayndoñ wiþ men on foot' and eke on hors. But þe Walshemen hade so miche peple, and were so strong', þat þai dryuen[18] þe Englisshe-men a3ein, [19]so þat þ*er*e was so miche presse of peple at the turnyng a3eyne,[19] þat þe charge & þe berdeyn[20] of ham made þe barges and botes synk'; and þ*er*e was drenchede ful meny a gode Knyght, þat is to seyn: Sir' Roge*r* of Clifford, Sir' Willia*m* of Lyndesey, þat was Sire Iohnes sone Fit3 Robert', and Si*r*e Richard Tauny, and an huge nombre of o*þer*e folc; and al was [21]þrou3 her' owen folye; for yf þai had hed gode espies, þai had' nou3t bene harmed.

[1] some were O. [2] *om.* O. [3] goñ DO.
[4] *leaf* 103. [5—5] ne tenement with-out D. ne tenement withoute O.
[6] *om.* DO. [7] be DO. [8] broke O. [9] sent his barons DO. sent R.
[10] Shirreyues D. Surreys OR. [11] go O. [12] *trai*tous D.
[13] *om.* D. [14—14] lete & ordeyned' O.
[15] array and vitaile D. arrayd & vitailled' O. [16] to D.
[17] *MS.* barges barges. [18] drof D.
[19—19] so þat þ*er*e was so miche presse of peple at the turnyng a3eyne D. so þat þ*er* was so myche prese of peple at þ^e^ turnynge a3en O. *om.* R.
[20] berthen D. berþene O. [21] *leaf* 103, *back.*

¶ When Kyngˡ Edward harde tel þat his peple were so ydrenchede,[1] he made sorwe ynow. ¶ But þo come Sirˢ Iohñ of[2] Vessy fra*m*[3] þe Kyngˡ of Aragouñ, and brouȝt with him miche[2] folc of bachilers &[2] of Gascoignes,[4] and werˢ soudioures, and duellede[5] wiþ þe Kyngˡ, and tok[6] of hi*m* wages, & wiþ him were wiþholde, & noble-men; hit were forto fiȝte, & brenne meny tounes, & quelle[7] miche peple of Walshemen, al þat þai myght take. ¶ And alle þo, wiþ pure strengþ & might, maden[8] assaute to þe castel of Swandoñ, & gete the castel.

¶ And when Dauid, þe Prynce[9] broþer, herde[10] þo tidinges,[11] he ordeinedˡ him to flight.[12] ¶ And Lewelyn þe Prynce saw þat [13]Dauid his broþer[13] was flowen, [and] [14]sore he was[14] abasshedˡ, for he had none[15] powerˢ þo, his werrˢ forto mayntene. ¶ And so Lewelyn gan forto flee, and wend wel forto[2] haue scaped; but on a[16] morwe Sir Roger þe[17] Mortymerˢ mette wiþ him oneliche[18] wiþ x knyȝtes, and sette him rounde aboute, and to him went, and smote of his heuede,[19] & presentede him vnto[20] Kyngˡ Edward: & in þis maner þe Prince of Walys was taken,[21] and his heued[22] smyten[23] ofˡ, and alle his heires disherited for euermore, þrouȝ right[24] dome of þe lordes of þe reaume.

¶ How Dauid, þat was Lewelynes broþer, Prynce of Walys,[25] was put to[26] deþ. Capitulo ¶ Centesimo lxiiijto.

DAuid, þat was [27]Lewelynus broþer,[27] þrouȝ pride [28]wende forto haue bene[28] Prince of Walis after his broþeres deth; and oppoñ þat, he sent after Walshemen to his parlement at Denbegge, and fulliche[29] made Walys [30]arise aȝeynes the Kyngˡ, and biganne to meve Werrˢ [31]aȝeyns þe Kyngˡ,[31] and dede al þe sorwe and dissese þat he myght by his powerˢ.

¶ When Kyngˡ Edward harde of þis þing,[2] he ordeyned men to pursue oppoñ him; and Dauid ferseliche[32] him defended til þat he

[1] drenchede D. drenchedˡ O. [2] *om.* D. [3] fro DO.
[4] Gascoyng *sic* D. [5] dwellyng O. [6] vndirfong O. [7] queldˡ O.
[8] made DO. [9] Prynces O. [10] herde þo D. herdˡ þat O. herde R.
[11] tydynge O. [12] flight O. fight R.
[13–13] his broþer Dauidˡ O. [14–14] was sore D. sore awas O.
[15] no DO. [16] þe O. [17] *om.* D. le O. [18] only O. [19] heed O.
[20] to D. [21] take O. [22] heed O. [23] smet D. smyte O.
[24] riȝtful O. [25] *MS.* Walys Walys. [26] to þe O.
[27–27] the Prince broþer of Walys D. þe Prynces brother of Walys O.
[28–28] went haue be O. [29] folylich O. [30] *leaf* 104.
[31–31] *om.* D. aȝen þe kyngˡ O. [32] fresly D. fersly O.

come to þe touñ of Seynt Morice; and *þer*e was Dauid take as he fley,[1] and lad to þe Kyng[e]; & þe Kyng co*m*manded þat he shulde ben[2] hongede & ydraw,[3] & smyten[4] of his heuede,[5] & [6]q*uarter* him,[6] & sende his heuede[7] to Londoñ, and þe iiij q*uar*ters sende to [8]the iiij[8] [9]chief tounes[9] of Walys, for þai shulde take ensample, & *þer*of be-war'.

¶ And aft*er*ward Kyng Edward lete c*ri*e his pees þrou3[10] Walys, & seisede al[11] the londe into his honde; and alle þe grete lordes of Walys þat were lefte alif, come þo to done[12] feaute and homage vnto[13] þe Kyng[e] as to her' Kynde Lord[e]; and þo lete Kyng Edward[e] amende þe lawes of Walys þat were[14] defectif'. ¶ And aft*er*, he sent to[15] alle þe lordes of Walys, by his lettre patent, þat[16] þai shulde co*m*me alle to his p*ar*lement. And when þai were comen,[17] þe Kyng saide [18]to ha*m* ful curtesly: "Lordyng, 3e beþ welcomen[18]; and me bihoueth 3our' conseile and 3our' helpe forto wende into Gascoigne, forto amende þe *tres*passe þat to me was *þer*e done when þat[19] y was *þer*e,[19] and forto entrete of Pees bituene þe Kyng of Aragoñ & þe Prynce of Morrey." ¶ And[20] alle þe Kynges lege[21]-me*n*, Erles & barons, consentede [22]and *gran*ted[22] *þer*eto. And þo went þe Kyng[e] into Gascoigñ, and lete amende þe *tres*passe þat him was [23]*þer*e doñ,[23] and of þe debat þat was bituene þe Kyng of Arragoñ & the Prynce of Morrey, he cessede, & made ha*m* accordede.

¶ And while the [24]Gode Kyng[e] Edward and Alianore his Quene was[25] in Gascoigne, þe gode Erl of Cornwaile was made Wardeyn of[e] Engeland[e] til þat Kyng[e] Edward come a3eyn. And þo enquerede he of his *trai*toures þat co*n*iectede falsenesse a3eyn3 him; and eche of ha*m* alle vnderfonge his[26] dome, after' þat þai hade deserued. ¶ But in the mene-tyme, while[27] Kyng[e] Edward was bi3onde þe see, to done[28] ha*m* forto make amendes[29] þat a3eyns him hade *tres*passede, a false þef[30] *trai*to*ur* þat me callede 'Rys ap Meriedok,' bigan forto make werr' a3eyns the[19] Kyng[e] Edward; and þat was for enchesouñ þat[31] S*ir*e Payn Tiptott[e] wrongefully greuede & disesede þe

[1] fled O. [2] be DO. [3] drawe O. [4] smyte DO. [5] heed[e] O. [6—6] quartred[e] O. [7] heed O. [8—8] iiij the D. [9—9] Tounys Chef O. [10] þrou3-out al D. þurgh-out al O. [11] of O. [12] do O. [13] to D. [14] weren O. [15] vn-to O. [16] *om.* O. [17] Come to þe kyng O. [18—18] ful curteysly lordynges 3e ben welcome O. [19] *om.* D. [20] Anon O. [21] lieges D. [22—22] *om.* D. [23—23] done *þer*e D. don) in Gascoigne O. [24] *leaf* 104, *back*. [25] were DO. [26] her' D. [27] while þat O. [28] do D. [29] amende D. [30] þef a O. [31] þat D. of R.

forsaid Rys ap Meriedok'. ¶ And when Kyng' Edward herd al þis, he sent by his *lettres* to Rys ap *Meriedok'*, þat he shulde bigin to[1] make non[2] werr', but þat he shulde be[3] in pees, for his loue; and when þat[4] he come aȝeyn into Engeland, he wold vndertake þe querel, and wolde done[5] amende al þat was misdone. ¶ The forsaide Rys ap *Meriedok* dispisede the Kynges *com*mandement, and sparede nouȝt forto done[5] alle þe sorwe þat he might to þe Kyng*us* men of Engeland; but anone after' he was taken,[6] and lad' to ȝorke, and þere he was drawe and hongede for his folye.[7]

Of þe redressing' þat Kyng' Edward made[8] of his Iusticeȝ & [9]of his clerkes, þat þai had done[9] for her' falsenesse[8]; & how he drof þe[10] Gewes out of Engel*and*, [11]for her' Vsurye and her' mysbileue.[11] Cap*itulo* C*entesimo* lxv^to^.[12]

WHen Kyng' Edward had duellede iij ȝer' in Gascoigne, [13]ful wel hit bicome vnto[13] him forto Wende aȝeyn into Engeland'. And when[14] he was comen[15] [16]aȝeyne, he toke[17] so meny pleyntes made to him of his Iusticeȝ and of his clerkes, þat had doñ so meny wronges & falsenesseȝ,[18] þat wonder' hit was [19]forto wete[19]; ¶ and for whiche falsenesse, Sir' Thomas of Weylond', þe Kyng*us* Iustice, forsuore Engel*and* at the Toure of Londoñ, for falsenesse þat men put oppoñ [him]; wherfore[20] he was teint,[21] & *prouede* false. ¶ And anone af*ter*, whe*n* þe Kyng had doñ his wil [22]of þe[22] Iusticeȝ, þo lete he enquere & aspie how þe Gewys desceyuede & bigilede his peple, þrouȝ here[23] synne &[24] falsenesse of[25] Vsurie; and lete ordeyn a *p*riue *par*lement amonges[26] his lordes; and þai ordeynede among*us*[26] ha*m* þat 'alle þe Gewes shulde voide Engeland', for here misbileue, & also for her' false Vsurye þat þai deden vnto Cristen men.' ¶ And forto spede and make an ende of þis þing', al þe *com*munite[27] of Engel*and* [28]ȝeue to[28] þe Kyng' þe l.[29] peny of alle here Godes moeble: and so were þe Gewis dryuen out of Engeland'; and þo went þe Gewis into Fraunce, [and there dwelled], þrouȝ þe[4] leue of Kyng' Philip þat þo was Kyng' of Fraunce.

[1] forto DO. [2] no DO. [3] by D. [4] *om.* DO. [5] do D.
[6] take O. [7] felonye DO. [8] *om.* D. [9–9] clerkes O. [10] *om.* O.
[11–11] *om.* O. [12] lxxxv^to^ *sic* O. [13–13] wel come to D. wil come to O.
[14] þo O. [15] come O. [16] *leaf* 105. [17] founde D. fond O.
[18] falsenesse D. falsnes O. [19–19] to here O.
[20] wherof D. [21] atteynt D. atteint O.
[22–22] with his D. [23] his O. [24] of DO. [25] and D. and of O.
[26] among O. [27] *com*munes D. Comunalte O.
[28–28] ȝaf vnto D. [29] xv D. fyftyþe O.

How Kyng' Edward was seisede in al þe lond of Scotland', þrou3 consent & graunt of alle þe[1] lordes of Scotland. Capitulo Centesimo ¶ l[x]vj^to.[2]

HIt was nou3t longe after, þat Alisander',[3] Kyng' of Scotland, nas dede, and' Dauid Erl of Huntyngdoñ, þat was þe Kynges bro*þer* of Scotland, axede and chalangede[4] þe Kyngdome of Scotland', for enchesoñ þat he was rightful[5] heir'. ¶ But meny grete lordes of Scotland saide 'nay'; wherfore grete debate arose bituene[6] ham & her'[7] frendes, for-asmiche as[8] þai wolde nou3t consent to his[9] coronacioñ; and in the [10]mene-tyme þe forsaid Dauid deide. ¶ And so hit bifelle *þat* þe[8] same Dauid had iij doughtres, þat wor*þ*iliche[11] wer' maried: þe ferst dought*er* was mariede to Bailoille, þe secunde to Brus, þe þridde to Hastinges. ¶ And þe forsaide Bailol & Brus chalangede [12]þe land of[12] Scot*land*; and grete debate and strif aroos bituene ham þre, for enchesouñ þat eche of ha*m* wolde haue bene[13] Kyng'. ¶ & when þe lordes of [14]þe land'[14] saw þe debate bituene[15] ha*m* þre,[16] þai come to Kyng Edward of Enge*land*, and seisede him in alle þe land' of Scotland' as [t]heir' chief' lord'. ¶ And whe*n* þe Kyng was seisede of alle[17] þe lordes of Scotland', þe forsaide Bailol, Brus, and Hastyng*us*, come*n*[18] to þe Kyng*us* court', and axede of þe Kyng' 'whiche of ham shulde be Kyng' of Scotland'.' ¶ And Kyng' Edward, þat was fulle[19] gentil and trewe, lete enquere by þe Cronicles of Scotland', and of þe gret lordes of Scotland', whiche of ha*m* was the Eldeste blood'; and it was founde þat Bailoil was þe[20] eldest',[21] and þat þe Kyng of Scotland shulde holde of the Kyng' of Engeland', and do[22] him feaute and homage. ¶ & afte*r* þat[23] þis wa*s* doñ, Bailoil went into Scotland', and þe*re* was cronede Kyng of Scotland'.

And þe same tyme was oppoñ þe see [24]grete strif[24] bituene þe[25] Englisshe-me*n* and the No[r]mannes. ¶ But oppoñ [a tyme] þe Normans arryuede[26] al at Douer'; and þe*re* þai martrede an holy man þat me calle*þ*[27] seynt Thomas of Douer'. And aftirwarde[28]

[1] þe gret D. [2] xx iiij vj^to *sic* O. [3] Alisand*er* the D.
[4] cleymede D. Claymed' O. [5] ri3t D.
[6] bituene D. betwene O. bitue R. [7] *MS. has* her' her'. [8] þat D.
[9] þis O. [10] *leaf* 105, *back*. [11] worthily O. [12–12] *om.* D.
[13] be O. [14–14] Scotland' DO. [15] of D. [16] *om.* O.
[17] *MS. has* alle Londoñ, *with* Londoñ *underlined for omission; om.* DO.
[18] come O. [19] bothe D. [20] *om.* O. [21] eldest bloode D.
[22] done O. [23] *om.* DO. [24–24] strong werr' D. stronge werre O.
[25] *om.* D. [26] arryued vp O. [27] callede D. Called' O.
[28] afte*r*wardes D.

were þe Normans quellede, þat *þer*e [1]scapede none of ham.[1] ¶ And[d] sone aft*er*ward,[2] Kyng Edward shulde lese þe Duchee of[3] [4]Gascoigñ,[5] þrou3 Kyng Philipp of Fr*a*unce, þrou3 false castyng[6] of þe Dossepere3 of þe lond[e]; wherfore Sir[r] Edmu*nd*[d], þat was sire[7] Edwardes bro*þer*, 3af vp his homage vnto[8] the Kyng[e] of Fr*a*unce. And in þat tyme þe clerkes[9] of Engel*and* [granted] vnto[10] Kyng Edward haluendel [11]holy cherche[11] godes, in helpyng[e] forto recouer[r] his land a3eyn in Gascoigñ. ¶ And þe Kyng[e] sent þider a noble company of his bachilers; and[12] himself[f] wolde haue went[13] to Portesmouthe, but he was lette þrou3 ou Maddok[e] of Walys, þat hade seisede þe castel of Swandoñ into his honde. And for þat enchesouñ the Kyng[14] *tur*nede a3eyn into Walys at C*r*istus-masse.[15] ¶ And for enchesouñ þat þe noble lordes of Engel*and* þat were sent into[16] Gascoigñ, had no[17] comfort of here lord þe[14] Kyng Edward, þai wer[r] take of Sire Charles of Fr*a*unce, þat is to seyn, Sir[r] Iohñ of Britaigne, S*i*re Robert Tiptott, S*i*re Rauf Tauny,[18] S*i*r Hughe Bardolf[f], & Sir[r] Ada*m* [19]of Cretin*gus*.[19] And ry3t at þe[14] Ascencioñ was Maddok taken[20] in Walys, and ano*þer* þat me callede Morgan; and þai were sent to þe Toure of Londoñ, and[21] þai wer[r] honget.[22]

How Sir[r] Iohñ of[14] Balol, Kyng of Scotland[d], wiþsaide his homage[23]; and of Sir[r] Thomas[24] Tourbeluile. Capit*ul*o C*entesi*mo[14] lxvij[o].[25]

AND when sir[r] Iohñ Bailol, Kyng of Scotland[d], vnderstode þat Kyng[e] Edward was werrede in Gascoigñ, to whom þe reaume of Scotland was delyuerede, falseliche[26] þo a3eyn3 his oth, wit[h]saide[27] homage, þrou3 *pro*curyng[e] of his folc, and sent to the court of Rome, þrou3 a false suggesciouñ, to bene assoiled[28] of þat oth þat he swore[29] vnto the Kyng[e][29] of Engeland[d]; and so he was, by lettres enbullede. ¶ þo chose[30] þai of Scotland[d] Dossepers forto bynime Edward his right.

[1—1] ascapede of ham neuer on D. scaped of he*m* not on O.
[2] after D. aftir O. [3] *MS.* of[f] of[f]. [4] *leaf* 106. [5] Lancastr*e* O.
[6] tysyng[e] D. [7] kyng DO. [8] to D. [9] clergy D. [10] to DO.
[11—11] of holy cherches D. of holy Cherche O. [12] and þe kyng D.
[13] goñ D. [14] *om.* D. [15] cristen-masse D. Cristemasse O.
[16] vn-to O. [17] none D. [18] Tauny and D.
[19—19] Cretyng[e] D. of Cretynge O. [20] tak D. take O.
[21] & *þer*e O. [22] biheuedede D. beheded[e] O. [23] homages O.
[24] Iohñ D. [25] *MS. has* lxviij; O. *has* lxxxvij[o]. [26] falsly O.
[27] gaynesaide his D. withsayd his O. [28] *leaf* 106, *back.*
[29—29] to Kyng Edward[d] D. [30] chosen DO.

& in þat tyme com [1]ij Cardinalles[1] fro þe court of Rome, fram þe Pope[2] Celestyne, forto trete of accorde bituene þe Kyng of Fr*a*unce & þe Kyng of Engel*and*. ¶ And as þo ij Cardinalles speken of accord, Thomas Tourbeluile, þat was take[3] at Ryouns, made feaute and homage to the Wardeyn of Parys, and to him put his ij sones in hostage,[4] for þat he þou3t[5] goñ into Engel*and* forto aspie the contrê, and telle ham whe*n* he come into Engel*and*, þat he hade broken þe Kynges prisouñ of Fr*a*unce by nyght, and saide þat he wolde done, þat alle Englisshe-me*n* and Walshe-men shulde abowe to þe Kyng of Fr*a*unce: and þis þing forto brynge to þe ende, he swore; and oppoñ þis couenaunt, dedes[6] wer' made bituene[7] ham, and þat he shulde haue by 3ere [8]an hundrede poundes[8] wor þ of land, to bryng' þis þinge[9] to þe[10] ende. ¶ This false tr*ai*t*our* toke his leue, and went þens and come into Engeland vnto[11] þe Kyng', & saide þat he was broken out of prisouñ, and þat he had put him in soche p*er*ile for his loue. Wherfore þe Kyng' coup him miche[12] þank', & ful glade was of his comyng'. ¶ And þe false þef tr*ai*toure fro þat day aspiede al the Doyng of þe Kyng' and also his Conseile, for þe Kyng' louede him ful[13] wel, & was wiþ him ful p*ri*uee. ¶ But a clerk of Engeland, þat was in the Kynges hous of Fr*a*nce, herde of þis tr*es*ouñ & of the falsenesse, and wrote to ano*þer*e[14] clerk' þat Was duellyng' wiþ þe Kyng' of Engel*and*, al how Thomas Tourbeluile hade done his false[15] coniettyng'. And al þe Conseil of Engeland was writ*en*[16] forto haue sent vnto[17] þe Kyng of Fr*a*unce; and þrou3 þe forsaide lettre þat þe cle*r*c hade sent fro Fr*a*unce, hit was founden[18] oppoñ him; wherfor he was lade to Londoñ, & drawen & honged þ*er*e for his tr*es*ouñ; and his ij sones, þat he hade put in[19] Fr*a*unce for hostages, were[20] [21]þo biheuededе.[21]

Of þe Conquest of Berwik'. Cap*itu*lo Cent*esimo* Sexag*esimo*[22] viij°.

WHen þo ij Cardinales wer' gone[23] a3eyn into F*r*ance, forto trete of[24] pees at Cambrey, þe Kyng sent þider' of his Erles and baroñs, þat is to seyn, S*i*re Edmund his bro*þer*, Erl of

[1]—[1] to ham a Cardynal D.
[2] pope *struck out, and* bisshop *written over in a different hand in* O.
[3] taken DO. [4] hostages D. [5] þoghte haue O. [6] dede D.
[7] bituene D. betwen O. bitue R. [8]—[8] a C ti O. [9] tydynge O.
[10] an D. [11] to D. [12] michel D. [13] *om.* DO. [14] *leaf* 107.
[15] false D. fals O. falso R. [16] wryte O. [17] *om.* D. [18] founde O.
[19] into O. [20] weren O. [21]—[21] biheued' D. þo byheded' O.
[22] lxxx *sic* O. [23] went DO. [24] of þe O.

Lancastre & of Leycestre, Sir' Henr' Lacy, Erl of Nichole, and William Vessy, a baron; & of o*th*ere baronettes, aboute xiiij of þe best and wisest of Engel*and*.

And in þe same tyme[1] Kyng Edward tok[2] his viage in[3] Scotl*and*, forto werr' oppon Iohn[4] Bailol, Kyng of Scotland. ¶ And Sir' Robert Roos at[5] Berwik' fley[6] fro þe Englisshe-men, & went to þe Scottes. ¶ And Kyng Edward went him toward Berwik, and bisegede þe toun; and þo þat were wiþin[7] manliche[8] ham defendede, and sette afire[9] and brent ij of Kyng Edwardes shippis, and saide, in despite and in repr*o*fe of him: "¶ Wenes[10] Kyng Edward, wiþ his longe shankes, [11]forto wyn[11] Berwik', al our' vnþankes[12]? gas pikes him! and when [13]he haþ hit, gas diche him[13]!" ¶ When Kyng Edward herd þis scorn, anone þrouȝ his mightynesse he passede ou*er* þe diches, and assailede þe toun, & [14]come to þe ȝates, and gete[15] and conquered þe toune, and, þrouȝ his gracious power', quellede xxv M' & vij C of[16] Scottes. & Kyng Edward loste of his m*en*, no m*an* of renoun saue Sir'[4] Richard of Cornwaile; and him quellede a Flemyng' out of the Reede Halle wiþ a q*ua*rel, as þe forsaid Richard dede of his helme; and co*m*mandede ha*m* forto ȝelde ha*m*, and put ham into[17] the Kyng*us* gr*a*ce; and þe Scottes wolde nouȝt; wherfore þat halle was brent, [18]and cast' adoune, and alle þo þat were within were brent.[18] And Kyng Edward loste [19]no man[19] at þat viage, of simple State,[20] but xxviij Englisshe-men; and þe wardeyn of þe castel ȝaf vp[21] þe keyes wiþouten[22] eny assaut. And þ*er*e was take,[23] Willi*am* Douglas, and Sir' Symond' Frisel; and þe Erl Patr*ik*' ȝelde him to þe pees; but Ingh*am* of Hunfreuil and Robert of[4] Brus, þat were wiþ þe[24] Kyng Edward', forsoke Kyng Edward, & helde wiþ þe Scottes: and aft*er*ward þai were take,[23] and put into prysoun; & aft*er*ward þe Kyng' forȝaf ham her' trespasse, & deliu*er*ed ham out of pr*i*soun; and þo lete Kyng Edward close in Berwik' wiþ wallis and wiþ diches. ¶ And aftirward, Robert Brus[25] went to Tyndale, and sette Woxebryge afire, and Excelh*am* and Lamerstok', and

[1] tyme þ^e O. [2] nome D. [3] into D. to O. [4] *om.* D.
[5] of DO. [6] fly O. [7] wiþ *sic* D. þ*er*in O.
[8] manly O. [9] on fir' D. [10] wende DO. [11—11] haue gete O.
[12] ovne þankes O.
[13—13] haþ so do gas dikes D. he haþ gas dikes him O.
[14] *leaf* 107, *back*. [15] gate DO. [16] *om.* O. [17] to DO.
[18—18] and . . . . brent D. & cast adon) & all þ^e þat were with-Inne were brent O. *om.* R. [19—19] no mo D. no mo men O.
[20] estate D. [21] vp þ^e Castell & O. [22] with-oute D. with *sic* O.
[23] taken D. [24] *om.* DO. [25] Rous DO.

quellede & robbit þe folc of þe contrey; and aftirward he went fro þens vnto Dunbarr'.

¶ And þe ferst Wedenesday of Marche, þe Kyng sent[1] þe Erl of Garreine, Sir' Hughe *Per*cy and Sir' Hught Spenser', [2]wiþ a faire co*m*pany, forto[2] bisege þe castel. But on þat me called Sir' Richard Siward, a *trai*to*ur*, a false man, ymagynede forto bigile[3] þe Englisshe-me*n*, & sent[4] to[5] the [6]Englisshemen, [7]ham forto desceyue,[7] and saide þat he wold ȝelde to ham þe castel if[8] þai wolde gr*a*unt him viij dayes of respite, þat he might sende & telle to Sir' Iohn̄ Bailol, Kyng' of Scotland', how [9]þe Englisshe-me*n*[9] ferde, [10]as þai[10] were' in þe castell, and sende him word' [11]'if þat he nolde[11] remeve þe sege of þe[12] Englisshe-me*n*, þat[13] [14]þai wolde þe castel ȝelde to þe[14] Englisshemen̄.' ¶ The messange*r*[15] þo come to[16] Iohn̄ Bailol, Kyng of Scotland', *þere* þat he was wiþ his host; and [17]þe messa*ger* tolde him.[18] ¶ And Sir' Iohn̄[19] tok þo his host', and[17] come in þe morwe erly toward þe castel. & Sir' Richard Syward saw him come, þat was maistre of þe Conseile and keper' of þe castel, and saide vnto þe[12] Englisshemen: "O God!" *quod* he, "now y se of folc a fair' company, and wel app*ar*ailed, y wil go[20] aȝeynes ham, & [21]wit[h] ham to[21] mete and ham[12] assaile." ¶ And Sir' Hugh þe Spenser' saw the falsenesse of him & þe *tre*souñ, and saide to him[22]: "O traito*ur*, tak and pr*o*uede,[23] ȝour' falsenesse shal nouȝt [24]ȝow availe."[24] ¶ And Hugh the Spenser'[25] com-mandede anon[25] forto bynde him, and in al haste went aȝeins[26] her' enemys, & quelled of þe Scottes[27] xxij M^{t}; for þe Scottes[28] had [29]wiþ ham[29] þat tyme no man [30]of honour,[30] saf Sir' Patrik Graham, þat manliche[31] fauȝt, and Longe tyme, and at þe last he was quelled. & þo saide þe Englisshe-men in rep*r*of of þe Scottis:

[1] sent to D. [2—2] to D. [3] desceyue D. [4] *om.* O.
[5] vnto D. [6] *leaf* 108. [7—7] in desceyte D. [8] if þat O.
[9—9] his men D. þat his men O.
[10—10] *MS. has* as þai were as þai þat; þat D.
[11—11] but if he wolde D. [12] *om.* D. [13] *MS. has* þat þat; *om.* D.
[14—14] he saide he wolde ȝelde the castel to D. þey wold' ȝeld' þe Castell to þe O.
[15] Messager O. [16] to *sire* D. to *sir* O. [17—17] *om.* O.
[18] him the message D. [19] Iohn̄ Bailol D.
[20] gone O. [21—21] ham D. with hem O.
[22] and saide to *him* D. & seyde to hym O. *om.* R.
[23] *MS. has* pr*o*uede is. [24—24] availe ȝow D. vayle ȝow O.
[25—25] anone comandet D. [26] aȝen O. [27] Scottes DO. Scotte R
[28] Scotte D. [29—29] *om.* DO.
[30—30] with ham D. with hem of honour O.
[31] was of honour & manlich he D. manly O.

¶ Thus[1] staterand Scottes,
holde y for sottes,
of wrenches vnwar',
¶ Erly in a mornyng',
in an euel tyming'
went ȝe[2] fro Dunbarr'.

¶ þo[3] þat wer' in the casteH saw þe scomfit*ure*, and[4] ȝelde[5] þe castel to[6] þe Englisshemen, and bonden her' bodyes, londes & castell*es* to[7] Kyng' Edward: and so þ*er*e[8] wer' [9]take in þe[9] castel, [10]iij Erles, and[11] vij barons, &[11] xxviij^ti^ Knyghtes, [12]& xj clerkes, and xij[13] Picardes; and alle were p*re*sentede vnto Kyng Edward',[12] and he sent ham to þe Toure of Londoñ, [14]to ben kepte[14] þ*er*e.

How Kyng' Edward, of his grete g*race*, delyu*er*ed aȝein[11] þe Scottes out of prisoñ,[15] þat were cheueteyns of the londe; and þay[16] drow ham þo[17] to þe Frenchemen, [18]þrouȝ conseil of William Waleys.[18] Capit*ulo* Cent*esimo* Sexag*esimo*[19] Nono.

WHen Kyng Edward hade made[20] þo an ende of the werre, and taken the chyueteyns of Scotland', þo come Sir' Iohñ Bailol, and ȝelde him vnto[21] Kyng Edward, and put [22]ham in[22] his g*race*; and he was lad[23] to Londoñ. And when Kyng' Edward was comen[24] þider, þai were brouȝt bifore him; and þe Kyng' axede of ham how þai wolde make amendes of þat *tres*passe and losse þat þai hade done him; and þai put ham[25] in his mercy.

¶ "Lordynges," q*uod* þe kyng, "y wille nouȝt ȝour' landes, ne none of ȝ*our* godes, but y wille þat ȝe make to me an oth, oppoñ Godes body, forto bene[26] trewe to me, and neuer after' þis tyme aȝens me bere Armes." And alle þai consentede to þe Kynges wille, and swore oppoñ Godes body, ¶ þat is to seyn, Sir'[11] Iohñ of Comyn and þe Erl of Stratthorñ,[27] þe Erl of Carryk'; and also iiij bisshop*us* vndertoke for alle[11] þe clergye; & so þe Kyng delyu*er*ede ham, and ȝaf ham saf condit to wende into her' owen Land'. ¶ And

[1] This O. [2] þai D. [3] And þo D. When þo O. [4] þai D. þei O. [5] yolden O. [6] vnto O. [7] to the D. to þe O. [8] þey O. [9—9] taken in that D. take þer in þe O. [10] *leaf* 108, *back*. [11] *om.* D. [12—12] xj clerkes and vij Picardes D. [13] vij O. [14—14] forto bene kepede D. to ben y-kept O. [15] prisouñ aȝeyne D. [16] *om.* O. [17] *om.* DO. [18—18] *om.* O. [19] lxxx *sic* O. [20] y-made O. [21] to D. [22—22] him vnto D. hym in O. [23] led O. [24] come O. [25] hym O. [26] be O. [27] Stratthorñ and D.

hit was nouȝt longe after',[1] þat þai ne risen[2] aȝeyns[3] Kyng Edward, for enchesouñ þat þai wist'[4] þat Kyng Edward*us* folc[5] were[6] take in Gascoigne, as bifore is saide; but Sir' Iohñ Bailloil, [7]Kyng' of Scotland', wiste wel þat his lande shulde haue [8]sorwe and shame[8] for her' falsenesse, and in haste went hi*m* ouer' þe see vnto[9] his owen londes, and þe*re* helde hi*m*, and come neue*r*[10] aȝeyne. Wherfore þe Scottes chosen to bene[11] her' kyng', William Walis, a rybaude, an harlot, come*n* vp of nouȝt, and miche harme dede to þe Englisshemen.

¶ And Kyng Edward þouȝt how he myght haue deliue*r*ance of his peple þat were take'[12] in Gascoigne, and in hast went ou*er* þe see into Flaundres, forto werr' oppoñ þe Kyng' of Fr*a*unce. And þe Erl of Flaundres vnderfonge him wiþ michel[13] honour', and gr*a*untede him alle his landes at his owen wille. ¶ And when þe Kyng' of[14] Fraunce herde telle þat þe Kyng of Engeland' was arryuede in Flaundres, and come wiþ an huge power', him forto destroye, he pr*a*yede him of trewes for ij ȝere, so þat Englisshe marchauntȝ, and also Frenche, myȝt safliche[15] goñ in boþe sides. ¶ The Kyng Edward grantede hit, so þat he miȝt[16] haue his men out of prisouñ þat were take[11] in Gascoigne; and þe Kyng of Fr*a*unce gr*a*untede anone; and so þai wer' Delyu*e*rede.

¶ And in the same tyme þe[17] Scottes sent by þe Bisshoþ of seynt Andrewes into Fr*a*unce, to þe Kyng', and to Sir' Charles, his broþ*er*, þat Sir' Charles shulde come wiþ his power', & þai [18]of Scotland'[18] wolde come wiþ heir', and so þai shulde gone into England', þat lande forto destroye, fr*a*m Scotland', til þat þai [19]come into[19] Kent. And þe Scottes truste[20] ful[11] miche oppon[21] þe Frensshe-me*n*; but of þat þing þai hade no man*er* gr*a*unt. and [22]noþeles þe Scottes bigoñ to robbe and quelle in Northumberlond', and dede[23] miche harme.

How William Wallis lete slee Sir' Hughe of Cressingham; and of þe batail of Foukirk'. Capit*ulo* Cent*esimo* Septuagesimo.[24]

[1] afterward' D. [2] arysen O. [3] aȝeyn D. aȝen O.
[4] wist wel D. wist weel O. [5] men D. [6] was O.
[7] *leaf* 109. [8—8] shame and. sorwe D. [9] to DO. [10] neuer more D.
[11] *om.* DO. [12] *om.* D. [13] mycħ O.
[14] *MS. has* of Engel*and*, *with* Engel*and underlined for omission.*
[15] safly D. sauely O. [16] must O.
[17] *MS. has* þe kyng, *with* kyng *underlined for omission.*
[18—18] *om.* D. [19—19] comen to D. come to O. [20] trist O.
[21] to O. [22] *leaf* 109, *back.* [23] deden O.
[24] *MS.* Octogesimo; Octogesimo D. lxxxx^o^ O.

WHen þis tydyng was comen[1] to Kyng Edward', þat William Walis hade ordeynede soche a stronge power', and þat al Scotland' to him was entendant, and redy to quelle Englisshemen & destroye his[2] lande, he was sore annoied', and sent anone by his[3] *lettres*[4] to þe Erl of Gerreiñ, and to Sir' Henry Percy and to Sir' William Latomer', and to[5] Sir' Hugh of Cressingham his Tresorer',[6] þat þai shulde take power', and wende into Northumberlond', & so forþ into Scotland', forto kepe þe contres. ¶ And when William Waleys herde of her' comyng', he gañ[7] forto flee; &[8] Englisshe-men him[9] folwede, and drof him til þat he come to Streuelyñ; & *þer*e he helde him in þe castell; and þe Walshemen eu*er*y day ham[10] asc*r*iede & manacede, & dede al þe despite þat þai myght.[11] ¶ So þat þe Englisshe-men[12] oppoñ a tyme in a morwenyng',[13] went out fr*am*[14] þe castel þe mountance[15] of x mile, and passede ouer' a bruge; and' William Walys come wiþ a stronge power', and drof ha*m* abak', for þe Englisshe-men hade a3eynes him þo no myght, but fledde; and þo þat might take þe brugge scapede. ¶ But Sir' Hughe, þe Kyng*us* Tresorer', *þer*e w*as* slayn, and meny o*þer*e also; wherfore was made miche[16] sorwe.

Þo hade Kyng Edward spedde alle his nedes in Flaundres, ¶ and was comyng[17] a3eyn into Engeland', [18]and in haste toke[19] his Way toward[20] Scotland', and come þid*er* at þe Ascencioun̄; and al þat he founde, he sette [21]on fire[21] & brent'. But þe pore peple of Scotland' come to him wond*er* þik', and pr*a*yed him, for Godes loue, [22]þat he wolde[22] haue[3] on[23] ha*m*[24] mercy and pitee; wherfore þe Kyng þo co*m*mandet þat no m*an* shulde done[25] harme to ha*m* þat were 3olden[26] to ham, ne to no m*an* of ordre, ne to no[27] hous of religioñ, ne no maner' cherche; ¶ But lete aspie[28] al þat he myght, where þat he myght fynde eny of his enemys. Þo come an[29] espie to þe Kyng', and tolde wher'[30] þe Scottes were assembled' forto abide bataile.

And on seynt Marie Magdaleyn*us*[31] day, þe Kyng' come to

[1] come O. [2] the D. þe O. [3] *om.* O. [4] lettre D. [5] *om.* D. [6] fader & O. [7] bygan O. [8] and the D. & þe O. [9] he*m* O. [10] him D. hym O. [11] mi3ten D. [12] *MS. has* Englisshemen went. [13] mornyng' DO. [14] fro D. [15] montyn*a*unce O. [16] michel D. [17] comen D. come O. [18] *leaf* 110. [19] nome O. [20] into O. [21—21] afere O. [22—22] *MS. has* þat he wolde þat he wolde. [23] of D. [24] he*m* haue O. [25] do D. [26] 3olde O. [27] non O. [28] aspye in O. [29] *om.* DO. [30] wher þat D. [31] Magdaleyn D. Maugdeleyne O.

Foukirk', and ȝaf bataile to þe Scottes; and at þat bataiH *þere*[1] wer' quellede of[2] Scottes [3]xxxiij M^l^,[4] and[3] of Englisshemen but xxviij[5] and no mo; of þe whiche was a worþi Knyght' slayn, þat *was* a knyght[6] of the HospitaH,[6] þat me called Frere Briañ Iay; for, when William Waleys fley fram þe bataile, þat[7] same Frere Briañ him pursuede fersly[8]; and as his hors[4] ran, hit sterte into a mere [9]of marreys[9] vp to þe bely; and William Waleys *turnede* þo aȝeyn, and *þere* quellede þe forsaide Briañ; and þat was miche harme. ¶ And while Kyng Edward went þrouȝ Scotland forto enquere if[10] he might fynde eny of his enemys; and in þat lande he duellede as[11] longe as him likede, and *þere* was none enemy þat derst him abide.

¶ And so[12] aftirward Kyng Edward went to Southamptoñ, for he wolde nouȝt abide in Scotland in[13] wynter sesoñ, for esement of his peple. ¶ And when he come to Londoñ, he lete amende meny misdedes þat were done aȝeynes [14]his pees Whiles[15] þat He Was in Flaundres.

Of þe laste mariage of Kyng Edward; and how he went þe þridde[16] tyme into Scotland. *Capitulo Centesimo* Septuagesimo[17] *primo*.

ANd after',[18] hit was ordeynede þrouȝ[19] þe court of Rome, þat Kyng Edward shulde wedde Dame Margarete, Kyng Philippus suster of France; and þe Erchebisshop Robert of Wynchelse spousede ham togedre; þrouȝ whiche mariage pees was made bituene Kyng Edward of Engeland and Kyng' Philippe of Fraunce. ¶ Kyng[20] Edward[21] went þo[4] þe þridde[16] tyme into Scotland; and þo, with-inne þe ferst ȝere, he had enfamenede þe land so þat *þere* ne[21] lefte nouȝt on [22]but þai[22] come to[23] his mercy, saf þo *þat* were in þe castel of Estreuelyn, þat *was*[24] vitailede & storede[25] for vij ȝere.

[1] *om.* DO. [2] of the D. [3—3] xxx M^l^ iij M^l^ & O. [4] *om.* D.
[5] Englisshe-men but xxviij D. Englessh-men but xxviij O. Englisshemen R.
[6—6] an hospitaler' D. an hospyteler O. [7] þe D.
[8] fersliche D. [9—9] *om.* O. [10] if *þat* O.
[11] alse D. [12] sone DO.
[13] þe O. [14] *leaf* 110, *back*. [15] and his lawe while DO.
[16] iij O. [17] *MS. has* Ottog*esimo*; iiij D. lxxxx O.
[18] afterward D aftirward O. [19] by O. [20] And Kyng D.
[21] *om.* O. [22—22] þat þai ne D. þat þey ne O. [23] vn-to O.
[24] was wel D. was weel O. [25] astorede D. astored O.

How þe castel of Estreuelyn, was bisegede. ¶ Ca*pitulo* Cent*esimo* lxx[1] se*cun*do.

Kyng[t] Edward come with an huge powe[r] to þe castel of Estreuelyn, and bisegede þe casteH; but hit litil availede, for he myght do[2] the Scottes none harme, for þe castel was so stronge an[d] wel Kepte.[3] ¶ And Kyng[t] Edward saw þat, & þou3t him oppoñ a queyntise, and lete [4]make þe*re* anone[4] ij peire of hye Galwes bifore þe toure of þe casteH, and made his oth þat, as meny as were in[5] þe casteH, [6]were he[6] Erle or baroñ, and he were take wiþ strengþ, but if he wolde þe[7] ra*þer* him 3elde, he shulde bene hongede on[8] þo Galwes. ¶ And when þo þat were in þe castel herde þis, þai come and 3elde ham alle to þe Kynges mercy & *grace*; and þe Kyng[t] for3af ha*m* al his maletalent.[9] And þe*re* were alle þe grete lordes of[10] [11]Scotland sworne to Kyng[t] Edward, þat þai shulde come to Londoñ to eue*ry* pa*rlement*, and shulde stonde to his ordenaunce.

[12]How Troillebastoun[12] was ferste ordeynede. Cap*itulo* C*entesimo* lxx[13] iij°.

THis[14] Kyng[t] Edward went þens to Londoñ, and wende haue hade [15]rest and[15] pees of his were, wiþ whiche werre he was occupiede xx^ti^ 3er, þat is to seyn, in Walys, in Gascoigñ, and in Scotland, and þou3t how he myght recoue*re* his *tre*soure þat he hade spendede about his werre, and lete enquere þrou3 þe reaume of alle þe[16] mistakyng*us* and wrong*us* done þrou3 misdoers in[17] Engeland, of alle þe tyme þat he hade bene out of his realme, þat [18]me callede[18] 'Troylebastoñ'; and ordeynede þe*r*to Iustices. And in þis mane*r* þe Kyng[t] recoue*re*d[19] *tre*soure[20] wiþout noumbre. ¶ And his encheson was, for he[21] hade þou3t [22]forto haue went into[22] þe Holy Land forto [23]haue werrede[23] oppon Godes enemys, for enchesoun þat he was croisede longe tyme bifore; and noþeles, þat law þat he had ordeynede dede miche gode þrou3 al Engeland, to ham þat were

[1] MS. xx iiij; xx iiij D. lxxxx O. [2] done O. [3] ykept O.
[4–4] make anone þe*re* D. amake anon þere O. [5] with-Inne O.
[6–6] whedir he were O. [7] *om.* O. [8] oppon D.
[9] maletalent DO. ale talent R.
[10] *MS. has* of engel *with* engel *underlined for omission.* [11] *leaf* 111.
[12–12] Of Traillebastoñ how it D. [13] *MS. has* xx iiij; xx iiij D.
[14] The D. þe O. [15–15] *om.* D. [16] *om.* DO. [17] of O.
[18–18] men calles D. me*n* Called O. [19] recouerede þo D. [20] good O.
[21] *om.* D. [22–22] goñ to D. [23–23] were D. werre O.

mysbode; for þo þat *tre*spassede were[1] wel chastisede, and afterward þe meker and þe[2] bettre; and þe pore comunes were in þe[3] more reste and in[4] pees.

¶ And[5] þe same tyme Kyng Edward enprisonede his owen sone Edward, for encheson þat Walt*er* of Langetoñ, Bisshop of Chestre, þat was þe Kyng*us tre*sorer, hade made oppoñ him *com*pleynt, and saide þat þe forsaide Edward, þrouȝ conseil and *pro*curme*n*t of on, Piers of Gauastoñ, a squyer of Gascoigne, [6]had broke[6] þe parkeȝ of þe forsaide bisshop*e*, and þe forsaide Piers conseilede and ladde þe same Edward, þe kynges sone; and for þis cause [7]Kyng Edward exilede him[8] out of Engeland for eu*er*more.

Of þe dēþ of William Waleys, þe false t*rai*toure. Cap*itulo* Centesim*o* lxxiiij.

And when þis god Kyng Edward [9]hade his enemys ouercome[9] in Walis, Gascoigñ, & in Scotland, and destroyede his t*rai*toures, but[10] oneliche[11] þat[12] rybaude William Waleys, þat neuer to þe Kyng wolde him ȝelde. and at þe laste, in þe toune of Seynt Dominic, in þe ȝer of Kyng Edward*us* regne xxxiij ȝer, þat false t*rai*toure was take, and p*re*sentede to þe Kyng; saf þe Kyng wolde nouȝt seen[13] him, but sent him to Londoñ to vnderfonge his iuge[ment].[14] And on Seynt Bartholomeus Eve he was honget and drawe, and his [15]heuede smyten[15] of, & his bowailes take[16] out [17]of his body,[17] and brent, and his body q*ua*rtarede & sent to iij[18] þe best tounes of[19] Scotland, and his heued[20] sette oppoñ a spere, and sette oppoñ Londoñ Brugge, in sample[21] þat þe Scottes shulde haue in mynde forto bere ham amys aȝeynȝ her[22] lorde eftesones.

How þe Scottes come to Kyng Edward, forto amende here t*re*spasse þat þai had done aȝeyns him. [Capitulo] Centesim*o* lxxv^to^.[23]

And at Michelmasse þo next coming, Kyng Edward helde his p*ar*lement atte Westmynstre; and þider come þe Scottes, þat is to seyn, þe Bisshoþ of Seynt Andrew*us*,[24] Robert þe Brus, Erl

[1] weren O [2] *om.* D. [3] *om.* O. [4] *om.* DO. [5] and in D.
[6–6] hade broke DO. *om.* R. [7] *leaf* 111, *back.*
[8] his sone O. [9–9] *om.* D. [10] saf D.
[11] only O. [12] the D. [13] see D. se O. [14] Iugement þere D.
[15–15] heed smyte O. [16] taken D. [17–17] *om.* D.
[18] iiij of D. foure O. [19] in D. [20] heed O. [21] ensample DO.
[22] her liege D. her lege O. [23] lxxxv^to^ O. [24] Andrew O.

of Carrik, Symond[1] Friseℍ, Iohñ,[2] Erl of Atheℍ[3]; and þai were accordede with[4] þe kyng', [5]and' bonden[5] by her'[6] oth sworñ, þat after,[7] if eny of ham [8]misbare ham[8] aȝeyns Kyng Edward, þat þai shulde bene[9] disheritede for euermore. And when here pees was þus made, þai toke her' leue priueliche,[10] [11]and went Home into Here owen[12] contree.

How Robert þe Brus chalanged Scotland'. Capitulo Centesimo lxxvj^to^.[13]

And after,[14] Robert[15] þe Brus, Erl of Karrik, sent by his lettre to þe Erles and barons of Scotland', þat þai shulde come to him to Scone, in the morwen[16] aftir' þe concepciouñ[17] of oure Lady, for hye nedes of þe land'; and þe lordes come at þe day assignede. ¶ And at þe same day, Sir' Robert þe Brus saide: "Faire lordes! ful wel ȝe wete[18] *þat* in my *per*sone du[e]lleþ þe ryght of þe reaume[19] of Scotland'; and as ȝe weteþ[20] wel, as ryȝtful heir', siþ [21]þat Sir'[21] Iohñ Bailoil, þat was our' Kyng', [22]haþ vs[22] forsak', & also lefte[23] his lande. ¶ And þouȝ it [24]so be[24] þat Kyng Edward of Engel*and*, wiþ wrongeful power' haþ made me [25]to hi*m*[25] assent aȝeyns my wille,—yf þat ȝe wil *gr*ant þat y be Kyng' of Scotl*and*, y shal kepe ȝow aȝeyns Kyng' Edward & aȝeyns alle maner'[26] men." And wiþ þat worde, þe Abbot of Scone aros,[27] and bifore ham alle saide, þat hit was resouñ forto helpe him, and þe lande to kepe and defende; and þo saide, in *pr*esence of ham alle, þat he wolde [28]ȝeue him[28] a þousand' pound'[29] forto mayntene þat land'. and alle þe[30] o*þer*e *gr*antede þe[31] lande to him, and wiþ hir' power' him forto helpe, and defiede Kyng' Edward of Engel*and*, and saide þ*at* Rob*ert* þe Brus shulde bene[32] Kyng of' Scotland'.

How Sire Iohñ[33] Comyn gaynesaide þe *c*rounyng' of[34] [35]Robert þe[35] Brus. Capitulo Centesimo [36]Septuag*esimo* Septimo.[36]

[1] Symond' the D. Symo*n*d þe O. [2] Iohn þe O. [3] Athels O.
[4] to O. [5—5] and bonden and D. & bound' & O. bonden R.
[6] *om.* O. [7] afterwarde D. aftirward' O. [8—8] bere hem amys O.
[9] be DO. [10] *pr*iuelys D. *pr*euyly O. [11] *leaf* 112.
[12] *om.* DO. [13] lxxxxvj^to^ O. [14] after þis D. aftir þis O.
[15] ymage *sic* O. [16] morwe D. morne O. [17] Ascencioun D.
[18] weteþ O. [19] me *sic* D. [20] wote D. weten O. [21—21] *om.* O.
[22—22] vs hath DO. [23] lost' D. [24—24] be so O. [25—25] his O.
[26] man*er* of O. [27] roos vp D. [28—28] hym ȝeue O. [29] ti O.
[30] *om.* D. [31] þat O. [32] be D. [33] Iohn of O.
[34] & O. [35—35] sir Rob*ert* D. [36—36] iiij xx vij^o^ O.

"LOrdynges," saide Sir' Iohñ of Comyñ, "þenketh oppoñ þe treuthe and þe[1] oth þat ȝe[2] made vnto Kyng' [3]Edward of Engeland' ! and as tochyng[4] myself, y Wil nouȝt breke myn oth for no man." And so he went fram[5] þat company at þat tyme; wherfore Robert þe Brus, and alle þat to him consentede, were wonder' wroþe, & þo[6] manacede Sir' Iohñ of[1] Comyñ. ¶ þo ordeynede þai[7] anoþer conseil at Dumfrys, to þe whiche come þe forsaide Sir' Iohñ Comyn, [8]and duellede[8] but ij mile fram[5] Dunfris, þere þat he was wont[9] to soiourne and abide.

How Sir' Iohñ Comyn was *traiter*ously slayn.[10] Ca*pitul*o Cent*esim*o lxxviij°.[11]

WHen[12] Robert þe Brus wiste þat al þe *gre*te[13] of Scotland' were comen[14] to Scone, saf Sir' Iohñ Comyn, þat soiourned þo neyȝ Scone, he sent after' hi*m* specialiche,[15] þat Sir' Iohñ Comen shulde com & speke wiþ him; and oppoñ þat' he sent after' him[1] Sir' Iohñ Comyn*us* ij breþ*er*ne, and *prai*ede hi*m* forto[1] come[16] and speke wiþ him atte þe Gray Freres at[17] Donfris; and þat was þe Thoresday after Candelmasse; & Sir' Iohñ *gra*untede ham forto wende wiþ ham. And when he had[18] herde masse, he toke a sop and drank', &[18] afterwarde he bistrode his palfray and rode his way, and so come to Dunfris. & Rob*ert*[19] Bruys sawe him co*mm*e atte a wyndow, as he was in his chaumbre, and þo made ioye ynow, & come aȝeyn[20] him, and halsed[21] hi*m* aboute þe nek', & made wiþ him gode semblaunt. And when alle þe Erles & barons of Scotland were p*re*sent, Robert þe Brus spake and saide: "Sires," q*uod* he, "ȝe weten[22] wel the[23] enchesouñ of þis comyng, & wherfore hit is: if þat ȝe wil Graunt þat Y mote[24] be Kyng of Scotl*and*, [25] [26]as ryght heire of the londe." And al þe lordes þat were *þere*, saide wiþ on[27] voys þat he shulde bene[28] crouned Kyng' of Scotl*and*,[26] and þat þai wolde him help and mayntene aȝeyns al maner' men on lif; and for him, if it wer' nede, dye. ¶ þe Gentil knyȝt þo,

[1] *om.* D. [2] ȝe DO. he R. [3] *leaf* 112, *back.* [4] *MS.* tothyng'.
[5] fro O. [6] so O. [7] þey þo O.
[8–8] he duelled no D. dwelled' not O. [9] woned O. [10] queld' O.
[11] xx iiij xviij° O. [12] Whenne þat O. [13] gret lordes D. [14] come O.
[15] specially O. [16] kepe O. [17] of O. [18] *om.* O.
[19] Robert þe D. Robert þe O. [20] aȝeynes D. aȝens O.
[21] collede D. colled O. [22] wete D.
[23] the D. þe O. *om.* R. [24] most' D. [25] *leaf* 113.
[26–26] *om.* D. [27] o O. [28] be O.

Sir[1] Iohñ of Comyn, ansuerede & saide: "*cer*tes, neuer for me, ne forto haue of me as miche[2] helpe as þe value of a botouñ; for, þat oth þat y haue made to Kyng Edward of Engeland, y shal holde þe[1] while my lif laste.[3]" And with þat worde he went fro þe co*m*pany, and wolde haue went oppoñ his palfray. And Robert the Brus pursuede him wiþ a drawen[4] sworde, and bare him þrouȝ the body, and Sir Iohñ Comyn felle [5]adoune vnto[5] the Erþe. ¶ But when Roger, þat was Sir Iohñ Comines broþer, saw þe falsenesse, he[6] stert vp[7] to Sir Robert the Brus, and smote him wiþ a knyf; but þe false *trai*toure was armed vnder, so þat þe stroke myght done *him* none harme; and so miche helpe come aboute Sir[8] Robert the Brus, so þat Roger Comyn was *þer*e quellede and alto-hewe into smale pices. ¶ And Robert þe Brus *tur*nede aȝeyn *þer*e þat Sir Iohñ Comyn þe noble Baroñ lay [9]woundede and pynede[9] towardes[10] his deþ, bisides þe hye au*ter* in the cherche of þe Gray Freres, and saide vnto Sir Iohñ Comyn: "O *trai*tour! þow shalt be[11] dede, & neuer after lette myn avauncement"; and shooke his suorde at þe[1] hye auter, and smote him on[12] the heuede,[13] þat þe brayn felle adoune[14] oppoñ[15] þe Gronde, and þe blode stert vnto[16] the wallis; and ȝitte into þis Day that[17] blode [18]is seyne *þer*e,[8] and[19] no Wat*er* may wasshe it away; and so deide þat noble knyȝt in holy cherche.

How Robert þe B[r]us was *cr*onede, [20]and made[20] Kyng of Scotland. Cap*itul*o C*entesim*o lxxix°.[21]

ANd when þe intruso*ur*[22] Robert þe Brus saw þat no ma*n* þo wolde lete his coronaciouñ, he commandede alle ha*m* þat were of power shulde come to[23] his *cr*ounyng,[24] to Seynt [25]Iohnes touñ[25] in Scotland. ¶ & so hit bifelle þat on[1] oure Lady Day, þe[26] Anunciaciouñ, þe Bisshop of Glascowe[27] and þe Bisshoþ of Seynt Andrew*us*[28] *cr*ounede [29]for her Kyng, Rob*er*t the Brus,[29] in Seynt Iohnes toune,[30] & made him Kyng. And anone after he

[1] *om.* O. [2] michel D. [3] lasteþ O. [4] draw DO.
[5–5] douñ to D. doun vnto O. [6] *all three MSS. have* and.
[7] *om.* DO. [8] *om.* D. [9–9] wounde and pynyng D. [10] towardꝭ O.
[11] bene D. [12] oppoñ D. [13] heedꝭ O. [14] doun O. [15] to D.
[16] an hye oppoñ D. on hye in-to O. [17] the D. [18] *leaf* 113, *back.*
[19] þat O. [20–20] *om.* O. [21] iiij ix° O.
[22] *trai*toure D. traytour O. [23] vnto O. [24] Corounynge O.
[25–25] Iohñ O. [26] of O. [27] Glastoñ DO. [28] Andrew O.
[29–29] for her Kyng Rob*er*t the Brus D. for her Kyng Rob*er*t þe Brus O. herꝭ Robert R.
[30] *MS. has* toune toune, *with the second* toune *underlined for omission.*

drof out al[1] þe Englisshe-men out[1] of Scotland; & þai fledde,[2] and come & pleynede vnto[3] Kyng Edward, how Robert þe Brus hadde dryuen[4] ham out of the lande, & disherite[5] ham.

How Kyng Edwarde dobbit at Westm*inster* xiiij score knyghtes. Capit*ulo* Cent*esimo* Ottogesimo.

ANd when Kyng Edward herde of þis meschief, he[6] suore þat he wolde þerof bene avenged, and saide þat 'alle þe traitours[7] of Scotland shulde bene[8] hongede and draw, and þat þai shulde neuer bene[9] raunsonede.' ¶ And Kyng Edward þouȝt oppoñ þis falsenesse þat þe Scottes hade done, and sende[10] after alle [11]þe bachilers[11] of Engeland, þat þai shulde come to Londoñ at Whitsontyde; and he dobbit[12] at Westminster iiij[xx][13] knyȝtes.

¶ þo ordeynede him þe noble Kyng Edward forto wende into Scotland, to werr oppoñ Robert þe Brus; and sent bifore him[1] into Scotland [14]Sir Aymer of[15] Valance, Erl of Penbrok, & Sir Henry Percy,[16] wiþ a fair company, þat pursewede þe Scottes and brenede[17] tounes & castilles; & afterwarde come the Kyng himself, wiþ Erles[18] and barons a fair companye.

How Robert þe Brus was scomfitede in bataile; and how[19] Symond Frisel was[19] slayñ. Capitulo Centesimo Ottogesimo primo.

THe[20] Fryday next bifore[21] þe Assumpcioñ of our Lady, Kyng Edward mette Robert the[1] Brus bisides Seynt Iohnes touñ in Scotland, & with his company[22]; of þe[23] whiche company[1] Kyng Edward quelled vij Mt. ¶ When Robert þe Brus saw þis meschief, he[24] gan to flee, and hudde[25] him þat men myght nouȝt him fynde; but Sir Symond Frisel pursuede him so sore, so[23] þat he turnede[26] & abode bataile, for he was a worþi[27] knyȝt and a bolde of body[27]; and þe Englisshe-men pursuede him[28] sore on[29] euery

[1] *om.* O. [2] fley D. [3] to D. [4] dyve *sic* O. [5] disheritede D.
[6] *MS. has* he sor *with* sor *underlined for omission.*
[7] traitoures D. Traytours O. traitors R. [8] be O. [9] be DO.
[10] sent DO. [11–11] bachelrye D. þe Bachelrye O.
[12] tobbet D. dubbed O. [13] fourtene score DO. [14] *leaf* 114.
[15] *om.* D. þe O. [16] Percy barouñ D. Percy Baroñ O. [17] brent O.
[18] erler *sic* D. [19] *om.* O. [20] O the O.
[21] fefore *sic* O. [22] Cumpanye Kyng Edward O. [23] *om.* D.
[24] and DO. [25] hyd O. [26] turnede aȝeyne D. turned aȝen O.
[27–27] Knyȝt of body and bold D. [28] hym euere O. [29] in O.

side, and quellede þe stede þat Sir Symond Frisell roode oppoñ; and þai toke him and lade him into[1] þe hoste. ¶ And Sir Symond bigan forto flat*er* and speke faire, and saide: "lordes, y shal ȝeue ȝow iiij M^r^ mar*k*[2] of Siluer, and myn[3] horse and myn[3] herneys, and all myn[3] armure, and bicome a begg*er*." þo ansuerede Theobalde of Peuenes,[4] þat was þe Kyng*us* Archir, "Now God me so helpe, hit is for nouȝt þat þow spexte; for alle þe golde of Engel*and* y wolde [5]nouȝt lete þe[5] gone[6] with-out co*m*maundement of Kyng Edward." And þo was he lade to þe Kyng[7]; but[8] þe Kyng wolde nouȝt [9]see him, but co*m*maundede [10]him to ben ledde[10] away to haue his dome at[11] Londoñ. In oure Ladies Eve, þe[12] Natiuitie, he was hongede[13] and drawe, & his[14] [15]heuede smyten[15] of, and hongede aȝein wiþ cheynes of yren oppoñ þe Galwes; & his heuede[16] was sette[12] oppoñ Londoñ Brugge vppoñ a spere; and aȝeyns Cristenmasse[17] þe body was brent, for enchesouñ þat þe men þat kepte þe body by nyght, saw meny deueles raumpande wiþ yren crokes rynnyng oppoñ þe galwes, and horribliche t*ur*mentede þe body; and meny þat ha*m* sawe, anone after þai deide for drede, or woxen made, or sore sikenesse þai had. ¶ And in þat bataile was taken[18] þe Bisshop of Glascowe,[19] þe Bisshop*e* of Seynt Andrewes,[20] þe Abbot of Scone, all armede wiþ yren as me*n* of Armes, &[21] false t*rai*toures and false p*re*latis aȝeyns her oth; and þai were brouȝt to þe Kyng, and þe Kyng sent ham to þe Pope of Rome, þat he shulde done[22] wiþ ham what his wille were.

How Iohñ, Erl of Atheles, was take, & put to[23] deþ. Cap*itul*o ¶ Cent*esimo* Ottog*esimo* sec*un*do.

AND at þat bataile fledde[24] Sir*e* Iohñ [25]Erl of Ateles,[25] and went into a cherche, & þ*er*e hudde[26] him for drede. But he miȝt haue þ*er*e no refute, for enchesouñ þat þe cherche was ent*er*ditede prouȝ a gen*er*al sentence; and in þe same cherche he was take.[27] ¶ And þis Sir Iohñ wende wel haue scapede fram[28] þe deth, for enchesouñ þat he cleymede kynrede of Kyng Edward. And

[1] to D. vnto O. [2] Mark O. [3] my O.
[4] *MS. has* Peueneseye, *with* eye *underlined for omission.*
[5–5] þe not lete O. [6] go DO. [7] *om.* O. [8] and DO.
[9] *leaf* 114, *back.* [10–10] to lede him D. to lede hym O. [11] to O.
[12] *om.* D. [13] honge O. [14] h *sic* D. [15–15] hed smyte O.
[16] heed O. [17] Cristemasse O. [18] take O. [19] Bastoñ DO.
[20] Andrewes and D. Andrews and O. [21] as O. [22] do D.
[23] to þe D. [24] fley D. flye O. [25–25] of Atheles Erle O.
[26] hid O. [27] taken D. [28] fro D.

[1]Kyng' Edward wolde[1] no longer [2]bene taried[2] of his traitoures, and sent him to Londoñ in haste; & þere he [3]was[4] Hongede, and his[5] [6]Heuede smyten[6] of, and his body brent' [7]al into smal[7] asshes. ¶ But at þe prayer' of þe[8] Quene Margarete, for enchesouñ þat he cleymede [9]of Kyng Edward' kynrede,[9] his drawyng' [10]was forȝeuen him.[10]

How Iohñ, þat was [11]William Waleys broþer,[11] was put to þe[12] deþ. Capitulo Centesimo xx iiij iij°.

WHen þe gretteste maistres of Scotland' [13]were þus[13] done to euel deþe, & shent for her' falsenesse, Iohñ, þat was William Waleys broþer, was tak[14] as Sir' Iohñ, Erl of Atheles, was.

How Robert þe Brus [15]fley fro[15] Scotland to[16] Norwaye. Capitulo Centesimo ottogesimo iiij^to^.

AND at[17] þat same tyme, was Robert þe Brus miche hatede amonges[18] þe peple of Scotland'; so he[19] wist nouȝt what to[20] doñ; and forto hide[21] him, he went into Norway, to þe Kyng þat had spousede his sustre, and þere helde him, socour[22] forto haue. ¶ And when Robert þe Brus might nouȝt[23] bene founde[23] in Scotland', Kyng' Edward þo lette crye his pees prouȝ[24] al þe land', & his were vsede, and his ministres seruede prouȝ-out al[17] þe land'.

How Kyng Edward' deide. Capitulo Centesimo Ottogesimo quinto.

WHen Kyng' Edward hade abatede his enemys, he turnede aȝeyn Southward, and a maladye toke him at Burgh op[25] Sande, in þe Marche of Scotland'. And he wiste wel þat his deþ was ful neyȝ, and callede to him Sir' Henry þe Lacy, Erl of Lyncoln,[26] Sir' Gy, Erl of Warrwyk, Sir' Aymer' Valence, Erl of Penbrok', and Sir' Robert of Clifford, barouñ, and prayede ham, oppoñ þe faiþe[27] þat þai to him owede, þat þai shulde make Edward'

[1—1] the kyng' nolde D. þe kyng nold O. [2—2] be trayede D. be taryed' O. [3] *leaf* 115. [4] shulde ben D. [5] þe D. [6—6] heed smyte O. [7—7] alto DO. [8] *om.* O. [9—9] kynred of Kyng' Edward D. [10—10] forȝeue hym was O. [11—11] Williamus broþer Waleys D. [12] *om.* DO. [13—13] þus were D. [14] tak and done to deth D. take & done to deth O. [15—15] fledde fram D. [16] in-to O. [17] *om.* D. [18] among O. [19] h *sic* D. [20] forto O. [21] abyde O. [22] socoure al D. socour al O. [23—23] be fonden D. be founde O [24] prouȝ-out' D. þurgh-owt O. [25] oppon D. vpon O. [26] Nichol D. Nichole O. [27] fay O.

[1]of Carnaryuan, Kyng[e] of[e] Engeland, his sone, as raþe as þai myght; ¶ and þat þai shulde nought suffre Piers of Gauastoñ come ayeyn into Engeland forto make his sone vse ryaute. And þai [4] *gra*ntede *him* wiþ god wille; and þe Kyng toke his sac*ra*ment[3] of holy cherche, as a gode Cristen ma*n* shulde, and deide in Verray repentaunce. ¶ & when he hade bene[2] Kyng[e] lv ȝer[e], he deide, & was buried at Westmi*nster* wiþ miche solempnite: oppoñ whos [8] soule, God haue mercy!

Of Merlyn*us* [3]p*ro*phecies, þat were[3] declarede of Kyng[e] Edward, þat was Kyng[e][4] Henries sone. Cap*itu*lo Centesimo xx iiij vj[to].

[12] AND of þis Kyng[e] Edward,[5] p*ro*pheciede Merlyn, and callede him a d*ra*goñ, þe secunde kyng[e] of þe vj laste kynges þat shulde bene[6] forto regne in Engeland; and saide þat 'he shulde [7]ben melled[7] wiþ mercy & also wiþ sternesse, þat shulde kepe Engeland fram[8] colde and fram[8] hete; and þat he shulde oppen [16] his mouþe toward Walys, and þ*at* he shulde sette his on[9] foot in Wyk[e], and þat he shulde closen[10] wiþ Wallis, þat shulde do[11] miche harme to his seed'; and he saide soþ, for þe gode Kyng Edward was medled[12] wiþ m*er*cy & with fersnesse; wiþ mercy ayeyns his [20] enemys of Walis, & aft*er* of Scotland; wiþ fersenesse, when he put ha*m* to the[13] deth for her falsenesse & *tra*iteri, as þai had diserued hit[4]; And wel kepte he Engel*and* fram[14] colde and fram[14] hete, siþ he kepte hit *fram* alle man*er* enemys þat ronne oppoñ [24] hi*m* to done him eny [15]harme or[15] wronge. ¶ And wel openede he his mouþ toward Walys, and made hit [16]quake þrouȝ þe hidou*r* of his mouthe, When he conquerede hit þrouȝ dent of suerd; for þe Prynce Lewelyn, and[17] [18]his broþ*er*[18] Dauid[13] Rys and Morgan, [28] wer[e] put vnto[19] deþ for her falsenesse and her folie. ¶ And he sette his one[9] foot in Wik[e], and conquered Berwik[e]; at þe whiche conquest was[20] slayn xxv M[l] and vij C̄, out-take ha*m* þat wer[e] brent in þe Rede Halle; and þe wallis þat he lete make shulde[21] [32] ben[6] noious [22]to his[22] seede, as men shal hure after in þe lif[23] of Sir*e* Edward[24] his sone.

[1] *leaf* 115, *back*. [2] be O. [3–3] *pro*phecye O. [4] *om.* O.
[5] *om.* D. [6] be DO. [7–7] be medlede D. be melled O. [8] fro DO.
[9] o O. [10] close D. [11] doñ DO. [12] melled O. [13] *om.* DO.
[14] fro O. [15–15] *om.* DO. harme o R. [16] *leaf* 116.
[17] & Dauid DO. [18–18] *MS. has* his broþ*er* his broþ*er*.
[19] vnto the D. vnto þe O. [20] were DO. [21] shal O.
[22–22] vnto þe O. [23] *MS.* liþ.
[24] Edward of Caþiarifan D. Edward of Carnerifan O.

¶ And ȝitte saide Merlyn, þat 'he shulde make Ryuer rynne in[1] bloode and wiþ brayn': and þat semede wel in his werres, þere þat he hade þe maistry. ¶ And ȝitte saide Merlyn: þat 'þere shulde come a peple out of þe northwest, duryng' þe regne of þe forsaide dragouñ, þat [2]shulde bene[2] lad be an euel[3] grehounde, þat shulde[4] þe dragouñ croune Kyng', þat aftirward shulde[4] flee ouer' þe see [5]wiþout comyng aȝeyn,[5] for drede of þe dragouñ[6]': and þat was prouede by Sir' Iohñ Baloil, þat Kyng Edward made forto[7] bene[8] Kyng of Scotland, þat falsely[9] aroos aȝeynnes him; and after, he fledde to his owen landes in[10] Fraunce, and neuer come aȝeyne into Scotland for drede of King Edward. ¶ And ȝitte said Merlyn, 'þat þe peple þat shulde lede þe forsaide grewhonde shulde bene[11] faderles vnto[12] a certein tyme': & he saide soth, ffor þe peple of Scotland gretliche wer' disessede sith þat sir' Iohñ Baloil, her' Kyng', fley fro[13] Scotland'.

¶ And ȝitte saide Merlyñ, 'þat þe sone shulde bicome in his tyme as rede as [14]eny blode, in tokening' of[15] grete mortalite of deþ of peple': and þat was[16] wel knowen when þe Scottes was[17] slayne. ¶ And siþ saide Merlyn, 'þat þilk dragouñ shulde norisshe a fox þat shulde meve[18] wer' aȝeynes him, [19]þat [20]in his tyme shulde nouȝt bene[20] endede': and þat semede wel by Robert þe Brus, þat Kyng' Edward norisshe[21] in his chambre, þat siþennes[22] stale away, and mevede grete wer' aȝeynes him[19]; whiche wer' was nouȝt endede in his tyme. ¶ And afterward', Merlyn tolde þat 'þis dragouñ shulde [23]ben holde[23] þe best body of al þe world': and he saide soþ, ffor þe gode Kyng Edward was þe worthiest knyght of al þe worlde in his tyme.

¶ And ȝit saide Merlyn þat 'þe dragouñ shulde dye in þe marche of anoþer land', and þat his londe shulde be longe [24]wiþouten a[24] gode keper', and þat men shulde wepe for his deth, fram þe yle of Sheepe vnto þe Ile of Marcylle, wher'[25] (allas!) shal[26] be[27] her' commune songe amonge peple faderles, in þe lande wastede': and

[1] *with* O. [2–2] shal be D. schuld' be O. [3] ylle O. [4] shal D.
[5–5] *om.* DO.
[6] dragouñ with-oute comyng aȝeyne D. dragon' *with*-oute comyng aȝen O.
[7] to D. [8] be O. [9] falseliche D. [10] of D. [11] be D.
[12] vntil O. [13] fram ham oute of D. [14] *leaf* 116, *back*. [15] of þe O.
[16] *om.* O. [17] were DO. [18] meve grete D. meue gret O.
[19–19] *om.* D. [20–20] schuld' not in his tyme be O. [21] norisshed O.
[22] sethen O. [23–23] be D. be holde O.
[24–24] without eny D. *with*oute eny O. [25] wherfore DO.
[26] shulde D. schuld' O. [27] ben O.

þat [1]*pro*phecie was know oueral ful wel[1]; ffor þe goode Kyng Edward deide at Burgħ op Sandes, þat is oppoñ[2] þe marche of Scot*land*; wherfore þe Englisshe-men gretlich[3] were descomfitede[4] & gou*er*nede in Northumberlond, ffor enchesouñ þat Kyng Edwardes sone sette by þe Scottes non[5] force, for þe[6] ryaute of Piers of Gauastoñ; wherfore (allas!) was þe songe þrouȝ-oute[7] Engeland for defaute of a gode warde; fra*m* þe Ile of Sheepey vnto þe yle of Marcile, þe peple made miche[8] sorw for gode[8] Kyng Edwardes deth; ffor þai wende[9] þat[10] gode[11] Kyng Edward shulde haue goñ into[12] þe Holy Land; [13]for þat was holliche[14] his p*ur*pos: oppoñ whos soule, God of his[8] blisse haue mercy[15]!

Of Kyng Edward, þat was Kyng Edwardes sone. Capitulo Cent*esimo* Octog*esimo* Septi*mo*.

AND after þis Kyng[8] Edward, regnede Edward his sone, þat was born in Carnaryvan, and[16] went into Fr*a*unce, [17]and spousede IsabeH, þe Kyng*us* dou*ȝter* of Fr*a*unce,[17] þe xxv day of Ianuer at þe cherche of our Lady of[18] Boloign, in þe ȝer of our Lorde M[l] CCC vij. ¶ & þe xx day of Februer,[19] þe nexte ȝer þat come after, he was c*r*onede solempliche[20] at Westm*inster* of þe Erchebisshop*e* Robert of Wynchelse,[21] of Kant*er*bery; and þ*er*e was so g*r*ete prees of peple þat Sir Iohñ Bakwelle was dede and mordrede. ¶ And anone as þe gode Kyng Edward was dede, Sir Edward his sone, Kyng of Engeland, sent aft*er* Piers of Gauastoñ into Gascoigne; and so miche louede him þat he callede him his 'bro þ*er*'; and anone after he ȝaf him þe lordeshipp of Wallyngford; and hit was nouȝt longe after þat he ne ȝaf him þe Erldome of Cornwaile, aȝeynes alle þe lordes [22]wille of þe reaume.[22] ¶ And þo brought he Sir Walt*er* of Langetoñ, Bisshop of Chestre, into prisouñ, into the Toure of Londoñ, witħ ij knafes allone him to[23] s*er*ue, for enchesouñ þat[24] þe Kyng was wroþ with him, for cause þat Sir Wa[l]t*er* made pleint[25] vppoñ him to his fader; wherfore he was put into[26] p*r*isouñ in þe tyme of trailbastoñ.

[1–1] *pro*phecyed Merlyn whicħ was wel knowe ou*er*al O. [2] in D.
[3] gretly O. [4] discomfortede D. dyscomfited dyscomforted *sic* O.
[5] no O. [6] *om.* D. [7] þrouȝ-out al D. þurgħ-out al O. [8] *om.* O.
[9] went O. [10] the D. þat þe O. [11] *MS.* gode Gode. [12] to D.
[13] *leaf* 117. [14] holy O. [15] m*er*cy Amen O.
[16] and þis Edward DO. [17–17] *om.* O. [18] at O.
[19] ffeu*er*er DO. [20] sole*m*pnyly O. [21] Wynchestre O.
[22–22] willes of Engeland D. [23] forto DO. [24] *om.* DO.
[25] co*m*pleynt DO. [26] in D.

¶ And þis[1] Piers of Gauastoñ made so grete maistries, þat he went into þe Kyng*us tre*sorie in þe Abbay of Westm*inster*, and toke[2] þe table of golde, [3]wiþ þe tresteles of þe same, and meny o*þer*e riche gewelle*s* þat some tyme wer' þe noble[4] Kyng Arthures, and toke ham to a marchant þat me clepede[5] Aymery of Friscombande, for he shulde bere ha*m* ouer' þe see into Gascoigne: and þai come neuer' a3eyne afte*r*; wherfore hit was[6] gr*e*te losse vnto[7] þis land. 8

¶ And when þis Piers was so rychely auauncede, he bicome so proude and so stout, wherof alle þe grete lordes of þe reaume had him in despite for his grete beryng'. Wherfore[8] Sir' Henry þe[9] Lacy, Erl of Lyncoln,[10] and Sir' Guy Erl of Warr*wyk* (þe whiche gode lordes þe gode Kyng' Edward chargede, þat Piers of Gauastoñ shulde nou3t come into Engeland' forto brynge his sone into ryot), ¶ And alle þe lordes of Engel*and*, assemblede ham[9] at a ce*r*teyn day at þe[11] Frere Prichoures of[12] Londoñ, and speken[13] of þe[14] dishono*ur* þat þe Kyng dede to[15] his reaume and to his c*r*one. and so þai assemblede[16] alle, boþe Erles, baroñs[17] and co*m*munes, þat þe forsaide Piers of Gauastoñ shulde ben[18] exilede out[19] of Engel*and*. And so hit was done; for he forsuore Engel*and*, and went into Irland'; and þ*er*e þe Kyng made him chiefteyn and Gou*er*nour' of þe lande [20]by his co*m*missiouñ; and þ*er*e þis Piers was chefteyn of al þe land',[20] and dede þ*er*e aH þat him liked', and had þ*er*e al[9] what he wolde. ¶ And[21] þat tyme were þe templeres exilede prou3 al c*r*istendome,[22] ffor enchesouñ þat men put oppoñ ham þat þai shulde done[23] [24]þing þ*at* was[24] a3eynes þe faiþ[25] and gode bileue. ¶ Kyng' Edward louede Piers of Gauastoñ so miche [26]þat he might nou3t forlete his company; and so miche þe Kyng 3af and bihight to þe peple of Engeland', þat þe exiling of þe forsaide Piers shulde bene[27] reuokede at Staunford', prou3 ha*m* þat [28]him hade[28] exilede. ¶ Wherfore Piers of Gauastoñ come a3eyne into Engeland'; and when he was comen[29] a3eyn into þis lande, he despisede þe grettest lordes of þis lande, and callede Sir' Robert'[30] Clare Erl of Gloucestre,

[1] the forsaide D. þe forsayd' O. [2] nome DO. [3] *leaf* 117, *back*.
[4] gode D. [5] Called O. [6] was a D.
[7] in-to O. [8] wherof D. [9] *om.* DO. [10] Nichole DO.
[11] *om.* O. [12] at O. [13] spek' D.
[14] *MS.* þe þe. [15] vnto O. [16] assentede DO.
[17] *om.* D. & baroñs O. [18] be O. [19] *om.* D. [20—20] *om.* O.
[21] And in O. [22] cristiente DO. [23] do O.
[24—24] þinges D. þing' O. [25] fey O. [26] *leaf* 118. [27] be D.
[28—28] had hym O. [29] come O. [30] Robert of DO.

'Horessone,' and þe Erl of Lyncolñ,[1] Sir' Henry þe[2] Lacy, 'Broste bely,' and Sir' Guy Erl of Warr*wyk*, 'blanke[3] hounde of Arderne.' And also he callede þe noble Erl and gentil, Thomas of Lancastre, 'Cherl,' and meny[4] oth*ere*[5] shames and scorn[4] [6]ha*m* saide, & by meny o*þere*[6] grete lordes of Engeland, wherfore þai were towardes[7] him ful angr*i* and sore annoiede.

¶ And[8] in þe[9] same tyme deide þe Erl of Lyncoln[10]; but he charged, or he was dede, Thomas of Lancastre, erl, þat was his sone-in-lawe, þat he shulde mayntene his quereH a3eyns þe same Piers of Gauastoñ, oppoñ his benisoñ. ¶ And so hit was ordeynede, prou3[11] helpe of þe Erle of Lancastr' and of þe Erl of Warr*wyk*, þat þe forsaide[12] Piers was biheuedede[13] at Gauersiche bisides Warwik', þe xix day of[14] Iun',[15] in þe 3ere of *grace*[16] M¹ CCC &[17] xij; wherfore þe Kyng was sore annoiede, and p*ra*yede God þat he might[18] see þat day to bene avengede of[19] þe deþ of þe forsaide Piers. ¶ And so hit bifelle aftirward, as 3e shul hure,—allas þe tyme!—ffor þe forsaide Erl of Lancastre & meny o*þere*[20] [21]grete barouñ,[22] wer' put to pitouse deþ, and martrede, for enchesouñ of þe forsaide quereH.

¶ The Kyng was þo at Londoñ, and helde a p*ar*lement, and ordeynede þe lawes of Sir' Symond Mountford; wherfor the Erl of Lancastre, and alle þe Erles & aH þe clergye of Engeland, maden an oth, prou3 conseile of Robert of Wynchelse, forto maintene þe ordenaunces[23] for eu*er*more.

How Robert þe Brus come a3eyne into Scotland, and Gaderede a grete power' of men forto werr' oppoñ Kyng Edward. ¶ Capitulo ¶ Centesimo Ottog*esimo* viij°.

AND when Sir' Robert þe Brus, þat made him Kyng of Scotland, þat was fledde into Norm*a*ndy[24] for drede of deþ of þe[2] goode Kyng Edward, and herd of þe debate þat was in Enge-

[1] Nichol D. Nichole O. [2] *om.* D. [3] blac D. Blake O.
[4—4] other scornes and shame D. o*þer* scornes & schame O.
[5] *MS.* ou*ere*. [6—6] & seyde by o*þer* meny O. [7] toward O.
[8] *MS. has in the margin, in same hand:* Obijt Henric*us* Comes Lincoln.
[9] that D. *om.* O. [10] Nichole DO. [11] þurgh þe O.
[12] forseid *sir* O. [13] beheded O.
[14] *MS. has* of Ianu*er*, *with* Ianu*er underlined for omission.*
[15] Ianu*er* D. [16] *grace* a O. [17] *om.* DO.
[18] most D. muste O. [19] vpon O. [20] Another O.
[21] *leaf* 118, *back.* [22] barons D.
[23] ordenance D. [24] Norway D. Norwey O.

land bituene þe Kyng and his lordes, he ordeynede an hoste, and come into Engelond, into Northumberland, and clenly destroiede þe contreye. ¶ And when Kyng Edward herde þis tidynges,[1] he [2]lete assemble[2] his host, and mette þe Scottis at Streuelyn,[3] in þe day of þe[4] Natiuite of Seint Iohñ þe Baptiste, in þe vij[4] 3er of his regne,[5] and in þe 3ere of our Lorde [6]Ihesu Crist,[6] M CCC &[7] xiiij. Allas þe sorw and losse þat *þer*e was done! for *þer*e was slayn, þe noble Erl Gilbert of Clare, *Sir*e Robert of Clifford, a[7] barouñ, and meny o*þer*e; & of o*þer*e peple þat no man couþ nombre; and *þer*e Kyng Edward was scomfitede. And Sir Edmund of Maule, þe[8] kynges stiward, for drede went and drenchede him-self[9] in a fresshe ryuer þat is callede Bannokesbourñ; *þer*efore[10] [11]þe Scottes saide, in rep*ro*fe and despite of Kyng Edward, foralsemiche[12] as he louede forto go[13] by wat*er*e, and also for he was descomfitede at Bannokesbour[n]e, *þer*fore maidenes made a songe *þer*of, [14]in þat contre, of Kyng Edward of Engeland[14] and in þis maner þai songe[15]:—

¶ **Maydenes of Engelande, sare may 3e morne,**
For tynt 3e haue [lost][16] 3oure lemmans at Bannokesborñ wiþ hevalogh.
¶ **What wende þe Kyng of Engel*and* haue ygete[17] Scotlande wiþ Rombylogh.**

When Kyng Edward was descomfitede, he was wonder sory, and faste[18] ſledde wiþ his folc[4] þat was lafte alif,[19] and went to Berwik, and *þer*e helde him. ¶ And aft*er*, he toke hostages, þat is to seyne,[20] vij childerne, of þe rychest of þe touñ; and þe Kyng went to Londoñ, and toke[21] conseile of þinges þ*at* were nedeful vnto þe reaume of Engeland.

¶ And in þe same tyme hit bifelle þat *þer*e was in Engeland a rybaude þat men[22] callede Iohñ Tanner; and he went and saide þat he was þe goode Kyng Edwardus sone, and lete him calle 'Edward of Carnaruañ'; and *þer*fore he was take[23] at Oxenford, and *þer*e[24] chalangede þe frere Carmes chirche þat Kyng Edward hade 3eue[25] ham, þe whiche cherch[26] some tyme was[4] þe Kyng*us*

[1] tydynge O. [2–2] assemblede D. [3] Estreuelyn D. Estryuelyn O. [4] *om.* O. [5] regne vij O. [6–6] *om.* O. [7] *om.* DO. [8] þe DO. for þe R. [9] him D. hym O. [10] wherfore DO. [11] *leaf* 119. [12] forasmyche O. [13] gone D. *om.* O. [14–14] *om.* D. [15] saiden D. [16] *om.* D. [17] gete DO. [18] *MS.* faste faste, *with second* faste *underlined for omission.* [19] on lif D. [20] weten D. wete O. [21] to *sic* D. nome O. [22] me DO. [23] taken DO. [24] *þer*e he DO. [25] youe O. [26] Cherche was O.

Halle. ¶ And afterwarde was þis Iohñ ladde to Northamptoñ, and[1] draw, and *þere*[2] hongede for his falsenesse. and er' þat he was dede, he confessede,[3] and saide bifore al þe folc, þat 'þe deuel bihighte him þat he shulde be Kyng' of Engel*and*'; and þat 'he hade seruede þe deuel iij ȝere.'

How þe touñ of Berwik was taken[4] þrouȝ *tresoñ*; & how ij Cardynales wer' robbet in Engel*and*. Cap*itulo* C*entesimo* xx iiij ix°.

[5] AND in myd Le*n*toñ[6] Sonday in þe ȝere of our Lord Ih*es*u Crist M¹ CCC xvj, Berwik was loste, þrouȝ false *tresouñ* of on, Piers of Spaldyng'; þe whiche Piers, þe Kyng' had put *þere* forto kepe þe[7] same toune wiþ[8] meny burgeys of þe[9] touñ. ¶ Wherfore þe childerne þat were put in hostages[10] þrouȝ þe burgeys of Berwik,[11] folwede þe Kyng*us* Marchalcie meny daye,[12] fetrede in st*r*onge yrenes.

¶ And after' þat tyme *þere* come ij Cardinales into Engeland, as þe Pope hade ham sende forto mak pees bituene Scotland and Engel*and*. and as þai went toward Duresme forto haue sacrede maistre Lowys of Beaumond, Bisshop of Duresme; and as þai went, þai were taken[4] and robbit oppoñ þe more of Wigelesdoñ[13]; of whiche robrye, Sir' Gilbert of Midelton was atteint, and take,[14] and hongede & drawe[15] at London, and his [16]heuede smyten[16] of', and his bowales taken out of his body, and brent, & his body q*uar*tarede, and his heuede[17] [18]smyten of', and[18] sette oppoñ a spere, and sette oppoñ Newegate; and þe iiij q*uarters* sent to iiij citees of Engeland.

¶ And þat same tyme bifelle meny meschyues in Engeland; for þe pore[2] peple deide in Engeland for hunger; and so miche and[19] so faste folc deiden, [20]þat vnneþes[20] men m[i]ght ha*m* bury; for a q*uarter* of[2] whete was worþe xls., and ij ȝere and an halfe a q*uarter* of[21] whete[19] was worþe [22]ij marȝ[22]; and ofte-tymes þe pore

[1] and *þere* was D. [2] *om.* D. [3] confessede him D. [4] take O.
[5] *leaf* 119, *back.* [6] lentenes D. lent O. [7] þat O.
[8] *MS. has* wiþ me- *with* me- *underlined for omission.* [9] þe same D.
[10] *MS.* hostages þrouȝ þrouȝ, *with first* þrouȝ *underlined for omission;* hostage DO.
[11] Berwyk' and þe burgeys of Berwik D. Berwyk' and þ^e Burgeys of Berwyk' O.
[12] dayes DO. [13] Wyngelestoñ D. Wyngeledonne O. [14] taken DO.
[15] drawen DO. [16—16] heed smyte O. [17] heed O. [18—18] *om.* DO.
[19] *om.* O. [20—20] þan vnneþe O. [21] *om.* DO.
[22—22] xxvj s. viij d. ij marc O.

peple stale childern and ete ham, and ete also alle[1] þe houndes þat þai might take, and ek Horse & cattes; and after, þere felle a grete [2]pestilence amonges [3] bestes in diuerse contrees of Engeland duryng Kyng Edwardes lif. 4

How þe Scottes robbede Northumberland. Capitulo Centesimo Nonogesimo.

And in þe same tyme [4]come þe[4] Scottes aȝeyne into Engeland,[5] and destroiede Northumberlond,[6] and brent þat lande, & 8
robbet hit,[6] and quellede men and wymmen, & childern þat laye[7] in cradeH, and brent also holy cherche, and destroiede Cristendome, and [8]toke &[8] bare awaye Englisshe-mennes godes, as þai hade bene[9] Sarasins or paynemes. and of þe wickednesse þat þai 12
deden,[10] aH þe worlde spake þerof, þrouȝ al Cristendome.

How þe Scottes wolde nouȝt amende her trespasse; and þerfore Scotland was enterditede. ¶ Capitulo Centesimo Nonogesimo primo. 16

And when[11] Pope[12] Iohn, þe xxij after seynt Petre, herde of þe grete sorwe and meschief þat þe Scottes wrought, he was wonder sory þat Cristendome was so destroiede þrouȝ þe Scottes, and nameliche[13] for þai destroiede so holy cherche; Wherfore þe 20
Pope[14] sent a general sentence, vnder his bullis of leade, vnto þe Erchebisshope of Kaunterbery, and to þe Erchebisshope of ȝork, þat 'if Robert þe Brus of Scotland wolde nouȝt be iustifiede, and make amendes vnto[15] kyng [16]Edward of Engeland,[16] his[17] lorde, & 24
make amendes of his losse, and his harmes þat þai hade done in Engeland, and also to restore þe godes þat þai hade[18] [19]take out of[19] holy cherch, þat þe sentence shulde be pronouncede þrouȝ aH Engeland. ¶ And when þe Scottes herde þis, þai wolde nouȝt 28
[20 21]cesse of[21] her malice for þe Popes[22] commaundement; Wherfor

[1] *om.* O. [2] *leaf* 120. [3] among O. [4–4] comen D.
[5] Northumberland D. [6] *om.* D. [7] leyne D. leyn O.
[8–8] *om.* D. [9] be O. [10] dede DO. [11] when the D.
[12] pope *struck out, and* bisshope *written over in a different hand in* O.
[13] namely O.
[14] pope *struck out, and* bisshope *written over in a different hand in* O.
[15] vnto the D. vnto þe O. [16–16] of Engelond Edward O.
[17] her DO. [18] *MS.* hade m, *with* m *underlined for omission.*
[19–19] taken in D. take of O. [20] *leaf* 120, *back.*
[21–21] leue D. lette O.
[22] popes *struck out, and* bisshopis *written over in a different hand in* O

Robert þe[1] Brus, Iamys Douglas, and Thomas Randolf Erl of Morref, and alle þo þat wiþ ham communede, or ham halp in worde or in[2] dede, were accursed[3] þrouȝ eu*er*y cherche þrouȝ[3] Engeland, euery [day] at masse iij tymes; and no masse shulde be songen[4] in holy cherche þrouȝ-out[5] al Scotland, but if þe Scottis wolde make restitucioñ of þe harmes þat þai hade made vnto[6] holy cherche. Wherfore meny a gode p*re*ste and holy man,[7] þ*er*fore were slayn þrouȝ al[8] þe reme of Scotland, for enchesouñ þat þai wolde singe no masse aȝeynes þe Popes[9] co*m*maundement and aȝeynes his wille, and to done and fulfille þe tiraunt[10] wille.

How Sir Hughe, þe Spenseres sone, was[2] made þe Kyng*us* Chamberlein; and of þe bataile of Mitoñ. Capit*ulo* Cent*esimo* Nonog*esimo* secun*do*.

And hit was nouȝt longe afterward, þat þe Kyng ne ordeynede a parlement at ȝork; and þ*er*e was Sir Hugh, þe Spenser[11] sone, made Chamberleiñ. And in þe mene-tyme, while þe werr *last*, the Kyng went aȝeyne into Scotland, þat hit was wonder forto wete, and bisegede þe touñ of Berwik; but þe Scottes went ou*er* þe wat*er* of Solewath, þat was iij mile fr*am* þe Kyng*us* host, and p*r*iuely[12] þai stele awaye by nyght, and come*n*[13] into Engel*and*, and robbede and destroiede[14] al þat þai myght, and sparede no man*er* þing[11] til þat þai comen to[15] ȝork. And when þe Englisshe-men þat were lafte at[16] home Wist[17] of þis þing, alle þo þat might tr*a*uaile—as wel monkes and[18] p*r*estes and ffreres & Chanouns and seculers,—and come and mette wiþ þe Scottes at Mitoñ op[19] Swale, þe xij day of Ottobre. Allas! what sorwe for þe Englisshe hosbonde-men þat couþe noþing in werr, þ*er*e were quellede and drenchede[20] in [21]þe Ryuer of Swale.[21] And her chyueteynes, Sir William of Meltoñ, Erchebisshoþ of ȝork, & þe Abbot of Selby with her stedes, [22]fledde, & come vnto[22] ȝork. And þat was her owen folie þ*at* þai had þat meschaunce, for þai passede þe wat*er* of

[1] *om.* D. [2] *om.* O.
[3–3] in eu*er*y cherche of D. in eu*er*y Cherche þurgh O.
[4] songe O. [5] þrouȝ D. [6] to D. þurgh O. [7] men DO.
[8] *om.* DO.
[9] popes *struck out, and* bisshoppis *written over in a different hand in* O.
[10] Traytours O. [11] Spencer O. [12] priuelich D. [13] come O.
[14] destruede D. [15] vnto O. [16] *leaf* 121. [17] herde D. herd O.
[18] as O. [19] oppoñ D. [20] dreynt O.
[21–21] an arme of the see D. an arme of þe see O.
[22–22] fledden and comen to D. fled & comen vnto O.

Swale; and þe Sccottes sette in[1] fire iij stackes of hey; and þe smoke *þer*of was so huge þat[2] Englisshe-me*n* myght nought see þe Scottes. ¶ And[3] whe*n* þe Englisshe-men were gon ou*er* þe wat*er*, þo come[3] þe Scottes wiþ her[3] wenge,[4] in mane*r* of a shelde, and come toward[3] þe Englisshe-men in a rawe; and þe Englisshe-men fledde, for vnneþes[5] þai hade eny men[6] of Armes; for þe Kyng hade ham alle[7] almost loste atte þe[7] sege of Berwik[3]; and þe Scottes[8] hobilers went bituix[9] þe brigge & þe Englisshe-men. ¶ And when þe grete host [10]had þaim[10] mette, þe Englisshe-men fledde bituene þe hobilers and þe grete host; and þe Englisshe-men almost alle[7] were *þer*e slayn.[11] And [12]he þat might wende ou*er* þe wat*er* was sauede; but meny were drenchede,[12] Allas, for [13]sorwe! for[13] *þer*e was[14] slayne meny me*n* of Religiouñ, and seculers, and ek prestes and clerkes; and wiþ miche sorw the Erchebisshop scapede; and *þer*fore þe Scottes callede hit[15] 'the White Bataile.'

How Kyng[3] Edward dede aH maner[3] [16]þing[3] as [17]Sire Hugh þe Spenser[17] Wolde. Ca*pitulo* Cent*esimo* Nonog*esimo* ter*cio*.

And when Kyng Edward herde þis tydynges,[18] he remevede his sege fra*m* Berwik, & come a3eyne into Engelan*d*. But Sir[3] Hugh þe Spenser[3], þe sone, þat was þe Kynges chaumberlein, kepte so þe Kyng*us* chaumbre, þat no man might[19] speke wiþ þe Kyng[3], but if[20] he made wiþ him a frett forto done his nede, & þat ouer[3] mesure. And þis Hugh bar[3] him so stoute, þat alle men hade of him scorn and despite; and þe kyng him-self wolde nou3t be[21] gou*er*nede[22] by no maner[3] man, but oneliche[23] by his fader[3] and by him. ¶ And yf eny knyght of Engel*and* hade wodes, maneres, or lande, þat þai wolde couette, anone þe Kyng[3] moste 3eue it ham, or elles[24] þe man þat owede[25] hit [26]shulde falsely[26] be enditede of fforfet[27] or of ffelonye; and þrou3 soche doynges[28] þai disheritede meny a grete[29] bachiler[3], and so meny landes[30] geten, þat hit was miche Wonder.

[1] on D. a O. [2] þat þe D. [3] Comen O. [4] wynges D.
[5] vnneþe O. [6] man O. [7] *om.* O. [8] Scottyssh O.
[9] bituene D. betwen O. [10–10] ham D. hem O.
[11] quellede D. y-quelled[3] O. [12–12] dreynt O. [13–13] *om.* DO.
[14] were O. [15] that bataile D. þat bataiH O. [16] *leaf* 121, *back*.
[17–17] þe Spencers O. [18] tydyng O. [19] must O. [20] *om.* DO.
[21] ben O. [22] gouerned ne reulede D. gou*er*ned[3] ne rewled[3] O.
[23] onely D. only O. [24] eH O. [25] ou3t D. ought O.
[26–26] falsely shulde D. [27] þe forest O. [28] doyng D. doynge O.
[29] gode D. good O. [30] landes þai D.

¶ And when þe lordes of Engeland saw þe[1] couetise and þe falsenesse of Sir' Hugh þe Spenser, his[2] fader, and of Sir' Hugh his[3] sone, þai comen[4] to þe gentil Erl of Lancastre, and axede [5]him of[5] conseile of þe disese þat was in the reame þrouȝ Sir' Hugh þe[6] Spenser' and his sone. And in haste, by one assent, þai made a priue assemble at Shirborn in Elmede; and alle þa[i] maden[7] *þere* an oth forto breké and destourble þe doyng bituene þe Kyng' and Sir' Hugh þe Spenser' and his sone, oppoñ her' power'. And þai went into þe Marche of Walys, & destroiede þe Lande[8] of þe forsaide Sir' Hughes.

[9]How sir' Hughe þe Spenser and his fader' Were exilede out of Engeland. Ca*pitul*o Cent*esimo* Nonogesimo iiij^to^.

When Kyng Edward' saw þe grete harme and destrucioun þat þe barons of Engeland' deden on[10] Sir' Hugh þe[6] Spensers Landes, and to his sones, in eu*ery* place þat þai comen oppoñ. And þe Kyng þo, þrouȝ his Conseile, exilede Sir' Iohñ Mounbray, *Sir*e Roge*r*[11] of Clifford', and Sir' Gosselyn Dauiƕ, and meny o*þer* lordes þat wer' to ham[12] consent.[13] Wherfore þe barons dede þo[14] more harme þan þai dede bifore. ¶ And when þe Kyng' saw þat[6] þe barons wolde nouȝt cesse of her' cruelte, þe Kyng was sore adrade leste þai wolde[15] destroy him and his reame for his mayntenance, but yf[6] þat he assentede to ham; and so he sent for ham [16]by lettreȝ,[16] þat þai shulde come to Londoñ to his *par*lement at a certeyne day, as in his *lett*res[17] were[18] conteynede.

¶ And þai come wiþ iij batailes wel armed[19] at alle poyntȝ; & eu*ery* batail hade cote-armur'[20] of grene cloþe[21]; and *þer*of þe right quarte*r* was ȝalwe, wiþ white bendes; Wherfore þat *par*lement was callede 'þe *par*lment wiþ[22] þe whit bende.[23]' ¶ And in þat company was Sir' Humfray de Bohoñ, Erl of Herford,[24] and Sir' Roge*r* of Clifford', *Sir*e Iohñ Mounbray, *Sir*e Gosselyn Dauiƕ, *Sir*e Roge*r* Mortymer, Vncle of Sir' Roge*r* Mortymer' of Wigemore, *Sir*e Henry of Tyeys,[25] *Sir*e Iohñ Giffard, and Sir' Bartholomew[26] Badelesmere þat was þe Kynges Stiward, þat þe Kyng hade sent to Shirborn

[1] þe grete D. þe grét O. [2] þe D. [3] þe DO. [4] come DO.
[5–5] of hym O. [6] *om.* D. [7] made DO. [8] Laundes D.
[9] *leaf* 122. [10] to DO. [11] Robe*r*t D. [12] hym O.
[13] *con*sentede D. [14] the D. *om.* O. [15] shulde D. [16–16] *om.* D.
[17] lettre D. [18] was O. [19] y-armed O.
[20] cotarmures D. cote-armures O. [21] choþe *sic* D. [22] of O.
[23] bendes D. [24] Hereford' D. [25] Trays DO.
[26] Bartholomew of O.

in Elmede, to þe [1]Erl of Lancastre and to alle þat Wiþ him Were, forto trete of accorde þat him aliede to þe barons, and come wiþ þe[2] *com*pany, And Sir Roger Dam̃ory and Sir Hugh [3]of Audeley[3] þat hade spousede þe Kynges neces, susters[4] to[5] Sir Gilbert of Clare, Erl of Gloucestre, þat was quellede in Scotland, as aboue[6] is saide. ¶ And þo ij Lordes hadde þe ij *par*tes[7] of þe Erldome of Gloucestre; and Sir Roger[8] þe Spenser, þe so*n*ne, hadde þe [9]þridde part[9] on[10] his Wifes behalue,[11]' the þridde[12] suster. And þo ij lordes went to þe barouns wiþ al her power, auȝeynes Sir Hugh, her broþer-in-Law; and so þer come with ham, Sir Roger of Clifford, Sir Iohn Mo*n*bray, Sir Gosselyn Dauiƕ, Sir Roger Mortymer of Werk, Sir Roger Mortymer of Wygemore, his nevew, Sir Henry Trays,[13] Sir Iohn Giffard, *Sir* Bartholomew of Bedelesmere, wiþ alle[14] her *com*pany, & meny o*per*e þat to ham wer consent.

¶ Alle þis[15] grete Lordes come*n*[16] to Westm*inster*, to þe Kynges *par*lement; and so þai spoken and dede, þat boþe Sir Hugh þe[17] Spens*er*, þe fader & [18]þe Soñ, were outlawede of Engel*and* for eu*er*more. ¶ And Sir Hughe þe fader went to Douer, and made miche sorwe, and felle adoun[19] by þe see bank, [20]& clipped[20] acros wiþ his Armes, and sore wepyng,[21] saide: "now, farewele[22] Engelande! & gode Engel*and*, to[23] Gode y þe bitak!" and þries cussede þe g*r*ounde, and wende neuer[24] haue comen[25] aȝein, and[26] Wepyng ful sore, cursede þe tyme þat euer he bigate Sir Hugh his sone, & saide 'for him [27]he hade[27] loste Engelande'; and in presence of ham þat were him [28]aboute, he ȝaf him his curse, and went ou*er* þe see to his landes. But Sire Hugh þe soñe wolde nouȝt go[29] out of Engel*and*, but helde him in þe see; and he & his company robbede ij Dormondes bisides Sandewiche, & toke[30] and bar awaye aƕ þe gode þat was in ham, þe Value of xl[31] M^{l} li.

How þe Kyng Exilede þe[32] Erl Thomas of Lancastre, & alle þat helde wiþ him; and how þe Mortymer come & ȝelde him vnto[33] þe Kyng; & of þe lordes siege. Capitulo Centesimo Nonogesimo Quinto.

[1] *leaf* 122, *back*. [2] *MS.* þe þe; þat DO. [3–3] Daudel D. Daudele D. [4] suster O. [5] and DO. [6] bifore D. byfore O. [7] partyes DO. [8] Hugh DO. [9–9] iij *par*tye O. [10] in DO. [11] half D. hand O. [12] iij O. [13] Trays DO. [14] *MS.* alle aƕ. [15] þese O. [16] come O. [17] *om.* DO. [18] & *sir* Hugh Spencer O. [19] doune oppoñ the grounde D. doun vpon þe ground O. [20–20] *om.* DO. [21] wepynge & O. [22] fayre DO. [23] to almyȝty D. to almyghty O. [24] neu*er*e to O. [25] come O. [26] and D. & O. *om.* R. [27–27] y haue D. [28] *leaf* 123. [29] goñ DO. [30] nome O. [31] iiij D. [32] *om.* O. [33] to O.

HIt was nought longe after', þat þe Kyng ne[1] made Sir' Hugh þe Spens*er* þe fader', and Sir' Hugh þe[2] so*n*ne, come a3ein into Engel*and*, a3eyns þe lordes wille of þe reaume. ¶ And sone after, þe Kyng, wiþ[3] strong Power', come and bisegede þe castel of Leedes: and in þat castel was þe Lady of Badelesmore, for enchesoun þat she wolde nou3t g*r*ant þe castel to þe[1] Quene Isabell, Kyng Edwardes wif'. ¶ But þe p*r*incipal cause was, for enchesoñ þat Sir' Bartholomev Badelesmere was a3eins þe Kyng', & helde with the lordes of Engel*and*. And noþeles, þe Kyng', by helpe and socoure of men of Londoñ, and also þrou3 helpe of Southerñ men, þe Kyng gate þe castel, maugre ha*m* alle þat wer' wiþin,[4] and tok wiþ him al þat he might fynde. ¶ And when þe barons of Engeland herd of þis þing', [5]Sir' Rog*er* Mortymer' &[5] op*er*ē meny lordes[6] toke þe toune of Brugeworth with strengh; Wherfore þe Kyng was wonder' wroþ, and lete outelawe Thomas[7] of Lancastre & Hounfray de Bohouñ, [8]Erl of Hereford',[9] and alle[10] þat Were assent[11] to þe same quereH. ¶ And þe Kyng Assemblede an[12] host, & come a3eynes þe lordes of Engeland'; wherfor þe Mortymers put ha*m* to þe Kynges mercy & his g*r*ace; and anone þai wer' sent to þe Toure of Londoñ, and þ*er*e kepte in p*r*isouñ. ¶ And when þe barons herd of þis þing', þai come*n* to Pontfret', þ*er*e þat þe Erl Thomas sojornede, and tolde him how þe Mortymers[13] had[14] 3elde ha*m* boþe[15] vnto[16] þe Kyng', & put ha*m* in[16] his g*r*ace.

Of þe sege of Tikhulle. ¶ Ca*pitulo* C*entesimo* xx iiij xvj°.

WHen Thomas, Erl of Lancastre, herde[17] þis, [18]þai were[18] wonder' wroþ, & alle þat were of his co*m*pany, and gretly þai were descomfortede, & ordeinede her' power' togeder, and bisegede þe casteH of Tykhull. But þo þ*at* were wiþin, so manliche[19] [20]defendede ham,[20] þat þe barons might nou3t gete þe casteH. ¶ And when þe Kyng herde telle[21] þat his casteH was bisegede, he suore, by God and by his crowne,[22] þat þe sege shulde be remevede, and assemblede an huge power' of peple, and went þiderward forto

[1] *om.* O. [2] his D. [3] with a O. [4] þ*er*in O.
[5–5] *written twice in all three MSS.* [6] lordes nome & O.
[7] Thomas erle DO. [8] *leaf* 123, *back.* [9] Herford' O.
[10] al þo D. aH þo O. [11] assentant D. assentynge O.
[12] a gret D. an hugh O. [13] Mortymers both D. Mortymers boþe O.
[14] hadden O. [15] *om.* DO. [16] to O. [17] herde of D.
[18–18] he was D. [19] manly O. [20–20] ham defendede D. [21] *om.* D.
[22] namen D. names O.

rescue þe casteH; and his powr' encressede fram day to day. ¶ When þe Erle of Lancastr' and þe Erl of Herefordᵈ,[1] and þe barons and her' company, herde of þis þingᵍ, þai assemblede al her' power', and went ham to Burtoñ op Trent, and kepte þe bruge, þat þe Kyng shulde nouȝt come[2] ouer'. ¶ But hit bifeH so, þat[3] on þe x[4] day of Marche, in þe ȝere of *grace* M[l] CCC xxj[5] þe Kyng and þe Spensers, Sir' Aymer' Valaunce, Erl of Penbrokᵉ, & Iohñ,[6] Erl of Arundel, and her' power', went ouer þe [7]Wat*er*e, and descomfitede þe Erl Thomas & his *com*pany; and þai fledde to þe casteH of Tuttebery; and fro þenns þai went to Pountfret. And in þat Viage deide Sir' Roger Dammory, in þe Abbay of Tuttebery.

¶ And in þat same tyme, þe Erl Thomas hade a *trai*tour' with *him* þat men[8] callede Robert of Holonde, a Knyght þat þe Erl hade brouȝt vp of nouȝt, and hade norisshede him in his botelerie, and had ȝeuen[9] him ij M[l] *marȝ*[10] [11]of rent[11] by ȝere.[12] And so miche þe Erl louede him, þat he might doo[13] in þe Erles court what[14] him likede, boþe amonges[15] hye & law; and so queyntely [16]euer he[16] bare him aȝeynes his lordᵉ, þat he truste more oppoñ him þan oppoñ[17] eny man alyue. ¶ And þe Erl hade ordeynede[18] him by lettre[18] forto wende into þe Erldome of Lancastr', forto make a rise to helpe him þat[19] viage, *þat* is to seyn, v[c] men of Armes. But þe [20]said Holand[20] come nouȝt *þer*e, no manerᵉ men[21] forto warne, ne to make a rise to[22] helpe his lordᵉ. ¶ And when Holandᵈ[23] herde telle þat his lord was scomfitede[24] at Burtoñ, as [25]an vntrew man[25] he stale away, and robbede in Rauenesdale his lordes men þat come[26] fra þe scomfiture, & tok[27] of ham horse and harneys, and al þat þai hade, & quellede of ham alle þat he myght tak, and þo come and ȝelde him vnto[28] þe Kyngᵉ. ¶ When þe gode Erl Thomas wist þat he was so bitraiede, he was sore abasshede, and saide to him-selfᵉ, "O almyghty god!" *quod* he, "how might Robert Holonde fynde in his hert me to bitraye, siþens[29] þat y [30]haue Louede him so miche? O God, [31]wel may now[31] a man see[32] by

[1] Herfordᵈ O. [2] passe DO. [3] *om.* DO. [4] tenþe O.
[5] & xxij O. [6] Iohñ þe O. [7] *leaf* 124. [8] me DO. [9] ȝeue O.
[10] Mark O. [11–11] *om.* D. of landᵈ O. [12] ȝere of lande D.
[13] done O. [14] al þat D. al þing þat O. [15] amonge D. among O.
[16–16] þe þif D. þe þef O. [17] he dede D.
[18–18] by his lettre him D. by his lettre O. [19] in his D. in þat O.
[20–20] false traitoure D. fals Traytour O. [21] man D. [22] for-to O.
[23] the *traitour* D. þe Traytour O. [24] descomfitede D. discomfited O.
[25–25] a false þef traitoure D. a fals þef a Traytour O. [26] comen D.
[27] nome O. [28] to O. [29] sith D. seth O. [30] *leaf* 124, *back.*
[31–31] now may wel O. [32] y-se D.

him þat no man may desceyue anoþer,[1] raþere þan he þat he most trust oppon. He haþ ful euel ȝeldede[2] me[3] my godenesse, and þe worship þat y to him haue done, and þrouȝ my kyndenesse haue him avaunced, and made him hie fram[4] lowe; & he makeþ me go fram[4] he into[5] lowe; but ȝitte shal he dye in euel deþ."

Of þe Scomfiture of Burbrigge. ¶ Capitulo ¶ Centesimo Nonagesimo Septimo.

¶ THe gode Erl Thomas of Lancastre, Hunfray de Bohon, Erl of Herford, and þe barouns þat wiþ ham[6] wer', toke[7] a[8] conseile bituene ham at þe[3] Frere Prechoures at Pountfrett'. þo þouȝt Thomas vppon þe traitour[9] Robert Holond, and saide in reprofe, "Allas! Holonde me haþ bitraiede! Ay is in þe rede of somme euel shrede.[10]" ¶ And by commune assent þai shulde alle [11]gone to[11] þe castel of Dunstanburghe, the whiche perteynede to þe Erldome of Lancastre, and þat þai shulde abide þere til[12] þe Kyng hade forȝeue ham his male-talent. but when þe gode Erl Thomas þis herde, he ansuerede in þis maner', and saide: "Lordes," quod he, "if we gone[13] toward þe north, men wil seyn[14] þat we goñ[15] toward þe Scottes; and so we shul be holde traitoures, for [16]cause of[16] distaunce þat is bituene[17] Kyng Edward and Robert þe Brus, þat[18] made him Kyng of Scotland. And perfore y say, as tochyng myself, þat y wil go[19] no ferþer into þe North þan to myn owen castel of Pountfrett'." ¶ And when Sire Roger' Clifford herde þis,[20] he aros vp anone in wraþ, [21]and drow his suorde, & swore by Almygty God [22]and by his holy names,[22] but if þat he wolde go[23] wiþ ham, he shulde be dede, and þat he wolde slee him þere. ¶ þe noble[24] Erl Thomas of Lancastre was sore adrade, and saide: "faire sires,[25] y wil go wiþ þow[26] whider'-so-euer' ȝe me lede." þo went þai togederes into þe North; and wiþ ham þai hade vij^c men of Armes, and come to Burbrig'.

¶ And when Sire Andrew of Herkela—þat was in þe North-contre þrouȝ ordenance of þe Kyng, forto kepe þe cuntre of Scotland

[1] a man D. [2] ȝelde D. ȝelden O. [3] *om.* O. [4] fro O.
[5] to D. [6] hym O. [7] nomen O.
[8] *MS. has* a castel, *with* castel *underlined for omission; om.* DO.
[9] traytry of D. Trayterye of O. [10] deth O. [11—11] wende into DO.
[12] til þat O. [13] go DO. [14] say D. [15] go D. [16—16] *om.* D.
[17] bituene D. betwen O. bitue R. [18] *om.* D. [19] gone D.
[20] þis word D. [21] *leaf* 125. [22—22] *om.* D. [23] gon O.
[24] noble and gentil DO. [25] sir' D. [26] ȝow DO.

—herde telle how þat[1] Thomas of Lancastre was descomfitede, [2]and his company were descomfitede[2] at Burton vp[3] Trent, he ordeynede him a stronge power, and Sir Symond Ward also,[4] þat þo[5] was[6] shirryf of ȝork, & come & mette þe barons at Burbrig; & anone þai breken[7] þe brige, þat was made of tre. ¶ And when[8] Sir Thomas of Lancastre herde þat Sire Andrew of Herkela hade brouȝt wiþ him soche a power, he was sore adrade, & sent for[9] Sir[1] Andrew of Herkela, & wiþ him spake, and saide to him in þis maner: "Sire Andrew," *quod* he, "ȝe mow wel vnderstonde how þat our Lord þe Kyng is ladde and misgou*er*nede by miche false conseil, þrouȝ Sir Hugh þe Spenser þe fader, &[10] Sir Hugh þe[11] sone, & Sir Iohñ Erl of Arundel, and þrouȝ Maistre Robert Baldok, a false pilede clerc, þat is in þe Kyng*us* court duellyng; wherfore y praye ȝow[4] þat ȝe wil[12] come wiþ vs, wiþ al þe power þat ȝe haue ordeynede, and helpe to destroie þe venyme of Engel*and*, and þe t*rai*toures þat bene[13] þerin, and we[1] wil ȝif vnto ȝow þe best part [14]of v Erldomes þar We haueþ[15] & holdeþ[16]; and We wil mak vnto ȝow [17]an oth[17] þat we wil neu*er* do þing wiþout ȝour consel, and so ȝe shul bene[18] as wele [19]at ese[19] wiþ vs as euer was Robert[20] Holande." ¶ Þo ansuerede Sir Andrew of Herkela, and saide: "Sir Thomas! þat wolde y nouȝt do,[21] ne consent þ*er*to, for no maner þing þat yhe[22] might me[5] ȝeue, [23]wiþoute*n* þe wil[23] and co*m*maundement of our lord þe Kyng; for þan shulde y be holde a t*rai*toure for eu*er*more." ¶ And when þe noble Erl Thomas of Lancastre saw þat he nolde consent to hi*m* for no man*er* þing, "Sir Andrew," he saide, "wil ȝe nouȝt consent to destroye þe venyme of þe reaume, as we bene consented?[24] At on[25] worde, Sir Andrew, y telle þe, þat or þis ȝer be goñ, [26]þat ȝe shal be[26] take and holde for a t*rai*toure, and more þan ȝe holde vs nowe; and in worse deth ȝe shul die, þan euer dede[27] Knyght of Engel*and*; and vnderstonde[28] wel þat [29]neu*er* ȝe dede[29] þing þat sorer [30]ȝow shal[30] repent. And now goþ and [31]do what[31] ȝow gode likes[32]; and y wil put me to[33]

[1] *om.* D. [2–2] *om.* D. & his Cumpanye O. [3] oppoñ D.
[4] *om.* O. [5] *om.* DO. [6] was to *sic* O. [7] broken D.
[8] when þat D. [9] to O. [10] & by D. [11] his DO.
[12] wolde D. wold O. [13] beth D. [14] *leaf* 125, *back*. [15] haue O.
[16] hold O. [17–17] *om.* D. [18] be efte D. be eft O. [19–19] *om.* DO.
[20] Robert of DO. [21] doue O. [22] me DO.
[23–23] without consel D. wi*th*-oute wil O. [24] consent DO.
[25] o DO. [26–26] ȝe shul ben D. [27] dide eny O.
[28] vndirstondeth O. [29–29] ȝe dede neuere D. ȝe dede neu*er* O.
[30–30] shal ȝow D. schal ȝow O. [31–31] doth þat DO.
[32] likeþ D. liketh O. [33] vnto DO.

þe [1]mercy and *grace*[1] of God." And so went þe false *trai*toure, Sir'[2] Andrew of Herkela, in his way as a false *trai*tour', a tiraunt, & forsuore[3] man. for þrouȝ þe noble Erl Thomas of Lancastre he vnderfonge þe armes of chiualry, and þrouȝ him he was made knyght.

¶ Thoo might men seen[4] Archieres drawen ham in þat on[5] side and in þat o*þer*e; and [6]Knyȝtes also[6] fouȝten togeder' wonder' sore; and amonge[7] o*þer*e, Sir' Hunfray de Bohoun, Erl of Herford, a worþi knyght of renoun*e* þrouȝout al Cristendome, stode & fauȝt with his enemys apon þe brigge. [8]And as the noble lorde stode and fauȝt oppoñ þe brugge, a þef, a ribaude, scolkede vnder þe brigg*e*, and fersly wiþ a spere smote the noble knyght into þe fondement, so þat his bowailles comen out *þer*e. Allas þe sorwe! for *þer*e was slayn þe floure of solace and of comfort', & also of curtesye. and *Sir*e Rog*er* of Clifford, a noble knyght, stode euer', and faught, & wel and nobly him defendede as a worþi baron; but at þe laste he was sore wounded in þe[9] heuede, & *Sir*e William of Sulley & Sir' Rog*er* of Bernesfelde[10] were slayn in[11] þat bataile. ¶ And[12] Sir' Andrew of Herkela saw[13] Sir' Thomas m*en* of Lancastre [14]laske and slake.[14] Anone he & his com*pa*ny come*n* to the Gentil Knyght, Thomas of Lancastre, & saiden[15] "ȝelde þe, *trai*tou*r*! ȝelde þe!" ¶ The gentil Erl ansuerede þo,[2] and saide: "nay, lordes! traito*ur*[16] be we none, and to ȝow wille we neu*er* vs ȝelde while[17] þat our'[18] lifes lasten[19]; but leuer we hauen[20] to be slayn in oure treuþ, þan ȝelde vs to ȝow." And Sir' Andrew aȝein[21] c*ri*ede[22] oppoñ Sir' Thomas company, [23]ȝellynge as a wolfe,[23] and saide: "ȝelde ȝow, *trai*tou*r*[24] taken! ȝelde ȝow!" and wiþ an hye [25]voice saide[25]: "beþ ware, sires, þat [26]no man[26] of ȝow be[27] so hardy, oppoñ lif and lyme, to mysdo[28] Thomas body of Lancastre." ¶ And wiþ þat worde, þe gode Erl Thomas went into a chapel, and saide, knelyng douñ oppoñ his knees, and turnede his visage toward þe crois, and saide: "almyghti God! to þe y me ȝelde, and holliche[29] put me into þi

[1—1] grace & m*er*cy O. [2] *om.* D:
[3] as a false forsuoren D. as a forswore O. [4] see D. [5] o O.
[6—6] knyȝte also and D. knyghtes also & O.
[7] also among' al D. also among O. [8] *leaf* 126. [9] his DO.
[10] Bernefeld' O. [11] at DO. [12] When D. whan O.
[13] saw þat' DO. [14—14] lefte and slakede D. lasked' & slaked' O.
[15] saide D. [16] trayto*urs* O. [17] whiles O. [18] one D.
[19] laste O. [20] han D. haue O. [21] *MS.* aȝein aȝein. [22] grad O.
[23—23] ȝollyng as wode wolues O. ȝeldynge as a wolfe R.
[24] traitoures D. traitours O. [25—25] a voys cryede & seyde O.
[26—26] non DO. [27] bene D. [28] mysdone O. [29] holly D. holy O.

mercy." ¶ And wiþ þat, þe vileins ribaudes lepten[1] about him, on[2] eue*r*y side þat Gentil Erl, as tiraunt*z* [3]and Woode t*ur*ment*ur*es, and despoilede him of his Armure, & cloþede him in a robbe of Ray, þat was[4] his sq[u]yers liueray, and [5]fourþ lade him vnto[5] 4
York[6] by wate*r*. þere[7] might me*n* see miche sorwe and care, for þe gentil knyghtes [8]fledden on[8] eue*r*y side, and þe ribaudes and vileins egrely ham desc*r*iede, and c*r*iede[9] in[10] hye, "ȝelde ȝow, t*r*aitoures! ȝelde ȝow!" 8

¶ And when þai were ȝolden,[11] þai wer' robbed, and bonde as þeues. Allas þe shame & despite, þat[12] þe gentil ordre of Knyghthode þe*r*e hade at þat bataile! And þe land þo was wiþ-outen[13] Law, for holy cherche þo hade nomore[14] reue*r*ence þan hit 12
hade bene a bordel hous. And in þat bataile was þe fader' aȝeins þe sone, and þe vncle aȝeins his[15] nevew; for so miche vnkynde-nesse was neue*r* seyne bifore in Engel*and*[16] amonges[17] folc of on[18] naciouñ; for o[19] kynrede had no more pite of þat oþe*r*, þan an 16
[20]hundred' wolfes haueþ on o[20] shepe; and hit was no wonder', for þe grete lordes of Engeland were nouȝt alle of o[21] naciouñ, but were mellede[22] wiþ oþe*r*e nacions, þat is forto seyn, so*m*me Britons, so*m*me Saxones, so*m*me Danois,[23] so*m*me Peghtes, so*m*me Frenche- 20
me*n*, so*m*me Normans, so*m*me Spaignardes, so*m*me Romayns, some Henaudes, some Flemyng*us*, and of oþe*r*e diue*r*se naciouns, þe whiche nacions acorded nouȝt to þe kynde bloode of Engel*and*. ¶ And if þe grete Lordes [24]of Engel*and* hade bene onelich wedded'[24] 24
to Englisshe peple, þan shulde pees haue bene, and reste among*us* ham, wiþouten[25] eny envy. And at þat bataile was Sir' Roger' Clifford' take',[26] Sire Iohñ Mounbray, Sire William [27] [28]Tuchet, Sir' William[28] Fitz-William, and meny oþe*r* worþi Knyghtes; and Sir' 28
Hugh Dauiłł þe next day after' was taken[29] and put into prisouñ, & shulde haue ben[30] done to þe[31] deþ if he hade nouȝ spousede þe Kynges nece, þat was þe Erl Gilbert*us*[32] sustre[33] of Gloucestre.

[1] lepte D. [2] in DO. [3] *leaf* 126, *back*. [4] was of DO.
[5–5] lad him forth to D. [6] *MS.* þork'. [7] þo DO.
[8–8] fled in D. fledden in O. [9] grad O. [10] an DO.
[11] ȝolde D. yolde O., [12] *om.* D. [13] without D. *with*oute O.
[14] no maner' D. [15] þe D.
[16] Engeland as was þat tyme D. Engelond' as was þat tyme O.
[17] among O. [18] o O. [19] one D.
[20–20] hungry wolfe hath of a D. hungry wolf hath of a O. [21] on D.
[22] medled' D. [23] Danes O.
[24–24] hade be wedede onliche D. hadden ben onlich wedded' O.
[25] without D. withoute O. [26] taken D. [27] *leaf* 127. [28–28] *om.*
[29] take O. [30] be O. [31] *om.* O. [32] Gilbert D. [33] wyf O.

And anone after, was Sir Bartholomev of Bedelesmer taken[1] att Stawe[2] Park, a maner of þe Bisshoppes of Lincolñ, þat was his nevew, and meny oþer barons and baronettes; Wherfore was made miche sorwe.

How Thomas of Lancastre was biheuedede[3] atte Pountfrett, & v barons hongede and drawe[4] þere. ¶ Capitulo Centesimo Nonogesimo Octauo.

ANd now y shal telle 3ow of þe noble Erl Thomas of Lancastre. When he was taken[5] & brou3t to 3ork, meny of þe citee were ful glade, and oppoñ him criede[6] wiþ[7] hye voice, "A, *sire traitoure*! 3e [8]arne welcome,[8] blessed be God! for now shal 3e haue þe reward þat longetyme 3e haue di*s*erued!" and caste oppoñ him[9] meny snoweballes, and meny oþer rep*r*oues dede[10] him. But þe gentil Erl þat soffrede, and saide neþer on ne[11] oþere.

¶ And in þat[12] same tyme þe Kyng herde of þat[13] scomfiture, and was ful glade, and in haste come to Pountfrett; and Sir Hugh þe Spens*er*, and Sir Hugh his sone, and Sir Iohñ, Erl of Arundel, and Sir Edmund of Wodestok, þe Kyng*us* broþ*er*, Erl of Kent, and Sir Aymer of Valance, Erl of Penbrok, & maistre Robert of Baldok, a false pilede clerc, þat was *p*riue & duellyng[14] in þe Kynges court; and alle [15]þai come[15] þider wiþ þe Kyng. ¶ And Sir Rauf of Beestoñ 3af vp the [16]castel to the Kyng; and þe Kyng entrede into þe castel; & Sir Andrev of Herkela, þe[17] false tiraunt, þrou3 þe Kynges co*m*mandement tok[18] with him þe gentil Erl Thomas[19] to Pountfret; and þ*er*e he was p*r*isonede in his owen castel þat he hade new made, þat stode a3eins þe Abbay of Kyng Edward.

And Sir Hugh þe[20] Spenser þe fader, [21]and Sir Hugh his sone,[21] caste and þou3t how and in what maner þe God Erl Thomas of Lancastre shulde bene[22] dede, wiþoute*n*[23] iugement of his peris; wherfore hit was ordeinede þrou3 þe Kynges Iustice3, þat þe Kyng shulde put oppoñ[24] him poyntes of t*r*aitery. ¶ And so hit bifelle

[1] take O. [2] traw *sic* D. [3] byheded O. [4–4] drawen D.
[5] take O. [6] cryeden O. [7] *with* an O.
[8–8] bene welcomen D. ar welcome O. [9] *om.* D. [10] deden O.
[11] neþ*er* O. [12] þe D. [13] the D. [14] dwelled O.
[15–15] comen DO. [16] *leaf* 127, *back.* [17] a DO.
[18] tok D. nome O. to bring R. [19] Thomas of Lancastr O.
[20] *om.* O. [21–21] *om.* D. & þe sone O. [22] be O.
[23] with-outen eny D. *with*oute eny O. [24] on O.

þat he was ladde to þe barr' bifore þe Kynges Iustice3, bare-heuede[1] as a þef', in a faire halle wiþin[2] his owen castel, þat he hade made þer'in meny a faire fest, boþ to riche and eke[3] to pore. ¶ And þise were his Iustice3: Sir' Hugh þe Spenser [4]þe fader',[4] Sir' Aymer' of Valance, Erl of Penbrok', Sire Edmund of Wodestok, Erl of Kent', Sire Iohñ of Britaignñ, Erl of Richemond, & Sir' Robert of Malemeþrop, iustice; and Sir' Robert him acoupede in þis maner': ¶ "Thomas! atte þe ferst', oure lord þe Kyng' & þis court' excludeþ 3ow of al maner' ansuere. ¶ Thomas! oure lorde þe Kyng' put oppoñ 3ow þat 3e haue in his lande riden wiþ baner' displaiede, [5]a3eynes his pees, as a *trai*tour.[5]" ¶ And wiþ þat worde, þe gentil Erl Thomas, wiþ an hie voice saide, "Nay, Lordes! forsoþ, and by Seint Thomas, y was neuer' traitoure." ¶ The iustice saide a3ein þo: "Thomas! our' Lord þe Kyng' put oppoñ þe[6] þat 3e hauen[7] robbede his [8]folc, and mordred his folc,[9] as a þef'. ¶ Thomas! þe Kyng also put oppoñ you[10] þat he descomfitede 3ow and 3our' peple wiþ his folc in his owen reaume; Wherfore 3e went and fley[11] to þe wode as an outlawe, and [12]also 3e were taken as an outlaw. ¶ & [12]Thomas, as a *trai*toure 3e shuH be[13] hongede by resouñ, but þe Kyng' haþ for3eue 3ow þat[3] gewys for þe loue of Quene IsabeH. ¶ And, [14]Thomas, resouñ wolde also þat 3e shulde ben hongede; but þe Kyng' haþ for3eue þat gewys[14] for cause and loue of 3o*ur* lynage. ¶ But, Thomas, for-asmiche as 3e were tak fleyng', & [3] as an outlaw, þe Kyng wil þat 3our' heued[15] be smyten[16] of', as 3e[17] haue wel dese*r*uede. Anone doth[18] him out of pres, and[19] bringe him to his iugement!" ¶ þe gentil knyght, when he[20] hade herde alle þise wordes, wiþ an hye voice he c*r*iede, sore weping', and saide: "Allas, Seint Thomas, [21]faire fader'! Allas[21]! shal y be[22] dede þus? *gr*aunt me now, blisseful God, ansuere!" but al it availede him noþing[23]; for þe cursede Gascoignes put him hider[24] and þider', and on him c*r*iede wiþ an hye voice, "O Kyng' Arthur', most dredeful! wel[25] knowen [26]now is þin[26] open t*r*aitery!

[1] bare-heed' O. [2] in O. [3] *om.* D. [4–4] *om.* D.
[5–5] as a *trai*tour' a3eynes his pees D. [6] 3ow D. [7] haue DO.
[8] *leaf* 128. [9] peple DO. [10] þe O. [11] fled O.
[12–12] *om.* O. [13] ben D.
[14–14] *om.* D. Thomas as resoñ wold' also *þat* 3e schuld' be honged' but þe kyng for3eue 3ow *þat gewes* O.
[15] hed O. [16] smyte O.
[17] *MS.* 3e shul, *with* shul *underlined for omission.* [18] do O.
[19] & anone D. & anon O. [20] *MS.* he he. [21–21] allas fayr' fader O.
[22] bene D. ben O. [23] not O. [24] hide *sic* D. [25] we O.
[26–26] is now þine D. is now þyn O.

in euel deþ shalt þow dye, as þow hast wel dis*er*uede." ¶ þo sette þai oppoñ his heuede[1] in scorn an olde chapelet', al-to rent & torn, þat was [2]nou3t worþ[2] an halpeny; & after' þai sette[3] him oppoñ a [4]lene white[4] palfray, ful vnsemeliche,[5] and ek al[6] bare, wiþ an olde bridel; and wiþ an horrible noyse[7] þai drow him [2]out of þe castel[2] toward his deþ, and caste on[8] him meny balles of snowe. ¶ And as þe turmentoures lade him out of þe castel, [9]þo saide he[9] þise [10]pitouse[6] wordes, and his Handes helde vp[11] [12]in hye toward[12] heuen: "Now, þe Kyng of Heuen 3eue vs m*er*cy, for þe erþely Kyng[13] haþ vs forsak'!" And a frere p*rech*oure went wiþ him oute of þe castel, til þat he come to þe place þat[14] he endede-in[15] his lif; vnto[16] whom he shroue him al his lif.[17] ¶ And þe gentil Erl helde þe frere wonder' faste by þe cloþes, and saide: "fair' fader', abide wiþ vs til þat [18]y be[18] dede; for my flesshe quakeþ for drede of deþ." And soþ forto saie, þe gentil Erl sette him oppoñ his Knees, & *turned'* him toward þe East'; but a Ribaude þat meñ[19] callede Hugoñ of Mostoñ, sette hande oppoñ þe gentil Erl, and said in despite of him[20]: "Sir' t*rai*toure, turne þe toward þe Scottes, þin[21] foule deth to vnderfonge"; and turnede þe Erl toward' þe North. ¶ The noble Erl Thomas ansuered þo wiþ a milde voice, and saide: "Now, fair' Lordes, y shal do al 3our' owen[15] wille." And wiþ þat worde þe frere went fram[22] him ful sore[23]; and anone a ribaude went to him, and smote of his heuede,[24] þe xj Kalend*us*[25] of Aprit, in þe 3er' of *grace* M^t^ CCC[26] xxj. Allas þat eu*er* soche a gentil blode shulde ben[27] don to deþ with-outen[28] cause and resouñ! ¶ And t*rai*t*er*ously[29] was þe Kyng' conseilede when he, þrou3 false conseil of þe false[11] Spens*er*s, soffred'e Sir' Thomas, his vncles[30] sone, bene[31] put to soche a deþ, & so [32]ben-heuedede[32] a3eyns al man*er* resouñ. And grete pitee hit was also, þat soche a noble Kyng' shulde ben[33] desceyuede and mysgou*er*nede þrou3[34] false Spensers, þe whiche he mayntenede þrou3 loselry a3eins his honour' and ek p*rofit'*; for aft*er*ward þ*er*e felle grete v*en*geaunce in

[1] heed' O. [2–2] *om.* D. [3] sent O. [4–4] white lene D.
[5] *MS.* vnsemelicliche; vnsemely D. [6] *om.* D. [7] voys D.
[8] oppoñ D. [9–9] he saide D. [10] *leaf* 128, *back.* [11] *om.* O.
[12–12] an hỳe towardes D. in hye towardes O. [13] þing *sic* O.
[14] *þere* D. [15] *om.* DO. [16] in-to O.
[17] *MS.* lif a, *with* a *underlined for omission.* [18–18] we bene D.
[19] me DO. [20] hym & seide *sic* O. [21] þy O. [22] fro O.
[23] sore wepyng' D. so wepynge *sic* O. [24] heed O. [25] *Kalend* DO.
[26] CCC & O. [27] be DO. [28] without D. withoute O.
[29] Traytourly O. [30] vncle O. [31] be O. [32–32] beheded' O.
[33] be DO. [34] þrou3 conseil of the D. þurgh Counceiłł of þe O.

[1]Engel*and* for enchesouñ of þe forsaide Thomas deþ. ¶ When þe gentil Erl of þis lif was passede, þe Prioure and þe monkes of Pounfrett' geten Sir' Thomas body of þe Kyng', and þai buriede hit bifore[2] þe hye aute*r* in the right side.

¶ And[3] þat same day þat þe gentil lord was dede, þe*re* wer' honged and draw[4] for þe same[5] querel [6]at Pountfrett',[6] Sir' William Tuchet, Sir' William Fitz-Willia*m*, Si*r*e Warein of Ysillee, Si*r*e Henry of Bradboure,[7] Sir' Willia*m* Cheyne, baroñs alle,[8] & Iohñ Page, Squyer'. ¶ And sone afte*r* at 3ork, wer' draw and Honget, Si*r*e Roge*r* of[3] Clifford, Sir' Iohñ of Mounbray, barons, & Sire Gosselyn Dauil,[9] Knyght. ¶ And at Bristow were draw and honged, Si*r*e Henry of Wyningtoñ, and Si*r*e Henry of Mounford, barons. ¶ And at Gloucestre wer' draw and hongede, Sire Iohñ Giffard & Si*r*e Willia*m* of Elmebruge,[10] barons. ¶ And at Londoñ wer' [11]Honget & draw,[11] Sir' Henry Tyeys,[12] baroñ; & at Winchelse,[13] Sir' Thomas Culpeper', knyght; & at Wyndesore, Sir' Fraunceys of Waldenham,[14] baron; & at Kaunte*r*bury was draw and honged, Si*r*e Bartholomew of Badelesmer' & Sir' Bartholomev of Assheburnha*m*, barons; And at Kerdif in Walys, Sir' Willia*m* Flemynge, baroñ.

How Kyng' Edward went into Scotland wiþ an[15] C^ml men of Armes, and might nou3t spede. ¶ Capitulo Centesimo Nonogesimo ¶ Nono.

AND when Kyng Edward of Engeland hade brou3t þe flour' of chiualry vnto þis[16] deþ, þrou3 conseil of Sir' Hughe þe Spensers[17] þe fader', & [18]Sir' Hugh[18] his sone, he[9] bicome as[19] wood as a lyouñ; and what-so-euer' the Spensers wolde haue done, it was doñ. And so wel the [20]Kyng louede ha*m*, þat þai might do[21] wiþ him al[22] þat þai wolde; wherfore [23]the King[23] 3af vnto Sir' Hugh þe Spense*r* þe fader', þe Erldome of Wynchestre, and to Sir' Androv of Herkela þe Erldome of Carlele,[24] in *pre*iudice and[25] harmyng of his croune. ¶ And Kyng Edward þo, þrou3 conseil of

[1] *leaf* 129. [2] bisides D. [3] *om.* D. [4] drawen D.
[5] same cause & D. [6–6] *om.* D.
[7] Bradborñ and D. Bradbourne & O. [8] al at Pountfret D.
[9] *om.* O. [10] Elmebright D. [11–11] draw and hongede D.
[12] Treys DO. [13] Wynchestre O. [14] Baldenha*m* O. [15] a O.
[16] *om.* D. his O. [17] Spense*r* D. Spencer O. [18–18] *om.* O.
[19] *MS.* as a, *with* a *underlined for omission.* [20] *leaf* 129, *back.*
[21] done D. [22] al þing DO. [23–23] *MS. has* sir' Hugh.
[24] Kardoil D. Cardoil O. [25] and in DO.

þe Spens*er*s, disheritede[1] alle ham þat hade bene a3eins him in eny quereH wiþ Thomas of Lancastre; and meny o*þer*e wer' disherited also, for enchesoñ þat þe Spensers coueitede forto haue her' londes; and so þai hade al þat þai wolde desire, wiþ wronge, and a3eyns al resouñ.

¶ þo made þe Kyng, Rob*er*t[2] of Baldok', a false pilede clerc, Chaunceller' of Engel*and*, þrou3 conseil of þe forsaide Spensers; and he was a false rybaude and a couetous; and so þai conselede þe Kyng so miche, þat þe Kyng' lete take to his owen ward alle þe godes of þe lordes þat [3]wrongefully were[3] put vnto þe[4] deþ, into his owen honde; and aswel þai token[5] þe godes þat were in holy cherche, as þe godes þ*at* were wiþout, and lete ha*m* ben[6] put into his t*re*sorie a[t] Londoñ, and lete [7]ham calle[7] his forfait3; and by her[8] conseile þe Kyng' wrought, and[9] disheritede [10]al ha*m*[10] þat [11]þe gode[11] oweden[12]; and þrou3 her' conseil lete arere a[13] talliage of alle þe godes of Engeland'; wherfore he was þe richest Kyng'[14] þat euer' was in Engel*and*, after Willia*m* Bastard' of Normandy, [15]þat conquerede Engel*and*.[15] ¶ And 3itte, þrou3 conseH of ham, him semede þat he hade nou3t ynou3, but made 3itte eu*e*ry touñ of[16] Engel*and* fynde a man of Armes oppoñ her' owen costages,[17] forto goñ[18] and werr' oppoñ the [19]Scottes [20]þat Wer' his enemys.

Wherfore þe Kyng' went into Scotland[20] wiþ an[21] hundred' þousande men of Armes at Whitsontide, in the 3ere of our' Lord God'[22] M¹ CCC &[4] xxij. But þe Scottes went and hud ha*m* in Mounteyns and in Wodes, and tariede þe Englisshe-men fro[23] day to day, þat þe Kyng myght for no mane*r* þing' ham fynde in pleyn felde; wherfore meny Englisshe-[24]men, þat few vitailes hade,[24] for hunge*r* [25]þe*re* deiden[25] wonder' faste, and sodeynly, for hunger' in goyng' and in comyng', and nameliche[26] þo þat hade bene a3eyns Thomas of Lancastre, and hade robbet his men oppoñ his landes.

¶ When Kyng' Edward saw þat vitailes failede him, he was þo wonder' sore discomfortede,[27] for enchesouñ also þat his me*n* so deide, and also for he might nou3t spede of his[13] enemys; so at þe[13]

[1] disherite D. [2] *MS. has* Robert þe, *with* þe *underlined for omission.*
[3–3] were wrongefully D. [4] *om.* DO. [5] tok D. [6] be O.
[7–7] calle ham D. [8] her DO. his R. [9] and for-eu*er*-more DO.
[10–10] hem aH O. [11–11] þo godes D. þo goodes O. [12] owede O.
[13] *om.* O. [14] *om.* D. [15–15] *om.* O. [16] in O. [17] Costage O.
[18] go O. [19] *leaf* 130. [20–20] *om.* D. [21] a O.
[22] god' a O. [23] fram D.
[24–24] þat wanted vitailes D. men þat fewe vitalles hadden O.
[25–25] þey dide O. [26] namely DO. [27] descomfitede D. discomfited' O.

last he come ayeyne into Engelandꝫ. And anone afterꝫ come Iames[1] Douglas and[2] Thomas Randolfꝫ wiþ an huge ost [3]into Engel*and*,[3] into Northumberlandꝫ, and wiþ ha*m* þe Englisshe-men þat werꝫ dryuen out of Engel*and*, & come and robbet the contre, and quellede þe peple,[4] and also brent[5] þe touñ þat was callede Northallertouñ, and meny oþ*er* tounes vnto 3orkꝫ. ¶ And when þe Kyngꝫ herd þis þingꝫ,[6] he lete [sompne] alle manerꝫ men þat might t*ra*uaile. And so þe Englisshemen mette þe Scottes atte þe Abbay of Beiheландꝫ, þe xv day aft*er* Michelmasse in þe same 3erꝫ abouesaide; And þe Englisshe-men werꝫ þ*er*e descomfited; & at þat scomfiture was takꝫ[7] Sirꝫ Iohñ of Britaygñ, Erl ofꝫ [8]Richemonde, þat helde þe contre and the Erldome of Lancastre; and afterꝫ, he paiede an huge raunsouñ, and was lete gone; and after þat he went into F*ra*unce and come neuerꝫ afterꝫ[9] ayeyn.

How Sirꝫ Andrew of Herkela w*as* taken,[10] and put vnto þe[11] deþ, þ*at* w*as* Erl of Cardoile. Cap*itu*lo CC^mo^.

ANd at þat tyme Sirꝫ Andrew of Herkela, þat [12]newe was[12] made Erl of Cardoile, for cause þat he hade taken[13] þe goode Erl[14] of Lancastre, he hade ordeyned, þrouȝ þe Kyng*us* com*m*andement of Engel*and*, forto bryngꝫ him aꝫ þe powerꝫ þat he might, forto helpe him ayeyns þe Scottes atte þe Abbay of Behigland. ¶ And when þe false t*ra*itoure hade gadrede aꝫ þe peple þat he might, and shulde haue come*n*[15] to þe Kyng to[16] þe Abbay of Biegl*and*, þe false t*ra*itoure lad ha*m* by anoþ*er* contre þrouȝ[17] Copeland, and þrouȝ þe Erldome of[18] Lancastrꝫ, and went þrouȝ þe contre, and robbit and quellede folc, al þat he[19] might. ¶ And ferþ*er*more þe false t*ra*itou*r* hade take[20] a gret some of golde[21] of Sirꝫ Iamys Douglas, forto bene[22] ayeyns þe Kyng of Engel*and*, and to bene[22] helpyng and holdyng wiþ þe Scottes; þrouȝ whos t*re*souñ þe Kyngꝫ of Engeland was scomfitede at Biheландꝫ erꝫ þat he come þiderꝫ; wherfore þe Kyng was [23]toward him ful[23] wroþ, and lete p*ri*uely enquere in[24] þe contre about,[25] how[26] hit was. and so m*en*

[1] Iame D. [2] and also DO. [3–3] *om.* D. [4] folc D.
[5] brennede D. [6] tydyngꝫ DO. [7] taken D. [8] *leaf* 130, *back.*
[9] afterwardꝫ O. [10] take O. [11] *om.* DO. [12–12] was newe O.
[13] take O. [14] erl Thomas D. Erle Thom*as* O. [15] come O.
[16] vnto DO. [17] to D.
[18] *MS.* of Richemondꝫ, *with* Richemondꝫ *underlined for omission.*
[19] þai D. [20] taken DO. [21] golde and siluer D. goldꝫ & siluer O.
[22] be O. [23–23] towardes him wonderꝫ D. towardꝫ hym wondir O.
[24] by DO. [25] *om.* D. [26] how þat O.

enquerede and aspiede, so[1] þat at the laste[2] treuþ was founde,[3] and sought, and he atteint and taken as a false *trai*tour',—as þe noble Erl Thom*as* of Lancastre him tolde, er' þat he were doñ [4]to dede[4] at his takyng' [5]att Burbrig', and to him saide, þat 'or þat 3ere wer' Doñ, he shulde ben[6] take and holde a *trai*tour'': and so hit was, as þe holy man saide. Wherfore þe Kyng sent *p*riuely to *Sir*e Antoyn[7] of[8] Lucye, a kny3t of þe contre of Cardoile, þat he shulde tak Sir' Andrew of Herkela, and put him vnto þe deþ. And to bryng þis þing to[9] þe ende, þe Kyng sent his *com*missioñ, so þat þe same Andrew was take at Carleel,[10] & ledde vnto þe barr' in *man*er of an Erl, worthely arraied', and with a suorde gert aboute him, and hosede and spored'. ¶ þo spak Sir' Antoyn[7] in þis *man*er, "Sir' Andrew," *quod* he, "þe Kyng put oppoñ þe þat, for-asmiche as[11] 3e haue[12] bene orpede in 3our' dedes, he dede vnto[13] 3ow michel[14] honour', and made 3ow Erle of Carlele[15]; and þow, as[16] *trai*toure vnto[17] þi lord' þe Kyng', laddest his peple of þis contrey, þat shulde haue holpe him at þe bataile of Bihiland'; and þow laddest ha*m* away by þe contre of Copeland', and þrou3 þe Erldome of Lancastr', wherfor our' lord þe Kyng was scomfitede [18]in bataile[18] þ*er*e of the Scottes, þrou3 þi *tr*esouñ and falsenesse. And if þow[19] hadest [20]come betyme,[20] he hade yhade þe maistre; and al þat *tr*esouñ þow dedest',[21] for þe[22] grete so*m*me of golde and[23] siluer' þat þow vnderfong' of Iames Douglas, a Scott', þe Kynges enemy. ¶ And our' Lorde þe Kyng*us* wille is, þat 3e, þe ordre of Knyghthode,—by þe whiche þow[24] vnderfonge al þin[25] hono*ur* and worship oppoñ þi body,—be al [26]brou3t to[26] nou3t', and þi state vndone, þat o*þer*e knyghtes of lawer' Degre mowe after þe be-ware; þe whiche lorde haþ þe auancede hugely in diu*er*ses[27] [28]contrees of Engeland'; and þat alle [29]may take ensample[29] by þe,[30] her lord' aftirward[8] trewely forto serue."

¶ þo co*m*man*d*ed he a knaf' anone[8] to hew of his spores of[31] his

[1] so þat O. so R. [2] laste þe D. laste þat O. [3] founden D.
[4–4] vnto deth DO. [5] *leaf* 131. [6] be DO. [7] Antony O.
[8] *om.* D. [9] vnto DO. [10] Kerdoiℍ D. Cardoiℍ O.
[11] þat D. [12] han O. [13] to D. [14] mych O.
[15] Cardoiℍ DO. [16] as a DO.
[17] *MS.* vnto þi lord, *with* þi lord *underlined for omission;* to D.
[18–18] *om.* DO. [19] *altered from* 3ow *in MS.* [20–20] comen be-tymes D.
[21] *tr*esoun þow dedest' D. treson) þou dedest O. tresouñ R. [22] a D.
[23] and of D. [24] 3e D. [25] þy O. [26–26] y-brought vnto O.
[27] diu*er*se D. diu*er*s O. [28] *leaf* 131, *back.*
[29–29] mow take a sample D. mowe take ensample O. [30] *om.* O.
[31] *with sic* O.

heles; & after he lete breke þe suerde ouer his heuede,[1] þe whiche þe Kyng [2]him ȝaf[2] to kepe and defende his[3] lande þerwiþ, when he made him Erl of Cardoile; and after he lete him vncloþe of his furrede mantel[4] and of his hood,[5] and of his furrede Cotes and of his gerdeℍ. And when þis was doñ, Sire Antoyne[6] saide vnto him: "Andrew," quod he, "now art þow no knyȝt, but a knaue; and for þi tresoñ þe Kyng wille þat þow bene[7] honged & drawe,[8] and [9]þin heuede smyten[9] of, and þi bowelles taken out of þi body, and þi bowelles brent,[10] and þi body quarterede, and [11]þin heuede smyten[11] of, and sent vnto[12] Londoñ; and þere hit shal [13]be sette[13] oppoñ Londoñ Brigge; and þi iiij[14] quarters shal be sent to iiij tounes of Engeland, þat alle oþere mowe be-ware and chastisede by þe." And as Antoyne[15] saide, so hit was done, al maner þing, on[16] þe last day of Ottobre, in þe ȝer of grace Mt CCC[17] xxij ȝere[14]; and þe sonne þo turnede into[18] blode, as þe peple it saw. ¶ and þat durede fro [19]þe morne,[19] til hit was xj of þe Clokke of þe day.

¶ Of þe miracles þat God wrouȝt for Seint Thomas loue of Lancastre; wherfore þe Kyng lete close þe cherche dores of[20] Pountfrett, [21]of þe Prioury,[21] for no man shulde come þerin [22]to þe body[22] forto offre. Capitulo Ducentesimo ¶ Primo.

And sone after[23] the Gode Erl Thomas of Lan[24]castr was martrede,[25] a preste, þat[14] Longe tyme [26]hatle ben[26] blynde, dremede in his slepyng þat he shulde gone[27] vnto þe huℍ þere þat þe gode [28]Erl Thomas of Lancastre[28] was doñ vnto deþ, and he shulde haue his sight aȝein: and so he dremede iij nyghtes sewyng. [29]And þe prest[29] þo lete lede him to þe same huℍ. ¶ And when he come to þat place þat he was martred oñ,[30] deuoutely he made þere his prayer,[31] and prayede God and Seynt Thomas þat he might[32] haue his sight aȝeyne. And as he was in his prayers, he laide his right hand oppon þe same place þere[33] þe Gode man was martred

[1] heed O. [2–2] ȝaf hym O. [3] þe D. [4] tabard O. [5] hodes D. [6] Antony O. [7] be O. [8] drawen D. [9–9] þy heed smyte O. [10] brent biforn D. brent byforn þe O. [11–11] þy heed smyte O. [12] to O. [13–13] stonde DO. [14] *om.* O. [15] Antonye O. [16] in DO. [17] CCC & O. [18] to D. [19–19] morne D. þe morne O. þe morwe R. [20] of þe Prioury of D. [21–21] *om.* D. [22–22] *om.* O. [23] after þat DO. [24] *leaf* 132. [25] enterede D. [26–26] þat had be O. [27] go DO. [28–28] Thomas O. [29–29] *MS.* and þe prest and þe preste. [30] in D. [31] prayers DO. [32] must O. [33] þat O.

on[1]; and a drope of dry bloode and smal sande cleued on[2] his honde,[3] and þerwiþ he striked his eyne, and anone, þrouȝ þe might of God and of Seynt Thomas of Lancastre, he hade his sight aȝeyn, and þankede þo Almighty God and Seynt Thomas. ¶ And when þis miracle was [4]cud[4] amonges men,[4] þe peple come þider' on[2] euery side, and knelede, and made her' praiers at his tombe þat is in the Priori of Pountfrett', and praiede þat holy martr', of Socour' and of helpe, and God herd her' prayer'. ¶ Also þere was a ȝonge childe drenchede in a welle in þe touñ of Pountfrett', and was dede iij daies and iij nyghtes; and men come[5] and laide þe dede childe oppoñ seint Thomas tombe, þe holy martr'; and þe childe aros [6]þere fram[6] þe[1] deþ vnto[7] lif,[8] as meny a man hit saw; & also miche peple wer' out of here mynde, & God haþ sent ham her mynde aȝeyn þrouȝ vertu of þat holy martr'. [9]¶ And also God haþ[10] ȝeuen[11] to creples hir' goyng', and to crokede her' hondes and her' feet', and to blinde also her' sight, and to meny sike folc her' hele, þat hadde diuerse maladyes, for the loue of his gode martre. ¶ Also þer was a riche man in Coundoñ in Gascoigne; and soche a maladie he had', þat al his right side rotede, and felle awaie fram[12] him; and men might se his Lyuer' and also his hert; and so he stank, þat vnneþ men might come neiȝ him; Wherfore his frendes[13] for him [14]were ful[14] sory. ¶ But at þe last, as God wolde, þai prayede to Seint Thomas of Lancastre, þat he wolde praye to Almighty God for þat prisouñ, and bihight to goñ[15] to Pountfrett' forto done[16] her' pilgrimage. And þe goode man sone after[17] slepte ful softe, and dremed þat þe martre Seynt Thomas come vnto him, and enoynted[18] ouer al his sike side.[19] And þerwiþ þe gode man awoke, and was al[20] hole; and his flesshe was restorede aȝein,[21] þat bifore was [22]rotede and felle[22] away; for whiche miracle þe good man & his frendes louede God and Seint Thomas euermore after. ¶ And þis gode man come into Engeland', and toke[23] with him iij felawes, and come to Pountfrett', [24]& come to[24] þat holy martr', and dede her' pilgrimage; but þe gode man þat was sik come þider' al

[1] *om.* DO. [2] in O. [3] fengeres D.
[4—4] knowen D. knowe among men O. [5] comen O. [6—6] fro O.
[7] to DO. [8] lyve O. [9] *leaf* 132, *back.* [10] haue O.
[11] ȝeuen þere D. ȝoue þere O. [12] fro O.
[13] frendes wer' D. frendes were O. [14—14] wonder D. wondir O.
[15] go O. [16] do D. [17] afte D. [18] annoyntede him D.
[19] body O. [20] *om.* D. [21] *om.* D.
[22—22] roten and falle D roted' & falle O. [23] nome D.
[24—24] vnto DO.

naked, saf his breche; and when þai hade done, þai tur*n*ede home a3eyne into her' contre, and tolde of þe miracle wher-so þat þai come. ¶ And also ij me*n* haue bene helede þe*re* of þe morimal, þrou3 helpe of þat holy martre, þou3 þat euel be holde incurable.

¶ When þe Spensers herde þat God wrou3t[1] soche miracles for his holy martre, and þai wolde nou3t[2] bileue hit in no man*er* wise, but saide[3] ope*n*ly[4] þat hit was grete heresie, soche ve*r*tu[5] of[6] him to bileue. ¶ And when[7] Sir' Hugh þe Spense*r*, þe sone, [8]saw al[8] þis doyng', anone he sent his [9]messag*er*s fram[9] Pountfret þe*r*[7] þat[10] he duellede þo, to þe[2] Kyng' Edward, þat þo was at Grauene atte Skipton̄, for cause þat þe Kyng shulde vndo his[11] pilg*r*image. ¶ And as þe rybaude þat was messag*er* [12]come to[12] þe Kyng' forto don̄ his[13] message, he come by þe hull þe*re*[14] þe gode man was done vnto deth; and in þe same place he made his ordur'; and when he hade ydon̄, he went toward þe Kyng'; and a st*r*onge flux him come oppon̄ er' he come to 3ork', and shedde all his bowailles at his fundement.

¶ And whe*n* Sir' Hugh þe Spense*r* herde þis tydyng*us*,[15] somdel he was adrad', and þou3t forto vndo þe pilg*r*image, if he might by eny man*er* way; And to þe Kyng went, and saide þat þai shulde be in grete sclaundre þrou3-out al Cristendome for the dep of Thomas of Lancastre, if þat he soffrede þe peple done[16] her' pilg*r*image at Pountfrett'. And so he conseilede þe Kyng', þat he comandede to close[17] þe cherche dores of Pountfrett', in þe whiche cherch þe holy martre Seynt Thom*as* was ente*r*ede; and þus þai deden, [18]a3eyns al[18] fraunchise of holy cherche, so þat iiij 3er' after myght no pilg*r*ime come vnto[19] þat holy body. ¶ And for enchesoun̄ þat[20] monkes soffred me*n* come & hono*ur* þat holy body of Seynt Thomas þe martre, þrou3 conseile of Sir' Hugh þe Spense*r* þe Sone, and þrou3 conseile also of Maistre Robert Baldok', a[21] false[22] piled clerk' þat was þe Kynges Chanceller', þe Kyng' consented that þai shulde be sette [23]to her' wages, and Lete make Wardeynes ou*er* her' owen Godes[24] longe tyme. ¶ And þrou3 þe[7] com*m*andement of þe forsaide Sir' Hugh þe Sepense*r*, xiiij Gascoignes wel armed' kepte þe hu*ll* þe*r* þat þe gode[25]

[1] dede DO. [2] *om.* DO. [3] seyden O. [4] *leaf* 133. [5] ve*r*tues D. [6] on O. [7] *om.* O. [8–8] when he herd al of O. [9–9] Messag*er* fro O. [10] *om.* D. [11] þe O. [12–12] went toward' D. wente toward' O. [13] her' D. [14] þat O. [15] tydyng' DO. [16] do D. [17] close in D. [18–18] aH a3ens O. [19] to D. [20] þat þe DO. [21] þe DO. [22] fals cursed O. [23] *leaf* 133, *back*. [24] gode D. good O. [25] gode man D. good man O.

Seint Thomas was don vnto his[1] deþ and biheuedede,[2] so þat no pilg*r*ime might come. By þat way ful wel wende he forto[3] haue binome[4] Cristus might' and his power', and þe grete loos of miracles þat he shewede for his martre Thomas þouȝ-out[5] al C*r*istendome.

¶ And þat same tyme þe Kyng made Rob*er*t of Baldok', a pilede clerc and a false, þrouȝ [6]conseile &[6] p*r*aier' of Sir' Hugh þe Spenser' þe sone, Chanceller' of Engeland'. And in þe[7] same tyme was þe castel of Wallingford' holden aȝeynes[8] þe Kyng', þrouȝ þe p*r*isoners þat were wiþin þe castel, for Seint Thom*a*s quereH of Lancastre. Wherfore þe pep[l]e of þe contre come & tok' the castel oppoñ þe[9] prisoners; wherfore Sir*e* Iohñ of Goleintoñ, knyȝt, and Sir Edmu*n*de of[10] Bech, p*a*rsoñ, and a squyer þat me callede Rog*er* of Waltoñ, wer' taken[11] and sent to the Kyng' to Ꝑounfrett'; and þ*er*e þai wer' done into prisoñ; and þe forsaide Rog*er* was sent vnto Ȝork', and þ*er*e he was draw and honged'.

¶ And aftirward,[12] Sir' Rog*er* Mortymer' of Wygemore brak out of þe To*ur*e of Londoñ[13] in þis maner': [14]þe forsaide Sir' Rog*er*[14] herde[15] þat he shulde bene[16] draw and hongede at Londoñ, [17]in þe morne[17] after Seint Laurence day; [18]and on þe dai bifore,[18] he helde a fair' fest in þe Tour' of Londoñ, and þo was Sir' Stephen [19]Segr*a*ue, Conestable of Londoñ, and meny g*r*ete m*e*n wiþ him. ¶ And when þai shulde sopen,[20] þe forsaide Stephe*n* sent for alle þe officers of the To*ur*re; and þai come and soppede wiþ him; and when þai shulde take her' leue of him, a squyer' þat me callede Stephe*n*, þat was ful p*r*iue wiþ þe forsaide Rog*er*, þrouȝ heir' conseile ȝaf h*a*m alle soche a drynk', þat þe lest of h*a*m alle slepte ij dayes & ij nightes; and in þe[21] mene-tyme he scapede away by wat*er*, þat is to seyn, by þe[22] Tamise, and went ou*er* þe see, and helde him in Fr*a*unce; wherfore þe Kyng was sore annoied', and þo put þe same Stephen out of his Conestablery.

How þe Quene IsabeH went into Fr*a*unce forto treten[23] of pees bituene her' lord, þe[1] Kyng' of Engel*and*, & þe Kyng' of Fr*a*unce, her' bro*þer*. Cap*itul*o Ducentesimo Sec*un*do.

[1] *om.* O. [2] byheded' O. [3] to O. [4] bynomen D. fulfilled O. [5] þurght O. [6–6] *om.* DO. [7] þat D. [8] aȝeyn D. [9] þe forsaide D. þe forseyd O. [10] of þe DO. [11] take O. [12] anone after D. anon after O. [13] Londoñ & O. [14–14] Sir Roger þe forseyd O. [15] saw D. [16] be O. [17–17] on þe morw D. in þe morowe O. [18–18] before on day O. [19] *leaf* 134. [20] sope DO. [21] þat D. [22] *om.* DO. [23] trete DO.

THe Kyng' went þo vnto Londoñ, and *þer*e, þrouȝ counseil of Sir' Hugh þe Spens*er* þe fader, and of his sone, and of maistre Robert of[1] Baldok, a false pilede clerc, his Chanceller', lete seise þo alle þe Quenes landes into his owe*n* honde, and also alle þe landes þat were Sir' [2]Edward his[2] sones, and were þo[1] put to her' wages, aȝeins al maner' resoñ; and þat was þrouȝ þe falsenesse of þe Spensers. ¶ And when þe Kyng of' F*r*aunce, þat was þe[3] Quene Isabelles bro*þer*, herde of þis falsenesse, he was sore annoyed' aȝeyns þe Kyng' of Engeland' and his false conseilers; wherfore he sent a lettre vnto Kyng Edward, vnder' his seal, þat he shulde come into F*r*aunce att a *cer*teyn day forto[4] [5]done His homag; and *þer*to he sompnede him; and elles[6] he shulde lese al Gascoigne. ¶ And so Hit was ordeynede in Engeland', þrouȝ þe Kyng' and his Counseil, þat Quene Isabell shulde[7] wende into[8] F*r*aunce, forto trete of pees bituene her' lord' and[1] her' bro*þer*; and þat Olyuer' of Yngh*a*m shulde wende into Gascoigne, and shulde[3] haue wiþ him vij M^l^ me*n* and mo of Armes, to bene[9] Senescal and wardein of Gascoigñ. And so hit was ordeynede þat Quene Isabel went þo ouer' þe see, and come into F*r*aunce, and wiþ her' went Sir' Aymer' of Valence, Erl of Penbrok', þat was *per* mordrede sodeynly [10]on a pr*i*ue[10] sege: but þat was þrouȝ Godes ve*n*geaunce, for he was on of þe Iustice3 þat consentede to Seint Thomas deþ[11] of Lancastre, & wolde neue*r* afte*r*ward repente him of þat wicked dede. ¶ And at þat tyme Sir' Olyuer' of Yngh*a*m went ouer'[12] into Gascoigne, and dede miche harme to þe Kyng of' F*r*aunce, and þo gete aȝein þat Kyng' Edward hade loste, &[13] more þerto.

How Kyng' Edward sent Sir' Edward' his sone, þe eldest, into F*r*aunce. Cap*itu*lo Ducent*esimo* Ter*cio*.

THe Quene Is*abel* nad [14]nouȝt bene[14] but a q*uarter* of a ȝer' in F*r*aunce duellyng',[15] þat Sir' Edward, his eldest' sone, ne axede Leue forto wende into F*r*aunce forto spek' wiþ his moder', Is*abel* þe quene. And þe Kyng his fader' [16]g*r*antede him[16] with gode wille, and saide to him, "go, my fair' sone, in Godes blessing' and myn; and þenk' forto come aȝein as hasteli as þow maiste.[17]"

[1] *om.* D. [2–2] Edwardes her' D. Edwardes his O. [3] *om.* DO.
[4] *MS.* forto forto. [5] *leaf* 134, *back.* [6] eꝑ O.
[7] shul shulde *sic* D. [8] in D. [9] be O. [10–10] in pyue *sic* O.
[11] *om.* O. [12] ouer þe see O. [13] and miche D. & myche O.
[14–14] *om.* DO. [15] duellede D. dwelled' O.
[16–16] him g*r*antede D. [17] miȝt D. myght O.

and he come[1] ouer the[2] see[3] into Fraunce; and þe Kyng' of Fraunce, his Vncle, [4]vnderfonge Him wiþ michel[5] honour, and saide to[6] him, "faire sone, ȝe [7]ben welcomen[7]; and for cause þat ȝour' fader' comeþ[8] nouȝt[9] forto done his homage for þe Duchee of Ghyen, as his auncestres were wont forto done, y ȝeue ȝow[10] þat lordeship, to holde hit of me in heritage as[11] ȝoure auncestre deden[12] bifore[13] ȝow." Wherfore he was callede Duk of Gyene.

8 How Kyng Edward exilede his Quene,[14] and Edward his eldest[2] sone. Capitulo CC quarto.

WHen Kyng Edward of Engeland herde telle how the Kyng of France hade ȝeue þe duche of Gieñe vnto Sire Edward his sone, wiþouten[15] consent and wille of him, and þat his sone hade vnderfonge þe Duchie [16]of him,[16] he bicome wonder wroþ, and sent' to his sone bi his[17] lettre, & to his wif also, þat þai shulde come[18] into Engeland wiþ al þe haste þat þai[19] might. ¶ The Quene Isabell, & Sire Edward her sone, [20]were wonder' sory and drade[20] of the Kyngus manace and of his wraþ, and principally [21]of the false traitoures[21] þe Spensers, boþe of þe fader and of the sone, & at his commandement þai wolde nouȝt come. Wherfore Kyng Edward was ful sore annoiede, and' lete make a crie at Londoñ þat, if Quene Isabell and Edward her' sone come nouȝt into[22] Engeland, þat þai shulde bene[23] holden[24] as enemys, boþe[25] to þe reaume & to þe croune; and for þat þai wolde nouȝt come into Engeland, but boþ were exilede, þe moder' and her[26] sone. ¶ Whe[n][27] Quene Isabell herd þis tidingus,[28] she was sore adrad to bene[23] shente þrouȝ þe false coniettyng of þe Spensers, and went wiþ þe knyghtes þat wer' exilede out of Engeland' for [29]Seint Thomas quereH[30] of Lancastre, þat is to seine, Sire Roger Mortymore,[31] Sire William TrusseH, Sire Iohñ of Cromweh, & meny oþer grete[32] kniȝtes. ¶ Wherfore þai tok[33] her' conseiH, & ordeined amonges ham forto make a mariage

[1] went D. [2] *om.* O. [3] see and went D. [4] *leaf* 135.
[5] myche O. [6] vnto DO. [7–7] be welcome O. [8] come O.
[9] *MS. has* nouȝt' come, *with* come *underlined for omission.*
[10] ȝow al D. [11] as al D. as aH O. [12] dede O. [13] biforn D.
[14] Quene Ysabel D. qwen IsabeH O. [15] with-out D. witH-oute O.
[16–16] *om.* D. [17] *om.* D. [18] come aȝeyn D. come aȝen O. [19] ȝe D.
[20–20] weren sore adrade D. were wonder sore adrad' O.
[21–21] þe falsenesse of D. of þe falsnes of O. [22] vnto D. [23] be O.
[24] holde DO. [25] boþe ij D. [26] þe D. [27] When þe D.
[28] tydyng O. [29] *leaf* 135, *back.* [30] Cause DO.
[31] Mortymere of Wigemore D. Mortymer of Wygemore O.
[32] gode D. good O. [33] nomen D.

bituene þe Duc of Gyene, þe Kyng*us* sone of Engel*and*, and the Erles dou3t*er* of Henaud', þat was a noble kny3t of name, and a dou3ty in his tyme. And[1] if þat þing might be[2] brou3t about and stand', þai trowede, wiþ þe helpe of God', and wiþ his helpe, to recou*ere* heir'[3] heritage in Engeland', wherof þai were put out[4] þrou3 the[5] coniettyng of þe false[6] Spensers.

¶ How Kyng Edward, þrou3 conseile of þe Spensers, sent to þe Du3sipiers of Fr*a*unce, þat þai shulde helpe þ*a*t[7] Quene IsabeH, and hire sone Sir' Edward, weren[8] exilede out of Fr*a*unce. Ca*pitulo* CC° v^to^.

WHen Kyng Edward and þe Spens*ers* herde how Quene Is*abel*, and Sir' Edward her' sone, hade Aliede ham to þe Erle of Henaud', and to ha*m* þat were exilede out of Engeland' for enchesoñ of Thomas of Lancastre, þey[9] were so sory þat þai nist what to done. Wherfore Sir' Hugh þe Spenser', þe sone, saide vnto Sir' Hugh his fader', in þis man*er* wise, and saide: "Fader, accursede be þe tyme & þe conseil þat eu*er* 3e consentede þat Quene Is*abel* shulde gone[10] into Fr*a*unce forto treten[11] of[12] accorde bituene þe Kyng' of Engeland & her' bro*þer* þe Kyng of Fr*a*unce, for þat was 3our' conseile, for at þat tyme for-soþe 3our' witte faillede; for Y drede me sore[13] lest, þrou3 her' & her' [14]sone, We [15]shul be[15] shent, but if we take þe[16] bett*er* consel."

¶ Now, fair' sires, vnderstondeþ how mervaillous folie[17] and falsehede þe Spensers ymagynede & caste; for p*r*iuely þai lete fille v barell*es* ferers wiþ siluer',—þe so*m*me amontede v M^l^ li,—and þai sent þo [18]barelle oue[r] þe se p*r*iuely by[18] an Alien þat me callede Arnolde of Spaigñ, þat was a brocour' of Londoñ, þat he shulde go to þe Du3sipiers of Fr*a*nce, þat þai shulde p*ro*curen and speken[19] to þe Kyng of Fr*a*unce, þat Quene Is*abel* and [20]Edward her' sone were dryue[20] and exilede out of Fr*a*unce, [21]and, amonge al o*þer* þing*us*,[21] þat þai were brou3 to[22] þe deþ as p*r*iuely as þai might'.

[1] þat D. [2] bene D. [3] his O. [4] *om.* O.
[5] þe false D. þe fals O. [6] *om.* DO. [7] þat þe D. [8] wer' O.
[9] *MS.* þat. [10] go O. [11] trete DO. [12] & O.
[13] *MS.* sore for, *with* for *underlined for omission.* [14] *leaf* 136.
[15—15] shulleþ bene D. [16] *om.* O. [17] felonye DO.
[18—18] barelles p*r*iuelich ouer þe see with D. bareH ouer þe see pryuyly by O. [19] speke DO.
[20—20] her' sone Edward wer' dryuen D. her sone Edward' were dryven O.
[21—21] *MS.* and amonge al o*þer* þing*us* & amonge al o*þer* þinges.
[22] vnto D.

But Almighty God wolde nouȝt so; ¶ ffor when þis Arnolde was in þe hye see, he was taken[1] wiþ Selanders þat mette him in þe see, and toke[2] him, & lad hi*m* to her' Lord', [3] þe Erl of Henaud'; & miche ioye was made for þat takyng'. ¶ And at þe laste, þis Arnolde p*ri*uely[4] stale away fro þens, and come[5] to Londoñ. And of þis takyng, and of[6] o*þer* þinges, þe Erl of Henaude saide to þe Quene Is*abel*: "dame, [7]make ȝow[7] mery and beþ of gode chier', for ȝe beþ[8] more riche[9] þan ȝe wende forto[10] haue bene; & tak ȝe þise v barelles[11] of Siluer' þat were sent to þe Duȝsepiers of Fr*a*unce forto[12] quelle ȝow & ȝour' sone Edward; and þenkeþ hastely forto wende into Engeland'; and tak ȝe wiþ þow Sir' Iohñ of Henaude, my broþ*er*, and v C̄ men of Armes; for meny of ha*m* of Fr*a*unce, in whom ȝe haue [13]hade grete t*ru*ste, hade grete deintee þow[14] forto scorne: and Almighty God gr*a*nt ȝow gr*a*ce, ȝour' enemys forto[15] ouercome." ¶ þe Quene Is*abel* sent þo prouȝ Henaud' and Flaundres for her' sodioures, and ordeinede her' eu*e*ry day forto[16] wende into Engeland' aȝeine; and so she had in her' compaṅy S*i*re Edmund' of Wodestoke, þat was Erl of Kent, þat was Kyng[17] Edwardes broþ*er* of Engeland'.

[18]How Kyng Edward lete kepe þe costes bi[19] þe see, & lete t*ri*e alle the p*ri*s men of Armes & footmen also þrouȝ al[20] Engel*and*. Cap*itu*lo CC° vj^to.[18]

WHen Kyng Edward herde telle þat þe Quene Is*abel* and Edward hir' sone [21]wolde come[21] into Engeland' wiþ meny Alien*us*, and wiþ ha*m* þat were outlawede out of Engeland' for her' rebelnesse, he was sore adrade to bene[22] put adoune and lese his kyngdome. Wherfore he ordeynede forto kepe his castelles,[23] in Walis as wel as in Engeland', wiþ vitailles and her' app*ar*ale, and lete kepe his ryuers, and also þe see costes, wherof þe v Portes token to kepe ham, & also þe see. ¶ And also he com*m*andede fer*þer*more, &[24] by his lettres ordeynede, þat eu*e*ry hundred' & wapentache[25] of Engeland', ij triors,[26] as wel of men of Armes as of

[1] tak D. take O. [2] token DO. [3] lord' þe O. Lord' R.
[4] p*ri*ueliche D. [5] comen D. [6] *om.* D.
[7–7] now make D. makeþ ȝow O. [8] ben O. [9] rycher D. richere O.
[10] *om.* DO. [11] barelles ful D. bareH ful O. [12] forto DO. for R.
[13] *leaf* 136, *back.* [14] ȝow DO. [15] to DO. [16] to O.
[17] s*i*re O. [18–18] *om.* O. [19] of D. [20] out D.
[21–21] were comen D. [22] be O. [23] casteH D.
[24] fer*þer*more & O. fer*þer*more R. [25] Wapentage DO. [26] *MS.* trions.

[1]me*n* of foote,[1] and þat þai shulde bene[2] put in[3] tuentysome and in hundredesome; and co*m*mandet þat al þo me*n* wer' aredy, when eny outesse and c*r*ie wer' made, forto pursue and tak þe Aliens þat comen into Engel*and* forto binime him þe land', and forto put him out of his kyngdome. ¶ And more-ouer' he lete c*r*ie, þrou3 his patent, [4]in eue*r*y faire and in eue*r*y marcat of Engeland', þat þe Quene YsabeH, and Sir' Edward his eldest sone, and þe Erl of Kent, þat þai were take, and safly kepte, wiþout[5] eny maner of[6] harme vnto ha*m* doyng'; and alle oþe*r*[7] peple þat come wiþ ha*m*, anone smyte of her' heuedes,[8] wiþout eny mane*r*[9] raunsoñ. ¶ And what man þat might bryng[10] Roge*r*es heede, þe[11] Mortyme*r*', of Wigemore, shulde haue a[12] C̄ li of monee for his t*r*auaile. And ferþe*r*more he ordeynede by his patent, & co*m*mande,[13] to mak a fire on[14] eue*r*y hye huH bisides[15] þe ryuers and in low contres, forto make hye bikenes of tymbre, þat if it so were þat þe Aliens come to[16] þe lande by nyght, þat me*n* shulde[17] tende[18] þe bikenes, þat þe contre mi3t ben[19] warnede, and come and mete her' enemys. And in þe same tyme deide Sir' Roge*r* [20]Mortyme*r*, his[20] Vncle, in þe Toure of Londoñ.

How[21] Quene IsabeH & Sir' Edward', Duc of Gyene, her'[22] Sone, come to land' at[23] Herwiche; [24]and how þai deden.[24] ¶ Capit*ulo* ¶ Ducentesimo ¶ Septi*mo*.

THe Quene IsabeH and Sir' Edward hir' sone, Duc of Gyene, Sir' Edmunde of Wodestok, Erl of Kent,[25] and Sir' Iohñ þe Erles[26] bro þe*r* of Henaud', and her'[27] company, drade nou3t þe manace of þe Kyng' ne of his t*r*aitoures, for þai truste al in Godes g*r*ace, & come vnto Herwiche in Southfolc, þe x day [28]in þe mounthe[28] of Ottobr', And in[29] þe 3ere of g*r*ace[30] M' CCC[31] xxvj. ¶ And at[32] þe same tyme, [33]at Londoñ, þe*r*e was Kyng Edward'[33]

[1–1] foote men D. me*n* on foote O. [2] be O. [3] into D.
[4] *leaf* 137. [5] with-outen D. [6] *om.* DO.
[7] oþe*r*e mane*r* D. oþe*r* mane*r* O. [8] heed' O.
[9] *MS.* mane*r* reso, *with* reso *underlined for omission; om.* DO.
[10] bryng s*i*re D. brynge sir O. [11] *om.* O. [12] an DO.
[13] co*m*manded' O. [14] oppoñ D. vpon O. [15] beside O.
[16] vnto DO. [17] schul O. [18] light D. [19] be DO.
[20–20] Mortymeres D. [21] How þe DO. [22] his O. [23] to O.
[24–24] *om.* O. [25] erl of Kent D. Erle of' Kent O. erl R.
[26] *MS.* erles dou3ter, *with* dou3ter *underlined for omission.*
[27] he *sic* D. [28–28] *om.* D. [29] *om.* D. [30] grace a O.
[31] iij *sic* D. [32] in D.
[33–33] Kyng Edward was at Londoñ D. Kyng Edward was at London) O.

in[1] the Toure at his metee; and a messenger[2] come into þe haH, [3]and saide þat[4] Que[en] IsabeH was comen[5] to lande at[6] Herewiche, and hade brouȝt in her company Sire Iohñ of Henaude, and wiþ him men of armes wiþoute nombre. And wiþ þat worde, Sir Hugh þe Spenser, þe fader, spake &[7] þus to þe Kyng saide[8]: "my most worshipful Lorde,[9] Kyng of Engeland, now mow[10] ȝe make gode chere, for certeinly þai ben al oures." ¶ The Kyng saw þis worde comfortable; ȝitte he was ful sorweful & pensif in hert. And þe Kyng hade nouȝt ȝitte fulliche[11] eten,[12] þat þere ne come into þe halle anoþer messager, and saide þat þe[8] Quene Isabel was arryuede at Herewich, bisides Skipwich[13] in Southfolc. Sir Hugh þe[8] Spenser, þe fader, spake[14] to þe messager, and saide: "telle þe[8] soþ in goode fay,[15]" quod he to þe messager, "my faire frende, is she comen[5] wiþ a grete strengþ?". ¶ "Certis, sir, soþ forto say, she haþ[16] in her company but vij C̃ men of Armes." And wiþ þat worde, Sire Hughe þe Spenser, þe fader, criede wiþ an hye voice, and saide: "Allas, Allas! we [17]beþ alle[17] bitraiede; for certes wiþ so litil power she [18]nad neuer comen[18] to londe, but folc of þis lande were to her consentede.[19]" And þerfore, after mete þai toke[20] her conseile, and went toward Walys, forto arere þe Walshemen aȝeins Quene IsabeH and Edwarde her sone, al forto fight; and so þai were in purpos, euerycheoñ.[21]

How Maistre Walter of[9] Stapletoñ, Bisshop of Excestre, þat was þe Kyngus Tresorer, was biheuedede[22] at Londoñ. Capitulo Ducentesimo Ottauo.

AND in þe same tyme, Kyng Edward was sore adrade leste men of Londoñ wolde ȝelde ham [23]vnto[24] þe Quene Isabel and to Sir Edward her[25] sone. Wherfore he sent maistre Walter of[9] Stapletoñ, his Tresorer, forto bene[26] wardein and keper of þe citee of Londoñ wiþ þe Mair. and so he come to þe GildehaH of Londoñ, and axede þe keies of þe ȝates of þe citee, prouȝ vertue and strengh of his commissioñ, and wolde haue hade þe Kepyng of þe citee. ¶ And þe communes[27] ansurede and saide, þat þai wolde kepe þe citee to þe

[1] þe *sic* D. [2] Messager O. [3] *leaf* 137, *back*. [4] þat þe O.
[5] come O. [6] *MS.* &. [7] & seyde O. [8] *om.* O.
[9] *om.* D. [10] *MS.* mow mow. [11] ful D. [12] ete O.
[13] Gypeswych O. [14] spake þo O. [15] feþ D. [16] ne had O.
[17–17] ben O. [18–18] had neuere come O.
[19] consent D. consente O. [20] nome D. [21] echeon O.
[22] beheded O. [23] *leaf* 138. [24] to D. [25] his D. [26] be DO
[27] Comuners O.

honour of[1] Kyng Edward, and of Isabel þe Quene, and of þe Duc, þe Kyngus sone, wiþouten[2] eny mo.' ¶ þe Bisshop was þo sore annoiede, and suore his oth þat þai alle shulde abie, anone as þe Kyng' were come[3] out of Walys; and þe communers[4] anoñ,[5] alle[6] of þe citee, toke[7] þe Bisshope, and lade him amid[8] Chepe; and þere þai smyten[9] of his heuede,[10] & sette [11]his heede[11] in his right hand'; and after, þai biheuedede[12] ij of his Squyers þat helde wiþ þe Bisshope; and one of ham me callede William of Walle, þat was þe Bisshoppes Nevew; & þat oþer me callede Iohñ of Padyngtoñ. and also þai toke a burgeis of Londoñ, þat me callede Iohñ Marchal, þat was Sir' Hugh þe Spensers aspie, þe fader, and smyten of his heede[13] also.

¶ And in þat[14] same tyme þat[15] same Bisshop hade in Londoñ a fair' Toure in making', in his cloos oppoñ þe ryuer' of Tamise, þat was wiþout þe[6] Temple-Barr', and him failede stone forto[16] make þerof an ende; wherfore he commandede his men forto gone[17] to þe cherche of þe Frere Carmes; and þere þai toke[18] stone, [19]and made þerwiþ þe tour'[19]; and miche sande and[20] morter, and olde robons[21] þer was lefte. ¶ And for [22]þe despite þat þe Bisshop Hade done to[23] holy cherche,[24] he and his ij squyers were buriede in þat sande, as þau3[25] þai hade bene hondes; and þere þai leyen xj wokes til þat þe[5] Quene Isabel sent her' lettres to þe communers,[25] and praiede ham þat þai wolde soffre and grant þat þe Bisshop moste bene[26] take out of þat place, &[27] buriede at Excestr', at his owen cherche; and so he was; and his ij squyers were buriede at seynt Clementis cherche wiþout Temple-Barr'.

¶ And Hit was [28]nou3t ful grete[28] wonder' þau3 þat Bisshop deide in euel deþ, for he was a couetouse man, and hade wiþ him no mercy, and euel conseilede þe Kyng'. And sone þereafter[29] was Arnold' of Spaigne taken, he þat was assentant to haue ladde þo[30] v M' ti of Siluer' in v barelles[31] ferers vnto þe Dussipiers of Fraunce, forto helpe and haste the[5] Quene Isabel to hir' deþ, & Edward her' sone also: and' þis Arnolde was done vnto þe[32] deþ wiþout þe citee of Londoñ.

[1] of þe O. [2] with-out D. with-oute O. [3] comen D.
[4] communers alle O. [5] *om.* D. [6] *om.* O. [7] to *sic* O.
[8] in myddes þe D. [9] smyte O. [10] heed' O. [11–11] it D.
[12] beheded' O. [13] heuede D. [14] þe O. [15] þe D. [16] to DO.
[17] go O. [18] token DO. [19–19] *per*with þe Toure to make O.
[20] *MS.* and &. [21] Robons þat O. [22] *leaf* 138, *back.* [23] vnto O.
[24] *MS. has* cherche and. [25] communes D. [26] be O.
[27] and bene D. & be O. [28–28] no DO. [29] after O. [30] þe D.
[31] bareH O. [32] *om.* DO.

How Kyng Edward and Sir Hugh þe Spens*er* were taken, and þe Erl of Arundel. Capit*ulo* CC° ix°.

WHen Kyng Edward hade sent Maistre Walt*er* [1]of Staple-
4 toñ,[1] his Tresorer, into Londoñ, forto kepe þe citee vnto him a3ein[2] þe[3] Quene Is*abel* his wif, & a3eyn[4] Edward her[5] sone, anon him-self [6]tok wiþ him[6] Sir Hugh þe Spens*er*[7] þe fader, and [8]Sir Hugh[8] his sone, & Sir Iohñ, Erl of Arundell, & Maistre Rob*er*t
8 Baldok, [9]a false pilede clerc, his Chaunceller,[9] and [10]toke here[10] way towarde Bristowe; And þ*er*e þe Kyng abode a litil [11]te*r*me, and made Sir Hugh þe Spenser þe fader, [12]Keper and Conestable[12] of þe castel. And þe Kyng and þe o*þer* aboue-saide went into
12 shipp, and sailede toward Walys, and toke no leue of þe Styward, ne of none of[13] þe Kynges Householde; and went ou*er* into Walys forto arere þe Walshe-m*en* a3eynes Dame Is*abel* þe Quene, & [14]Edward, Duc[14] of Gyene, her sone, & her co*m*pany. ¶ But þe
16 Quene, & þe Duc her sone, and þe Erl of Kent, and Sir Iohñ of Henaude,[15] went and p*ur*suede after ham; and her power come and encressede eu*er*y day; so at þe laste þe Kyng was taken[16] oppoñ an[17] hulle in Walys, and Sir Hugh þe Spens*er* þe sone, in þat o*þer*
20 side of þat[18] same hull, and þe false pilede clerc, ¶ Maistre Rob*er*t of Baldok, þ*er*e fast bisides ham, and were brou3t a3eyne into Engeland, as Almighty God wolde. And þe Kyng him-self[3] was in saf kepyng in þe castell of Kenyworth; and him kepte Sir
24 Henry, þat was Seint[3] Thomas bro*þer* of Lancastre.

& Sir Hugh þe Spenser þe fader come and put him vnto[19] þe Quenes grace, and to Sir Edward her sone, Duc of Gyene. ¶ But Sir Hugh þe Spens*er* [8]þe sone,[8] af*ter* þat[20] he was taken,[21] wolde[22]
28 ete no maner mete, ne[23] drynk [8]no man*er* drynk,[8] for he wist to haue no m*er*cy, but onelich[24] he wiste he shulde bene[25] dede. And þe Quene and her conseil[26] ordeynede þo[27] þat he shulde bene[28] done to deþ at Londoñ; but he was so feble for his michel[29]

[1–1] Mapletoñ D. [2] a3ens O. [3] *om.* D. [4] a3eyne sir D. a3ens O. [5] his D. [6–6] nome with D. [7] Spencers boþe O. [8–8] *om.* O. [9–9] his Chanceller a false pilede clerc D. his Chaunceller a fals piled Clerk O. [10–10] nomen he *sic* D. token her O. [11] *leaf* 139. [12–12] as conestable and keper D. as Constable & kepere O. [13] in DO. [14–14] duk Edward D. [15] Henaude and þai D. Henaud & þey O. [16] take O. [17] a O. [18] the D. [19] to D. [20] þe tyme þat DO. [21] take O. [22] nolde D. he nolde O. [23] ne*þer* O. [24] only O. [25] be O. [26] conseile hade þo D. Counceil þo had O. [27] *om.* DO. [28] haue be O. [29] miche D. myche O.

fastyng', þat he was dede almost for fastyng'; and þerfore hit was ordeynede þat he shulde haue his iugement at Hereford[1]; and at a place[2] of þe toune his [3]hode was taken[4] fram[5] his heued',[6] and also [7]fro Maistre Robert[7] Baldok,[8] þat was [9]a false pilede clerc,[9] & þe Kyngus Chancellers. And men sette vppoñ her' Heuedes[10] chapelettes of sharpe[11] netles, and ij squyers blow[12] in her' eres wiþ ij grete bugles[13] hornes, oppoñ þo[14] ij prisoners; and[15] men might her' þo[16] blowyng out wiþ hornes, mo þan a þousand and one. Symunde of Redyng',[17] bifore ham bar' her' armes oppoñ a spere reuersede, in token þat[18] þai shulde be vndone for euermore.

¶ And oppoñ þe morwe was Sir' Hugh þe[19] Spenser' þe sone dampnede to deþ; and was draw and hongede, biheuedet, & his boweiles taken out of his body, and [20]his bowelles[20] brent. And after he was quarterede, & his quarteres sent to iiij tounes of Engeland, and his heuede[21] sent to Londoñ Brigge. And þis Symond, for enchesoñ þat he despisede þe Quene Isabel, he was draw and hongede on[22] a stage made[23] [24]in mydes[24] þe forsaide Sir' Hughes galwes.[25] And þe same day, a litil fro þens, was Sir' Iohñ of Arundel biheuede[26]; for he was on of Sir' Hugh þe Spensers conseilers. And anone after wa[s] Sir' Hug[h] þe[19] Spenser' draw & hongede, & biheuededе[27] at Bristow, and after hongede[28] aȝeyn bi þe Armes bi[29] ij strong ropes; and þe iiij[30] day after, he was hew al to peces; & hundes eten[31] him. And for[23] þat enchesouñ þat þe Kyng' hade ȝeuen[32] [33]him þe Erldoñ[33] of Winchestre, his heede[34] was lad þider', and put oppoñ a spere; and þe false Baldok' was sent to Londoñ, & þere he deide in prisone amonges[35] þeues, for men[36] dede him no more reuerence þan me wolde do[37] vnto an hunde: and so deide[38] the traitours of Engeland, blissede be Almyghty

[1] Herford' D. [2] place of þe place *sic* D. [3] *leaf* 139, *back*.
[4] take O. [5] fro DO. [6] heed' O.
[7–7] fram Robert of D. from Robert of O. [8] Baldoks O.
[9–9] a piled' clerc and also þat was false D. a piled' Clerk' also þat was fals O. [10] hedes O.
[11] D *has* sharp þornes, *with* þornes *struck out with a red line*.
[12] blew O. [13] bugle O. [14] þe D.
[15] þat DO. [16] þere D. her O.
[17] Redyng' þe kynges Marchal D. Redyng þe kynges Marschall O.
[18] þan *sic* O. [19] *om.* D. [20–20] *om.* O. [21] hed O.
[22] in O. [23] *om.* O. [24–24] amyddes D. amydde O.
[25] galhouse D. [26] biheuededе D. beheded' O. [27] byheded' O.
[28] hongen D. hanged O. [29] with DO. [30] fourþe O.
[31] ete O. [32] ȝeue O. [33–33] þe erl D. þe Erle O.
[34] heuede it D. heed' it O. [35] among O. [36] for men DO. for R.
[37] don O. [38] diden O.

God! & [1]hit Was no wonder, for þrouȝ her' conseil th[e] gode Erl Thomas of Lancastr' [2]was done unto deth and al þat helden with Thomas of Lancastre[2] þrouȝ þo traitoures were vndoñ, and alle her' heires disheritede.[3]

How Kyng Edward was put adoune.[4] ¶ Capitulo ¶ Ducentesimo ¶ Decimo.

ANon[5] after' þis was done, þe Quene Is*abel*, and Edward' hir' sone, and alle þe g*r*ete lordes of Engel*and*, at on assent sent to Kyng Edward' to þe castel of Kenylworþ, þ*er*e þat þe kyng was in kepyng' vnder' þe warde of Sir' Iohñ Hothum, þat was þe[6] bisshop of Ely, & of S*ir* Iohñ of Parcy, a baroñ, for enchesouñ þat he shulde ordein his p*ar*lement att' a c*er*tein place in Engeland', forto redresse [and] amende þe state of þe ream. And Kyng Edward' ham ansuerede and saide: "Lordes," *quod* he, "ȝe see[7] ful wel how hit is. Lo! haueþ her' my seal. y ȝeue[8] ȝow my power' to ordeine a p*ar*lement wher'[9] ȝe wille." And þai toke[10] her' leue of him,[11] and come aȝeyne to þe barons of Engeland', and when[12] þai hade þe Kyng*us* patent of þis þing', and þai shewede hit to[13] þe lordes, and þo was ordeynede þat þe p*ar*lement shulde be[14] at Westmynstre, at þe[15] Vtas of Seint Hillari. And alle þe g*r*ete lordes of Engel*and* lete ordein for ham þ*er*e aȝeins þat tyme þat þe p*ar*lement shulde bene.[16] ¶ And at þe[15] whiche day þat þe p*ar*lement was assignede,[17] þe Kyng wolde nouȝt come þ*er*e,[18] as he hade sette himself and assignede. And noþelesse þe barons sent to him, on[19] tyme and oþ*er*, and he suore by Godes soule, þat he nolde come þ*er*e [20]on foote.[20] Wherfore hit was ordeynede by al þe grete lordes of' [21]Engeland', þat he Shulde no Longer' bene[22] Kyng', but bene[23] deposede; and saide þat[15] 'þai wolde c*r*one[24] Edward' his sone [25]Kyng', þe eldeste,[25] þat was Duk of Gyene'; and sent so tydynges[26] to þe Kyng' þ*er*e þat he was in ward vnd*er* S*ir* Iohñ, Erl of

[1] *leaf* 140.
[2—2] *supplied from* D. was done vn-to deþ & aH þat held' with hym O.
[3] disherite D.
[4] adouñ and his dignite bynomen him D. a-doun & his dignite bynome O.
[5] And D. [6] *om.* D. [7] sene O. [8] ȝeue DO. ȝe R.
[9] wher þat O. [10] nome D. [11] hem O. [12] þat þat *sic* D.
[13] vnto D. [14] bene D. [15] *om.* O. [16] be O.
[17] *om.* DO. [18] þ*er*e for no maner þing' DO. [19] o DO.
[20—20] a foote D. o foote O. [21] *leaf* 140, *back*. [22] be O.
[23] he DO. [24] crovne kyng O. [25—25] þe elder kyng' D. þe elder' O.
[26] tydynge O.

Gerrein, and Sire Iohñ of Bothun, þat was Bisshop of Ely, and Sir Henry Percy, barouñ,[1] and Sire William Trusseꝁ, a knyȝt, þat was wiþ þe Erle Sir Thomas of Lancastr, forto ȝelde vp her homages vnto him for aꝁ ham of Engeland. ¶ And Sire William Trussel saide þise wordes: "Sir Edward! for enchesoñ þat ȝe haue traiede ȝour peple of Engeland, and haue vndone meny grete Lordes of Engeland wiþouten[2] eny cause, but now ȝe beþ[3] wiþstand,—þankede be God!—and also for[4] ȝe wolde nouȝt come to þe[5] parle-ment as ȝe ordeynede at Westmynstre, as in ȝour owen[5] Lettre patent is conteinede, forto trete wiþ ȝour lige men as a Kyng shulde; and þerfore, prouȝ aꝁ þe commune assent of alle þe lordes of Engeland, y telle vnto ȝow þise wordes: ¶ ȝe shul vnderstonde, Sir, þat þe barons of Engeland atte on assent wille þat ȝe bene[3] nomore Kyng of Engeland, but vtterly haueþ[6] put [7]ȝow out[7] of ȝour realte for euermore." ¶ And þe bisshop of Ely saide þo to þe Kyng, "Sir Edwarde! here y ȝelde vp feautes[8] & homage[9] for alle þe Erchebisshoppes and Bisshopes of Engeland, and for al þe clergye." ¶ þo saide Sir Iohñ, Erl of Garrein, "Sir Edward[10]! y ȝelde vp her[5] vnto ȝow feaute and homage, for me, and for al þe Erles of Engeland." ¶ And Sir Henry [11]þe[12] Percy ȝaf vp also þere his homag,[13] for him and for alle þe barons of Engeland. ¶ And þo saide Sir William Trussel: "y ȝelde vp, [14]Sir, now[14] vnto ȝow my[15] homage, fo[r] me & also for alle þe knyȝtes of Engeland, and for ham alle þat holden by seriauntrye[16] or by eny oþer maner þing of ȝow, so þat fro þis day afterward ȝe shulle nouȝt be cleymede Kyng, neiþer for Kyng bene[3] holde; but fram[17] þis tyme afterward ȝe shul bene[3] holde a singuler man of aꝁ[12] þe peple." And so þai went þens vnto Londoñ, þere þat þe lordes of Engeland ham abode; and sir Edward abode in prysouñ vnder gode[18] keping[19]; and þat was þe day of [20]þe Conuersioñ[20] of seynt Poule in þe xx ȝere of his regne.

Prophecie of Merlyn declarede of Kyng Edward, þe sone of Kyng[5] Edward. Capitulo CC vndecimo.

[1] a barouñ D. a baron O. [2] withoute O. [3] be O.
[4] for enchesoun þat D. for enchesoñ þat O. [5] *om.* O. [6] haue DO.
[7–7] out ȝow O. [8] feute O. [9] homages O. [10] Edward here O.
[11] *leaf* 141. [12] *om.* D. [13] homages O.
[14–14] now sire D. now sir O. [15] myn DO. [16] seriauntye O.
[17] fro D. [18] þe D. [19] Kyng Edward his sone O.
[20–20] Conuersacion O.

Of þis Kyng Edward, *pro*pheciede *Mer*lyn, and saide þat *þere* shulde come a gote [1]out of a[1] car', þat shulde haue hornes of siluer' and a berde as white as snowe; and a drop shulde come out at[2] his noseþrelles þat shulde bitokne miche harme, hungre, and deþ of þe[3] peple, and gret losse of his lande; and þat in þe bigynnyng of his regne shulde ben[4] hauntede michel[5] lecherie; and saide soiþ, allas þe tyme! ffor Kyng Edward, þat was Kyng' Edward*us* sone, þat was born[6] in Carnariuan in Walys, for soþ he hade Hornes as[2] siluer', and a berd as snowe, whe*n* he was made Prynce of Walys, & to miche he ȝaf him vnto realte[7] and[8] folie. And soþ saide Merlyn in his *pro*phecie [9]þat *þere* shulde come[10] out of His nose a drop; ffor in his tyme was grete hunge*r* amonges[11] þe pore me*n*, and stronge deþ amonge þe ryche', þat deiden[12] in st*r*ange lande wiþ miche[13] sorw, and[14] in Scotland'; and afterwarde he loste Scotland' and Gascoigne; and whiles þat him-self was Kyng', þe*r* was miche lecherie hauntede. and also *Mer*lyn tolde and saide þat þis goote shulde seche þe floure of lif & of deþ; and he saide soþ, for he spousede I*sabel*, þe Kyng*us* dou*ȝter* of Fr*a*unce.

¶ & in his tyme [15]*Mer*lyn saide[15] þat *þere* shulde be made[16] briges of folc oppoñ diches of þe see; and þat was ful wel sein at Bannokes-borñ in Scotland', whe*n* he was descomfitede *þere*[17] of þe Scottes. ¶ And *Mer*lyn tolde also þat stones shulde falle fra*m*[18] castelles, and meny tounes shulde be made playn; and he saide soþ, ffor when Kyng Edward was scomfitede in Scotland', and come þo Southward', þe Scottes bisegede castel*les*,[19] and dede ha*m* miche ha[r]me, and brent tounes vnto[20] þe herde erþe. ¶ And aftirward' Merlyn [21]saide and tolde þat an Egle shulde come[21] out of Cornwaile, þat shulde haue feþe*re*s of golde, þat of pride shulde haue non[22] pier', and shulde despice Lordes[23] of bloode, and aft*er* he shulde dye prouȝ[24] a beer' at Gauersiche: and þat *pro*phecie was ful wel knowe,[25] ffor[16] by þe Egle is vnderstonde Sir'[17] Piers of Gauastoñ, þat was Erl of Cornewaile, þat was a wonder prout man

[1–1] of O. [2] of DO. [3] his D. *om.* O. [4] be O.
[5] mich D. mych O. [6] bore O. [7] ryout D. reaute O.
[8] & to O. [9] *leaf* 141, *back*. [10] be O. [11] amonge D. among' O.
[12] deide D. dide O. [13] michel D. [14] and in werr' D. & werre O.
[15–15] seid Merlyn O. [16] *om.* O. [17] *om.* D. [18] fro O.
[19] þe Castels O. [20] to D.
[21–21] tolde þat *þere* shulde come an Egle D. tolde þat an Egle schuld' come O.
[22] no DO. [23] lordeshippes D. lordschippes O. [24] by D.
[25] know and founde soth D. knowe & founde soþ O.

þat dispisede þe baronage of Engel*and*; [1]but aftirward' he was biheuede[2] at Gauersiche, prouȝ þe Erl of Lancastr' and þe Erl of Warwik'. ¶ And Merlyn tolde[3] þat in his tyme it[4] shulde seme þat þe bere shulde brenne, & þat a bataile shulde be[5] done[6] oppoñ an Arme of þe See in[7] felde arraiede like a shilde, wher' shulde dye meny white heuedes[8]: & he saide soþ; for, by þe brynnyng' [9]of þe bere[9] is bitokenede grete drede prouȝ cotting of suorde. at þat bataile, ordeynede in a felde as a shelde oppoñ an Arme of þe see, is bitokenede þe bataile of Mitone. ffor *per*e come þe Scottes in mane*r* of a shelde, [10]in maner' of a wynge,[10] and quellede oppoñ Swale, men of Religiouñ, *pr*estes & seculers; wherfor þe Scottes callede þat bataile, in despite of Englisshe-men, 'þe white bataile.'

¶ And after', Me*r*lyn saide þ*at* þe forsaide Beer' shulde[11] do þe forsaide[4] goot miche harme, and þat shulde be[12] oppoñ þe[13] Southwest', and also oppoñ his bloode; and saide also þat þe goot shulde lese miche[14] of his lande,[4] til þe[15] time þat shame shulde him ouercome; And þan he shulde [16]cloþe him in[16] a lyons skyn, and shulde wynne aȝeyne þat he hade loste, and miche more, prouȝ a peple þat shulde come out of þe Northwest', þat shulde make him bene[17] drade, and him avenge of his enemys, prouȝ conseile of ij Oweles, þat ferst shulde be[18] in p*er*il to bene vndone; and þat þo ij oweles shulde wende ouer þe see into a str*a*unge [19]lande, and *per*e þai shulde duelle til[20] a *cer*tein time; and aft*er* þai shulde come into Engel*and* aȝeyne, and þo ij oweles shulde done miche harme vnto meny oñ, and þat þai shulde conseile þe [21]goot to[21] meve werr' aȝeynes [þe] [22]Bere, and þat goot shulde come, and þe Oweles,[22] vnto an Arme of þe Se at Bur*ton* op Trent', and shulde wende ou*er*, and þat for drede þe bere shulde flee, wiþ a swyne[23] in his co*m*pany, [24]vnto Bur',[24] toward' þe North,[25] prouȝ an vnkynde out-puter'; and þat þe Swyn[26] þan shulde be slay[27] [28]with sorwe; and þe bere shulde be slayn[28] ful neiȝ his owen nest', þat shal[29]

[1] *leaf* 142. [2] beheded' O. [3] saide D. [4] *om.* D. [5] ben D.
[6] do O. [7] in a DO. [8] heedes O. [9–9] *MS.* of þe bere of the bere.
[10–10] with her' wynges D. [11] *MS.* shulde shulde. [12] ben O.
[13] *MS.* þe North, *with* North *underlined for omission*; *om.* D.
[14] miche del D. myche dele O. [15] þat D.
[16–16] be cloþen him with D. [17] be O. [18] bene D.
[19] *leaf* 142, *back.* [20] to D. [21–21] goot' forto DO. bere to R.
[22–22] forseide and þat þe goot and þe oweles shulde come D. forseid bere & þat þe goot & þe owles shuld' come O.
[23] Swan O. [24–24] *om.* D. [25] North vnto Bur' D. [26] swan DO
[27] slayne D. slayn O. [28–28] *om.* D. [29] schuld' O.

stonde oppoñ Pountfrett', vppoñ wha*m* þe sone shal[1] shede his beemes, & meny folc him shal[1] seche for þe miche ve*r*tue. and he saide ful soþ; ffor þe gode Erl Thomas of Lancastr' was born[2] in þe Northwest', and cosyn to þe Kyng', sone of his vncle; and by lawe he made þe Kyng lese miche lande þe whiche he hade p*ur*chasede[3] wel foliche,[3] til at þe laste þe Kyng' þ*er*of tok shame, and him-self fillede wiþ cruelte; and after he gate azeyne þat he hadde lost', and miche more, prouȝ fólc þat he lete assemble out of þe Northwest', þat made him to bene adrade,[4] and avengede[5] him of his barons,[6] þrou conseile of Sir' Hugh̄ þe Spense*r* [7]þe fader, and of Sir' Hugh[7] his sone, þat biforne[8] were outlawede out[9] of Engel*and* for her' wickidnesse. ¶ But afte*r*ward' come azeyne into Engel*and* Sir' Hughe þe Spense*r* the fader, out of Fr*a*unce, and so miche conseilede the[10] Kyng' þat He Shulde Werr' oppoñ Thomas, erl of Lancastr', so þat þe Kyng and þe Spensers, and þe Erl of Arundel and her power, mete wiþ Thomas of Lancastr' atte Burtoñ op Trent, and him þ*er*e descom*fi*tede; and[11] Hunfrai, erl of Hereford',[12] was in her'[13] co*m*pany. and' afte*r*, fledde[14] þe forsaide Thomas and Hunfray, wiþ her' company at Burbrig', wiþ sir' Andrew of Herkela, þat is callede[15] þe vnkynde out-putter', and also sir' Symond' Warde, Shirref[16] of ȝork': þai come and mette wiþ Thomas of Lancastre wiþ an huge co*m*pany, and 'ha*m*[17] þ*er*e descomfitede. and in þat Scomfit*ur*e þe Erl of Hereford'[18] wa*s* slayn oppoñ þe brige, cowardly, wiþ a spere, in the fundement; and þe Erl Thomas was taken[19] & ladde vnto Pountfrett; and þ*er*[20] he was biheuedede[21] bisides his owen castel. But aftirward, many a[22] man hi*m* souȝt, for miracles þat God' dede for him.

¶ And in þat tyme Merlyn saide for sorwe and harme [shuld die][23] a peple of his land', wherfore meny landes shulde bene[24]on him þe bolder'[24]: and he saide soþ, ffor by enchesouñ of his barouns þat were[25]done vnto þe deþ for[25] Seint Thomas loue[26] of Lancastre, peple of meny londes bicome[27] þe bolder' forto meve werr' azeyns[28] þe Kyng', for her bloode was t*ur*nede into[29] meny naciouns.

[1] schuld' O. [2] bore O. [3–3] ful falsely D. wilfullich O. [4] drade D. [5] vengede D. venged' O. [6] enemys D. [7–7] & O. [8] before O. [9] *om.* D. [10] *leaf* 143. [11] and sir' DO. [12] Herford' DO. [13] his DO. [14] fledden DO. [15] *MS. has* callede Sir' Andrew of Herkela þat is callede. [16] erl D. Erle O. [17] hy*m* O. [18] Herford DO. [19] take O. [20] þo O. [21] beheded' O. [22] *om.* DO. [23] *om. in all three MSS.* [24–24] oppoñ him D. vpon he*m* þe boldere O. [25–25] *om.* D. done to deth for O. [26] querel D. querell O. [27] becomen O. [28] oppoñ D. vpon O. [29] to DO.

¶ And afterward Merlyn tolde and saide þat þe forsaide Oweles shulde done[1] miche harme vnto þe flour of lif & of deþ, & þai shulde [2]bring Her vnto[3] miche disese, so þat she shulde wende ouer þe[4] see into Fraunce for to make pees[5] to þe flour de lice, and þere she shulde abide til a[6] tyme þat her seede shulde come & seche her; and þere þai shulde abide[7] til a tyme þat þai shulde cloþen[8] ham wiþ grace; and þo ij Oweles she[9] shulde seche, and put ham vnto Spitouse[10] deþ. and þat prophecie was wel knowen[11] and was ful soþ; for, Sir Hugh þe Spenser þe fader, and [12]sir Hugh[12] þe sone, dede[13] miche sorwe and persecucioñ vnto þe Quene Isabel, þrouȝ her procurment, to her Lorde þe Kyng. ¶ and so þai ordeinede amonges ham þat she was put vnto hir wages, þat is to seyn, xxs̄ on[14] þe day. Wherfore þe Kyng of Fraunce, her broþer, was wonder sore[15] annoiede, and sent into Engeland by his lettres[16] vnto Kyng Edward, þat he[17] shulde come to[18] his parlement to Parys in[19] Fraunce; but Kyng Edward was sore adrade forto come þere, for he wende to bene arest til þat he hade made Gode[4] for þe trespasse þat þe Spensers hade done, and also grete harme þat þai hade done vnto þe[20] Quene Isabel, his sostre[21]: Wherfore, þrouȝ here ordenance & her consent of þe Spensers, the Quene Isabel went ouer þe see into Fraunce, forto make accorde bituene Kyng Edward and þe Kyng of Fraunce, hir broþer. ¶ And þere duellede she in Fraunce til[22] Edward, her Eldeste sone, come her to[23] seche; and so þai duelled [24]þere boþe til þat Aliaunce was made bituene Ham and þe gentil Erl of Henaud, þat if þai wiþ his[25] helpe mygh[t] destroi and ouercome þe venyme and the falsenesse of þe Spensers, þat Sir Edward shulde spouse Dame Philipp, þe worshipful lady,[26] þe Erles Doughter of Henaud. ¶ wherfore þe Quene Isabel, and Sir Edward her [son], and Sir Edmund of Wodestok, þe Kynges broþer of Engeland, and Sir Iohñ of Henaud, and Sir Roger Mortymer of Wygemore, and Sir Thomas Rocelyn, and sir Iohñ of Cromwel, and Sire William Trusseł, and meny opere of þe Aliaunce of þe gentil Erle Thomas of Lancastre,

[1] do O. [2] *leaf* 143, *back*. [3] into DO. [4] *om.* D.
[5] *MS.* pees bituene, *with* bituene *underlined for omission.*
[6] on D. on a O. [7] abide boþe D. [8] cloþe O. [9] she DO. he R.
[10] pitous O. [11] know D. knowe O. [12–12] *om.* O. [13] deden O.
[14] in DO. [15] sore O. sone R. [16] lettre D. [17] sche O.
[18] vnto O. [19] into O. [20] *om.* O.
[21] *MS.* sostres, *with the last* s *underlined for omission.* [22] til þat O.
[23] forto D. [24] *leaf* 144. [25] his D. here R. [26] lady and DO.

þat wer' exilede out of Engeland[1] for his querelle, and wer'[2] disheritede[3] of her' londes, ordeynede ham a[4] grete pow'r', and arryuede[5] at Herewiche in Southfolc. and' sone after'[6] þai pursuede[7] þe Spensers til þat þai wer' take[8] and put vnto spitouse[9] deþ, as bifore is saide, and her' company, and. also for þe[10] grete falsenesse þat þai deden[11] vnto Kyng' Edward & to[12] his peple.

¶ And *Mer*lyn saide also more, *þat* þe goote shulde bene[13] put into grete disese; & in grete anguisshe & in grete sorwe he shulde lede[14] his lif'. and he saide soþ: for aft*er* þe tyme *þat* Kyng Edward was take, he was put into warde til þat þe Spensers were put vnto deþ. ¶ and also, for enchesoñ þat he wolde nouȝt come vnto[15] his owen *par*lement at Londoñ, as he had ordeyned and assignede him-self', and to his [16]Baronage,[17] and also wolde nouȝt gou*er*ne ne[18] reule his peple ne his reaume as a kyng shulde done, so*mm*e of þe barons of Engeland' come[19] & ȝelden vp her' homage[20] vnto him, for ham[21] and for alle þe o*þer* of þe reaume, in þe day of [22]þe Conu*er*siouñ[22] of Seint Poule, and in þe ȝer' of his regne xx; and þai put hi*m* out of his realte for eu*er*more; & euer' he leuede his lif' aftirward' in miche sorw and anguisse.

Of Kyng' Edward' þe þridde[23] after þe conquest. Capitulo ¶ Ducentesimo ¶ Duodecimo.

And aft*er* þis Kyng Edward' of Carnariuan, regnede *Sir*e Edward of Wyndesore his sone, þe whiche w*as* cronede Kyng, and annoyntede, at Westm*inster*, þrouȝ consent and wille of alle þe grete Lordes of [24]þe reaume,[24] þe Sonday in[25] Candelmasse eve of oure Lady, In þe ȝer' of *gra*ce M^t^ CCC[26] xxvi, þat was þat tyme of age but xv ȝer'. [27]and for enchesouñ þat[27] his fader' was in warde in þe castel of Kenylworþ, and eke was put douñ of his realte, þe reaume of Engeland' was as wiþout Kyng', fro þe feste of Seynt Kat*er*yne in þe ȝer' aboue-saide, vnto þe fest of Candelmasse;

[1] Engeland' and Sir Iohñ of Henaude and Sir Rog*er* Mortymere D.
[2] weren O. [3] disherite D. disherited' O. [4] *om.* O.
[5] arryueden O. [6] afterward DO. [7] pursueden O. [8] taken DO.
[9] pitous O. [10] her O. [11] dede O. [12] *om.* D. [13] be O.
[14] lese D. [15] to DO. [16] *leaf* 144, *back.*
[17] A bere *is written in the margin at the head of this page, in a different* (?) *hand.*
[18] and DO. [19] come*n* O. [20] homages DO. [21] him D.
[22–22] Conu*er*sac*i*on O.
[23] þirde O. [24–24] Engeland' D. [25] on D. [26] CCC & O.
[27–27] *MS.* and for enchesouñ þat and for enchesouñ þat.

and þo were [1]al maner[1] plee3 of þe Kyng*us* Benche astent'. ¶ And þo was co*m*mandede to alle þe shirreffes of Engel*and* þoru3 write[2] to warne þe p*ar*tie3 defendand3 þrou3 somp[n]ing' a3ein, and also fer*þer*more þat alle þe p*r*isoners þat were in þe Kyng*us* Gayole þat were atachede þrou3 shirrefs shulde [3]be Late go quiet. ¶ The Kyng Edward', after' His coronaciou*n*, at þe[4] prier' and bisechin' of his lieges of' þe reaume, g*r*auntede[5] a chartre of stedefast pees to alle ham þat wolde it[6] axe. ¶ And S*i*re Iohn of Henaude and his co*m*pany toke[7] his leue of þe Kyng and of þe lordes of his[8] reaume, & t*ur*nede home to her' owen contre a3eyn; and eu*er*yche[9] of ham hade ful riche 3iftes, eu*er*y man as he was of value and of State. ¶ And' þo was Engeland' in pees and in[10] rest', & grete loue[11] bituene þe Kyng and his lordes; and co*m*muneliche[12] Englisshemen saide among*us* ham þat þe deuel was dede. ¶ But þe t*r*esour' of þe Kyng his fader', and[13] of the Spensers, boþ of þe fader' and of[14] þe sone, and þe t*r*esour of þe Erl[14] of Arundel, and of Maistre Rob*er*t[15] Baldok' þat was þe Kyng*us* chaunceller', was dep*ar*tede after' þe Quene Is*abels* ordenaunce, and Sir' Rog*er* Mortymer' of Wigemore, so þat þe Kyng' hade noþing þ*er*of but at her' wille and her' deliu*er*aunce, nei*þer* of hir' landes, as after*ward'* 3e shul here more openly.

How Kyng Edward' went to Stanhop forto mete þe Scottes. ¶ Capitulo ¶ Ducentesimo ¶ xiij.

And 3itte[4] in þe same tyme was Kyng Edward' in þe castel of Kenylworth, vnder' þe kepyng of Sir' Henry þat was Erl Thom*as* bro*þer* of Lancastr', þat þo was Erl of [Leycestre; and þe Kyng g*r*antede him the erldome of][16] Lancastre þat þe Kyng' hade seisede into his hande, and put out Thomas of Lancastre his bro*þer*, and þo was he[17] Erl of Lancastre & [18]of Leicestre, and eke Stiward of Engeland', as his bro*þer* was in his tyme. ¶ but Sir' Edward, þat was Kyng Edwardes fader,[19] made sorw wi*þ*outen[20] ende, for cause þat he might nou3t speke wi*þ* his wif' ne wi*þ* his Sone; wherfor hit was miche meschief[21]; ffor þau3 hit were so þat'

[1–1] alle þe D.
[2] Engeland' þoru3 write D. Engelond' þurgh writte O. Engel*and* R.
[3] *leaf* 145. [4] *om.* O. [5] g*r*auntede ham D. graunted' hem O.
[6] him D. [7] nome DO. [8] the D. þe O. [9] eche O.
[10] *om.* DO. [11] loue was D. [12] Comenly O.
[13] and þe t*r*esour' D. & þe tresour O. [14] erles DO.
[15] *MS.* Robert Robert. [16] *supplied from* D. [17] þe *sic* O.
[18] *leaf* 145, *back.* [19] *MS.* fader fader'. [20] with-oute O. [21] nedfuH O.

he were[1] ladde & reulede þrouȝ[2] false conseile, ȝitte[3] he was Kyng Edward*us* sone, & come[4] of þe worþiest bloode of al[5] þe worlde; and þilk[e] to whom he was [6]wonede forto[6] ȝeue grete ȝiftes and large, were[7] most pryue wiþ þe Kyng, his owen sone; and þai were his enemys boþe by nyght and by day, and *pro*curede forto make debate and contak bituene him and his sone, and Is*abel* his wif. but þe ffrer' *Pre*choures to him were gode frendes eu*er*more,[8] and caste and ordeynede, boþe nyght and day, how þai might bryng him out of *pri*soñ. ¶ And amonge her' *com*pany þat þe ffreres *pri*ueliche[9] hade brouȝt, *þer*e was a ffrere þat me callede Dunheuede[10]; and he hade ordeynede an[d] gaderede a grete company of folc forto helpe at þat nede; but þe ffrere was take a[nd] put into þe castel of Pountfrett', and *þer* he deide in *pri*sone. ¶ And Sir Henry, Erl of Lancastr', þat hade þe [11]Kyng*us* fader[11] in kepyng', þrouȝ[12] *com*mandement of þe Kyng, delyu*er*ede Edward, þe King*us* fader, by endentur' vnto Sir*e* Thomas of Berkelee, and to Sir' Iohñ Mautrauers; & þai lad him fram[13] þe castell of Kenylworth vnto þe castell of Berkelee, [14]and kepte him *þer*e safly.[15] ¶ And at Este[r] nexte after' his coronaciouñ, þe Kyng ordeynede an huge host forto feiȝt aȝeins[16] þe Scottes; and Sir' Iohñ, þe Erles broþ*er* of Henaud', from[17] byȝonde þe see, come forto helpe Kyng Edward', and brouȝt wiþ him[18] v C̄ men of Armes, and arryuede at Douer'; and þai hade leue forto gone[19] forth til þat[18] þai [20]come vnto[20] ȝork', *þer*e þat þe Kyng abode ham. ¶ And þe Scottes come*n*[21] þider' vnto þe Kyng forto make pees and accorde, but þe accordement bituene ha*m* laste but a[22] litel while.[23] and at þat tyme þe Englisshe-men were cloþe[24] alle in cotes & hodes, peyntede[25] wiþ l*ett*res & wiþ[22] floures ful sembli,[26] wiþ longe berdes; and *per*fore þe Scotes made a bille þat was fastenede oppoñ þe cherche dores of Seint Peres[27] toward Stangate. & þus saide þe Scripture in despite of the[18] Englisshe-men **¶ Longe berde hertles, peyntede Hode witles, Gay cote graceles, makeþ[28] Engl[i]ssheman[29] þriftles.**

¶ And on[5] þe Trinite day next [30]comyng, biganne[30] þe contak

[1] was O. [2] by DO. [3] þit *sic* D. [4] comen O. [5] *om.* DO.
[6–6] wont D. wonte to O. [7] weren O. [8] for euermore D.
[9] *pri*uely D. pryuyly O. [10] Donebat O.
[11–11] fader of þe Kyng O. [12] þurgh þe O. [13] fro O.
[14] *leaf* 146. [15] falsly O. [16] with D. [17] fro DO. [18] *om.* D.
[19] go O. [20–20] comen to D. [21] come O.
[22] *om.* O. [23] tyme DO. [24] clopede D. clothed' O.
[25] y-peynted' O. [26] semely DO. [27] Petre D. *om.* O.
[28] makes DO. [29] Englond O. [30–30] sewyng' big *sic* D.

in þe citee of ȝork bytuene þe Englisshemen and þe Henaudres. and in þat debate were quellede of þe Erldom of Nichole and Mordrede, xx iiij; and after, þai wer buriede vnder a stone in Seynt Clementis cherche haw in Fossegate. And for enchesoun þat þe Henaudres come[1] forto helpe þe Kyng, hir pees was[2] criede, oppon payne of lif and lime. and in þat opere Half, it was[3] fonden[4] by enquest of þe citee, þat þe Englisshe-men biganne þe debate.

How þe Englisshe-men Stoppede þe Scottes in þe park of Stanhope, and How þai turnede aȝeyne into[5] Scotland. Capitulo CC xiiij.

AND at þat tyme þe Scottes hade assemblede al her power, and come[6] into Engelande, and quellede & robbede alle þat þai might tak,[7] and brent and destroiede al þe North contre prouȝ-out, til [8]þai come[8] to þe Parke of Stanhope in Wyredale: and þer þe Scottes helde ham in a busshement. ¶ But whe[n] þe Kyng hade herde prouȝ certeyne aspieȝ wher þe Scottes were, anone right wiþ his host he bisegede þe forsaide park, so þat þe Scottes wiste neuer wher forto goñ out, but onliche[9] vnto her armes, and þai abiden in þe parke xv daies; and vitailes ham failede on[10] euery side, so þat þai wer gretly empeyrede of her[11] bodyes. ¶ And siþ þat Brut come ferst into[12] Britaigne, vnto þis tyme, was neuer seyne seþenes[13] so fair an host, what of Englisshemen and of Aliens, and of men on foot,[14] whiche ordeyned ham forto feiȝt wiþ þe Scottes, prouȝ egging of Sire Henry, Erl of Lancastr, and of Sir Iohn of[15] Henaude, þat wolde haue gone ouer þe water of Wythe forto haue fouȝt wiþ þe Scottes; but Sir Roger of Mortymer consentede nouȝt þerto, for he hade priueliche[16] tak[17] mede of þe Scottes, ham forto helpe, þat þai myght wende aȝeyne into hir owen contre. ¶ And þe[18] same Mortymer counseilede miche[19] Thomas of Broþertoñ, þat þe Erl Marchal, þat was Kyng Edwardes vncle, þat the [20]forsaide Thomas shulde nouȝt assemble at þat tyme vnto þe Scottes; and he assentede; but he wiste nouȝt þe doyng bituene þe Scottes and þe forsaide Mortymer. and for enchesoun þat he was Marchal of

[1] comen DO. [2] wer D. [3] *leaf* 146, *back*. [4] founde DO.
[5] to O. [6] comen D.
[7] take without nombre D. take *with*oute nombre O.
[8–8] þat þai comen D. [9] only O. [10] in DO. [11] he *sic* D.
[12] vnto D. [13] seth O. [14] foote the D. foote þe O. [15] *om.* DO.
[16] priuyly O. [17] taken DO. [18] þat D.
[19] somiche D. so mych O. [20] *leaf* 147.

Engel*and*, and to him *per*teynede[1] eue*r*[2] þe vauntward. he sent hastely to þe Erl of Lancastre and to *Sir*e Iohñ of Henaude, þat þai shulde nouȝt feiȝt oppoñ þe Scottes, in *prei*udice and in[3] harmyng of him and[4] his fee, and if þai dede, þat þai shulde stande to[5] her owen *per*il. and þe forsaide Erl Marchal was al aredy[6] wiþ his bataile at þe redose of þe Erl of Lancastre forto haue fouȝten[7] wiþ him and wiþ[8] his folc, if he hade meuede forto feiȝt wiþ þe Scottes. and in þis maner he was desceyuede, and wiste [9]no maner þinge of þis[9] *tre*souñ; and þus was þe Kyng Principaly[10] desceyuede.

¶ And when it was nyȝt,[11] Mortymer, þat hade þe wacche forto kepe of þe host, þat nyght destourblede þe wacche þat noþing most be[12] done. and [13]in þe[13] meny-while þe Scottes stele[14] by nyȝt toward her owen contre, as fast as þai myght; and so was þe Kyng falsely [15]desceyuede &[15] bi*trai*ede, *þat* wende þat alle þe *trai*toures of his land had bene brouȝt vnto an ende, as it[2] was saide bifore. ¶ Now here, ȝe lordes, how *trater*ously Kyng Edward was desceyuede, and how *mer*vailously and[16] boldely þe Scott*es* dede of wer; ffor þe same nygh[t][17] Iames Douglas, wiþ CC men of Armes, ryden prouȝ-out þe host [18]of Kyng Edward, þe same nyght *þat* þe Scott*es* were scapede toward her owen contre, as is aboue [said], til þat[19] þai comen[20] to þe Kyng*us* Pauyloñ, and quellede *þere*[21] men in her beddes; and *cr*iede[22] so*m*me "Noward, Noward!" and ano*þer*e tyme, "A Douglas, A Douglas!" wherfore the Kyng, þat was in his pauylouñ, and miche o*þer* folc, were wonder sore afraiede; but, —blessede be Almyghty God!—þe Kyng was nouȝt taken; and in *gr*ete *per*ile was þo þe reaume of Engeland. ¶ And þat nyght the mone shone [23]ful clere[23] and briȝt; and for al þe Kyng*us* men, þe Scottes ascapede harmeles. and in þe morwe, when þe Kyng wist þat þe Scottes were ascapede,[24] he was wonder sory, and ful hertly wepte wiþ his ȝonge eyne; and [25]ȝitt wist he[25] nouȝt who [26]had done[26] him þat[27] *tre*souñ; but þat[28] *tre*soñ was wel knowe[29] a gode

[1] *per*teyneth O. [2] *om.* D. [3] *om.* O. [4] and of DO.
[5] vnto DO. [6] arrayede D. arayed O. [7] fouȝt D. fought O.
[8] *MS.* wiþ him and wiþ.
[9–9] noþing of þe D. noþing of þis O. [10] *prin*eliche D.
[11] nyȝt þe D. nyght þe O. [12] bene D. [13–13] þat D. [14] stale D.
[15–15] *om.* O. [16] and how D. [17] myȝt *sic* D. [18] *leaf* 147, *back*.
[19] *MS.* þat þat. [20] come DO. [21] *þere* meny DO.
[22] crieden D. [23–23] fayre D.
[24] ascapede into her owen contre D. ascaped into her Cuntr O.
[25–25] wist O. [26–26] *þat* had do O. [27] þis D.
[28] þat false D. *þat* fals O. [29] y-knowe O.

while after, as þe story telleþ. ¶ The Kyng Edward[1] come þo ayeyne vnto[2] 3ork, ful sorweful, and his hoste departede, and euery man went into[2] his owen contre wiþ ful heuy and mornyng semblant.[3] and þe [4]Henaude toke[4] her leue, and went into her owen contre; and þe Kyng, for her trauaile, hugely ham rewarded, and for enchesoun of þat viage, þe Kyng had despended miche of his tresour, and wastede.

¶ And in þat tyme wer seyne ij mones in þe firmament: þat on was clere, and þat oþer was[5] derc, þat[6] men myȝt hit[7] þo see þ[r]ouȝout[8] al þe worlde. and[9] Grete debate was þat same tyme ayeyn [10]þe[7] Pope Iohn þe xxij after þat[5] Seynt Petre was Pope, and þe Emperoure of Almaigne, þat made him Emperour ayeins þe Popes wille, þat þo helde his see at Avy[n]oun; wherfore þe Emperour made his crie at Rome, and ordeynede anoþer Pope þat hight[11] Nicholas, þat was a ffrer menour; and þat was[12] ayeynes þe right of holy cherch, wherfore he was cursede[5]; and þe power of þat [13]oþer Pope[13] sone was laide; and for enchesoun þat soche mervailes were seyne, men saide þat þe wor[l]de was neiȝ at an[5] ende.

Of þe deþ of Kyng Edward of Carnaruan, sometyme Kyng of Engeland. Capitulo Ducentesimo Quintodecimo.

ANd now [go] we ayeyne vnto Sir Edward of Carnaruan, þat was [14]some-tyme Kyng[14] of Engeland, and was put adoune[15] of his dignite. allas for his tribulacioun! and sorwe him bifelle þrouȝ false consel þat he leuede, & truste oppon ham to miche, þat afterward was destroyede[16] þrouȝ her falsenesse, as God wolde. ¶ And þis Edward of Carnaryuan was in þe castel of Berkele, vnder þe kepyng of Sir Morice of Berkeley and of Sire Iohn of Mautrauers. and to ham he made his compleynt of his sorwe and of his disese; and oftetymes he axede of his wardeyns what he hade tressepassede ayeins Dame Isabel his wif, and Sir Edward his sone, þat was new made Kyng, þat þai wolde nouȝt visite him. ¶ [þo ansuerede one of his wardenes][17] ¶ "My worþi lord, displese 3ow nouȝt þat y shal 3ow telle; þe enchesoun is, for it is done ham to vnderstonde þat, if my Lady 3our wif come eny þing neiȝ 3ow, þat 3e

[1] *om.* O. [2] toward D. [3] *MS.* semblant se.
[4–4] Henaudes nome D. Henaudes toke O. [5] *om.* D. [6] as DO.
[7] *om.* DO. [8] þrouȝ D. [9] and a DO. [10] *leaf* 148.
[11] me callede D. [12] was þe[re] D. [13–13] Pope afore hym O.
[14–14] kyng symetyme D. kyng sumtyme O. [15] adoun some-tyme D.
[16] destroyede D. distroyed O. *om.* R. [17] *supplied from* D.

wolde [1]her' strangle and quelle, and [2]al so þat ȝe Wolde do to[2] my Lord' ȝour' Sone." ¶ þo ansuerede he wiþ simple chere, and saide: "allas, allas! am y nouȝt in prisoun̄, and aH at ȝour' owen wille? Now God it wote, y þouȝt it neu*er*; and now y wolde[3] þat y were dede! so wolde God þat y were! for þan were al my[4] sorwe passede." ¶ Hit was nouȝt longe aft*er* þat þe Kyng, þrouȝ conseil of þe Mortymer', *gr*antede þe ward' and þe kepyng' of *Sir*e Edward' his fader', to *Sir*e Thomas[5] Toiourneye and to þe forsaide Sir' Iohn̄ Maut*r*auers, þrouȝ þe Kyng*us* lettre, and put out holliche [6]þe forsaide[6] Sir' Morice, of þe warde of þe Kyng'. and þai tok[7] and lad [8]him to[8] þe castel of Corf', þe whiche castel þe Kyng' hatede as eny deþ; and þai kepte him þ*er*e safly[9] til þat[10] it come to[11] Seint Matheus day in Septem*b*re, in þe ȝere of *Gr*ace M¹ CCC xxvij, þat þe forsaide Sir' Roge*r*[12] Mortymer' sent þe man*er* of þe[13] deþ, how and in what maner he shulde be done to deþ. ¶ And anone as þe forsaide Thomas and Iohn̄ Hade seyne þe lettre and þe[14] com*m*andement, þai maden[15] Kyng Edward of Carnaruan gode chere and gode solace, as þai myght atte þat soper'; and noþing' þe Kyng wiste of her' *t*raitou*re*ȝ.[16] ¶ And when tyme was forto gone[17] to bed', þe Kyng went vnto[18] his bed', and laye, and slepte faste. And as þe Kyng lay and slepte, þe *t*raitoures, false forsuorne[19] aȝeins her' homage and her' feaute, come[20] p*r*iueliche[21] into þe Kyng*us* chaumbre, and her' co*m*pany [22]wiþ Ham, and Laiden an Huge table oppon his Wombe, and wiþ men pressede and helde[23] fast adoune þe iiij corners of þe table oppon̄ his body: wherwiþ þe gode man awoke, and was wonder' sore adrade to bene[24] dede þ*er*e, and slayn, and turnede his body opsadoun̄. ¶ þe tok[25] þe false tiraunt̄ȝ,[26] and as[27] wode *t*raitoures,[28] an horne, and put hit into[29] his fundement as depe[30] as þai might, and toke a spete of Copur' brennyng',[5] & put hit þrouȝ þe horne[31] into his body, and oftetymes rollede þ*er*wiþ his bowailes; and so þai quellede here Lorde, þat[32] noþing was p*er*ceyuede; and aft*er*, he was ent*er*ede at Gloucestr'.

[1] *leaf* 148, *back*. [2–2] þat ȝe wol do also O. [3] wil O.
[4] myn O. [5] *om*. D. [6–6] *om*. O. [7] toke þe kyng' D.
[8–8] þe kyng vnto O. [9] saflich D. [10] *om*. DO. [11] vnto DO.
[12] Thomas DO. [13] his D. [14] *om*. O. [15] maden þe D. made O.
[16] treytourresse O. [17] go O. [18] to D. [19] forsuore D.
[20] comen O. [21] priuely D. priuyly O. [22] *leaf* 149. [23] held it O.
[24] be O. [25] nome D. [26] *t*raitou[r]s D. traytours O.
[27] as fals & O. [28] tiraunt̄ȝ D. tirauntes O. [29] in D. vnto O.
[30] dede *sic* O. [31] horne brennyng' D. [32] and D.

How Kyng Edward spousede Philippe, þe Erles doughter of Henaude, at 3ork. Capitulo Ducentesimo xvj^to^.

And after cristes-masse[1] þo next sewyng, sir Iohñ of Henaude brou3t[2] wiþ him Philipp, his brofere3[3]. Dou3ter, þat was Erl of Henaud, [4]his nece,[4] into Engeland; and Kyng Edward spousede[5] her at 3ork wiþ michel honour; and Sir Iohñ of Hothum, Bisshop of Ely, and Sir[6] William of Meltoñ, Erchebisshop of 3ork, songe þo[7] þe masse, þe Sonday in þe [8]Eve of þe Conuersioñ[8] of Seynt Poule, in þe 3er of grace M^l^ CCC xxvij. ¶ but for enchesouñ þat þe kyng was[9] but 3onge and tender of age when he was cronede, and meny wrongus were[10] Done [11]whiles his fader[11] leuede, for enchesouñ þat he trowede þe[12] counseilers þat were false aboute him, þat conseilede him to done oþerwise þan resouñ wolde, wherfore grete harme was þo vnto[13] the [14]reaume and to þe Kyng, and al men directede[15] þe Kyngus dede,[16] and hit was nou3t—so Almyghty God hit[17] wote,[17]—wherfor it was ordeynede att [18]þe Kyngus crounyng,[18] þat þe Kyng, for tendre of his age, shulde be gouernede be tuelf grete Lordes of Engeland, wiþouten[19] þe whiche noþing shulde be[20] done, þat is forto seyne, þe Erchebisshoppe of Kanterbery, þe Erchebisshop of 3ork, þe Bisshopp of Wynchestre and þe Bisshop of Hereford,[21] And þe Erl of Lancastre, and[22] þe Erl Marchal, and þe Erl of Kent, þat were þe Kyngus vncles, and þe Erl of Gerreint,[23] Sir Thomas Wake, Sir Henry of[6] Parcy, Sire Olyuer of Yngham, and Iohñ of Roos, barons. ¶ Alle þise were [24]suore treweliche[24] forto conseil þe Kyng, and þai shulde ansuere euery 3ere in þe parlement of þat shulde [25]be done[25] in þe tyme of þat[26] gouernaile. ¶ But þat ordenance was sone vndone,[27] and þat was miche [28]losse and harme[28] to al Engeland; ffor þe Kyng and alle þe lordes þat shulde gouerne him, were gouernede & reulede after þe Kyngus moder, Dame Isabel, and by Sir Roger þe[22] Mortymer; and as þai wolde, al þing was done, boþe[29] amonges hye and[30] lawe. ¶ And

[1] Cristemasse O. [2] brou3t þo D. [3] Brother O. [4—4] *om.* D.
[5] wedede D. [6] *om.* D. [7] *om.* DO. [8—8] Conuersacion O.
[9] nas O. [10] weren O.
[11—11] while his [fader] D. while þat his fadir O.
[12] his D. [13] to O. [14] *leaf* 149, *back.* [15] directe it *sic* O.
[16] dedes D. [17] wold O. [18—18] Crounynge of þe kyng O.
[19] *with*oute O. [20] bene D. [21] Herford DO. [22] *om.* O.
[23] Garenne O. [24—24] trewly swore O. [25—25] done be O.
[26] þe D. [27] y-done O. [28—28] harme and losse D.
[29] *MS.* boue. [30] and amonge D.

þai toke[1] vnto ham castelles,[2] tounes, Landes and rentȝ, in grete harme and losse vnto the croune, and of þe Kyngus state also, out of mesur'.

4 How þe pees was made bituene þe Englisshemen and þe Scottes; & also of[3] þe iustifiyng' of Troilebastoñ. Capitulo ¶ Ducentesimo ¶ Septuadecimo.

[4]THe Kyng Edward, at Whitsontide, þe secunde ȝere of his regne, þrouȝ conseile of his moder and of Sir' Roger[5] Mortymer, ordeynede a parlement at Nor[t]hamptoñ; at þe whiche parlement þe Kyng, þrouȝ her' conseil and none oþere of þe land[6] wiþin age, grantede to bene[7] accordede wiþ þe Scottes in þis maner, þat al þe feautes and homages þat þe Scottes shulde done to[8] þe croune of Engeland, forȝaf ham vnto the Scottes for euermore, by his chartre ensealede. ¶ and ferþermore an endenture was made of þe Scottes vnto[9] Kyng Edward, þat was Kyng Henries sone, whiche endenture þai callede his[10] Ragemain, in the whiche were contenede alle þe homages and feautes, ferst of þe Kyng of[3] Scotland, and of alle þe prelates, Erles and barons of alH[11] þe reaume of Scotland, wiþ her' seals sette þeron, and oþer chartres and remembrancez þat[12] Kyng Edward and his barons had of her' right in þe reaume of Scotland, hit was forȝeue ham aȝein holliche,[13] and also wiþ þe blac crois of Scotland, þe whiche þe gode Kyng' Edward conquerede in Scotland, and brouȝt hit out of þe Abbay of Scone, þat is a ful preciouse relique. ¶ And also ferþermore he relessede and forȝaf alle þe landes þat þe barons of Engeland had in Scotland by olde conqueste. and þis pees forto halde and laste, þe Scottes were bonden[14] to þe Kyng' in xxx M[l] li[15] of siluer', to ben[7] paiede wiþin iij ȝere, þat is to seyne, euery ȝere x M[l] li, by even porcioñs. [16]¶ And ferþermore, ouer al þis, þai[17] spake[18] bituene þe Par[t]lies [a]boue-saide, þat Dauid Dritonanter', þat was Robert Brus[19] sone,—þe false tirant and traitour, and false forsuorne aȝeynes his oth, þat aroos aȝeynes his liege Lord, þe noble[20] Kyng Edward, and falseliche[21] made him Kyng

[1] token O. [2] castell and D. [3] *om.* O. [4] *leaf* 150.
[5] Roger þe D. [6] lande and D. [7] be O. [8] vnto DO.
[9] vnto þe O. [10] it O. [11] *om.* DO. [12] *MS.* þat þat.
[13] holly D. [14] bounde O. [15] pound' O. [16] *leaf* 150, *back.*
[17] þe *sic* O. [18] speken D. speke O. [19] the Brutes D. þe Brus O.
[20] gode D. [21] falsely D. falsly O.

of Scotland, as is saide bifore,—& his sone shuld be Kyng of Scot-
land, þat was of age but[1] v 3ere. ¶ & so, prou3 hir[2] cursede
conseil, þis Dauid spousede at Berewik Dame Iohñe [3]of þe[3]
Toure, þat was Kyng Edward*us* sustre, as þe geste [4]telle3, oppoñ[4]
Marie Magdalein[5] day In[6] þe 3er of *grace* M[l] CCC xxviij, to
grete harme and enpeiryng to al þe Kyng*us* bloode, Wherof þat
gentil lady come, Allas þe time! for wonder miche was [7]þat fair[7]
Damysell dispa*r*age,[8] sip *þat* she was mariede wiþout[9] þe co*m*mune
assent of alle[10] þe lordes of Engel*and*. ¶ And fro þe[11] tyme þat
Brut hadde conquerede Albyoñ, and nempnede þe land after his
owen name Brytayngñ, þat now is callede Engel*and*, after þe name
of Engist; and so was þe reaume of Scotl*and* holden[12] of þe
reaume of Engel*and*, and of þe croune, by feaute and[13] homage.
For Brut conquerede þat lande, and 3af it to Albanac, his[14]
secunde sone; and he callede þe land Albany after his[15] name, so
þat þe heires þat comen after him helde[16] of Brut, and of his heires,
þe Kyng*us* of Britaigñ, by feaute and homage; and fro þat[17] tyme
vnto þis Kyng Edward, ¶ þe reaume of Scotland *was* holden[18]
[19]of þe reaume of Engelond by feaute[20] and by[21] ser*u*ices abouesaide, as þe cronicles of Engel*and* and of Scotland bere þ[22] witnesse
more plener*ly*. and acursede be þe tyme þat þis par*l*ement was
ordeynede at Northamtoñ! for *pere*, prou3 false conseile, þe Kyng
was [23]*pere* falsely disherited[23]; and 3itt he[24] was wiþin age. ¶ And
3ette, when Kyng Edward was put doune[25] of his realte of
Engeland, 3itte men put him nou3t out of þe feautes and ser*u*ises[26]
of þe reaume of Scotl*and*, and of þe Fr*a*unchises Disheritede for
euermore. ¶ And noþeles þe grete lordes of Engel*and* were a3eins
to conferme þe pees & the trewes abouesaide, saf oneliche[27] þe
Quene Is*abel*, þat was þe Kynges moder Edward, and þe Bisshop
of Ely, and þe Lorde Mortymer. ¶ But resoun and law wolde
nou3t þat a final pees shulde be made bituene ham, wiþouten[28]
co*m*mune assent of Engel*and*.

[1] of DO. [2] his O. [3–3] atte O. [4–4] telle3 oppoñ seynt *sic* D.
[5] Magdaleyns D. [6] *om.* O. [7–7] the D.
[8] dispa*r*agede D. dispa*r*aged O. [9] a3eyns al D. a3ens al O.
[10] *om.* O. [11] þat O. [12] *MS.* holden holden. [13] & by O.
[14] *MS. has* his eldest, *with* eldest *underlined for omission.*
[15] his owen D. [16] helden O. [17] fro þat DO. fro R.
[18] holde O. [19] *leaf* 151. [20] feutes O. [21] *om.* DO.
[22] beren O. [23–23] falsely disherite D. [24] *MS.* it.
[25] adoune D. adoun O. [26] homages D. [27] onely D. only O.
[28] with-out D. with-oute þe O.

Of the debate þat was bituene Quene[1] IsabeH and Sir*e* Henry, Erl of Lancastre and of Leycestre; and of [2]the ryding of[2] Bedford. Capitulo Ducentesim*o* xviij°.

WHen þe forsaide Dauid hade spousede Dame Iohne of þe Tour in þe toune of Berwik, as bifore is saide, þe Scottes, in despite of þe Englisshe-men, callede Dame Iohn þe Countesse 'make pees,' for þe cowardise pees forto ordeyne; but þe Kyng*us* per*so*n bare þe [2]wite & þe[2] blame, wiþ wrong, of þe makyng of þe accorde; and al was done þrouȝ þe Quene & Rog*er* þe Mortymer. ¶ And hit was nouȝt longe after, þat[3] þe quene Is*abel* [4]ne toke into Her[5] Hond̨e al þe Lordeshipp of Pountfrett, and almost al þe landes [2]þat were[2] of value, þat per*t*eynede[6] vnto[7] þe croune of Engel*and*, so þat þe Kyng had nouȝt forto[7] dispende, but of his Vsues[8] and of his escheker; ffor þe Quene Is*abel* and þe Mortymer had a[9] grete manie of[10] her retenue,[11] þat folwede eu*er*more þe Kyng*us* courte, and went and tok þe Kyng*us* prises for her penyworthes at gode chepe; wherfore þe contre þat þai comen[12] in were ful sore adrade, and almost destroiede. ¶ þo bigan[13] þe co*m*munite[14] of Engel*and* forto hate [15]Is*abel* þe Quene,[15] þat so miche[16] louede her when she come aȝein forto p*ur*sue the false t*r*aitoures þe Spensers fro Fr*a*unce, þat same tyme þe false t*r*aitour Robert of Holand þat bitr*a*ede his lorde[17] Thomas of Lancastre was þo deliu*er*ede out of p*r*ison, and was wonder pryue wiþ þe[18] Quene IsabeH and also wiþ þe Mortymer; but þat availede him but litel, for he was tak at Michelmasse þ*at* next come after, as he rode toward þe Quene Is*abel* to London; and Sir Thomas Whither smote of his heede[19] bisides þe toune of Seynt Alban*us*. and þis[18] Sir Thomas duellede þo wiþ Sir Henry, Erl of Lancastre; and he put him in hidyng for drede of þe Quene, for she louede him wonder miche, and praiede[20] vnto þe Kyng [2]for hi*m*,[2] þat þe same Thomas most ben[21] exilede [2]out of Engel*and*.[2]

¶ And þe noble Erl, Sir Henry of La[n]castr, had ofte-tymes [22]Herde þe co*m*mune clamo*ur* of þe Englisshe-men, of þe michel[23] disese[24] þat were done in Engeland, and also for diu*er*se wronges

[1] *om.* D. þe qwen O. [2–2] *om.* D. [3] þan *sic* D.
[4] *leaf* 151, *back*. [5] her owen D. her owne O. [6] p*er*teyneden O.
[7] to D. [8] Isues D. vses O. [9] *om.* D. [10] in D.
[11] retena*u*nce O. [12] come O. [13] bigonne D. [14] Co*mmin*alte O.
[15–15] þe Quene IsabeH D. [16] *om.* D. [17] lord sir DO.
[18] *om.* O. [19] heuede D. [20] praye D. [21] be O. [22] *leaf* 152.
[23] myche O. [24] diseses DO.

þat were done amonges[1] þe co*m*mune peple, of[2] whiche þe Kyng bare þe blame wiþ wrong', for he nas but ful ȝonge and tendre of age, and þouȝt, as a gode man, forto done[3] away and slake þe slaundre of þe Kyng*us* per*s*one, if þat he might in eny maner' wise, so as[4] þe Kyng was þer*of* noþing gulti, wherfore he was in per*el* of lif and lyme. ¶ And so he assemblede al his retynance,[5] and went & spake vnto ham of þe Kyng*us* hono*ur*, and also forto amende his estate. and Sir' Thomas of Broþ*er*toñ, Erl Marchal, and Sir' Edmunde of Wodestok', þat were þe Kyng*us* vncles, and also men of Londoñ, maden[6] her' oth, him forto[7] mayntene in þat same querele. ¶ And her' cause was þis, þat þe Kyng shulde holde his householde and his many[8] as [9]*per*teynede a Kyng'[9] forto done,[10] and haue also his realte.; and þat[11] þe Quene Is*abel* shulde delyuer' out of her' honde, [12]into þe Kyng*us* honde,[12] al maner lordeshippe,[13] rentes, tounes, [14]and castel*les*[14] þat *per*teynede to[15] þe croune of Engelan*d*, and þat she shulde leue wiþ þe þridde[16] part of þe rentes of Engel*and*, as o*þer*e Quenes hade done [17]or þis tyme,[17] and wiþ none o*þer* þing'. ¶ And also þat Sir' Roge*r* Mortyme*r* shulde duelle oppoñ his owen Londes, for þe whiche landes he hade holpen disherite miche peple, so þat þe co*m*mune peple were nouȝt[11] destroiede þrouȝ hir' [18 19]wrongeful takyng'.[19] ¶ And also to enquere How, and by[20] whome, þe Kyng was bit*rai*ede and falsely[21] deseyuede at Stanhope, and þrouȝ whos conseil [22]þat þe Scottes went[23] away by nyght fram[24] þe Kyng'. ¶ And also how, and þrouȝ whos conseil,[22] þe ordenance þat were[25] made at þe coronacioñ of Kyng Edward wer' put adouñ, þat is to seyne, þat þe Kyng, for [26]helpyng and amendement[26] of þe rẽaume, and in hono*ur* of hi*m*, shulde be[27] gou*er*nede and reulede by xij, þe grettest & wiseste Lordes of þe reaume ; and wiþouten[28] ham shulde noþing be gr*a*untede ne done, as bifore is saide ; the whiche gou*er*nances maliciou[s]ly were put adouñ[29] fro þe Kyng' ; wherfor me[ny] harmes, shames and rep*ro*fes haue falle vnto þe Kyng' and to his

[1] among O. [2] of the DO. [3] do O. [4] þat D. þat as O.
[5] retenaunt̄ D. [6] made D. [7] to D. [8] meyne O.
[9–9] a kyng' per*te*yneth vnto a kyng O. [10] do O.
[11] *om.* D. [12–12] *om.* D. [13] lordeshipp̄es D. lordschippes O.
[14–14] castelles D. [15] vnto DO. [16] þirde O.
[17–17] bifore her' D. byfore her O. [18] *leaf* 152, *back.*
[19–19] takyng' so wrongeful D. [20] *MS.* by by. [21] falseliche D.
[22–22] *om.* O. [23] wente*n* D. [24] fro D. [25] was DO.
[26–26] amendement and helpyng D. amendeme*n*t & helpynge O.
[27] be*n* D. [28] with-oute O. [29] douñ DO.

reaume. And þat is to[1] vnderstonde, for-asmiche as Kyng[1] Edward, some-tyme Kyng of Engel*and*, was ordeynede, by assent of [2]þe co*mm*unite[2] in plein p*ar*lement, forto bene[3] vnder þe warde and Gou*er*nance of Henry, Erl of Lancastre, his cosyn, for saluacioñ of his body he was taken[4] out of þe castel of Kenylworth, þ*er*e þat he was in ward, and þrou3 colour' of þe Quene Is*abel* and of þe Mortymer', wiþout[5] consent of eny p*ar*lement, þai[6] tok[7] and lad hi*m* þ*er* þat[8] never' aft*er* none of his[9] Kynrede my3t wiþ hi*m* speke ne see, and aft*er* t*rai*t*er*ously [10]toke and mordrede him[10]; for whos deþ a foule sclandre aroos þrou3-out aH Cristendome, when hit was done. ¶ And also al[9] þe t*re*soure þat[11] Sir'[12] Edward' of Carnaryuan hade lefte [13]in meny places of[14] Engelond' and in Walys, were wastede and born[15] away [16]wiþouten þe[16] wille of Kyng Edward' his sone, in destruccioun of him and of his folc. ¶ Also, þrou3 whos conseile [17]þat þe Kyng[17] 3af vp þe Kyngdome of Scotl*and*, for þe whiche reaume þe Kyng*us* ancestres hade ful sore t*rau*aile,[18] and so dede meny a nobleman for her' ryght; and was diliu*er*ede al þe right vnto[19] Dauid, þat was Rob*er*t le Brus[20] sone, þat no right hade vnto þat reaume, as al[1] þe worlde hit wiste. ¶ And also, by whom þe chartres & remembrances þat þai hade of þe right of Scotl*and* were[21] take out of þe t*re*sorie, and taken to þe Scottes, þe Kyng*us* enemys, to disheritesoñ[22] of hi*m* and of his successoures, and to grete harme to[23] his lieges, & grete rep*ro*fe to[24] alle Englisshe-me*n* for eu*er*more. ¶ Also, wherfore Dame Iohñ of þe Toure, þe Kyng*us* sustre Edward', was disp*ar*aged and mariede vnto Dauid, þat was Robert þe Brus[25] sone, þat was a t*rai*tour' and[26] enemy vnto Engel*and*; and þrou3 whos conseil she was tak[27] into our' enemys Hondes, out of Engelond'.

¶ And in þe mene-tyme, while[28] the Gode Erl Henry of Lancastr' and his co*m*pany tok[29] conseile how þise poynte[s] aboue-saide might bene amendede vnto þe worshipp of þe Kyng, and to his p*ro*fite, and to þe p*ro*fite also of his lieges, þe Quene Is*abel*,

[1] *om.* D. [2–2] co*mmin*alte O. [3] be O. [4] take DO.
[5] with-outen D. [6] *MS.* þat. [7] nome D. [8] as D. [9] *om.* O.
[10–10] nome and him mordrede D. toke hym & mordred' hym O.
[11] of O. [12] kyng D. [13] *leaf* 153. [14] in O. [15] bore O.
[16–16] with-oute O. [17–17] Kyng' Edward D. [18] Trauaylled' O.
[19] to D. [20] Bruse3 D. Brus his O. [21] weren D.
[22] disherityng O. [23] of D. [24] vnto DO.
[25] *MS.* Brus so *with* so *underlined for omission*; Bruse3 D. Brus his O.
[26] and an D. [27] taken D. [28] whiles DO. [29] nome D. token O.

þrouȝ co*n*ietting and sotelte of[1] þe Mortymer', Lete ordein a p*ar*lement at Salesbury; and at þe same P*ar*lement þe Mortymer' was made Erl of[2] Marche, aȝeins alle þe barons wille of Engel*and*, in p*rei*udice of þe Kyng and of his croune; & [3]Sir' Iohñ of Eltham, [4]þe Kynges bro*þer*,[4] was gert[5] wiþ a suerd' of Cornwail, and þo was callede Erle of Cornwaile; and eu*er*more þe Quene Is*abel* so miche p*ro*curede aȝeinȝ[6] hir' sone þe Kyng', þat she hade þe warde of [7]þe forsaid'[7] Sir' Edward and of his Landes. ¶ And at[8] þat p*ar*lement þe Erl of Lancastre wolde nouȝt come, but ordeyned' al his power' aȝeins þe Quene Is*abel* and the Mortymer'; and[9] men of Londoñ ordeynede ha*m*[10] wiþ vj C̄ men of armes [11]him forto helpe.[11]

¶ Whe*n* þe Quene IsabeH wist of the[12] Doyng', she suore by God' and by his names ful ang*r*ely, þat in euel tyme he þouȝ[t] on[13] þo poyntes. ¶ Tho sent þe Quene Is*abel* and þe Mortymer' after' her' retenue, and after þe Kyng*us* retenue, so þat þai hade ordeynede among*us* ham an huge ost; and þai conseilede þe Kyng so þat oppoñ a nyght þai ryden xxiiij[14] [myle] toward Bedford, þ*er*e þat þe Erl of Lancastr' was wiþ his co*m*pany, and þouȝt haue him destroiede. and þat night she rode biside[15] the Kyng' her' sone, as a knyȝt armede, for drede of Deþ. ¶ And hit was done þe Kyng Edward to vnderstond, þat þe Erl Henry of Lancastre & his co*m*pany wolde haue destroiede þe Kyng and his conseil[16] for eu*er*more, wherfor þe Kyng was [17]somedel towardes him[17] heuy & annoiede. ¶ When[18] þe Erl Marchal and þe Erl of Kent, þe Kyng*us* bro*þer*, herde of þis þing', þai ryden so in message bituene ha*m*, þat þe Kyng *gr*antede him his pees to þe Erl Henry of Lancastre for a[19] c*er*teyn raunsoñ of xj M' li; but þat was neu*er* [20]paiede afte*r*ward'. ¶ And þise were þe Lordes þat Helde[21] wiþ Sir' Henry of Lancastre: Sir' Henry Beaumond', Sir' Fouk fitȝ-Warein, Sir' Thomas Rooselyn, Sir' Willia*m* Trussel, Sir' Thomas Wyther', and about an C̄ of knyȝteȝ mo, þat[22] were to ha*m* consenting'; and alle þo were exilede þrou conseile of[23] Quene Is*abel* & of þe Mortymer', for þe Mortymer' couetede[24] forto haue

[1] and also of DO. [2] of þe O. [3] *leaf* 153, *back*. [4–4] *om.* D.
[5] gerd D. [6] *MS.* aȝeinȝ þe. [7–7] *om.* O. [8] to D.
[9] and þe D. [10] ham forto help D. hem for-to helpe O.
[11–11] *om.* DO. [12] þis D. [13] oppoñ D. vpon O. [14] xxiij O.
[15] bisides D. [16] Cu*m*panye O. [17–17] toward hym sumdel D.
[18] wherfore O. [19] *MS.* a a. [20] *leaf* 154. [21] helden O.
[22] þan *sic* O. [23] of þe D. [24] coniectede D.

her' londes, if he might þrou3 eny man*er* coniettyng'; for he was so couetous, and hade to miche[1] his wille, and þat was Grete pitee.

How Kyng Edward' went ou*er* þe see forto Don his homage vnto þe Kyng of F*r*ance for þe Duchee of Gyene. ¶ Capit*ulo* Ducentesimo Decimo nono.[2]

HIt was nou3t longe[3] after', þat þe Kyng of F*r*ance, þrou3 conseile of his Dus3epirs, sent to Kyng' Edward' of Engel*and*, þat he shulde come to Parys, and do[4] his homage, as resoun hit[5] wolde, for þe Duchee of Gyene. ¶ And so, þrou3 consent of þe lordes of Engel*and*, Kyng Edward went ouer' þe see; [and] at[6] Ascencioun he come vnto[7] Parys þe iij 3ere of his regne, forto done his homage [vnto þe Kyng of Fraunce. and þe Kyng vnderfonge his homage][8] and made michel[9] ioye and worship. But or Kyng Edward hade made his homage [10]vnto þe Kyng' of F*r*ance,[10] hastely he was sent[11] a3eyne into Engeland' þrou3 þe Quene Is*abel* his moder'; and anone hastely he come a3eyne into Engeland' oppon Whitsonday, wiþout[12] eny takyng leue of þe Kyng of F*r*aunce; wherfore he was wonder' worþ [=wroth].

How Sir' Roger'[13] Mortymer' bare him so [14]proudely &[14] hie. Ca*pitulo* CC xx.[15]

[16]AND now shul 3e[17] hure How[18] sir' Rog*er* þe[3] Mortymer' of Wygemore, þat desirede and couetede to bene at an[5] hye state, so þat þe Kyng gr*a*ntede him to bene[19] callede þe[20] Erl of[21] Marche [22]prou3-out al his Lordeship. ¶ And he bicome þo so prout,[23] þat he wolde lese and forsake þe name þat his [24]Ancestre haden[24] eu*er* bifore; And for þat enchesoun he lete him calle Erl of[21] Marche[22]; And none of þe co*m*munes of Engeland' derste calle him by none[5] oþ*er* name, for he was callede so, þrou3 þe Kyng*us* cr*i*e þat men shulde calle him þe[20] Erl of[21] Marche. ¶ And þe Mortymer' [25]þo bare him[25] so hauten and so proude, þat wonder hit was to wete; and also disgisede him wiþ wonder' ryche clopes oute of al man*er* resoun, bope of shaping and of[5] wering'; Wherof

[1] mychel O. [2] *MS.* octauo; viij° O. [3] *om.* O. [4] done O. [5] *om.* D. [6] at þe D. [7] to O. [8] *supplied from* D. [9] myche O. [10–10] *om.* DO. [11] sent for D. [12] withouten D. [13] Rog*er* þe DO. [14–14] proutliche and so D. proudly & so O. [15] *MS.* xix. [16] *leaf* 154, *back.* [17] he O. [18] of DO. [19] be O. [20] *om.* DO. [21] of þe O. [22–22] *om.* D. [23] proude & so hauteyn O. [24–24] Auncestres had O. [25–25] bar hym þ° O.

the Englisshe-men hade grete wonder, how and[1] in what maner he might contreue or fynde soche[2] maner pride; and þai saide amonges ham alle communeliche,[3] þat his pride shulde nouȝt longe endure. ¶ And þe[4] same tyme, Sire Geffray þe Mortymer þe ȝonge, þat was þe Mortymers sone, lete him calle Kynge of Folye; and so[5] hit bifelle aftirward indede, ffor he was so ful of pride and of wrecchednesse, þat he helde a rounde table in Walys to alle men þat [6]þider wolde[6] come, and countrefetede[7] þe maner & doyng of Kyng Arthureȝ table; but openly he failede, ffor þe noble Knyȝt Arthure[9] was þe[10] moste worþi lord of renoun þat was in al þe worlde[11] in his tyme, and [12]ȝitte come neuer non soche after him, for alle þe noble knyȝtes[13] þ[r]ouȝ Cristendome of dede of Armes alosede, du[e]llede wiþ Kyng Arthure, and helde him for her lord; and þat was wel sene,[14] for he conquerede[15] a Romayn þat me callede Frolle, & gete of him þe reaume of France, and quellede him wiþ his owen[16] hande.[17] ¶ And also he fauȝt wiþ a Geaunt þat me callede Dynabus and quellede him,[18] þat hade rauisshede[19] Elyne, þat was Kyng Hoeles nece, Kyng of Litil Britaign; and afterward he quellede in bataile þe Emperour of Rome, þat me callede Lucye, þat had assemblede aȝeyns Kyng Arthur forto feiȝt wiþ him [20]so miche peple[20] of Romayns and of[16] Peiȝtes and of Sarasynus, þat no man couþ ham nombre; and he descomfitede ham alle, as þe story of him more pleynloker[21] telleþ. ¶ And in þe[22] same tyme, commune loos sprong in Engeland, þrouȝ conietting and ordenaunce of þe ffrere Prechoures,[23] þat Sir Edward of Carnaryuan, þat was Kyng Edwardus fader, of whom þe geest [24]telles, saide[24] þat he was alif[25] in the castel of Corf; wherfore alle þe commune[s] almost of Engeland were[26] in sorwe and[27] drede whether hit were so or[28] nouȝ; þai wist neuer how[29] þe Mortymer traiterously hade [30]done him mordre.[30]

[1] or D. [2] such a O. [3] communely D. comunly O.
[4] þat D. [5] *om.* D. [6–6] wolde þider D.
[7] Counterfete O. [8] & þe O.
[9] *MS.* Arthure and, *with* and *underlined for omission.* [10] *om.* DO.
[11] worde *sic* D. [12] *leaf* 155. [13] knyȝtes D. knyghtes O. knyȝt R.
[14] ysene O. [15] conquerede in bataile D. Conquered in batayle O.
[16] *om.* O. [17] hondes D.
[18] Dynabȝ and quellede him D. Dynabus & qwelled hym O. Dynabus R.
[19] rauisshede fair D. rafisshed faire O. [20–20] *om.* O.
[21] plenerly O. [22] þat D. [23] menours O.
[24–24] telleþ saiden D. telleþ seyden D. [25] on lif D. [26] weren O.
[27] or D. [28] or wer D. [29] how þat O.
[30–30] him done mordrede D. ydone hym y-mordred O.

How Edmunde of Wodestok, [1]þat was Erl of Kent, and þe Kyng*us* bro*þer*, Edward of Carnaryuan,[1] was biheuedede[2] at Wynchestr'. Capit*ulo* CC° xxi°.[3]

AND oppon a tyme hit was[4] so, þat Sir' Edmunde of Wodestok', Erl of Kent, spake vnto þe Pope[5] Iohn þe xxij at Auy[n]on, and said þat Almyghty God hade meny tymes done, for[6] Thomas loue[7] of Lancastre, meny Gret[8] miracles to meny men and [9]wymen þat Were þrou3 diu*er*se sikenesse[10] vndon as to[11] the world', and þrou3 his *prai*er' þai were brou3t vnto her' hele. ¶ And so Sir' Edmund' *prai*ede þe Pope[12] hertly þat he wolde *gr*aunt him *gr*ace þat þe forsaide Thomas might bene[13] *tr*anslated'; but þe Pope saide, 'nay, he shulde nou3t bene[13] *tr*anslatede, þe same Thomas, Erl of La[n]castre, vnto þe tyme þat he were bettre *cer*tefied' of þe clergie of Engeland', and seyne by hir' obediens what þing God had done for þe loue of Thomas of Lancastre, aft*er* þe suggestion þat þe forsaide Edmunde of Wodestoke, Erl of Kent, had vnto hi*m* made.'[14] ¶ And when þis Edmund' saw þat he mi3t nou3t spede of his pu*r*pos as tochyng' þe *tr*anslaciou'n, He praiede him þo of his conseile as toching Sir' Edward' of Carnaryuan, his bro*þer*, and saide[7] nou3t longe [15]gon þat[15] he was Kyng of [England], what þing' mygh[t] beste bene[16] done as tochyng his delyue*r*ance, si þat a co*mm*une fame is[17] þrou3-out al Engel*and* þat he was alif,[18] and hole and saf. ¶ When þe Pope herde him telle þat Sir' Edward' was alif', he co*mm*anded þe Erl, oppon his benison, þat he shulde helpe, wi þ al þe power' þat he might, þat he were delyue*r*ede out of p*r*ison, and saf his body in al mane*r*[19] þat he myght; and, forto bryng þis þing vnto an ende, he assoilede him and his company a pena & a culpa, and alle þo þat halpen to[20] his delyue*r*ance.

¶ Tho tok[21] Edmund' of Wodestoke, Erl of Kent, his leue of þe Pope, and co*mm*e a3eyn into[20] Engel*and*. And when Edmunde was come*n*[22] so*mm*e of þe ffrere p*r*echoures come and saide þat Sir' Edward' his bro*þer* 3itte was alyf in þe [23]Castel of Corf', vnder' the kepyng of Sir' Thomas þe[24] Gurnay. ¶ þo spede him þe forsaide

[1–1] *om.* D. [2] beheded' O. [3] *MS.* xx.
[4] bifelle D. befell' O.
[5] pope *struck out, and* Bisshop of Rome *written over in another hand in* O.
[6] for seynt D. [7] *om.* O. [8] grete mervailes D. [9] *leaf* 155, *back.*
[10] maladyes DO. [11] vnto DO. [12] *struck out in* O. [13] be O.
[14] y-made O. [15–15] agone O. [16] be DO. [17] *om.* D.
[18] on lif D. in lyve O. [19] þing D. [20] vnto D. [21] nome D.
[22] Come O. [23] *leaf* 156. [24] of D.

Edmund, as[1] faste as he might, til þat he come to[2] þe castel of Corf, and acqueyntede him,[3] and spake so faire wiþ Sir Iohñ Daueril, þat was conestable of þe forsaide castel, and ȝaf him riche ȝiftes forto haue acqueyntance of him, and forto[4] know of his conseil. and þus hit bifelle, þat þe forsaide Sir Edmund[5] praiede specialy forto telle him priuely of his lorde his broþer, Sir Edward, if þat he leuede or were dede. [6]if þat[6] he were [7]on lif,[7] he praiede of[8] him [9]ones to haue[9] a sight. ¶ And þis Sir Iohñ Daueril was an hye-hertede man, & ful of corage, and ansurede shortely vnto Sir Edmund, and saide, þat Sir Edward[10] his broþer was in hele & vnder his kepyng, ¶ and derst shew him vnto no man, siþ it was defendede him in the Kyngus half, Edward, þat was Edward[11] sone of Carnauan, and also þrouȝ commandement of þe Quene Isabel, þe Kyngus moder, and of Sir Roger þe Mortymer, þat he shulde[12] shew his body [13]to no man[13] of þe worlde, saf onely[14] vnto ham, oppoñ peyne[15] of lif and lyme, and to disherite-souñ of his heires for euermore. but þe false traitour falsely liede, for he was nouȝt in his ward, but he was tak þens, and lade to[16] þe castel of Berkelee þrouȝ Sir Thomas Gurnay, þrouȝ commandement of þe Mortymer, til þat he was dede, as bifore is saide more plenerly.[17] ¶ But Sir Edmund of Wodestok wist noþing þat[18] his broþer was dede. Wheroppon he toke a lettre vnto þe[8] forsaide Sir Iohñ, and praiede him hertly þat [19]he wolde take hit to[20] Kyng Edward his broþer, as to His worþi Lorde; and he toke[21] þe lettre of him, and bihight to him[22] forto done[23] his message wiþ-outen[24] eny maner faile. and wiþ þat, Sir Edmund to[k][25] of him his leue, þat is to seyne, of þe forsaide Iohñ, and went þo into his owen contre and Lordeship in Kent, þat he hade per. ¶ And anon as þis same Iohñ wist þat Sir Edmund of Wodestoke was Gone into Kent, his owen Lordeship, anone he went in al the[8] haste þat he might fro þe castel of Corf, and come [26]to Sir Roger[26] Mortymer, and toke him þe[27] lettre þat Sir Edmund of Wodestoke, Erl of Kent, hade take him closede, & enselede[28] wiþ his owen seal.

[1] alse D. [2] vnto DO. [3] *om.* DO. [4] to DO. [5] *MS.* Edward.
[6–6] and if D. and if þat O. [7–7] a-lyve O. [8] *om.* O.
[9–9] forto haue ones D. forto haue onys O. [10] *MS.* Edmunde.
[11] Edwardes DO. [12] *MS.* shulde shulde.
[13–13] vnto nomaner man DO. [14] oneliche D. [15] losse DO.
[16] vnto DO. [17] pleyner D. [18] þat Edward DO. [19] *leaf* 156, *back.*
[20] vnto DO. [21] vnderfong D. vndirfonge O. [22] sir Edmund DO.
[23] do O. [24] *with*oute O. [25] nome D.
[26–26] vnto sir Roger þe DO. [27] *om.* D. [28] seled O.

¶ And when Sir Roger hade vnderfonge þe lettre, [1]he vnclosede [2]þe lettre,[2] and[1] saw what was conteynede þerin, and gan[3] Hit forto rede; ¶ Wherof þe bigynning was þis:

"Worshippis and reuerence,[4] wiþ broþeres liegeance[5] and subieccioun. Sir knyght, worshipful and dere broþer! if it 3ow plese, y pray[6] hertly þat 3e bene of gode comfort, ffor y shal so ordeyne for 3ow, þat sone 3e shul come out of prisoun, and bene[7] deliuerede of that disese þat 3e beþ[8] in. and vnderstondeþ of 3our Grete lordeshipe, þat y haue vnto me assentant almoste al þe grete [lordes][9] of Engeland, wiþ al her apparail, þat is to seyne, wiþ Armure, wiþ tresour wiþout nombre, forto mayntene and helpe 3our quereH so ferfourth that 3e shul ben[7] Kyng a3ein as 3e were biforne;[10] and þat þai alle haue suorne to me oppon a boke, and alsewel[11] prelates as[9] Erles & baroñs."

¶ when Sir Roger þe[12] Mortymer saw and vnderstode þe myght and the [13]strengþ of the Lettre, anone for wraþ his hert gan[14] bolne, and euel hert bare toward Sir[9] Edmund of Wodestok þat was Erl of Kent. ¶ and so, wiþ al þe haste þet he might, he [15]went vnto[15] Dame Isabel þe Quene, þat was þe Kyngus moder, and shewede her Sir Edmundus Lettr, [16]Erl of Kent,[16] and his wille and his purpos, and how he hade coniettede & ordeynede to put adoun Kyng Edward of Wyndesore, hire sone, of his realte and of his Kyngdome. ¶ "Now certes, sir Roger," quod she,[17] "haþ[18] Edmund done so? be my faderes[19] soule," quod she, "y wil [20]bene þerof[20] avengede, if þat God graunt me[21] my[9] lyf, and þat in a[21] shorte tyme." ¶ And anone wiþ þat, þe Quene Isabel went vnto Kyng Edward here[22] sone, pere þat he was at þe[9] parlement at Wynchestre forto haue amendede þe [23]wronges & trespasses[23] þat were done amongus[24] þe peple in[25] his reaume. ¶ And þo toke[26] she and shewede him þe lettre þat Sir[21] Edmund of Wodestok, [16]Erl of Kent,[16] hade made, and ensealede it[9] wiþ his seal, and bade him oppon her[27] benysoñ, þat he shulde avengede bene oppon him, as oppon his dedeliche[28] enemy.[29] ¶ Tho was þe quene so wroþ toward Sir Edmund, [16]Erl of Kent,[16] and cessede neuer to pray vnto her

[1–1] & O. [2–2] it D. [3] began O. [4] reuerences DO. [5] liegeaunces O. [6] praye 3ow D. [7] be O. [8] bene D. [9] *om.* O. [10] before O. [11] aswel D. asweel O. [12] of O. [13] *leaf* 157. [14] began to O. [15–15] sent to D. [16–16] *om.* O. [17] þe quene D. þe qwene O. [18] had O. [19] fader D. fadir O. [20–20] þerof bene D. be þerof O. [21] *om.* D. [22] he *sic* D. [23–23] trespasses and wronges D. [24] among O. [25] of D. [26] nome D. [27] he *sic* D. [28] dedely D. [29] *MS.* eneny.

sone þat he shulde sende in[1] haste after him. and oppon þat, þe Kyng' sent by his *lettr*es after' Sir' Edmunde of Wodestok', þat he shulde[2] come &[3] speke wiþ him at Wynchestre, alle man*er* þinges lafte. ¶ And when Sir' Edmund' saw þat þe Kyng sent aft*er* him[4] wiþ his *lettr*e enselede, he hastede him in aH [5]þe hast[5] þat he myght', til þat he come to Wynchestre. ¶ But [6]þo[7] þe Quene Wist þat Edmund' was come[8] vnto Wynchestre, and[9] anone she [10]*prai*ede so faste[10] vnto Edward' her' sone, þat þe gode Erl was arrestede[11] anone, & ladde vnto the barr' bifore Robert of Hamond', þat was crouner[12] of þe Kyng*us* Household'; and he[4] associede vnto[13] him Sir' Rog*er* þe Mortymer'. and þo spake þe forsaide Iohñ vnto him and saide: "¶ Sir' Edmund', Erl of Kent, 3e shul vnderstond' þat it is done vs to wete, and principalli vnto oure liege lord', Sir' Edward', Kyng of Engel*and*—þat Almyghty God saue and kepe!—þat 3e beþe[14] his dedely enemy & his *trai*tour, and also a co*m*mune enemy vnto þe reaume; and þat 3e haue[15] bene about meny a day forto make p*ri*ueliche[16] deliuerance of Sir' Edward', some-tyme Kyng of Engeland, 3our' broþ*er*, þe[4] whiche was put adoune of his realte by co*m*mune assent of alle þe lordes of Engel*and*, in enpeiring[17] of our' Lord þe Kyng*us* Estate, and also of his reaume." ¶ þo ansuerede þe gode man and saide: "For-soþ, Sir', vnderstandeþ wel þat y was neuer' assenting forto enpeir'[18] þe state of our' Lorde þe Kyng', ne of his[19] croune, and þat y put me to ben[20] demede oppon[21] my pires." ¶ And wiþ þat word', Sir' Rog*er* þe[4] Mortymer' shewede hi*m*[22] þe Erles *lettr*e & his seal, and saide þo: [23]"Sir' Edmuñde,[23] knowe 3e nou3t[24] þe prynt of þis *lettr*e þat he[25] hade take vnto[26] Sir' Iohñ Dau*er*yH?" and he saw þe print of his seal, but he saw nou3t what was contenede *per*in;[27] and þe Erl him-self' wende þat hit hade bene[28] on of his *lettr*es þat hade bene of no [charge]. [29]¶ þo saide þe Erl to Sir' Rog*er* Mortymer', þat He wolde nou3t fo[r]sake þe *lettr*e, and þat[30] was þe prynt of his seal. and anone wiþ þat word, þe wile and[31] false

[1] in al O. [2] schuld & *sic* O. [3] *om.* O. [4] *om.* D.
[5–5] *om.* DO. [6] *leaf* 157, *back.* [7] when D. [8] comen D.
[9] *om.* DO.
[10–10] *pray*ede and so fast' Went' D. prayed & so faste wente O.
[11] areste O. [12] Coroner' DO. [13] to O. [14] ben O.
[15] han O. [16] pryuyly O. [17] peyryng' D. pesynge O.
[18] appaire D. [19] þe DO. [20] be O. [21] of D.
[22] ham D. hem O. [23–23] *om.* D. [24] ou3t D. ogh*t* O.
[25] 3e O. [26] to O. [27] in þe lettre DO. [28] be O. [29] *leaf* 158.
[30] þat it O. [31] & þe O.

Mortymer' bygan to vndo þe *lettre*, and gan[1] hit forto rede in audience of al þe court'. ¶ And þo saide Sire Rob*er*t of Hamuȝ,[2] "Sir' Edmunde," q*uod* he, "siþ þat ȝe haue made knowyng openly in þis court þat þis is ȝour' *lettre* ensealede wiþ ȝour' seal, and þe ten*our* of þe[3] lettre seiþ þat ȝe wolde haue [4]bene aboute forto haue[4] delyu*er*ede þe body of þat worshipful kny3t Sir' Edward', sometyme Kyng of Engeland', ȝour' bro*þer*, and forto helpe[5] him þat he shulde haue[6] bene[7] Kyng aȝeyne, and gou*er*ne[8] his peple as he [9]was wont[9] bifore tymes, in empeiring of our' liege lorde þe Kyng*us* state,[10] þat is now,—wham God kepe fra*m* alle desese![11]—¶ And þis court wil þat ȝe bene vndone of lif and lyme, and þat ȝour' heires bene disheritede for euermore, Saf þe g*race* of our' lorde þe Kyng'." þo was þe Erl, Sir' Edmund' of Wodestok', put aȝeyne into prisouñ, vnto[12] ful saf ward' til oppoñ þe morwe; and þo come þe Mortymere vnto þe Kyng', *þer*e þat he satte at his mete, and tolde him how þe Erl was Dampnede by wai of lawe, and also of lyf and lyme, and his[13] heires disheritede[14] for eu*er*more, prouȝ oppen knoweliching[15] in plein court; wherfore him þouȝt hit were gode þat þe forsaide Erl were hastely quellede, wiþouten[16] wetyng of þe Kyng'; for elleȝ [17]the Kyng wolde forȝeue him his deþ, and þat shu[l]de turne ham [18]vnto miche[18] sorwe so as[19] he was enpechede. ¶ Anone þe Quene Is*abel*, prouȝ conseile of þe Mortymer', and wiþout eny o*þer*e conseile, sent in haste to þe baliffys of Wynchestr', þat þai shulde smyte of Sir' Edmundes heede[20] of Wodestok', Erl of Kent', wiþout[21] eny man*er* [22]abidyng' or respite oppoñ peyne[22] of lif and lyme. ¶ þo tok'[23] þe bailliffes Sir' Edmund' [24]of Wodestok'[24] out of p*ri*souñ, and lade him bisides the castell att Wynchestr', and *þer*e þai made a gonge-ferm*er*' smyte of his heuede,[25] for none o*þer* man derst hit done; & so deide he *þer*e—allas the tyme!—þat is to seyne, the x Day of Ottobre, þe pridde[26] ȝer' of Kyng Edwardes regne. And when þe Kyng wist *þer*of', he was wonder' sory, and lete ent*er*e him at þe[13] ffrere menoures at Wynchestre.[27]

[1] began O. [2] Hamond D. [3] ȝoure O. [4–4] *om.* O.
[5] haue holpen DO. [6] *om.* D. [7] be O. [8] gou*er*ned O.
[9–9] woned O. [10] estate D. [11] diseses O. [12] vndir O.
[13] *om.* O. [14] disherite D. of his disherited' O. [15] knowleche O.
[16] *with*oute O. [17] *leaf* 158, *back*. [18–18] to michel D. to myche O.
[19] as he D. as ȝe O. as R. [20] heuede D. [21] with-outen D.
[22–22] biddynge or respite oppoñ peyne D. abydynge or respyte vpon payne O. abidyng' or respite R.
[23] token O. [24–24] *om.* DO. [25] heed' O. [26] iij O.
[27] *MS.* Wynchestres.

Of the Deþ of Sir Roger Mortymer, Erl of þe Marche. ¶ Capitulo ¶ Ducentesimo ¶ [1]Vicesimo ¶ Secundo.[1]

ANd so hit bifelle at þat tyme, þat Sir Roger the[2] Mortymer, Erl of the Marche, was so prout & so hauten, þat he helde no lorde of the reaume[3] his pier; and þo bicome he so couetouse, þat he folwede Dame Isabell þe Quenes[4] court, þe Kyngus moder Edward, and bisette his penyworthe[5] wiþ þe officers of þe Quenes househalde in þe same maner as þe Kyngus[6] officeres deden; & so he made his takyngus as tochyng vitailes, and also of cariages; and al he dede for enchesoun of Spenses, and[2] forto gadre tresoure; and so he dede wiþout nombre in al þat he myght. ¶ Tho made he him wonder priuee [7]with þe Quene Isabell; and so miche Lordeshippe And retenue hade, so þat alle þe grete Lordes of Engeland of him wer adrade. wherfore þe Kyng and his Conseile towarde[8] him wer agreuede, and ordeynede amongus ham forto vndo[9] him be[10] pure resoun[11] and lawe, ffor enchesoun þat Kyng Edward, þat was [12]þe Kyngus[12] fader, traterously þrouȝ him was mordred in the castel of Berkelee, as bifore[13] is saide more plenerly, in the CC and xvij Chapiter of þis book. ¶ And somme þat were of þe Kyngus Conseil louede[14] þe Mortymer, and tolde him in priuetee how þat þe Kyng and his conseil wer[15] about fram[16] day to day hym forto shende and vndo;[17] Wherfore þe Mortymer was sore annoiede, and angry as þe[18] Deuel aȝeynes ham þat wer of þe Kyngus Conseil, and saide þat he wolde on ham bene avengede, how-se-euer he toke on. ¶ Hit was nouȝt longe afterward, þat[19] Kyng Edward and Dame Philipp his wif, and Dame Isabell þe Kynges moder, and Sir Roger Mortymer ne went vnto Notyngham, þere forto soiourne. ¶ and so hit bifell,[20] þat þe Quene Isabell, þrouȝ conseile of the[21] Mortymer, toke to her þe[2] keyes of þe ȝate[22] of þe castelle of Notingham, so þat no man might come neþer in ne[23] out by niȝt, but þrouȝ þe[2] commandement of þe Mortymer, ne þe Kyng, ne none of his Conseil. ¶ And þat tyme Hit felle[24] so þat þe[25] Mortyme[r], as a Deuel for wraþ, bolnede [26]for wraþ[26] þat

[1–1] xxj° D. [2] *om.* D. [3] lande D. [4] quenes DO. kyngus R.
[5] penyworthes DO. [6] quenes D. [7] *leaf* 159.
[8] towardes DO. [9] vndone O. [10] þrouȝ D. þurgh O.
[11] Tresoun O. [12–12] Kyng Edwardes D. [13] aboue D.
[14] Loueden DO. [15] weren O. [16] fro O. [17] vndone D.
[18] a D. [19] þat þe D. [20] fel D. [21] *om.* O.
[22] ȝates DO. [23] nor O. [24] bifelle D. [25] þe DO. *om.* R.
[26–26] *om.* D. & also for wrathe O.

he hade toward[1] the Kynges men Edward, and principally[2] aȝeins ham þat [3]hade him[3] accusede to þe Kyng of þe deþ of Sire [4]Edward his[4] fader. ¶ And priueliche[5] a conseile [6]was taken[7] bituene [8]Quene Isabel[8] and the Mortymer, and þe Bisshop of Lincolne, and Sir Symond of Bereford and Sir Hughe of Trompetoñ,[9] and *oþer* priue of hir conseile, forto vndo[10] ham alle þat hade accusede þe Mortymer vnto the Kyng of his fadres deþ, [11]Sir Edward,[11] of *tresouñ* and of ffelonye. Wherfore alle þo þat were of the Kynges Conseile, when þai wist of the Mortymeres castyng pryuely, comen[12] to þe Kyng Edward, and saide þat þe Mortymer wolde ham[13] destroie, for cause þat þai had accusede him of Kyng[14] Edward*us* Deþ, his fader, & praiede him þat[15] he wolde maintene ham in her trew quereH; and þe Kyng granted ham hir bone, and saide þat[16] he wolde maintene ham in hir right. ¶ And þise were þe lordes [17]þat pursuede[17] þis quereH: *Sire* William Montagu, *Sire* Hunfray de Boungh, *Sire* William his bro*þer*, *Sire* Rauf of Stafford, *Sire* Rob*ert* of Hufford, Sir William of Clyntoñ, Sir Iohñ Neuyl of Horneby, and meny o*þer*e of her consent; and alle þise suorne oppoñ a[18] bok to mayntene þe quereH in-asmiche[19] as thei[20] might.

¶ And hit[21] bifelle so aft*er*, þat Sir William Mountagu ne none of þe Kynges frendes moste nouȝt[14] bene[22] herburghede in the castel, for the Mortymer, but went & toke her herbugage[23] in diu*er*se places in[24] the toune of Notingham; and þo were þai sore adrade leste þe Mortymer shulde ham destroie. ¶ And in haste *þer*e come vnto[25] Kyng Edward, Sir William Mountagu *þer*e þat he was in his castel, [26]and priuely tolde him þat he ne none of his company shulde nouȝt take þe Mortymer wiþout conseil & helpe of William of Eland, Conestable of þe same casteH. ¶ "Now *cer*tes," q*uod* þe Kyng, "y leue ȝow ful wel; and *þer*fore y conseile ȝow þat ȝe go[27] to þe forsaide conestable,[28] and co*m*mande[29] him in my name þat he be ȝour frende and ȝour helpe forto take the Mortymer, al

[1] aȝeynes D. aȝens toward O. [2] priueliche D. [3–3] him hade D.
[4–4] Edwardes O. [5] priuely D. pryuyly O. [6] *leaf* 159, *back*.
[7] take O. [8–8] *MS.* quene quene Isabelbel; þe quene Isabel DO.
[9] Trumpyngton) O. [10] vndone O. [11–11] *om.* DO.
[12] come O. [13] *altered from* him *in MS.* [14] *om.* D.
[15] *MS.* þat þai, *with* þai *underlined for omission.* [16] *om.* DO.
[17–17] to pursue DO. [18] þe DO.
[19] in-alse-miche D. [20] þai D. þey O. hei R. [21] *MS.* his.
[22] be O. [23] herburghe D. herburgh O. [24] of D. [25] vnto þe O.
[26] *leaf* 160. [27] gone D. [28] *om.* O. [29] comaundeth O.

þing[1] lafte, oppoñ peril of lyf and[2] lyme." "[3]Sir," *quod*[3] Mountagu,[4] "Sir, my lord, *gr*aunt mercy!" ¶ Tho went forth the forsaide Mountagu, and come to þe conestable of þe[5] casteH, and tolde him þe Kyng*us* wille. and he ansuerede and saide þe Kynges wille shulde be[6] done, in-asmichel[7] as he might, and wolde nouȝt spare for no maner deþ; and so he[8] suore and made his oth. ¶ þo saide Sir William of Mountagu [9]to þe conestable,[9] in[10] hering of[11] alle ham[11] þat were[12] Helpyng [13]to þe same[13] quereH: "Now *ce*rtes, dere frende, vs bihoueþ forto[14] werche and done by ȝour[15] queyntise, to take þe Mortymer, siþ þat ȝe bene[16] kep*er* of þe casteH, and haueþ[17] þe keyes in[18] ȝour [warde]." ¶ "Sir," *quod* þe conestable, "wil ȝe vnderstonde *þat* þe gates of þe castel beþ[19] loked wiþ þe lokes þat Dame Is*abel* sent hider; and by nyght she haþ þe keyes þ*er*of, and leiþ ham vnder þe cheuesel of her bede vnto the morne; and so y may nouȝt come into þe castel by þe ȝates in no maner wise; but y know a[20] Alie *þat* stracches[21] out of the ward, vnder erþe, vnto[22] the castel, þat goþe into[23] þe weste, the[24] whiche alie Dame Is*abel* [25]þe Quene, ne none of her men, ne[11] þe Mortymer, ne none of his *com*pany knoweþ hit nouȝt; and so y shal lede ȝow þrouȝ þat[26] Alie; and so ȝe shul come into þe castel wiþout[27] aspies of eny man þat beþ ȝ*our* enemys."

¶ And þat[28] same nyght Sir William Mountagu, & alle the lordes of þe[29] quereH, and þe same Conestable also, [30]went ham[30] to horse, and made[31] semblant as hit wer forto wende out of þe Mortymeres sight; but anone as þe Mortymer herde þis tydyng*us*,[32] he wende *þat* þai wolde haue gone ou*er* þe see for drede of him; & anone he and his *com*pany toke conseile amonges ham forto lette hir passage, and sent lettres anone vnto the portes, so þat none of the grete lordes shulde wende [33]ham home into[33] her owen contre, but if he were areste & taken. ¶ And amonge[34] op*er*e ping*us*, William Eland, Conestable of þe forsaide castel, p*ri*ueliche[35] lade Sir William Mountagu and his *com*pany by þe forsaide way vnder

[1] þinges D. [2] & of O. [3–3] þo saide þe D. [4] Mountegu þo O.
[5] þe same D. [6] ben D. [7] in-alsemichel D. inasmyche O.
[8] *om.* D. [9–9] *om.* D. [10] in hem *sic* O. [11] *om.* O.
[12] wer þere O. [13–13] vnto þe D. to þe O. [14] to D.
[15] ȝour counseile and D. [16] beþ D. be O. [17] haue O.
[18] *MS.* in in. [19] be O. [20] an D. [21] stracheþ D. strecheþ O.
[22] into DO. [23] vnto D. [24] *om.* DO. [25] *leaf* 160, *back.*
[26] *MS.* þat casteH, *with* casteH *underlined for omission.*
[27] wiþ-outen D. [28] þe DO. [29] his O. [30–30] wenten D.
[31] maden O. [32] tydynge O. [33–33] home vnto DO.
[34] amonge al D. [35] *om.* D. pryuyly O.

the[1] erþ, so[2] til þat þai comen into[3] the castel, and went vp into[4] the Toure *þere* þat þe Mortymer' was in.[5] But Sir' Hughe of Trompitoñ[6] ham ascriede hidously, and saide, "A, *trai*toures! hit is al[5] for nouȝt þat ȝe [7]beþ comen[7] into þis castel. ȝe shul dye ȝitte in[2] euel deþ eu*e*rychoñ."[8] And anone on of ham þat was in the[1] Mountagues co*m*pany, vp wiþ a mace, and smote the same Hughe oppoñ þe heuede,[9] þat þe bray[n] barst'[10] out and felle on þe Ground'; and so was he dede in euel deþ. ¶ Tho toke[11] þai þe Mortymer', as he[12] Armede him atte þe toures [13]dore, When he herde þe noise of ham for drede. And When[14] Quene IsabeH saw þat þe Mortymer' was taken,[15] she made miche sorwe in hert', and þise wordes vnto ham saide: ¶ "Now, fair' sires, y ȝow praye þat ȝe done no*n*[16] harme vnto his body; a worþi knyȝt,[17] our'[18] wel bilouede frende and' our' dere cosyn." ¶ Tho went þai þens, and come[19] & brouȝt the Mortymer, and p*re*sentede him vnto Kyng Edward', and[20] co*m*maundede to brynge him into[21] sauf ward'. ¶ But anone as þai þat were consent vnto[22] þe Mortymeres doyng' herde telle þat he was taken,[23] þai went and hid ham, and p*ri*ueliche[24] by niȝt went out of the toune, eu*e*ryche[25] on[26] his side, wiþ heuy hert and mornyng', & leuede oppoñ her' oweñ[1] londes as wel as þai myght. ¶ And so þe[27] same ȝer'[28] þat[29] þe Mortymer was taken,[30] he hade at his retynu ix[31] knyghtȝ, wiþouten[32] squyers & serieantȝ of Armes and footmen. And þo was þe Mortymer' lade to Londoñ, and Sir' Symond' of Bereford' was lad wiþ him, and was[33] take to þe conestable to kepe. ¶ But afterward was þe Mortymers lif examynede at Westm*inster* bifore þe Kyng' & bifore[5] alle þe grete Lordes of Enge*land* for p*er*il þat might falle to[4] þe reaume, & forto[34] enquer' also whiche wer' assentyng vnto[34] Sir' Edwardes deþ, þe Kyng*us* fader', and also þrouȝ who*m* þe Scottes askaped at[35] Stanhope into Scot*land* wiþout þe wille of Kyng Edward'; ¶ And also how the chartre of Ragaman was delyuerede vnto þe Scottes, wherin [36]þe Homages and[37] feautees

[1] *om.* DO. [2] *om.* O. [3] vn-to O. [4] vnto D. [5] *om.* D.
[6] Trumpyngton) O. [7–7] be come O. [8] echeon O.
[9] heed' O. [10] brast DO. [11] token O.
[12] *MS. has* þai *underlined for omission, and* he *written in the margin.*
[13] *leaf* 161. [14] when þe D. whan þe O. [15] take O. [16] no O.
[17] knyȝt and D. [18] a O. [19] comen O. [20] and he DO.
[21] in O. [22] to D. [23] take O. [24] pryuyly O.
[25] eu*e*rychoñ D. eche O. [26] in O. [27] þat DO.
[28] *MS.* nyght *underlined for omission, and* ȝer' *written in the margin.*
[29] *MS.* þat þat. [30] take O. [31] ix score DO. [32] wi*th*oute O.
[33] werne D. [34] to DO. [35] fro DO. [36] *leaf* 161, *back.* [37] and þe O.

of Scotland were[1] contened, þat þe Scottes shulde do[2] eu*er*more to[3] þe Kyng*us* of Engel*and* for þe reaume of Scotland. Wherfore in his absence [4]he was dampnede to bene[4] [5]honget & draw[5] for his *tr*esouñ. And þis meschief come to[3] him on Seint Andrewes eve,[6] In þe ȝere of þe incarnacioñ of our Lord Ihesu Criste, M[t] CCC[7] xxx.

How Kyng Edward gete aȝeyn [8]into his honde[8] g*ra*ciouseliche[9] þe feautes and þe[10] homages of Scotland, wherof he was put out þrouȝ þe false conseil of Isabell his moder, & of S*ir* Rog*er*e Mortymer [4]*þat* was made[4] Erl of þe[11] Marche. Capit*ulo* Ducent*esimo* xxiij[to].[12]

NOw[13] ȝe haue [herde] Lordes, how S*ir* Iohñ of Bailoil, in tyme of pees, was chosen to bene[14] Kyng of Scotland, for enchesoñ þat he come of þe eldest douȝt*er* of þe Erl Dauid of Huntingdoñ,[15] þat was Kyng Alisaundres bro*þer* of Scotl*and*, þat[16] deide wiþouten[17] heir of his body bigeten ;[18] and how þis Iohñ made feaute & homage to Kyng Edward, þat was Kyng Henries sone þe þrid, for his landes of Scotland ; and how he aft*er*ward wiþsaide[19] his homages,[20] þrouȝ conseile of þe Scottes, In þe[21] ȝere of the[10] Incarnacioñ M[t] cclxxij[o],[22] and [23]sende vnto[23] þe pope,[24] þrouȝ false suggestioñ þat he made his oth vnto[25] þe forsaid sir[26] Edward, ouer his estate and his wille, of þe[11] whiche oth þe Pop[27] [28]assoilede him,[28] þrouȝ his bulles to him sent. ¶ And anone as Kyng Edward wiste þ*er*of, he ordeynede anone his [29]barons, and come Vnto Berewike, and conquerede þe toune ; at þe[30] whiche conqueste þ*er*e were slayn xxv M[t] & vij[c]. and[31] Bailoil, þat was Kyng of Scotland, come[11] & ȝelde him vnto Kyng Edward ; and þe Kyng[s] aft*er*ward[32] delyu*er*ede him out of þe tour[s] of Londoñ, and alle þe

[1] werin *sic* O. [2] done DO. [3] vnto O. [4–4] *om.* O.
[5–5] drawe and hongete D. to be drawe & honged he was dampned O.
[6] eve & DO. [7] CCC and O. [8–8] vnto him D. vnto hym O.
[9] graciously alle O. [10] *om.* DO. [11] *om.* D.
[12] *MS.* xxiiij ; xxij[do] D. xxiiij[o] O. [13] How *sic* O. [14] be O.
[15] Heretingoñ D. Heretyngeton) O. [16] *MS.* þai. [17] w*i*thoute O.
[18] begete O. [19] forsoke O. [20] homage DO. [21] þer *sic* O.
[22] CCClxxij O. [23–23] sent to D. sent vnto O.
[24] pope *struck out, and* bysshope of Rome *written over in a different hand in* O.
[25] to D. [26] kyng[s] DO.
[27] pope *struck out, and* bisshope *written over in* O.
[28–28] him assoilede D. hym assoylled O. assaide him R. [29] *leaf* 162.
[30] *om.* O. [31] And þe DO. [32] Edward D.

grete lorde[s] of Scotland wiþ *him*, þat were taken[1] at Berwike, and ȝaf ham sauf condit to goñ into Scot*land*. And the Scottes seþenes, þrouȝ her falsenesse, werrede oppoñ Kyng Edward.
4 ¶ And when Sir Iohñ Bailoile, Kyng of Scotland, saw al þis, he went & put him ouer[2] þe[3] see vnto Dompier, and leuede *þere* oppoñ his owen landes as wel as he might, til þat þe Scottis wolde amende ham of hir misdedes & *tres*passe3,[4] and lad with him Sir
8 Edward, his sone. Wherfore þe Scott*es*, in despite of him, callede him "Sir Iohñ Turnetabard,"[5] for cause þat he [6]wolde nouȝt[6] offende ne *tres*passe aȝeynes Kyng Edward of Engel*and*; and so he forsoke his reaume of Scotl*and*, and sette *þer*of but litil pris.
12 ¶ And þis Sir Iohñ, Longe duellede in *Fra*unce, til þat he deide *þere*; and Sir Edward his sone [7]vnderfonge his heritage,[7] and dede homage vnto þe Kyng of France for his landes of Dunpier.

¶ And so hit felle *after*ward þat Edwarde, þat was Iohñ
16 Bailoilles sone, had[8] wiþ him a squyer of Engel*and* þat was born[9] in ȝork-shire, þat men callede Iohñ of Barnaby; and þis[10] Edward Bailoil louede him miche, & *was* neiȝ *him*, and [11]wiþ him[11] ful pryuee. [12]¶ And so þis Iohñ of Bernaby *was* in debate with a
20 Frenche-man in þe toune of Dounpier; and so he quellede him, and went in his way, in al the haste þat he might, into þe castel fortil[13] haue socoure and helpe of his lord. ¶ And anone come þe Offic*er*es of þe toune[14] forto[15] take Iohñ of Barnaby as a felouñ.
24 and Sir Edward, his lorde, halpe him, and rescuede him,[3] and by nyȝt made him wende out of the castel; and so he went his way, and come into Engel*and* with-oute[16] eny harme. ¶ And when þe Kyng of *Fra*unce saw þat[17] Sir Edward had rescuede his
28 felouñ, he bicome wonder wroþ aȝeyns Sir Edward, and anoñ lete him bene[18] arest, and toke into his hande alle his landes. ¶ Tho duellede Sir Edward in prisoñ vnto þe tyme þat Sir Henry[19] Beaumond come into *Fra*unce; þe whiche Henry [20]some-tyme
32 was[20] Erl of Angos [21]in Scotl*and*, prouȝ his wif,[21] and was put out of þe forsaide Erldome when þe accord was made[22] bituene Engel*and* & Scotland, prouȝ þe Quene Isabell & Sir Rog*er*e þe[23]

[1] take DO. [2] one D. [3] *om.* O. [4] trespas O.
[5] Turnelabard DO. [6–6] ne wolde O. [7–7] his heritage vndirfonge O.
[8] lad O. [9] bore O. [10] *MS.* þis þis. [11–11] *om.* DO.
[12] *leaf* 162, *back.* [13] for-to O. [14] Toun of Dunpiere O.
[15] forto DO. fortok R. [16] wiþouten D.
[17] *MS.* þat kyng, *with* kyng *underlined for omission.* [18] be DO.
[19] Henry of D. Herry of O. [20–20] was sumtyme O.
[21–21] prouȝ his wif in Scotland D. [22] *om.* DO. [23] *om.* D.

Mortymer' & her' co*m*panye, for þe mariage þat she made bituene Dauid, þat was Robert þe Brus[1] sone, and' Dame Iohñ of[2] þe toure, Kyng Edward*us* sustre of Engeland', and wel vnderstode[3] þis, þat at the ende he shulde come to his ryght', but if [it] were þrouȝ þe[4] 4
Edward Bailloił, þat was right heir' of the reaume of Scotland'.
¶ And þe Kyng of Fr*a*unce, Lowys, louede wel[5] þis Sir' Henry, and was wiþ him ful p*ri*uee, and [6]þouȝt forto[7] make[8] delyu*er*ance of Sir' Edward' Bailoiles body, if he might in eny maner'. ¶ Tho 8
praiede he þe Kyng, þat he wolde gr*a*unt him of his gr*a*ce Sir' Edward' Bailoilles body vnto þe next p*ar*lement, þat he miȝt leue wiþ his owen rentes in þe mene-tyme, and þat he myȝt[9] stande to bene[10] Iugede by his pieris at the[11] p*ar*lement. ¶ the Kyng 12
gr*a*ntede him his pr*a*ieres,[12] and made þe forsaide Sir' Edward' ben delyu*er*ede out of p*ri*souñ in the maner' aboue-saide. and anone as he was out of p*ri*souñ, Sir' Henry toke him forth wiþ him, & lad him[13] into Engeland' and[14] made him duelle p*ri*ueliche[15] [16]in the[16] 16
Maner' of Sandhal oppoñ[17] Owes in ȝorke-shire, wiþ þe Lady Vescy. and so he ordeynede him þ*er*e an Huge retenance of peple of Englisshemen, and also[18] of Aliens, forto conquere aȝeyne[18] his heritage. ¶ And so he ȝaf miche siluer' vnto soudeoures and to 20
Alienes forto helpe him; and þai bihight him forto helpe[19] in al þat þai[20] might', but þai failede him at his most nede.

And at þat tyme[21] Donalde, Erl of Morref', herde telle how þat Sir' Edward' was comen[22] into Engel*and*, and come to him, and 24
made wiþ him grete ioye of his co*m*myng aȝeyne, and saide to[23] him, and bihigh[t] þat alle[24] grete lordes[11] of Scotland'[25] shulde [26]bene to him[26] entendant, and [27]holde him[27] for hir' Kyng', as right heir' of Scotland'. and so miche þai wolde done, þat he shulde 28
be[28] crounede Kyng of þat lande, and [29]to him dede[29] [30]feaute & Homage.[30] [31]þo come Sir' Henry of Beaumond' to Kyng Edward' of Engeland', and praiede him, in way of charite, þat he wolde gr*a*nt

[1] Brus his O. [2] at O. [3] vnderstondeþ D. [4] sir' DO.
[5] miche D. mych O. [6] *leaf* 163. [7] to D. [8] make a O.
[9] most D. muste O. [10] be O. [11] *om.* O.
[12] prayer' D. prayere O. [13] him forth D. [14] and laide *sic* D.
[15] p*ri*uyly O. [16–16] at a D. atte a O. [17] op O. [18] *om.* D.
[19] helpe him D. [20] he D. [21] I-tyme *sic* O.
[22] p*ri*uely come D. p*ri*uyly come O. [23] vnto D.
[24] alle þe D. all þe O. [25] Engelond' O.
[26–26] to him bene D. be to hym O.
[27–27] shulde him holde D. schuld' hym hold' O. [28] bene D.
[29–29] dede to him D. dede to hym O. [30–30] homage & feute O.
[31] *leaf* 163, *back.*

of his *gra*ce vnto Sir' Edwarde Bailoil, þat he moste[1] safliche gone[2] bi land' fram[3] Sandhall vnto Scotland', forto conquere his riȝt heritage in Scotland'. ¶ the Kyng Edward ansuerede and saide vnto him: "yf þat y soffre þe Bailoil wende þrouȝ my londe toward Scotland', þan þe peple wolde say þat [4]y were[4] assenting to[5] þe co*m*pany." ¶ "Now, Sir', y praie ȝow þat ȝe wolde *gra*nt him leue to take vnto [him] soudeoures of Englisshe-men, þat þai myȝt safly lede him þrouȝ ȝour' land' vnto[6] Scotland'; and, Sir', oppoñ þis couena[n]t, þat if[7] it so bifalle—þat God hit forbede!—þat þai bene[8] descomfited' in bataile þrouȝ þe Scottes, þat y and alle þe lordes þat holden with Bailoil ben for eu*er*more put out of oure[9] rentȝ þat we haueþ in Engel*and*." ¶ and þe Kyng, oppoñ þis couenant, *gra*ntede hir' bone, as toching him and þo þat were of þe[10] same querell, þe whiche cleimede forto[11] haue londes &[12] rentȝ in þe reaume of Scotland'. ¶ And þise were þe names of þe same Lordes þat pursuede þis mater', þat is to seyn,[13] Sir' Edward[14] Bailoil, þat chalangede þe reaume of Scotl*and*; S*ir* Henry Beaumond', Erl of Angos; Sir' Dauid of Stroboly, Erle of Atheles; S*ir*e Geffray of Mountbray, Walt*er* Comyn, and meny op*er*e þat were put out of hir[15] heritage in Scotland' whe*n* þe pees w*as* [16]made bituene Engeland' and Scotland', as bifore is saide.

¶ And ȝe shal vnderstond' þat þise lordes toke wiþ ham v C men of Armes and ij M[l] Archires[17] of footmen, and[18] þo went vnto[19] ship atte Rauenesere, and sailede by þe see til þat þai come[20] vnto Scotland', and[21] come to lande at Kynkecorne, xij mile fro[22] Seint Iohnes toune, and sende[23] oute hier' shippes aȝeine, for þai shulde nouȝt ben[24] hurt ne apairede,[25] nei*þer* þat no man shulde gone[2] into shipp*e* aȝeyne, þouȝ þat[26] þai hade nede, but abide at al p*er*iles, and nouȝt flee, but [27]stande, and ra*þer*[27] soffre deþ þan flee, to mayntene hir' trew querelle. ¶ when þe Erl of Fif,[28] a fers m*an* and a sterne, herde telle þat þe Bailoil was come*n*[29] forto take þe lande of Scotland', he come in haste vnto Kynkecorñ wiþ x M[l] Scott*es*, forto destourble him, þat he shulde nouȝt come to land'. ¶ But Sir' Edward' Bailoil and his company had taken þe land', maugre

[1] miȝt D. [2] go O. [3] fro DO.
[4–4] he shulde ben D. he schuld ben O. [5] vnto DO. [6] into O.
[7] *om.* D. [8] were O. [9] ȝ*our* O. [10] þ*at* O. [11] to DO.
[12] or O. [13] sey O. [14] *MS.* Iohñ; Edward þe DO. [15] *om.* D.
[16] *leaf* 164. [17] Archers and D. Archiers & O. [18] & of O.
[19] into O. [20] comen O. [21] *MS.* at. [22] fram D. [23] sent DO.
[24] be O. [25] enpeirede D. Empeyred' O. [26] *om.* O.
[27–27] rather stande & O. [28] Wif[l] *sic* D. [29] come O.

him and his company, and him descomfitede; at þe whiche scomfiture Sir Alisandre of Setoñ[1] was *per* quellede, and meny o*per*. ¶ The Erl of Fif was þo wonder sory, and ful euel[2] shamede[3] þat so litil[4] company hade him descomfitede, and shame- 4
fulliche[5] put [6]him & alle[6] his company þat was[7] alif forto flee.[8] þo come Sir Edward the[9] Bailoil, and toke þe contre al about him, til þat[10] he come to þe Abbay of Dunfermelyn; and *per*e he fonde vitailes for him and [11]for his men.[12] and amonge aH o*per* þinges, 8
He fonde in a chambre aboue[13] v C̄ of grete[14] stafes of fyne oke, with longe[9] pikes of yren and of stele: he tok[15] and delyue*re*de ham to þe most strongeste of his co*m*pany. ¶ And anone after he went fro þens, and loggede him in a felde ij mile fro Seint 12
Iohn̄[16] toune. and when þe burgeys of þe toune herde how þe Erl was descomfitede þrouȝ[17] Sir Edward[18] Bailloile, þai were sore adrade, and broken þe briggeȝ þat þai had made ouer þe wate*r* of Erne, so þat þe Bailoil might nouȝt goñ[19] ouer; Wherfore he 16
loggede him *per*e al þat nyght, but litel hede he toke to[20] reste, and saide vnto his peple, ¶ "Now, dere lordes, ȝe knowe[21] ful wel þat we bene[22] now[9] loggede[23] bituene oure enemys; and if þai mow vs hampre, *per*e nys[24] but litil[18] deþ; whe[r]fore if we abide here aH 20
þis nyght stille, y leue þat hit shal turne vs to miche harme; for þe power of Scotland may eue*r*y day wax and encresce, and we may nouȝt so; and we bene ful[25] litel peple as aȝeins ham. whefore y pr*a*ye ȝow, for the loue of Almyghty God, make we vs bolde and 24
hardy, and[9] þat we mow mightely take þe Scott*es* þis nyght, and [26]boldely werr oppoñ ham; and late vs pu[r]sue ham þis niȝt; and[26] if þai bene[22] tr*a*uailede þrouȝ vs, and þai see oure hardynesse, so þat o*per*e Scottis þat comen, and mete ham & see ham so tr*a*uailede[27] 28
and wery, þe sorer wil bene adrade wiþ vs forto feiȝten;[28] and fressheliche[29] þan [30]we shullen[30] [31]feiȝt, and oppoñ Ham p*ur*sue, so þat, þrouȝ the gr*a*ce of Almighty God, al the worlde shal speke of[18] þe[32] douȝtynesse of our chaiualry." ¶ And, sires, vnderstondeþ[33] 32

[1] Setoñ þe sone DO. [2] il D. [3] aschamed O. [4] l[i]tel a O.
[5] shamelich D. schamelich O. [6–6] him and D. hym & al O. & alle R.
[7] were D. [8] slee *sic* D. [9] *om.* D. [10] *om.* DO.
[11] *leaf* 164, *back*. [12] folc D. folk O. [13] aboute O. [14] gode D.
[15] nome ham D. toke hem O. [16] Iohnes D. Iohnys O.
[17] þurgh þe O. [18] *om.* O. [19] go O. [20] of DO. [21] Knowen D.
[22] be O. [23] ylogged O. [24] is no bote O. [25] but DO.
[26–26] *om.* D. [27] y-trauaylled O. [28] fight O.
[29] fresshely D. fersly O. [30–30] schul we O. [31] *leaf* 165.
[32] oppoñ D. [33] vnderstondes D.

wel þat alle the company þat come[1] with Sir Edward Bailoile grauntede wel [2]vnto þis[2] conseil, and were þerof glade, and anone pursuede oppoñ þe Scottes þat wer[3] bicomen wonder wery. and þe Bailoile and his company sore folwede ham, and dede ham miche sorwe þrouȝ her assaut, so þat þai myght nouȝt, for feble, ham helpe, and for litel peple. ¶ But þo saide amongus ham: "what is [4]vs now[4] bifalle, þat so litel peple as þe Bailoil haþ in wenge, done vs so miche trauaile and sorwe? now certes hit semeþ vs þat he werches[5] by grace, for he is wonder graciouse in his querelle, and al[6] we certes shul bene[7] dede er þat we may come to him, vs forto ȝelde, siþ þat his fader sette of[8] vs no pris." ¶ And amonge alle oþere þengus, þe Bailoil & his peple passede þe watere of Erne, so þat Sir Roger of Suynertoñ, þe[9] sone, was[10] fers and angri, and went forth; and þai saw miche[11] peple of men of armes ful wel arraiede; and forþ þai went vnto[12] ham, and [13]wiþ ham fouȝten,[13] and quellede as[14] meny as wolde abide, and[15] toke;[16] and noþelesse at þat assaut þai wende þat hit hade bene þe grete host of Scotland. and when hit come [17]to þe morne,[17] þai gadrede [18]ham and restede[18] a while. ¶ But þe while[19] þat þe Englisshe-men restede,[20] þe noble Baroñ Thomas[21] of Vescy, and[22] þe noble baroñ of Stafford, prekeden hir [23]horse vp and douñ by þe hulles, forto Kepe þe estres of þe contreye. ¶ and as þai prekeden vp and douñ, þai saw a grete hoste of gode arraye, ordeynede in iij wenges, wiþ helmes and shelde[24] shynyng, comyng[25] oppon ham, and þo come þo ij lordes aȝeyne vnto[26] þe Bailoiles folc, and saide, "Now, for the loue of Almyghty God, beþ of gode comfort, for ȝe shul haue bataile anone right!" ¶ And þo spake Sir Fouk, þe sone of Gerrein, a barouñ of grete renouñ and of dede of Armes: "Sires lordynges, vnderstondeþ [þ]at y wil saien y haue seyne meny diuerse wenges, as wel amonges[27] Sarasynus and[28] Gewes as amonge þe Scottes; and ȝitt see[29] y neuer þe ferþe[30] part of þe wenge feiȝten. and þerfor, and[31] we wil abide our enemys, we beþ[32]

[1] comen DO. [2–2] to þat D. vnto þat O. [3] þai D. þey O.
[4–4] now vs DO. [5] worcheth O. [6] *om.* D. [7] be O.
[8] vppon D. [9] þo D. [10] þat was O. [11] meny O. [12] to D.
[13–13] fauȝt with ham D. [14] alse D. [15] or DO. [16] take O.
[17–17] vnto þe morwe D. [18–18] ham to-geder and restede ham D.
[19] whiles DO. [20] restede ham D. rested hem O.
[21] *Against this is written in the margin in a contemporary* (?) *hand:* Thomas Vessy and the barron of Stafford.
[22] *om.* O. [23] *leaf* 165, *back.* [24] sheldes D. scheldes O.
[25] comy *sic* D. [26] to D. [27] among O. [28] as O. [29] saw DO.
[30] ferde D. [31] if DO. [32] ben O.

ynow forto feiȝt aȝeynes ham; but if[1] we be[2] nouȝt of gode hert and of gode wille forto feiȝt wiþ ham, for *cer*tes[3] we ben ful[4] fewe aȝeyns þis co*m*pany. ¶ And þer*f*ore, for the loue of God, take we vnto vs gode hert, and lete vs bene[5] bolde; and þenke we nei*þer* oppoñ[6] oure wifes ne[7] oppoñ our cheldren, but oneliche[8] to conquer ham in bataile; and, þrouȝ þe helpe of our Lord God, oure enemys we shul[9] ou*er*come."

¶ And with þat, come þe hoste of þe[10] Scottes toward ham ful sorely,[11] &[10] aȝeins Sir[10] Edward of[12] Bailoile, in iij baitailes wel araiede in Armure; and wonder fressheliche[13] þai comen[14] toward þe Bailoiles men. But when Sir Donalde,[10] Erl of Marcile, saw al [15]þis, he saide to Robert þe[10] Brus, [16]þe sone of Robert þe[17] Brus,[16] þise wordes: "Sir Rob*er*t," q*uod* he, "ful sore me forþenkeþ at myn hert þat þis folc, þ*at* þe[18] Bailoile haþ brouȝt wiþ him, shulde[19] dye wiþ dent of Scottisshe meneȝ[20] suorde,[21] siþ þat þai bene[22] Cristen men as wel as [23]we bene[23]; and *per*fore me þenke[24] þat hit were grete charite to sende vnto ha*m* forto ȝelde ham vnto[25] our mercy and g*r*ace, and raunsouñ ham[26] þrouȝ greuous raunsoñs,[27] forasmiche as þai haue take[28] our land and done ille."[29] ¶ "Now, c*er*tes," q*uod* Sir Rob*er*t[30] Danolde, "y haue wel *per*ceyuede þat þow [16]art an enemy and traitour vnto Scotland, siþ þat þow[16] wil[31] consent to saue oure dedely enemys þat haue[32] done vs miche sorwe and shame; and nowe hit semeþ wel[33] þat ȝe beþ[2] of her assent." ¶ "Certes, Robert," q*uod* Sir Donald, "falseliche[34] ȝe lye! y am nouȝt of her co*m*pany ne of her consent; and þat hastely ȝe shul see, for y wil feiȝt wiþ ha*m* ra*þer* þan eny of þis[35] co*m*pany." "And certes," Sir[10] Robert saide, "y shal, [36]magre þin heede,[36] assaile ha*m* or þow." ¶ And wiþ þat þai p*re*keden[37] her stedes fersely[38] oppoñ Caskemore, and her wenges ham folewede on a[10] renge. and þo come þai, and mette þe[39] Bailloil and his company at an hongen[40] bouȝt of þe more in a streite passage. and so faste þai hastede ha*m* vnto þe Englisshemen, so þat þousandes felle[41] to þe gronde, eche

[1] if þat DO. [2] bene D. [3] certes we O. certes R. [4] but O.
[5] be O. [6] on O. [7] ney*þer* O. [8] only O. [9] shullen D.
[10] *om.* D. [11] serely O. [12] þe DO. [13] ferselich D. ferslych O.
[14] come DO. [15] *leaf* 166. [16–16] *om.* D. [17] *om.* O.
[18] þis O. [19] shul D. schul O. [20] men D. [21] Swerdes O.
[22] beþ D. [23–23] ȝe beþ D. [24] þenkeþ D. þinkeþ O.
[25] to DO. [26] þem O. [27] raunson) O. [28] taken D. [29] euel D.
[30] Rob*er*t brus D. [31] wilt O. [32] hauen D. [33] vs D.
[34] falslye O. [35] his O. [36–36] maug[r]e þine of þin heuede *sic* D.
[37] p*re*kede D. [38] ferslych O. [39] wiþ D. [40] hongyng O.
[41] fellen D.

oppoñ o*per*, [1]into on hepe,[1] bo*þe* horse and man. ¶ The Bailoil [2]and his men *þo*[2] [3]mighghtely stoden a*ȝ*eynes Ham, and faste quellede *þe* Scottis vnto *þe* grounde, & meny sore woundede, so longe til *þat þai* stoden oppoñ ham, and foynede ham with her' suordes & speres prou*ȝ*-out here bodyes; and so sore *trau*ailede oppoñ ham til *þai*[4] bicome[5] ful wery, and wist nou*ȝ*t what to done. and *þe* Scottes *þat* were lafte alif' fledden to saue ham-self', in the best mane*r þat þai* myght. ¶ And *þo* pursuede[6] Edward Bailoile & his me*n*, and quellede of ham [7]til *þat* hit was nyght.[7] and fro *þens þai* went vnto[8] Seint Iohñes Toune, and toke hit, and helde ham *pe*re and vitailede ham-self' atte her' owen wille, for *þai* fonden ynou*ȝ*[9] wherwith to make ham mery. ¶ *þo* made *þe* Bailoile his men *þat* wer' woundede gone to shippe forto wende into Engeland', forto hele her'[10] woundes.

And in *þat* same tyme *þe*re was a Flemyng' in *þe* see, a strong' *þef* robour'[11] *þat* me callede 'Crab'; and *þis* Flemyng' was dryuen out of Flaundres for his wickednesse; and *þe*rfore he come into Scotland', and helde him[10] wi*þ þe* Scottis, and dede[12] as miche harme vnto the Englisshe-men as he myght'. ¶ And *þis* Crab mette in *þe* see *þis*[13] Bailoiles men *þat* wer'[10] wondede in bataile, *þat* were sent a*ȝ*eyn into[14] Engel*and* forto hele her woundes. and *þis* Crab *ȝaf* vnto ha*m* a grete assaut, and wolde haue quellede ha*m* eu*e*rychoñ[15]; but *þe* Englisshe-men defendet ham wel and manliche, [16]and descomfitede[17] Crab and his co*m*pany; and *þo* gan he forto[18] flee into Scotland'. ¶ And as he come towarde Seint Iohnes toune, he fonde a grete company of Scottis, *þat* were comen[19] a*ȝ*eyn to-geder' after *þe* sco*m*fiture[20] of Gaskemore, *þe* whe[ch] bisegede Bailoil and his me*n* in *þe* same toune of Seint Iohñ; and anone tolde[21] to *þe* Scottis how [22]*þat* he[22] desco*m*fitede of *þe* Englisshe-me*n þat* were sore wondet at Gaskemore, [23]& went[23] toward Engel*and* forto hele her' wonde[24]; and saide vnto *þe* Scottes, *þat þai* shulde haue no *grace* ne might a*ȝ*eynes Edward

[1–1] *om.* D. into an hepe O. [2–2] *þo* & his men O. [3] *leaf* 166, *back.*
[4] *þat þai* D. *þat þey* O. [5] becomen O.
[6] pursewede ham si*re* D. pu*r*sued' hem sir O.
[7–7] *om.* D. til it was nyght O. [8] to D. [9] ynow DO.
[10] *om.* O. [11] a roboure D. a robber' O. [12] de *sic* D.
[13] *om.* D. *þe* O. [14] vnto D. [15] echeon O.
[16] *leaf* 167. [17] descomfit' D. [18] *om.* D.
[19] come O. [20] discomfiture O. [21] *MS.* tolde tolde.
[22–22] he was DO. [23–23] *þat* were D. *þat* went O.
[24] *MS.* wonde and sad, *with* and sad *underlined for omission;* woundes DO.

Bailoile, for enchesoun þat he had scomfitede[1] & empairede al the chiualrye of Scotland wiþ an handeful of men, as to acount aȝeins þe Scottis þat wer' slayn. Wherfore he conseilede ha*m* to[2] remeve þe sege fra*m*[3] Seynt Iohnes toune,[4] and kepe ha*m* in þe best maner þat þai couþe or[5] myght. ¶ The Scottes vnderstode[6] þat Crab saide ha*m* soþ, and forsoke þe sege and went þens by nyght, and halpe ha*m*-self in the beste maner þat þai might.

¶ When þis tidyng[7] was know þrouȝ Scotland, how þat þe lordes and knyghtes were scomfitede at Gaskemore of Scotl*and* þrouȝ Sir' Edward[8] Bailoil, ȝe shullen[9] vnderstonde þat the Lordes and[10] ladies & gentiles of Scotland comen wonder' faste vnto Seynt Iohñes toune, and ȝelde[11] ham vnto[12] Baloile, and to [13]ha*m* dede[13] [14]feaute and homage[14] for hir' londes, and ȝelden ha*m* vnto his pees, [and helde[15] him for heir' lord. and he vnderfonge of ham heir' homages, and *gra*untede ham his pees; and fro þens he went to þe Abbay of Scone, and *per*e he was *cr*onede Kyng' of Scotland. and after', he lete *cr*ie his pees][16] þrouȝ-[17]out þe Land. and at þat[18] same tyme Hit bifelle[19] þat Kyng Edward of Engel*and* helde his *par*lement amongus[20] his Lieges at þe[4] Newe-Casteƚ oppoñ Tyne, forto amende þe *tres*passes[21] and þe wronges þat had ben[22] done in his land. and Sir' Edward þe Bailoil, Kyng of Scotl*and*, come to him þider', and dede [23]vnto him feaute and homage[23] for þe reaume of Scotland. ¶ And in þis maner' Kyng Edward of Engel*and* gaderede aȝeyn þe homages and feautes of Scotland, wherof he was put out þoruȝ conseil and assent of Dame Isabeƚ his moder', and of Sire Roger*e* Mortymer', Erl of þe Marche.

¶ Tho toke Sir' Edward Bailoil, Kyng of Scotl*and*, his leue of Kyng Edward of Engel*and*, and went þens into his owen lande of Scotland, and sette but litil [24]be ham[24] þat hade conseilede him and holpen him in his quereƚ; wherfore þai went from[3] him, and went & leuede by her' owen[25] londes and rentȝ in[26] Scotland. ¶ And so hit[27] bifelle afterward nouȝt longe, [28]þat þe Kyng of Scotland[28] ne

[1] discomfited O. [2] forto DO. [3] fro O. [4] *om.* O. [5] & O.
[6] vnderstode þo D. vndirstode þº O. [7] tydynges D.
[8] Edward þe D. [9] schal O. [10] and þe D. [11] ȝelden D.
[12] vnto þe DO. [13–13] him deden D. hym deden O.
[14–14] homage & fewte O. [15] helden O. [16] *supplied from* D.
[17] *leaf* 167, *back.* [18] the D. þe O. [19] fel D. [20] among O.
[21] trespasse D. Trespas O. [22] be O.
[23–23] to him homage and feaute D. to hym feute & homage O.
[24–24] hem by O. [25] *om* DO. [26] of D. [27] *MS.* his.
[28–28] *MS.* þat þe kyng of Scotland þat þe kyng of Scotland.

remevede and come to þe toune of Anandᵉ, and *per*e toke[1] his duelyngᵉ. and þider come to him a co*m*pany of knyȝtes, stronge men and worthy, & ȝelde[2] ham vnto þe kyng, and bare ha*m* so faire in dede, andᵉ in contynaunce so þat he trust miche oppoñ ha*m*. [and anone as þe *trai*toures sawe þat he trust miche oppon ham],[3] þai ordeynede among*us* ham l. in o[4] co*m*pany, and [5]wolde haue[5] slaynᵉ [6]herᵉ Kyngᵉ; but, prouȝ þe grace of Almyghty Godᵉ he brake [7]out prouȝ a[7] walle [by] [8]an Hole in his [9]chambre; and, as God woldeᵉ,[9] scaped herᵉ *trai*tery. and alle his men [10]werᵉ quellede[10]; and he ascapede wiþ miche drede to þe Toune of Cardoile, and *per*e helde him, sore annoiede: and þis bifelle on[11] oure Ladyes eve þe[12] Concepciouñ.

¶ Tho sent [13]Kyng Edward[13] Bailoil to Kyng Edward of Engel*and*, how falsely and *trai*terously he was in litel while[14] put vnto[15] shame and sorwe, prouȝ his lige men, oppoñ whom he [16]truste wonderᵉ[16] miche[17] and *prai*ede him, for þe loue of Almyghty God þat he wolde mayntene him and helpe[18] [him] aȝeyns his enemys. ¶ the Kyng of Engelandᵉ hade of him þo grete pite, & bihight him[19] helpe and socourᵉ, and sent him worde þat he shulde halde him in pees stille in the citee of Cardoile, til þat he hade gaderede his powerᵉ. ¶ Tho ordeynede Kyng Edwardᵉ of Engel*and* a conseil at Londoñ, and lete gader his me*n* in diue*r*ses[20] shires of Engel*and*, and when he was redy, he went toward þe toune of Berwikᵉ-vp-Twyde; andᵉ þiderᵉ [21]come to him[21] Kyng Edwardᵉ of Scotlandᵉ, wiþ his powerᵉ, and bisegede the toune, and made wiþout þe toune a fairᵉ toune of pauylouns, and dikede ham wel al[12] aboute, so þat þai hade non[22] drede of þe Scottes; & made meny assautes[23] wiþ gonnes and wiþ o*per*e engynes to þe toune, wherwiþ þai destroiede meny a fairᵉ hous; and cherches also [24]were beten[24] adoune [25]vnto the erþe, wiþ gret stones, [26]and spitouse comyng[26] out of[27] gonnes and of o*per*e gynnes. and noþeles þe Scottes kepte wel þe toune, þat þo ij kyng*us*[28] miȝt nouȝt come *per*in longe tyme. and noþeles the

[1] nome D. [2] ȝolden O. [3] *supplied from* D. [4] a O.
[5–5] *om.* O. [6] quellede D. quelledᵉ wolde haue O.
[7–7] prouȝ an D. þurgh a O. [8] *leaf* 168. [9–9] *om. sic* D.
[10–10] weren y-qwelledᵉ O. [11] in O. [12] *om.* O.
[13–13] *struck out in* D. [14] tyme DO. [15] to DO.
[16–16] trustede D. [17] mychel O. [18] *om.* D. [19] him þo D.
[20] diuers O. [21–21] comen to D. [22] no DO. [23] assaute O.
[24–24] weren bete O. [25] *leaf* 168, *back.*
[26–26] þat dispitously comen D. þat spytously comen O.
[27] of the D. [28] knyghtes O.

Kynges abiden *per*e so longe, til þo þat were in þe toune faillede vitailes; and also þai were so wery of wakyng' þat þai wiste nouȝt what to Done. ¶ And ȝe shulle vnderstonde þat þo [1]þat wer' in[1] the toune of Berwik', þrouȝ hir' comune conseile and her' assent, lete cr*i*e oppoñ þe walles *þat* þai miȝt haue pees of þe Englisshe-me*n*; and *per*of þai pr*a*iede[2] þe Kyng, and of his gr*a*ce, and pr*a*iede him of trewes for viij daies, oppoñ þis couenant, þat,[3] if þai were nought rescuede in þat side of þe toune toward Scotland', of þe[4] Scottis, wiþin viij daieȝ, þat þai wolde ȝelde ham vnto the Kyng, and þe toune also. and to holde þise couenauntȝ,[5] þai pr*o*furede [6]to þe Kyng xij hostages[6] oute of þe toune of Berwik'. ¶ When the hostages wer' delyuerede vnto þe Kyng*us*, anone þo of þe toune sent[7] vnto þe Scottes, and tolde ham of hir' sorwe & meschief'. and þe Scottes comen þo pryueliche[8] ou*er* þe wat*er* of Twyde, to þe bouȝt of þe Abbay; and Sir' Willi*am* Dikett', þat was þe[9] Styward of Scotl*and*, and meny op*er* þat comen wiþ him, put ha*m* *per*e in grete p*er*ile of hamself att þat tyme of hir' lif'; for þai comen ouer'[10] a bruge [11]þat was to-broken,[12] and þe stones away. and meny of hir' co*m*pany were *per*e drenchede[13]; but þe forsaide Willi*am* went ouer', and [14]op*er*e of[14] his co*m*pany, and come[15] by þe [16]Englisshe shippis,[16] and quellede in a barge of Hulle xvj men; and aft*er* þai went into the toune of Berwik' by the wat*er* side; Wherfore þe Scottis helde þo þe touñ rescuede, and axede hir' hostages aȝeyne of þe Kyng of Engel*and*. ¶ And þe Kyng sent ham worde aȝeyne þat þai askede the hostages wiþ wronge, siþ þat þai comen[17] into the toune by Engel*and*[18] syde; for couenaunt was bituene ham þat þe toune shulde be rescuede by the half' of Scotland'.[19] anon Kyng Edward' þo co*m*manded[20] ham[21] to ȝelde þe toune or he wolde haue þe hostages. and' þe Scottis saide þat þe toune was rescuede wel ynow, and þerto þai wolde holde ham. ¶ When Kyng Edward' saw[22] þe Scottis breke her' couenauntȝ þat þai made, he was wonder' wrothe, and anone lete take Sire Thomas fitȝ and Sire Alisaundre of Setoñ, Wardeyne of Berwik',—the whiche Thomas was p*er*soñ of Dunbarr',—and lete ham be taken[23] ferst' bifore þe[24] op*er* hostages, for

[1–1] of D. [2] pr*a*iden D. [3] *om.* O. [4] *MS.* þe þe.
[5] couenant D. Couen*a*unt O. [6–6] xij hostages vnto þe kyng' D.
[7] senten O. [8] pryuyly O. [9] þo DO. [10] op*er*e D. [11] *leaf* 169.
[12] broke O. [13] ydreynt O. [14–14] *om.* O. [15] comen D.
[16–16] shippes of Engeland D. Shippes of Engelond' O. [17] come D.
[18] Engelandes D. Engelondes O. [19] Scotland' and DO.
[20] co*m*mande D. [21] *om.* O. [22] seye D. [23] tak' D. take O.
[24] þ*er* O.

enchesoun̄ þat Sir̄ Alisaundres fader̄[1] was keper̄ of[2] þe toune. and þe Kyng commandede euery day forto[1] take [3]ij hostages[3] of þe toune til þat þai were alle done, vnto þe dep, but if þai [4]wolde 4 ȝelde[4] þe toun̄; and so he wolde[5] teche ham to[6] breke her̄ couenauntȝ. ¶ And̄ when þo of þe toune herde þis tydynges, þai bicome[7] wonder̄ sory, and sent[8] to þe Kyng of Engeland, þat he [9]wolde graunt ham oper viij dayes of respite, so þat bituene CC men of 8 Armes and xx[ti] [10]men[11] of Armes[10] mygh[t] by[12] strengþ goñ[13] bituene ham vnto[14] þe toune of Berwik̄, ham forto vitaile, so þat þe toune moste be[15] holde for rescuede. ¶ And if it so were þat xxj or xxij or mo were slayn of þo CC biforesaide, þat þe toune shulde 12 nouȝt ben[16] halde for rescuede. & þis couenaunt [17]forto holde,[17] þai sent to him opere xij [18]of þe toune[18] in hostageȝ.[19] ¶ The Kyng of Engeland̄ grantede ham her̄ praier̄, and tok þe hostages. on Seynt Margaretes eve, In the ȝer̄ of grace M[t] CCC xxxij,[20] þe Scottis 16 comen ferseliche[21] in iiij wengus wel arraiede in Armes, forto mete Kyng Edward of Engeland̄ and Edward þe Kyng of Scotland̄, & wiþ hir̄ power̄, and̄ come fast and sharpely aȝeynes evesong tyme. and þe same tyme was flode at Berwik̄, in the water of Twede, þat 20 no man myght wende ouer̄, on horse neiþer on foote, and þe water was bituene þo ij kyngus and þe reame of Engeland: and þat tyme abyden the Scottis in þat oþer side, for enchesoun̄ þat þe Englisshemen shulde haue [22]bene drenchede[22] or slayn̄.

24 **THis was þe arraie of the Scottis as[23] þai [24]comen in bataile[24] aȝeynes þe ij Kyngus of Engeland̄ & of Scotland̄: In þe vant-ward̄[25] of Scotland̄ were þise Lordes:—**

¶ The Erl of Morrif̄, Iames Friseh̄, Symond̄ Friseh̄, Walter 28 Stiward̄, Raynolde Cheyne, Patrik of Graham, [26]Iohn̄ le Graunt, Iames of Cardoile, [27]Patrik Parkeres, Robert Caldecotes,[26] Philip of Meldrum, Thomas Gilbert, Wiseman, Adam Gurdoun̄, Iamys Gramat, Robert Boyde, Hughe Park, wiþ xl knyȝtes newe dobbede, 32 and vj C̄ men of Armes, & iij M[t] of commune.[28]

[1] *om.* D. [2] of þe DO. of R. [3–3] hostages too O. [4–4] ȝelden DO.
[5] shulde D. schuld O. [6] forto DO. [7] becomen O.
[8] senten DO. [9] *leaf* 169, *back.* [10–10] *om.* O. [11] *MS.* men men.
[12] *MS.* by by. [13] go O. [14] in-to O. [15] ben D. [16] be O.
[17–17] to ben halden D. to be holde O. [18–18] *om.* D. [19] hostage O.
[20] *MS.* xxij. [21] fressheliche D. fersly O. [22–22] be dreynt O.
[23] how þat DO. [24–24] come in bataylles O. [25] vanne-warde O.
[26–26] Decotes *sic* O. [27] *leaf* 170. [28] communes D.

In þe ferst partie of þe halfe bataile of Scotl*and* wer' þise lordes:—

¶ The styward' of Scotland', þe Erl of Moneteth, Iames his Vncle, William Douglas, Dauid of Lyndeseye, Maucolyn Flemyng', William of Keth, Dunkan Kambok', wiþ xxx bachilers new dobbede.

In þe secunde part of þe half Lien-warde of the bataile of Scotland', were þise lordes:—

¶ Iames Stiward' of Coldeñ, Aleyne Styward', Willi*am* Abbrehyn, William Morice, Iohñ fitz Willi*am*, Adam le[1] Mose, Walt*er* fitz Gilbert, Iohñ of Cherltoñ, Rob*ert* Walh*am*, wiþ vij C̄ men of armes, & xvij M^t^ of co*mm*unes.[2]

In þe þridde ward' of þe bataile of Scotland' were þise Lordes:—

¶ The Erl of Marr', þe Erl of Roff, þe Erl of Straherne, þe Erle of Sotherland', William[3] Kirkeleye, Iohñ Cambron, Gilbert de Haye, William of Rameseye, William Proudegest, Kirstyn Hard', William Gurdoñ, Arnolde Garde, Thomas Dolfyn, wiþ xl knyghtes new dobbede, ix C men of Armes, aud xv [M^t^ of] co*mm*unes.[2]

In þe ferþ[4] warde of þe bataile of Scotland' were þise lordes:—

¶ Archebald' Douglas,[5] Erl of Leneux, Alisaunder le Brus, Erl of Fiff', Iohñ Cambel,[6] Erl of Atheles,[7] Rob*ert* Lawether, William[8] Vipount, William of Lonstoñ, [9]Iohñ de[9] Labelles, Gros de She-[10]renlowe, Iohñ of[11] Lyndeseye, Alisaunder' de Gray, Ing*am* De Vmfreuil, Patrik de Pollesworth, Dauid de Wymes, Michel Scott', Willi*am* Landy, Thomas de Boys, Rog*er*e de Mortymer', with xxx bachilers, ix C̄ men of Armes, and[12] xviij M^t^ co*mm*unes.[13]

[In þ^e^ v^te^ warde of þ^e^ bataile of Scotlo*nd*' were these lordis:—][14]

¶ The Erl of Dunbarre, keper' of þe castel of Berwik', halpe þe Scottis wiþ l. men of Armes. And Sir' Alisaundre of Setoñ, keper of þe toune of Berwik, wiþ[15] C̄ men of Armes, [and the comoñs of þ^e^ tou*n* w*ith* CCCC men of armes],[16] ¶ and x M^t^ & viij C̄ of fote-men: þe so*mm*e of þe Erles and lordes amonteþ lv[17]; þe so*mm*e of[18]

[1] de O. [2] Comune O. [3] William of DO. [4] *MS.* ferste.
[5] Douglas þe DO. [6] Camber O. [7] Athel D. [8] Willi*am* of DO.
[9–9] Iohan D. [10] *leaf* 170, *back*. [11] De DO. [12] *om.* O.
[13] and iiij C of communes D. & iiij C of Comune O.
[14] *supplied from* D. *om. in* OR. [15] w*ith* an D. w*ith* a O.
[16] *supplied from* D. [17] lxv D. lv M^t^ O. [18] of þe D.

bachileres newe dobbede amounteþ[1] C and xl; þe some of men of Armes amounteþ iij M[l][2] vj C̄ & l; þe [som of þ[e] comoñs amountith lxiiij M[l] & CC, The][3] somme of commune[4] peple aboue-saide[5] amounteþ lxviij M[l][6] & xlv. ¶ And þise[7] lv grete[6] Lordes ladden alle þe opere[8] lordes aboue-saide[9] in iiij batailes, as[10] is tolde bifore, alle on[11] foote.

¶ And þe[7] Kyng Edward of Engeland and[12] Edward, Kyng[7] of Scotland, hade wel apparalede her folc[13] in iiij batailes, forto feiȝt [14]on foot aȝeynes[14] her Enemys. And þe[15] Englisshe mynstralles blow[16] her trompis ¶ and hir pipes, and hidously ascriede þe Scottis. and þo hade euery Englisshe bataile ij wenges of pris Archiers, þe whiche at þat bataile shotten Arwes so faste and[17] sore þat þe Scottis myght nouȝt helpe hamself; and so[18] þai smyten [þ[e]] Scottis, þousandes to þe[19] grounde; and [20]þai goñ[21] forto fle fro þe Englisshe-men forto saue hamselfe.[22] ¶ And[20] when þe English[23] knafes saw þe scomfiture, [24]and þe Scottis falle faste[7] to the[19] ground, þai prikeden[25] hir maistres hors wiþ þe Spores forto kepe ham fro[26] perile, and sette her maistres at no force. ¶ And when þe Englisshe-men saw þat, þai lopte on her hors, and fast pursuede þe Scottis; and alle[27] þat abiden, þai[6] quellede doune ryght. *Pere* [28]might men[28] see þe douȝtynesse of þe noble Kyng Edward and of his men, how manliche[29] þai pursuede þe Scottis, þat flowen for drede. ¶ And *pere* [30]might men[30] see meny a Scottisshe-man caste douñ vnto þe erthe dede, and hir baneres displaiede, &[19] hackede into pices, and meny a gode habrigouñ[31] of stele in hir blode bapede[32]; and meny a tyme þe Scottes were gadrede in[33] companyes, but euermore þai were descomfitede. ¶ And þus hit bifelle, as God wolde, þat þe Scottis hade[34] þat day no more foisouñ ne myght aȝeynes þe Englisshe-men, þan xx shepe[6] shulde haue aȝeyns v wolfes; and so[35] were þe Scottis descomfitede; and ȝitte þe

[1] amountith an D. amounteþ a O. [2] M[l] & D.
[3] *supplied from* D. somme of þe communes amounteþ lx M[l] & iiij M[l] & ij C þ[e] O.
[4] the D. þe O. [5] aboue-yseyd O. [6] *om.* O. [7] *om.* D.
[8] to*per* D. [9] abouen-sayd O. [10] as it D. [11] in DO.
[12] and king D. [13] puple D.
[14–14] in fote aȝenst D. in foot aȝens O. [15] then D.
[16] blewen D. blew O. [17] and so D. [18] thus D. [19] *om.* DO.
[20–20] *om.* O. [21] begon D. [22] her lyvis D. [23] *MS.* Scottisshe.
[24] *leaf* 171. [25] prikkid D. preked O. [26] from D.
[27] alle tho D. [28–28] men myȝt D. men myghte O.
[29] manly O. [30–30] men myht D. men myghte O.
[31] habirioñ D. haberion O. [32] bathe DO. [33] in-to DO.
[34] hadden at D. [35] thus D.

[1]Scott*es* me*n*[1] had v me*n* a3eyns on[2] Englisshe-man. And þat batail*e* was done at Halydounhill bisides þe toune of Berwik: at þe[3] whiche bataile were slayn of þe Scottis xxxv M[t] &[3] vij[c] & xij, and of Englisshem*en* but vij oneliche, & þo were footem*en*. & þis Victorie bifelle [4]to þe[4] Englisshe-m*en* on[5] Seynt Margaret*es* eve, In þe 3er' of our' lord' Ihesu Crist' [6]M[t] CCC[6] xxxij. And while[7] þis doyng laste,[8] þe Engl*ish* knafes tok[9] þe pilfre of þe Scott*es* þat were quellede, eu*er*y ma*n* þat he myght take, wiþout[10] eny chalange of eny ma*n*.[11] Deo gracias!

[1—1] Scottis D. Scottes O. [2] an D. [3] *om.* D. [4—4] on-to D.
[5] in DO. [6—6] a M[t] CCC and D. [7] whilis D. [8] was D.
[9] nomen D. [10] with-outen D. [11] man Amen O.

APPENDIX A.

THE ROMANCE OF THE BATTLE OF HALIDON HILL, A.D. 1333.

[1. *The longer poetical Version in Harl.* 4690, *leaf* 82, *back, corresponding to the prose on p.* 285, *line* 14 *ff.*]

¶ And anone þe Skottes beganne to fflee fro þe Englische menne, to saue þer lyves. butt wanne þe knaves & þe Skottisch pages þat weren behinde the Skottes, to kepe her horses, seyen the discomfiture, þei prikeden her maisters horses awey, to kepe hem selfe from perelle; and so þei towke no hede off her maisters. And þen þe Englische men towken many off þe Skottes horses, and prikeden after þe Skottes, & slewe hem downe Righte. And there men mighte see the nowbell King Edwarde off Englonde & his ffolke, heugh mannefully þei chasedon the Skottes; were-off þis Romance was made:—

There men mighte well see — The Scots fled,
Many a Skotte lightely fflee,
And þe Englische after priking, — the English after them.
With scharp swerdes þem stiking;
And þere her Baners weren ffounde [leaf 83]
Alle displayedde on the Grounde,
And layne starkly on Blode
As þei hadde ffought on þe fflode.
Butt þe Scottes, (ille mote þei þee!) — The Scots thought the English must be drownd;
þought þe Englisch adrenit shulde be;
for bi cause þei mighte not fflee,
butte iff þei adrenite schulde bee;
butte þei kepte hem manly on londe,
so þatte þe Scottes might nott stonde,
and felde hem downe to Grounde, — but they slew thousands of Scots,
Many powsandes in þatte stounde;
and þe Englische men pursuyed hem so,
Tille þe fflode was alle a-Goo:
Alle þus þe Skottes discomfite were
in litell tyme wiþ Grete feere;

ffor no noþer wise dide þei stryve,
Butt as .xx. shape among wolfes fyve;
(tho the Scots were 9 to 1) ffor .v. off hem þen were
ayenste an Englischman þere.
So þere itte was welle semyng
þatte *with* multitude is no scomfiting,
Butt *with* God, fulle off mighte,
wham he will helpe in trewe ffighte.
by the grace of God, at Halidon Hill near Berwick. so was þis, Bi goddes Grace,
Discomfiture off Skottes in *þat* place,
that men cleped Halidown Hille;
ffor þere þis Bateill Befelle,
Atte Berwike, Be-side þe towne.
This was do *with* mery sowne,
wiþ pipes, Trompes, & nakers þer-to;
And loude clariounes þei Blew also.
And þere þe Scottes leyen dede,
35,712 Scots and more lay dead, and only 7 English. xxx. M^{l}. Be-yonde Twede,
& v. M^{l} tolde there-to,
with vii· C· xii· and mo;
& of Englischemen But sevenne,—
worschipped Be God in hevenne!—
& þat wer men on ffote Goyng,
By foly of her owne Doyng.
The victory of Halidon Hill was on St. Margaret's Eve, on seinte Margete-ys Eue, as y yow tell,
Befille þe victory of Halidoune Hille,
In þe yere of God almighte,
19 July, 1332-3. a M^{l} iii· C and ii· and þritty. [leaf 83, col. 2]
atte þis Discomffiture
The English took the Scots' armour and clothes. þe Englisch knightes towke her hure
of þe Skottes þatte weren dede,
Clopes & haberiounes for her mede;
And watte-euer þei might finde
on þe Skottes, þei lefte not behinde;
And þe knaues, by her purchas,
hadde þere a mery solas,
for þei hadde for her degree,
In alle her lyffe þe Better to be:
Alle þus þe Bateille towke Ending.
But where their Kings But y canne not telle off þe yen Going

Off þe too kingges, were þei become, went to, I don't know.
& weþer þei wenten oute or home;
But Godde, þatte is heven king,
sende vs pees and Gode Ending! 4

[2. *A shorter fragmentary version in MS. Arundel LVIII, College of Arms, leaf* 334, *back.*]

There þan men myght se
Many a Scott swiftly fle, The Scots fled, the English pursued 'em.
And þe Englysshmen after prikynge,
Wiþ sharp swerdys þe Scottes stykynge; 8
& þere hure banyrs weryn founde
al displayd, lyeng on grounde;
and þay lay sprad on blood,
as þey foughten on þe flood. 12
That þe Englisshmen drent shold be, The Scots hoped the English would be drownd;
ffor þat þey hopyde to se,
ffor so þey hopyde to spede,
Seyng þe flood þat was on Twede. 16
ffor þe Englisshmen myght not fle
but yf a-drent þey shold be;
& þan þere-to loþ þey were,
for þey þought nought in no such fere, 20
But þey kept hem on londe,
So þat þe Scottes myght nought stonde;
ffor þey were fillyd to grounde, but they kild many thousand Scots.
many a þousand in þat stounde; 24
& þe Englisshmen pursywid hem so,
fort þe flood was al a-go.
And þis þe Scottes discomfytyd were
In lytil tyme wiþ gret fere.— 28

00046347

Digitized with financial assistance from the
Government of Maharashtra
on 23 January, 2019